CAESAR IN-GAUL
DOOCE AND EASTMAN
This book is no orphan
so don't adopt the damn thing.
Samuel Bronson

IV Form

Latin IV

Mr. Waldrip
SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX TO CAESAR

(See page 166)
CAESAR IN GAUL

WITH INTRODUCTION, REVIEW OF FIRST-YEAR SYNTAX, NOTES, GRAMMAR, PROSE COMPOSITION, AND VOCABULARIES

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

AND

FREDERICK C. EASTMAN

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE STATE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO
PREFACE

The modern demand for economy and efficiency, which pervades the educational world as well as the world of business, has led to the preparation of this new edition of Cæsar. It comprises in a single volume all of the material needed for the second year of Latin, and, by the elimination of all matter not directly serviceable, aims to promote efficiency in its presentation.

After a brief introduction devoted to historical matters and the Roman art of war, a thorough review of the first year's work in syntax is presented by means of Ritchie's "The Argonauts," Nepos's "Hannibal," and a simple biography of Cæsar.

The text, which is Meusel's with a few minor changes, comprises the first four books of the "Gallic War" and interesting episodes from the remaining books, with notes written from the standpoint of the pupil rather than from that of the teacher, and fully adequate to his needs. To remove a real obstacle to progress, the long passages of indirect discourse occurring in the first two books are given in the direct form. The same passages are given later in their unchanged form, for purposes of comparison and for the use of such teachers as prefer a more strenuous course. The text closes with Cæsar's account of the battle of Pharsalia, the climax of the "Civil War," and events that immediately follow. These will be found particularly valuable for sight work; they are provided with footnotes and special vocabularies of the words not used in the preceding text of the "Gallic War."
In the Grammar the attempt has been made to present the syntax of Caesar in the most direct and simple form, and the Latin Composition discusses the fundamental constructions. While the authors have not been at all radical in the matter of nomenclature, such of the new names have been used as seem likely to gain general adoption.

The vocabulary gives the essentials of etymology and contains only such idioms and definitions as are fundamental to the text.

Battle plans, maps, and illustrations of every sort have been inserted with a lavish hand, and it is hoped that these will tend to make the great story more real to the pupil's imagination. Special attention is called to the four colored plates made from paintings.

This book covers the requirements of the New York Syllabus. The special vocabularies of one thousand words prescribed by the Syllabus for the first and second years are reprinted in a form valuable for drill. Provision is made, also, for the study of the formation and derivation of words, as suggested in the New York course.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGÉ
FREDERICK C. EASTMAN
## CONTENTS

### INTRODUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. The Life of Caius Julius Cæsar</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Gaul, Britain, and Germany</td>
<td>xxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Roman Military Affairs</td>
<td>xxv</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### RITCHIE, THE ARGONAUTS

- Page xli

### NEPOS, THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL

- Page lvii

### CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

- Page 1

### THE GALLIC WAR

- Book I: Page 11
- Book II: Page 57
- Book III: Page 83
- Book IV: Page 103
- Selections from Book V: Page 130
- Selections from Book VI: Page 138
- Selections from Book VII: Page 150

### THE CIVIL WAR

- Selections from Book III: Page 167

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE FROM BOOKS I AND II OF THE GALLIC WAR

- Page 199

### NOTES

- Page 213

### ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Declensions and Conjugations</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Syntax</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN COMPOSITION</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN WORD LIST</td>
<td>447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD LIST</td>
<td>448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WORD FORMATION</td>
<td>469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES</td>
<td>473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabularies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English-Latin</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin-English</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical Index</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surrender of Vercingetorix to Cæsar (In colors)</td>
<td>Frontispiece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Chariot Race in the Circus Maximus</td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallic Remains</td>
<td>xxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Roman Legionary Soldier</td>
<td>xxiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Castra Romana</td>
<td>xxxv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General View of Siege Operations</td>
<td>xxxvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hannibal</td>
<td>lvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cæsius Julius Cæsar</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Assassination of Cæsar, 44 B.C. (In colors)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cæsius Julius Cæsar Imperator</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est&quot;</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besançon (Vesontio)</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference between Cæsar and Ariovistus, King of the Germans</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnatum est</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Reliquos sub corona vendidit &quot;</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Milites nostri in castra inruperunt&quot;</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landing of the Romans on the Coast of Britain (In colors)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Druid Sacrifice</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Germans</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alise-Sainte-Reine (Alesia)</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cæsius Julius Cæsar Consul</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gnæus Pompeius Magnus</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ides of March (In colors)</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gallia Antiqua</td>
<td>viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Route of Hannibal</td>
<td>lix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 58 B.C.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Rhone from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Defeat of the Helvetii</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Campaign against Ariovistus</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Battle with Ariovistus</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 57 B.C.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Battle on the Aisne (Axona)</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Defeat of the Nervii</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siege of the Stronghold of the Aduatuci</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octodurus and the Surrounding Territory</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Veneti and Neighboring Coast Region</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 55 B.C.</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Second Invasion of Britain, 54 B.C.</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 52 B.C.</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defeat of Vercingetorix at the Vingeanne</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 48 B.C.</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Battle of Pharsalia, 48 B.C.</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note. The numbers on the map give the years of the respective battles and campaigns.
INTRODUCTION

I. CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

This is a book of exploration, adventure, and conquest. It tells the story of some of the most thrilling events in the life of one of the greatest men in history—Caius Julius Cæsar, the Roman. It is his own account of his explorations and conquests; his own description of his fierce battles with the half-civilized Gauls who occupied what we now know as France, Switzerland, and Belgium, with the barbarous Britons of England, and with the savage tribes then inhabiting Germany. The curtain of centuries is drawn aside and we see as in a moving picture the dawn of civilization in Europe two thousand years ago. We learn of the strange customs of its inhabitants and of the methods by which they were subdued, reduced to order, and brought under the government of Rome by the extraordinary energy and generalship of one man. The time of this drama is the interval between the years 58 and 49 B.C.

I. ROME, THE RULER OF THE WORLD

Rome in its early history was a monarchy; but four hundred years before Cæsar’s birth the last of the kings, Tarquinius Superbus, had been expelled, and a republican form of government had taken the place of the kingly rule. In Cæsar’s time Rome was a great commonwealth. To it belonged, as tributary provinces, all the countries surrounding the Mediterranean
Sea, and this meant, practically, all the civilized world. The central power was at Rome, and the provinces were governed by officials sent out from the capital city.

2. Political Conditions and Parties

At the time of Cæsar’s birth, 100 B.C., or, according to some authorities, 102 B.C., there were two great political parties at Rome: the nobility, or aristocracy (optimátēs), and the democratic, or popular, party (populus). Between these parties there had long been a bitter strife. The optimátēs, for the most part, had the upper hand, exercising their authority through a senate of six hundred men, all optimátēs. The two great political leaders during Cæsar’s early years were Sulla for the optimátēs, and Marius for the populūs. The rivalry between these men and these parties resulted in something far more grave than a mere political contest. They kept Rome in a turmoil of strife and bloodshed.

Both leaders sought the command of the war against Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor. Sulla prevailed. During his absence in the east, hundreds of his adherents at Rome, including many leading senators, were put to death by the order of Marius. Sulla, returning, retaliated with similar carnage, the friends of Marius now being the victims. It was the custom of the Romans, in times of peril, to elect a temporary dictator, who had absolute power. Sulla, now in control of the political situation, caused himself to be proclaimed dictator.
for an unlimited period, and reorganized the government wholly in the interests of the *optimātēs*. These events occurred between 88 and 81 B.C., while the boy Cæsar was passing from his twelfth to his nineteenth year.

3. Cæsar's Political Affiliations

These circumstances attending Cæsar's youth must have had much to do with the shaping of his ideals and career. Cæsar's family belonged distinctly to the nobility, for the Julii traced their ancestry back to the Trojan Aeneas, who was reputed to be the son of the goddess Venus. But something of the independence and self-reliance that told for so much in his later military and civic victories is shown by the fact that, in spite of his political inheritance which marked him an aristocrat, he chose, even in his youth, to attach himself to the side of the *populārēs*.

In his seventeenth year he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, one of the most prominent leaders of the party of Marius. Sulla, in the height of his power, ordered him to divorce her. Cæsar, a mere youth, defied the great dictator of Rome, and refused. On this account he was obliged to leave Rome. Sulla at last, through the influence of Cæsar's friends, although against his own judgment, consented to his return. "Let him come back, if so you will," was his remark, "but this same young man will some day overthrow the nobility; for I see in him many a Marius."
4. Caesar's Education and Training

Caesar's early life was, no doubt, like that of the average Roman boy of noble birth. His education probably did not differ materially from that of hundreds of others. Caesar aspired, as did other Roman boys, to a distinguished career. The two chief avenues that were open to advancement were the political and the military. He must be well educated in a general way. Then he must be versed in the law, in statesmanship, and in oratory, or else in the art of war. If he were trained in both disciplines, so much the better. The youthful Cæsar devoted himself to the study of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory, studying for several months at Rhodes under Apollonius, the most famous teacher of the time. He also gained some valuable military experience in Asia Minor, and distinguished himself by his valor in saving a comrade's life. His education for the highest offices was ample.

5. Roman Political Offices

The highest office in a political career was the consulship; but there were three successive offices that were usually held as preliminary to this, those of quæstor, ædile, and prætor.

The quæstor had to do with the public treasury, the collection of revenues, disbursements, and the like. Under Sulla there were twenty quæstors, ten being assigned to duties at Rome, and ten attached to the armies of the provincial governors.

The ædile was concerned with the care of streets and public buildings, the superintendence of commerce, and the administration of the great public festivals. The Romans were very
fond of spectacular games, and to gain the favor of the people for future elections the āediles often incurred enormous personal expense in their presentation. The number of āediles was four.

The prætor was concerned with the administration of justice, and represented the consul in his absence. Under Sulla the number of prætors was eight.

But it was to the office of consul that the young Roman looked forward as the consummation of his political efforts. There were two of these officers, elected each year, and the guidance of the republic was largely in their hands.

After either the prætorship or the consulship it was customary to appoint the ex-prætor or ex-consul to the governorship of one of the Roman provinces. Such officers were called pro-prætors or proconsuls according to the office which they had held. Such appointments afforded great opportunities to amass wealth, and for this reason were eagerly sought. For the sake of gain unscrupulous methods were often employed in the administration of these offices. The provincials were imposed on in various ways, and extortion was common. Many of the provincial governors returned to Rome with enormous riches. But aside from all unfair means it was quite possible to make this office an unusually profitable one.

6. Cæsar’s Political Career

Cæsar doubtless looked forward to a political rather than to a military career. His military training had been only incidental, but he had made careful preparation for the field of politics and he entered upon it with his customary earnestness.

He was elected quæstor for 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two years old. Three years later, in 65 B.C., he was āedile. In this capacity he played with the highest stakes for securing the favor of the people. As he had little means of his own, he borrowed enormous sums on the strength of his office and his prospects,
and presented the most magnificent games that Rome had ever known. He left the ædileship, as he remarked in jest, with more than a million dollars less than nothing.

In 63 B.C. he was elected pontifex maximus, an office that carried great prestige and dignity, though it was not in the regular course of civil honors. This office he held all his life.

In 62 B.C. he was prætor, and during the following year served as propraetor of Spain. But he was now staggering under the load of debt that he had contracted during his ædileship, and was in danger of being detained at Rome by his creditors. To meet these obligations he borrowed a large sum from Crassus, the richest man in Rome.

While engaged in his duties in Spain he gained a military experience that was of great value to him in his future campaigns, and likewise made money enough to pay all his debts. In the year 60 B.C. he returned to Rome and now fixed his attention on the consulship. Pompey had just returned victorious from the Mithridatic War. He had been identified with the optimatēs, but, because of their jealous efforts to curtail his power, he was becoming estranged. Cæsar took advantage of this attitude to form an alliance with him. With them they associated Crassus, who represented the moneyed interests, and thus was formed a most powerful political alliance, commonly called the First Triumvirate. This was one of the shrewdest of Cæsar’s moves, for his individual influence at this time was far less than that of the other two. It is easy to see how unwelcome this alliance was to the optimatēs. Backed by the triumvirate Cæsar gained the consulship without difficulty for 59 B.C. During his year of office he made many valuable and humane reforms, chiefly in the interest of the lower classes, and in general distinguished himself by his wise and good government.
7. Cæsar in Gaul

Cæsar's restless energy and ambition could not, of course, rest satisfied with the consulship. He looked forward eagerly to larger fields of action in which to display his ability. Such an opportunity was now presented to him. The triumvirate, in making up the political "slate," agreed that Cæsar should have the governorship of Gaul for five years. This district consisted of what were known as Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, and the office presupposed the protection of the northern frontier of Italy. The relative position of these territories may be seen from the map at the beginning of the book. Cæsar's term of office as governor of Gaul, beginning in 58 B.C., was afterwards extended to ten years, and it is of the stirring events of these years that Cæsar tells us in this book.

8. The Civil War

The agreement of the triumvirate by which Cæsar became governor of Gaul assigned to Crassus the province of Syria, and to Pompey that of Spain. However, not only the harmony but even the existence of the triumvirate came to a speedy close. Crassus was killed in battle in his province. Pompey,
made sole consul in 52 B.C., began to be intensely jealous of Cæsar's reputation and influence, and finally laid plans to destroy him. To this end he made an alliance with the senate, with which his former friendly relations had been reëstablished by their common hatred of Cæsar.

Cæsar had laid plans to run for the consulship a second time for the year 48 B.C. He could easily do this, for his term as governor would expire in 49 B.C. The senate, wishing to prevent this, ordered him to disband his army before the regular close of his official term. They knew that if they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they could crush him.

This was the most critical time in Cæsar's career, and one that clearly shows his decision and courage. Instead of complying with the senate's demand he promptly gathered his devoted men and descended on Rome.

Pompey and the senatorial forces were panic-stricken and fled to Brundisium, whence they sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. In sixty days Cæsar made himself master of Italy, and, before autumn, had put down all opposition in Spain, where Pompey had numerous adherents and an armed force. Soon thereafter he followed Pompey across the sea, and completely crushed him in a battle near Pharsalia, in Thessaly, on August 9, 48 B.C. Pompey fled to Egypt, and there lost his life by assassination. The remnants of the Pompeian forces were conquered in two battles, one at Thapsus, in Africa, and the other at Munda, in Spain.

9. Cæsar, the Dictator

On his return to Rome Cæsar was master of the world. He was made imperator, which conferred on him complete military authority, and dictator for life, which gave him all political power. This vesting of dominion in one man was the beginning
of the abolition of the republican form of government, and led to the establishment of the empire under Cæsar’s grandnephew and adopted son, Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus.

Cæsar continued the beneficent constructive work that he had begun in his consulship. He made many reforms in the interest of good government, and began the construction of many remarkable public works.

10. The Conspiracy and Assassination

In spite of all political disturbances the Romans had always been proud of their republican institutions, and from the time that the Tarquins had been expelled they had repudiated the idea of royalty. Now Cæsar’s unlimited power and his readiness in using it began to breed apprehension and suspicion. There were rumors that he wanted to be king in name, as he already was in fact. This resulted in a conspiracy to assassinate him, the leaders of which were Brutus and Cassius. These men and their accomplices, in the name of the republic and liberty, calling themselves in fact liberatōrēs, attacked Cæsar during a session of the senate on the Ides (the fifteenth) of March, 44 B.C., and stabbed him to death with their daggers.

II. Cæsar’s Personal Appearance

No one can be interested in the life and writings of Julius Cæsar without the desire of knowing how this great man looked. Suetonius, the historian, who wrote about one hundred and fifty
years later, gives us this graphic picture. He says that Cæsar was tall, slender, and handsome, with sharp, dark eyes, a sallow complexion, a large nose, refined features, and a thick, sinewy neck. He adds that he was partially bald, and, being sensitive to this deformity, used to draw the hair forward to the crown of his head; and that, on account of this baldness, he greatly appreciated the privilege granted him by the senate of wearing a laurel wreath.

But perhaps our most satisfactory knowledge of his form and features is gained from coins and the portrait busts and statues that have come down to us. Some of the best of these are shown at pages 1, 11, and 170.

12. Cæsar’s Accomplishments and Character

Cæsar’s accomplishments were many and diverse. He was a thorough scholar, well versed in language and literature. He wrote a grammar while in the midst of a campaign; as an orator he might have rivaled even Cicero; his generalship has never been surpassed; in addition, he was without doubt the greatest politician and statesman of Rome. There is no question that he was ambitious, but he exercised his ambition for the good of the state as well as for his own advancement. Strange as it may seem from his life of conflict, he was inclined to peace, and engaged in war only when he deemed it unavoidable.

Cæsar has been accused of cruelty and various vices. Judged by our moral standards he was doubtless far from perfect, but it is certain that he was a man of remarkable self-control. His cruelty must be judged in the light of Roman standards. The Romans, as a people, held human life cheap, and gave little regard to suffering. Further, the thousands who were slain by Cæsar’s orders were barbarians—Gauls and Germans—for whom the Romans entertained no respect whatever. He
certainly exhibited a care and anxious solicitude for the welfare of his own soldiers, and a forbearance with their mistakes that is remarkable. Their love for him and their devotion were touching and complete. His readiness to pardon his former enemies when he was master of the world was more than mere diplomacy; it rather shows a large magnanimity and a fine quality of mercy.

He was fond of athletics, a splendid horseman, and in danger without fear. A peerless leader of men, he is considered by many the foremost character in history.

13. Cæsar as a Writer

Cæsar wrote many books, but only two have survived: the "Commentaries on the Gallic War" and the "Civil War." The former consists of eight books, the latter of three. The last book of the "Commentaries" was not written by Cæsar, but by Hirtius, one of his officers.

The narration in both works is direct, vigorous, and clear; successive events are presented with dramatic and graphic power. His high literary quality is the more remarkable when we remember that he wrote the "Commentaries" hastily as a sort of journal in the midst of his most strenuous campaigns.

14. Conclusion

In the following pages are presented such parts of Cæsar's works as are most entertaining and inspiring to the general reader. The story will speak for itself. The "Gallic War" has a peculiar interest for us because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of
their present political and social peculiarities. The selections from the "Civil War" relate the climax of the long struggle for supremacy between Cæsar and Pompey, which culminated in the battle of Pharsalia, Pompey's flight to Egypt, Cæsar's pursuit, and the stirring events that followed his arrival there.

15. Important Events in Cæsar's Life

100 B.C. Born, July 12th.
83 B.C. Marries Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna.
80–78 B.C. Serves with the army in Asia.
76–75 B.C. Studies oratory at Rhodes.
68 B.C. Quaestor.
65 B.C. Aedile.
63 B.C. Pontifex Maximus.
62 B.C. Praetor.
61 B.C. Propraetor in Spain.
60 B.C. Forms the First Triumvirate.
59 B.C. Consul.
58–49 B.C. Proconsul in Gaul.
50 B.C. The trouble with Pompey begins.
49 B.C. Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begins.
48 B.C. The battle of Pharsalia.
46 B.C. The battle of Thapsus. Declared dictator for ten years.
45 B.C. The battle of Munda. Appointed imperator for life.
II. GAUL, BRITAIN, AND GERMANY

I. GAUL

The province to which Cæsar was assigned as proconsul in 58 B.C. by the agreement of the triumvirate, comprised Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum (see map at the beginning of the book).

Cisalpine Gaul, or Citerior Prœvincia, had been subdued and reduced to order by the Romans long before Cæsar’s time. The inhabitants were fully in accord with the Roman government, and upon them the governor relied largely for his troops and supplies.

Transalpine Gaul, in its narrower sense called also Ulterior Prœvincia or Narbonnese Gaul, had more recently come under Roman dominion. Its inhabitants, while subservient to Rome, still retained in great part their own customs.

Illyricum had been added to Rome in 168 B.C. It was a fertile country and a considerable source of supplies, but required little of Cæsar’s attention.

The unsubdued territory north of Cæsar’s province, between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, was known as Free Gaul (Libera Gallia). It was inhabited by various tribes, wild, warlike, and turbulent, agreeing only in their defiance of Roman rule. Their numbers were great, and the country was savage, dangerous, and unexplored. Although this great territory was not under his authority and was outside of his province, Cæsar undertook its subjugation, a task of formidable proportions.
GALLIC REMAINS

1 and 3, necklaces with amber and coral pendants; 2, military standard; 4, bronze trumpet; 5, iron boss of shield; 6, iron fastening; 7, sword-hilt and belt; 8, iron helmet; 9, iron belt-chain
The Gauls were not all on the same plane of civilization. Those that were nearest to the Province had become somewhat civilized through contact with the traders, but those in the north were still barbarous. Their houses were huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. They raised the coarser grains, but knew little about the cultivation of fruits. They kept large herds, and lived to a great extent upon meat.

They understood the art of weaving, and their chief garments were trousers and bright-colored tunics. The coast tribes were skillful sailors and familiar with the building of ships. The Aquitani and some other tribes worked mines. The Gauls in general used a rough sort of coinage.

Their weapons were pikes and lances, bows and slings, and long, two-edged swords hanging from a metal chain. The chief warriors wore a kind of chain armor. They also
used helmets and shields. On the helmets they often wore great horns and grotesque images of beasts.

2. Britain

Our acquaintance with Britain begins with Cæsar, though Phœnician traders had visited the island centuries before. The people that he found there differed but little from those of northern Gaul. Cæsar gained some victories, but made no lasting conquests in the short time that he remained there. Britain was not invaded again by the Romans for almost a hundred years.

3. Germany

Germany was for the Romans a country wild, unknown, and full of mystery. They found it necessary constantly to protect their boundaries against the German tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar met them in several battles, but his chief object was to drive German invaders from Gallic territory, to defend the Gallic frontier, and to inspire the Germans with a dread of Roman might.

As in the case of the Gauls and the Britons, Cæsar is the first writer to give an account of Germany and the Germans. His description of this country and its inhabitants, in Books IV and VI of the “Commentaries,” is full of interest.
A ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER
III. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS

Caesar, for all his genius, could not have performed his great work of conquest without a well-trained army. His foes were unnumbered; the country was strange, vast, and difficult, with miles of forests and swamps; the perils were great, and the hardships innumerable. Against such odds he had a force of only a few thousand men. To understand the marvelous efficiency of his army we must know how it was organized, the Roman methods of warfare, and the meaning of the frequent military terms that Caesar employs.

1. The Legion

The smallest division of the Roman army was the century, which, as its name indicates, was made up of 100 men; two centuries made a maniple of 200 men; three maniples made a cohort of 600 men; and ten cohorts made a legion of 6000 men. This number, however, is only theoretical, for, as the size of the legion was constantly diminished by disease and battle without being replenished, the actual number of soldiers was much smaller than this. Each of Caesar's legions contained, on an average, about 3600 men, and its divisions were as follows:

1 century (centuria) ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ......
2. The Cavalry

Cæsar’s cavalry (equitātus, equitēs) was made up chiefly of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. It was engaged, for the most part, in skirmishing and scouting, and he relied little upon it in battle. It was divided into ālæ of about 330 horsemen each; these were divided into 10 squadrons (turmae) of 33 horsemen each, and these again into 3 squads (decuriae) of 11 each. The officers of the cavalry were called decurions (decurionēs).

3. The Auxiliaries

By the word auxilia Cæsar means the infantry forces that were enlisted from allied and subject states. A number of these auxilia were enrolled with his regular army. They were the so-called light-armed soldiers (mīlitēs levis armātūrae); some of them were bowmen and slingers, others wore light armor and carried light, round shields (see pp. 61, 64, 65). As they lacked both the training and the trustworthiness of the legions, Cæsar did not greatly depend on them in emergencies.

4. The Artillery

The Romans had no knowledge of gunpowder, siege cannon, or field guns; but the place of modern artillery was supplied by what in general were called tormenta. These were powerful engines for hurling missiles, the propelling force being furnished by the twisting (torqueō, tortus) of rope, sinews, or hair.
They were used in siege operations rather than in ordinary battle. Three kinds are mentioned by Cæsar:

a. The *catapulta* (see pp. 104, 120), which shot great arrows or javelins in a horizontal direction, like a cannon.

b. The *ballista* (see p. xxviii), which hurled huge stones through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells.

c. The *scorpiō* (see p. xxix), which may be described as a mounted crossbow or a small *catapulta*, with the same kind of propelling force. All these *tormenta* were accurate and deadly weapons. The range of the first two was from 1000 to 1500 feet.

5. **The Baggage Train**

*Impedimenta* is the name given to all the baggage of the army except that which was carried by the individual soldiers. It was borne on the backs of horses and mules, or, at times, in wagons (*carri*). Those in charge of this baggage were called *cālōnēs*. 
6. The Officers

a. Imperator. The chief officer was the dux bellī, who after his first victory was called imperātor.

b. Lēgātī. The lēgātī were a body of men of senatorial rank who acted as a board of advisers to the commander. Cæsar had ten of these officers. They were sometimes put in charge of legions, and sometimes sent as ambassadors, according to the orders of the general. This will account for the twofold use of the word in the "Commentaries."

c. Quaestōrēs. The quaestōrēs were officers elected annually by the people. A quaestor attended each imperātor in his province and looked after the pay, clothing, equipment, and the like of the soldiers.

d. Tribūnī. In each legion were six tribūnī militum. Each of them in turn had command of the legion. They were usually young men without experience, some of them from the
nobility, and owed their appointment to family influence. Their inefficiency was such that Caesar transferred their military duties to the légáti, and employed them in an administrative capacity.

e. Centuriónés. The centurió, as the name indicates, was the commander of the century. Thus there were two centurions in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. These were the real leaders of the men and were promoted from the ranks for their fighting qualities. The first centurion of the first cohort was called primus, or primipilus, and was always an officer of unusual ability and prowess.

7. The Standards

Signa (see p. 73) is the general word used for all the standards of the army. That of the legion was a bronze or silver eagle, aquila (see pp. 121, 129). Each cohort had its own standard. That of the light-armed troops was called the vexillum, which was also the name given to the flag of the general at headquarters.
The latter was a large white banner, with the name of the general and of the army in red.

8. The Music

The bucina, or bugle, the shape of which is uncertain, sounded the changes of the night watch and the morning reveille. The tuba, or trumpet, was a straight, deep-toned horn of brass, more than three feet long, which gave the signal for attack or retreat. The same signal was repeated by the cornū, or horn, a circular instrument with a sharp tone. The lituus, a brass trumpet about four feet long with a curved joint at the end, was used by the cavalry.

9. Equipment of the Legionary Soldiers

The legion was made up of picked Roman soldiers, and was Cæsar's main reliance in battle. Romans between the ages of seventeen and forty-six might be drafted for the legion. Its discipline was almost perfect. The period of service of a legionary was twenty years.

a. The Clothing. The uniform of the legionary soldiers consisted of a sleeveless or partly sleeved woolen tunic, reaching nearly to the knee. Over this was a coat of leather, reënforced by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders. This was the lōrica. In cold weather a heavy cloak was worn, fastened over the right shoulder with a clasp. About the waist was a leather belt, bound with metal, and with strips
of protecting metal hanging in front. The covering for the feet was a low boot (see p. 102).

b. The Armor. The defensive armor, besides the loric, consisted of a helmet and shield. The helmet was made of iron or leather strengthened with brass, open in front, and adorned with a white crest (see p. 74). Adornments of this character were what Cæsar calls insignia. The shield was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide. It was made of wood, was slightly curved, with metal around the rim and also in the middle. In the center was a metal knob, the umbō, used both for diverting weapons and for striking blows. The regular name for the shield is scūtum (see p. 128).

c. The Weapons. The weapons of offense were the sword and spear. The sword, gladius, was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was hung from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip. The spear, pilum, used for hurling rather than for thrusting, was six or seven feet long. It consisted of a strong iron shank fitted into a wooden shaft about four feet long. The pilum took the place of the rifle in modern warfare. Its weight was about three pounds, and it could be hurled with deadly effect.

Note. For all matters discussed in section 9, see the illustration of the legionary soldier facing page xxiv.
d. Other Equipment. Besides his arms and armor each soldier carried tools for digging, cooking utensils, including a small handmill for grinding his allowance of grain, a supply of grain for two weeks, *cibāria*, and two stakes, *vālli*, for fortifying the camp. Most of this equipment was carried in a bundle on a forked stick over the shoulder. This personal baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina* (see p. 69).

e. Food; Pay; Discipline. The food was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley, for which the general word *frumentum* was used. Corn was unknown. The allowance of

![PILA](image)

grain for a day was about two pounds. An allotment of about two pecks was made every fifteen days. This regular diet might be varied by foraging or by purchase from the traders who followed the army.

The soldier was paid at the rate of twelve and a half cents a day, about the usual daily wage of laborers at Rome. Deduction was made from this for food and equipment furnished by the state. The discipline was strict. Punishments for insubordination or neglect of duty consisted in degradation from rank, dismissal from service, withholding of pay, extra assignments of labor, reduction of rations, flogging, or even death. There were also various rewards of merit.
10. The Camp

No matter where the army halted for the night or how little was the likelihood of attack, a camp, *castra*, was always made with the utmost care. The site chosen was, if possible, on high ground and near to wood and water. If the nature of the location permitted, the camp was made in the form of a square. A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select a site for the camp and to stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the position of the four gates: the *porta praetoria* facing the enemy, the *porta decumana* in the rear, the *porta principalis dextra* on the right side, and the *porta principalis sinistra* on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street called the *via principalis*. The forward part of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear part to the officers and their
attendants. A vacant space about one hundred feet wide was left all about the inside of the encampment. In an open square near the middle was the tent of the commander (prætòrium).

As soon as the legions arrived on the spot selected, the soldiers began the construction of the camp (see p. 52). A ditch, fossa, usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep was dug all around the square, and the earth therefrom, thrown on the inside, was built into an embankment, agger, from six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top for standing room. On this wall was erected a breastwork, vallum, made with the stakes that the soldiers carried. After the camp was fortified, the quarters of the soldiers were put up, which were leather tents in summer and huts in the winter. Guards were kept constantly at the gates.

II. The March

An ordinary day's march was about fifteen miles. Caesar, however, made many forced marches, magna itinera, of as many as twenty-five miles a day. When an enemy was near, a vanguard, agmen primum, of cavalry and light-armed infantry and scouts preceded. The rear was also protected by a guard, agmen novissimum. The legions regularly marched one behind another, each followed by its own impedimenta; but if an enemy was near, most of the legions in fighting trim, that is, without packs, went ahead in an unbroken line, followed by the combined baggage train (impedimenta), and one or two legions guarded the rear. When the legions were without encumbrance and hence ready for fighting, they were said to be expeditae. See page 45.

I2. The Battle

The usual order of battle was what was called the aciès triplex. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the
three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the
two centuries stood one behind the other. The legions oc-
cupied the center of the battle line, *media aciēs*, and the
auxiliaries and cavalry the wings, *cornua*.

When the hostile army was within range (not more than
one hundred feet), the soldiers hurled their javelins and then
charged with drawn swords. When the first line was weary or
in disorder, it was relieved by the
second while it re-
covered for an-
other charge. The
third line was con-
stantly held in re-
serve and only
brought into ac-
tion when the first
two were hard

pressed, or when it was necessary to repel an attack in the
rear or on the flanks. This general method was varied, of
course, according to circumstances (see p. 31).

13. THE SIEGE

Cæsar often found the towns in Gaul protected by massive
stone walls surrounded by a great moat. The taking of these
towns usually called for a particular mode of warfare in which
the Romans had attained great skill. There were three methods
of taking a town:

a. *Oppugnātiō Repentīna*. If there seemed to be a chance
of success, the town was stormed at once, without siege pre-
parations. This was the *oppugnātiō repentīna*. The *tormenta*
were brought up and trained on the defenders upon the walls.
When these were driven off, the moat was filled with brush
GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS

ABCD, hostile wall; ss, testūdinēs aggestitiae, protecting those leveling the ground; hh, agger; xx, plutei, protecting those working on the agger; efg, line of plutei, manned with archers and slingers; tt, turres, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with tormenta; ro, covered way of vineae, giving approach to archers and slingers; lq, covered way of vineae approaching the point of beginning the agger; f'g', position of plutei covering the beginning of the agger; nn, covered gallery through the agger; nnn, steps and platforms of the several stories.
and earth, and the Romans, locking their shields in a *testūdō* (see the picture below and at page 110), attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

**b. Oppugnātiō.** If this mode seemed impracticable, a regular siege, *oppugnātiō*, was begun. A mound of earth and timber, *agger*, was begun at a distance from the wall nearly out of reach of the missiles of the defenders. This mound was gradually extended in the direction of the wall, its height being constantly increased until it was even with the top of the wall. Connecting galleries ran through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover. Those working on the outside of the *agger* were protected by lines of large standing shields, *pluteī*, which were moved forward as the work advanced. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of arbor-like sheds called *vineae*, extending the length of the *agger*. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers (see pp. 61, 64) and by *tormenta* standing
behind *pluteī*. As a further protection light-armed soldiers were stationed in large movable towers, *turrēs*, which stood on the *agger* or on either side of it, and advanced with it, being increased in height, story by story, as it advanced. When close to the wall, the besiegers were protected by strong sheds of wood called *testūdinēs* or *mūsculī*, instead of by the *pluteī*. When the *agger* reached the moat, this was quickly filled up with brush and wood. The walls of the town were sometimes undermined, or pulled down from the top by means of huge iron hooks called *falcēs mūrālēs*. But the surest engine of destruction was the battering-ram, *ariēs*, a huge swinging beam from sixty to one hundred feet long, with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram’s head. This, swung under a *vīnea*, or in the lowest story of a *turris*, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. Sometimes the top of the wall was gained by means of the *turris* without the *agger*.

c. *Obsidiō.* When all other means were unavailing, the town was invested on every side (*obsidiō*) and the inhabitants were starved into submission.
14. THE SHIPS

Two kinds of ships were used by Caeser:

a. The war galleys, nāvēs longae (see pp. 92, 94, 117). These were the vessels used in naval battles, and were made long, low, and narrow. They were armed at the prow with a sharp beak (röstrum) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy’s ships, and were propelled by both sails and oars. The sails were one or two in number, and the oars were arranged in two or three rows, or banks. When these vessels were under full sail and oarage, they could nearly equal a modern steamship in speed.

b. The freight and transport vessels, nāvēs onerāriae (see p. 117). These were made shorter, broader, and deeper than the war galleys, and could thus carry heavier burdens and more successfully weather a heavy sea.
The voyage of the Argonauts is one of the most famous of Greek stories. Pelias had expelled his brother Aeson from his kingdom in Thessaly, and had attempted to take the life of Jason, the son of Aeon. Jason, however, escaped, and grew up to manhood in another country. At last he returned to Thessaly; and Pelias, fearing that he might attempt to recover the kingdom, sent him to fetch the Golden Fleece from Colchis, supposing this to be an impossible feat.

Jason, with a band of heroes, started in the ship Argo (called after Argus, its builder), and after many adventures reached Colchis. Here Aetes, king of Colchis, who was unwilling to give up the Fleece, set Jason to perform what seemed an impossible task, namely, to plow a field with certain fire-breathing oxen, and then to sow it with dragon's teeth. Medea, the daughter of the king, however, assisted Jason by her skill in magic, first to perform the task appointed, and then to procure the Fleece. Medea then fled with Jason, and to delay the pursuit of her father, sacrificed her brother Absyrtus.

After reaching Thessaly, Medea caused the death of Pelias, and was, with her husband, expelled from the country. They removed to Corinth; and here Medea, becoming jealous of Glaucce, daughter of Creon, caused her death by means of a poisoned robe. After this Medea was carried off in a chariot sent by the sun god, and Jason was soon afterwards accidentally killed.

The wicked uncle

FRANT őlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aeōn, alter Peliās appellātus est. Ex his Aeōn rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgni cupiditāte adductus, nōn modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Iāsonem, Aesonis filium, interficere. Quidam tamen ex amīcis Aesonis, ubi sententiam

A careless shoestring


The Golden Fleece

Constituit igitur Peliās Iāsonī negotium dare ut hoc vellere potirētur: cum enim res esset magni periculi, spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse: Iāsonem igitur ad se arcessivit, et quid fieri vellet dēmōnstrāvit. Iāson autem, etsi bene intel·legēbat rem esse difficīllīmam, negotium libenter suscepit.

The building of the good ship Argo

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Iāsōn sōlus proficiscī; dimisit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, qui causam itineris docērent et diem certam conveniendi dicerent. Intereā, postquam omnia quae sunt ūsui ad armandās nāvēs comportāri iussit, negotium dedit Argō cūdam, qui summam scientiam rērum nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In his rēbus circiter decem diēs consumpti sunt; Argus enim, qui operī praerat, tantam diligentiam adhibēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multīōinem hominum trānsportandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quibus in nostrō mari ūtī cōnsuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta ē rōbore facta est.

The anchor is weighed

Intereā ea diēs adpetēbat quam Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēdixerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multi, quōs aut rei novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat, undique conveniēbant. In
hoc numerō Herculem ferunt fuisse et Orpheum, citharoe-
dum praecārissimum, et Thèseum et Castorem et multōs
aliōs, quōrum nōmina nōtissima sunt. Ex his Iāsōn, quōs
arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda pericula parātissimōs esse,
eōs ad numerum quinquāgintā dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adiūnxit;
tum paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia
comparāret, nāvem dēdūxīt, et tempestātem ad nāvigandum
idōneam nactus magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.

A fatal mistake

Non multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellāti sunt qui
in istā nāvī vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam nōmine Cyzicum
attigérunt, et ē nāvī égressi ā rége illius regiōnis hospitiō
exceptī sunt. Paucās hōrās ibi commorātī ad sōlis occāsum
rūrsus solvērunt; at, postquam paucā milia passuum prōgressī
sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coūrta est ut cursum tenēre nōn
possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae unde nūper profectī
erant magnō cum periculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum
nox esset obscūra, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et nāvem
inimicam vēnisse arbitrātī arma rapuērunt, et eōs ēgredi
probēbant. Ācriter in lítore pugnātum est, et rēx ipse,
quī cum aliōs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Mox
tamen, cum iam dilūcēsceret, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre, et
arma abīēcērunt; Argonautae autem, cum vidērent régem
occīsum esse, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

The loss of Hylas

Postrīdiē eius diēī Iāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam
esse arbitrātus (summa enim tranquillitās iam cōnsecūta
erat), ancorās sustulit, et pauca milia passuum prōgressus
ante noctem Mysiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in anco-
rīs exspectāvit; ā nautīs enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam
THE ARGONAUTS

quam secum habērent iam dēficere: quam ob causam quidam ex Argonautis in terram ēgressī aquam quaerē-bant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quidam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; quī, dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus pau-lum sēcesserat. Nymphe autem, quae fontem colēbant, cum 5 iuvenem vidissent, eī persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum ma-nēret; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, puerum vi abstulērunt.

Comitēs eīus, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre affectī diū frūstrā quaerēbant; Herculēs autem 10 et Polyphēmus, qui vēstigia puerī longius secūti erant, ubi tandem ad litus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

Dining made difficult


The Harpies beaten

Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant cum Argonautae nāvem adpulērunt. Phineus autem, simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs finēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvisus est. Sciēbat
enim quantam opinionem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quin sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem misit, qui Iāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phineus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in periculō suae rēs essent, et prōmisit sē magna praemia datūrum esse si illī remedium repperissent. Argonautae negotium libenter suscepērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna adposita est, Harpyiae cēnāculum intrāvērunt, et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae primum gladiīs volūcio petierunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse, Zētēs et Calais, qui ālīs in strīctī sunt, in āera sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent Harpyiae, rei novitāte perterritae statim aufūgērunt, neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

The Symplegades

libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō periculō ēreptī essent; scīebant enim nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem tam fēliciter ēvēnisse.

_A heavy task_

Brevī intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in finibus Colchōrum erat. Eō cum nāvem 5 adpulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētēn sē contulērunt, et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, īrā commōtus est, et diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod scīebat Iāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negotiōm suscēpisse, mútātā sententiā prōmisit sē vellus trāditūrum, si Iāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et cum Iāsōn dixisset sē ad omnia pericula subeunda parātum esse, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Prīnum iungendi erant duo taurī speciē horribili, 15 qui flammās ex Ēre ēdēbant; tum, his iūnctis, ager quīdam arandus erat, et dentēs draconis serendi. Hīs auditīs, Iāsōn, etsi rem esse summi periculi intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occasīōnem reī bene gerendae āmitteret, negotiōm suscēpīt.

_The magic ointment_

At Mēdēa, rēgis filia, Iāsonem adamāvit, et ubi audīvīt 20 eum tantum periculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Iāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat) hoc cōnsilium iniit. Mediā nocte clam ex urbe ēvāsit; et postquam in montēs finitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum sūcō expressō unguentum parāvit; quod vi suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōnfirmāret. Hōc factō Iāsoni unguentum dedit: praecēpit autem ut eō diē quō istī labōrēs cōnsiciendi
essent corpus suum et arma māne oblineret. Ἰάσων, etsi paene omnibus magnitūdine et viribus corporis antecellēbat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei mili-tāris cōnstiterat), cēnsēbat tamen hoc cōnsilium nōn neglegendum esse.

_Sowing the dragon's teeth_


_A strange crop_

Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus cōnfecerat: imperā-verat enim ei Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gig-nerentur sōlus interficeret. Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Iāsōn lassitūdine exanimātus quiētī sē trā-didit, dum virī isti gignerentur. Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; sub vesperum tamen ē somnō subitō excitātus rem ita ēve-nisse ut praedictum esset cognōvit: nam in omnibus agri partibus virī ingenti magnitūdine corporis, gladiis galeīisque armāti, mirum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Iāsōn cōnsilium quod dedisset Mēdēa nōn ommittendum esse putābat; saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim praecēperat Mēdēa)
in mediōs virōs coniēcit. Illi undique ad locum concurrent, et cum quīisque sibi id saxum (nesciō cūr) habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictis gladiis, inter sē pugnāre coeperunt, et cum hoc modo plurimi occisi essent, reliqui volneribus cōnfecti à Iāsone nūllo negotiō interfecti sunt.

**Flight of Medea**

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfécisse, irā graviter commotus est: intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium ei tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō fore periculō sī in rēgiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit. Omnibus igitur rēbus ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, insciente patre, cum frātre Absyrōē ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimis obsecrāvit eum nē in tantō discrimine mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuisset. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per eius auxilium ē magnō periculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam causam veniendī audīvit, hortātus est nē patris īram timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam primum eam in nāve suā āvectūrum.

**The seizure of the Fleece**

Postridiē eius diēī Iāsōn cum sociis suis ortā lūce nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem idōneam nactī ad eum locum rēmis contendērunt quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrāvit. Eō cum vēnissent, Iāsōn in terram ēgressus est, et sociis ad mare relictis, qui praesidiō nāvī essent, ipse cum Mēdēa in silvās contendit. Pauca milia passuum per silvam prōgressus vellus quōd quae rēbat ex arbore suspēnsum vidit. Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis: nōn modo
enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdam speciē terribili arborem custōdiēbat. At Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvīmus, medicīnae summam scientiam habuit, rānum quem ex arbore proximā dēripuerat 5 venēnō infēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum adpropinquāvit, et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertīs adventum exspectābat, venēnō sparsit: deinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus dormit, Iāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum Mēdēa quam celer-rimē pedem rettulit.

Back to the Argo

10 Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, qui ad mare relictī erant, animō anxiō rēditum Iāsonīs exspectābant: intellegē-bant enim id nēgotiōn summī esse periculi. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā exspectāvērunt, dē eius salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus acci-


Pursued by the angry father

His rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cō-n
25 scenderunt, et sublātīs ancorīs primā vigilīā solvērunt: neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, qui iam ante inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit filiam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse,
THE ARGONAUTS

sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hoc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam quam celerrime déduci iussit, et militibus impositis fugientēs insecutūs est. Argonautae, qui sciēbant rem in discrimine esse, omnibus viribus rēmis contendēbant; cum tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingenti esset magnitūdine, nōn eādem celeritāte quā Colchī prōgressī poterant. Quae cum īta essent, minimum āfuit quīn ā Colchī sequentibus caperentur, neque enim longius intererat quam quō tēulum adici posset. At Mēdēa, cum vidisset quō in locō rēs essent, paene omni spē dēpositā infandum hoc cōnsilium cēpit.

A fearful expedient

Erat in nāve Argonautārum filius quīdam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvīmus, Mēdēa ex urbe fugiēns sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa cōnstituit interficere, eō cōnsiliō, ut membris eius in mare coniectis cursum Colchōrum impedīret; sciēbat enim Aeētēn, cum membra filī vidisset, nōn longius prōsecūtūrum esse. Neque opiniō eam fēfellīt; omnia enim īta évēnērunt ut spērāverat. Aeētēs, ubi prīnum membra vidit, ad ea conligēnda nāvem dētinērī iussit; dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandi labōre, mox (quod necesse fuit) ex cōnspectū hostium remōtī sunt, neque prius fugere déstīrunt quam ad flūmen Ėridanum pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus si longius prōgressūs esset, animō dēmissō domum revertīt, ut fili corpus ad sepulcrām daret.

The bargain with Pelias

Tandem post multa pericula Iāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde ēlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus ad rēgem Peliam (qui rēgnūm adhūc obtinēbat) statim sē contulit, et vellere aureō mōnstrātō ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnūm
sibi tráderētur: Peliās enim pollicitus erat, si Iāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē rēgnum ei trāditūrum. Postquam Iāsōn quid fieri vellet ostendit, Peliās primum nihil respondit, sed diū in eādem tristitīā tacitus permānsit; deinde ita locūtus est:

5 "Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse cōnfectum, neque dubium est quīn suprēmus meus diēs adsit. Liceat igitur mihi, dum vivam, hoc rēgnum obtinēre; tum, cum ego ē vitā dicesserō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus Iāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāssēt.

Boiled mutton


A dangerous experiment

25 Dum filiae rēgis hoc mīrāculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdēa ita locūta est: "Vidētis quantum valeat medicīna. Vōs igitur, si vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscēntiam redūcere, id quod fēci ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in vās
conicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbō.” His auditīs, filiae rēgis cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omissendum putāvērunt: patrem igitur Peliām necāvērunt et membra eius in vās aēneum conićērunt; nihil enim dubitābant quin hoc maximē ei prōfutūrum esset. At rēs omninō aliter ēvēnīt ac spērāverant: Mēdēa enim nōn eādem herbās dedit quibus ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque, postquam diū frūstrā exspectāvērunt, patrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum coniūge suō rēgnum accep-tūram esse: at civēs, cum intellegērent quō modō Pelīās periisset, tantum scelus aegrē tulērunt: itaque Iāsone et Mēdēā ē rēgnō expulsis, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

A fatal gift


Flight of Medea, and the death of Jason

Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post paulum summō cruciātū ad-fecta ē vitā excessit. His rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa furōre atque
amentiā impulsa filiōs suōs necāvit: tum magnum sibi fore periculum arbitrāta sī diūtius ibi manēret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstituit. Hōc cōnstitūtō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō periculō auxilium sībi ferret. Sōl autem ās precibus com-
5 mōtus currum quendam mīsit, cui dracōnēs ālīs iānctī iūnctī erant. Medēa nōn omittendam tantam occāsionem arbitrāta currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera vecta incolūmis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit. Iāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim (sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum) sub umbrā nāvis suae, quae in lītus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēctā steterat, in eam partem ubi Iāsōn iacēbat subītō dēlāpsa virum infēli-
cem oppressit.
CORNELIUS NEPOS

THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL

Hannibal as a general


His hatred of the Romans

Hic autem velut hērēditāte relictum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sic cōnservāvit ut prius animam quam id dēposuerit, quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et alienārum opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānis.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī ut ārubrō mari arma cōnātus sit īnferre Itāliae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmāni, qui dē eius voluntāte explōrārent darentque operam cōnsiliis clandestinis ut Hannibalem in suspiciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptus alia atque anteā sentiret, neque id frustrā fēcissent,
idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōnsiliis ségregāri vidisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem, eique cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāset, hoc adiūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in HISPānīam imperātor proficiscēns Karthāgīne, Iovi optimō maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae divina rēs dum cōnficiēbātur, quaesivit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficiscī. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepīsem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'si mihi fidem quam postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre instituerat, eamque cēteris remōtīs tenentem iūrāre iussit numquam mē in amicitīā cum Rōmānis fore. Id ego iūs iūrandum patrī datum ēsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvi ut nēmini dubium esse dēbeat quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus. Quā rē, si quid amicē dē Rōmānis cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris si mē cēlāris; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis si nōn mē in eō principem posueris."

*He takes Saguntum, and marches to Italy*

3. Hāc igitur quā diximus aetāte cum patre in HISPānīam profectus est; cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, equitātūi omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō exercitus summam imperi ad eum dētulit. Id Karthāginem dēlātum públicē comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal minor quīnque et vigintī annīs nātus imperātor factus proximō triennīō omnēs gentēs Hispānīae bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederātam civitātem, vi expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ēnum in Áfricam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in HISPānīā reliquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pyrēnæum trānsīt. Quācumque *iter*
CORNELIUS NEPOS

fécit, cum omnibus incolis cōnflixit; nēminem nisi victum
dimīsit. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quae Italiam ab Galliā
sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum
praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē sal-
tus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnāntēs prohibēre trānsitū
concidit, loca patefēcit, itinera mūniit, effēcit ut eā elephantus
ōrnātus īre posset quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat
rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

He defeats the Romans, and advances into Apulia

4. Cōnflexerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scipio
ē cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hoc eōdēm Clastidi apud
Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dimittit. Tertiō
idem Scipio cum conlēgā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam adver-
sus eum vēnit. Cum iis manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōfligāvit.
Inde per Ligurēs Apennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam.
15 Hōc itinere adeō grāvī morbō adficitur oculōrum ut posteā
numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum
etiamtum premerētur lecticāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōn-
sulem apud Trasimēnum cum exercitū insidiis circumven-
tum occidit, neque multō post C. Centēniō praetōrem cum
20 dēlēctā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpuliām pervēnit.
Ibi obviam eī vēnērunt duo cōnsulēs, C. Terentius et
L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō proelīō fugāvit,
Paulum cōnsulem occidit et aliquot praetereā cōnsulārēs,
in iis Cn. Serviliō Geminum, qui superiōre annō fuerat
25 cōnsul.

He outwits Quintus Fabius Maximus, and wins other battles

5. Hāc pugnā pugnātā Rōmam profectus est nūllō re-
sistente. In propinquis urbi montibus morātus est. Cum
aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverterētur,

_Hannibal is recalled to Africa, and is defeated by Scipio_

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēnsum revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipionem, filium eius Scipionis quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertīō apud Trebian fugārat. Cum hōc exhaustis iam patriae facultātibus cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior posteā congrederētur. In conloquium convēnit: condicionēs non convēnērunt. Post id factum paucīs diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōnflixit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et
duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā
circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, qui
simul cum eō ex aciē exsesserant, insidiāti sunt ei; quōs
nōn sōlum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmēti
reliquōs ē fugā conlēgit; novis dilēctibus paucis diebus
multōs contrāxit.

Peace between Rome and Carthage; Hannibal flees to Syria

7. Cum in adparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Karthā-
giniēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō
sētius exercitū postea praeſuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit īisque
ad P. Sulpicium C. Aurelium cōnsulēs. Hīs enim magis-
trātibus lēgātī Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt quī senātūi
populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent quod cum īs pācem
fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā ēōs dōnārent simul-
que peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs essent captivīque

Hannibal aids Antiochus

8. At Hannibal annō tertīō postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minucīō cōnsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in finibus Cyrēnaeōrum, sī forte Karthāgīnīēnsēs ad bellum indūcere posset Antiochī spē fidūciāque, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam profiсisсerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excīvit. Id ubi Pōeni rescīvērunt, Māgōnem eādem quā frātrem absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illī dēspērātīs rēbus cum solvisserant nāvēs ac vēla ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnīt. Dē
Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est: namque alii naufragiō, alii ā servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquērunt. Antiochus autem, sī tam in gerendō bellō cōn-
siliis eius pārēre voluisset quam in suscipiendō instituerat, pro-
pius Tiberi quam Thermopylīs dē
summā imperi di-
micāsset. Quem etsī multa stultē
cōnāri vidēbat, tamen nūlla déseruit in rē. Praefuit paucis
nāvibus, quās ex Syrīā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iisque
15 adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphyliō mari cōnflixit.
In quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum suī superārentur,
ipse quō cornū rem gessit fuit superior.

Hannibal goes to Crete

9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō
accidisset sī sui fēcisset potestātem, Crētam ad Gortỵniōs
vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōnferret cōnsiderāret. Vidit autem
vir omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore periculō, nisi
quid prōvidisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; magnam
enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exisse
fāمام. Itaque capit tāle cōnsilium. Amphorās complū-
rēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās
praesentibus principibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simu-
lāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errō-
rem inductis, statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omni
suā pecūniā complet eāsque in prōpatulō domī abicit.
Gortýnii templum magnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēteris quam ab Hannibale, nē ille inscientibus iīs tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

Hannibal in Pontus


He helps Prusias to defeat Eumenes

11. Tāli cohortātiōne militum factā classis ab utrisque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōnstitūtā, priusquam signum pugnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis quō
CORNELIUS NEPOS

locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulam-que ostendēns sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset scriptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāve dēclārātā suīs, eōdem unde erat egressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā epistulā nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad inridendum eum pertinērent. Cuius reī etsī causam mirābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit.


Hannibal is demanded by the Romans; he takes poison

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnectium Flāmininum cōnsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex īs ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō dīc Flāmininus senātui dētulit. Patrēs cōnscriptī, quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, lēgātōs in
Bithyniam misérunt, in iis Flāmininum, qui ab rēge peterent nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. His Prūsiās negāre ausnō nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent quod adversus iūs hospitiī esset; ipsī, si possent, comprehendenter: locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sic aedificārāt ut in omnibus partibus aedifici exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eīs circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciēns Hannibali dīxit plūrés praeter cōnsuētūdinēm armātōs adpārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnēs forēs aedificī circumíret ac properē sībī nūntiāret num eōdem modo undique obsiderētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāsset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendīsset, sēnīt id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sībī diūtius vitam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtūm venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsīt.

The date of Hannibal’s death. His writings

gesta multi memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex his duo quī cum eō in castris fuērunt simulque vixērunt quam diū fortūna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.

Sed nōs tempus est huius libri facere finem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius, conlātis utrorumque factis, qui viri praeferendi sint possit iūdicāri.
CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR
CAESAR IN GAUL

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

I. HIS EARLY YEARS


Deinde Caesar in urbem Milētum properāvit classemque contrāxit. Hāc classe praedōnēs persecūtus est et superāvit.

NOTE. The syntax used in this biographical sketch is confined to the constructions presented during the first year of the study of Latin. The constructions named below each section are illustrated in the accompanying text, and should be reviewed by a study of the references to the grammar (see pp. 342 ff.).

The special vocabularies contain the words not found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.
Agreement of Appositives, § 58
Dative of Indirect Object, § 82
Dative with Adjectives, § 90
Accusative of Direct Object, § 91
Accusative of Place Whith, § 97
Ablative of Agent, § 104

expugnātīō, -ōnis, f. a storming
Mīlētus, -ī, f. Mile'tus
ōrātorius, -a, -um, adj., of oratory
praedō, -ōnis, m., robber, pirate
Rhodus, -ī, f., Rhodes
sextus, -a, -um, adj., sixth

II. HIS POLITICAL CAREER

Caesar creātus quaestor Hispāniam ulteriōrem obtinuit. Quō profectus cum Alpēs trānsierat, parvus quidam vicus cōnspectus est. Tum comitēs inter sē disputābant et rogābant, "Num etiam illic est locus glōriae?" "Mālō," respondit Caesar, "ibi primus esse quam Rōmae secundus."


III. THE CONQUEST OF GAUL


Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. a
Prepositions, §§ 148, 149, 150. a
Partitive Genitive, § 76

abeō, -ire, -ī, -itūrus, go away
fābula, -ae, f. story

Accusative of Extent of Space, § 96
Ablative of Time within Which, § 119
Pronouns idem, ipse, §§ 25, 136

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, relate
ōlim, adv. once upon a time, once

IV. CĀESAR CROSSES THE RUBICON

Interea Crassus apud Parthōs interfactus erat. Post mortem Iūliae, Caesaris filiae quae Pompēiō nūpta erat, aemulātiō inter socerum et generum ēripit; nam nec Pom-peius parem nec Caesar superiōrem ferre poterat. Caesar adhūc in Galliā dētīnēbātur, neque Rōmam redīre volēbat ut cōnsulātum alterum peteret. Itaque ad senātum scripsit
sē petere absentem velle. Id senātus, ab amīcis Pompēi permōtus, negāvit. Hanc iniūriam ut vindīcāret, Cæsar in Italiam rediit.

Cæsar ad bellum gerendum parātus, cum exercitū Rubi-
cōnem flūmen, prōvinciae suae finem, trānsiit. Hoc ad flūmen paulum cōnstitit, et cōgitāns quantum rem inciperet, "Etiam nunc," inquit, "revertī possumus; quod si hoc

parvum flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armīs agi necesse erit." Postrēmō autem cum verbīs "Iacta est ālea" exercitum trādūcī iussit. Plūrimīs urbibus occupātīs, Brundisium contendit, quō Pompeius cōnsulēsque cōnūgerant.

Possessive Genitive, § 73
Accusative as Subject of Infinitive, § 92
Ablative Absolute, § 117
Demonstrative Pronouns hic, ille, § 134. a

Clauses of Purpose, § 174
Indirect Discourse, §§ 202–204, 92, 204. a
Tenses of the Infinitive, Present; Perfect, § 166. a, b
Indirect Questions, § 201
THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

V. THE WARS IN THESSALY, PONTUS, AND AFRICA

Eos, cum in Epirum fugissent, Brundisii Caesar secutus est. Dyrrachi complures dies moratus est, dum copiae quas subsequi iusserat pervenirent. Dum hic moratur, summae audaciae facinus magnum fecit; nam castris noctu egreditur et clam naviculam conscendit. Quamquam turbida tempestas coorta est, in mare proetinus derigi navigium iubet. Gubernatorem trepidant, "Cur times?" inquit, "Caesarem vehis"; neque prius vento et fluctibus cessit quam paene obruit est.


Agreement of Appositives, § 58
Genitive of Description, § 77
Dative with Compounds, § 84

Aegyptus, -i, f. Egypt
Dyrrachium, Dyrrachi, n. Dyrrachium (in Epirus)

Parthi, -orum, m. the Parthians
(a people living near the Caspian Sea)
Rubicó, -onis, m. the Rubicon (a river in northern Italy)
vindicó, -áre, -ávi, -átus, avenge

quamquam, conj. although
VI. CAESAR IN SPAIN. TRIUMPHANT RETURN TO ROME

VII. THE REFORMS OF CÆSAR. HIS AMBITIONS


Ablative of Separation, § 101
Sequence of Tenses, §§ 160–162
Clauses of Result introduced by ut or ut nōn, § 179

adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctūrus, rise
corrīgō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, correct
diadēma, -atis, n., royal crown
dictātor, -ōris, m., dictator (Roman magistrate, appointed for six months in emergencies)

Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177
Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187.1

fāstī, -ōrum, m. pl., the calendar
Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., of March
merx, mercis, f., merchandise
peregrīnus, -a, -um, adj., foreign
repetundae, -ārum, f. pl., extortion
sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessūrus, sit
senātōrius, -a, -um, adj., senatorial
VIII. THE IDES OF MARCH


Personal Pronouns, §§ 129, 130
Substantive Clauses of Purpose, § 183
Causal Clauses introduced by cum, § 189

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl., conspirators
fātālis, -e, adj., fated, hence dangerous
haruspex, -īcis, m. a soothsayer
iste, -a, -ud, dem. adj. and pron. this, that (referring to the person addressed)

Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing, § 184
Temporal Clauses introduced by cum, § 194. 2
Indefinite Pronouns, § 144

prōsiliō, -īre,-ui, ——, leap forward
pugiō, -ōnis, m., short dagger, poniard
toga, -ae, f., toga (the outer garment of the Romans)
umerus, -i, m. the upper arm, the shoulder
visus, -ūs, m. an apparition, vision
The Assassination of Caesar, 44 B.C.

From the painting by C. Roche Grosse
IX. THE CHARACTER OF CAESAR

Caesar, si potestās dēligēndī sibi data esset, tālem mortem optāvisset; nam prīdiē quam occissus est, in sermōne cum quibusdam amicīs conlātō, dīxit repentinam mortem esse suā quidem sententiā commodissimam.


Predicate Genitive, § 73. a
Two Accusatives, Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative, with Verbs of Making, Choosing, etc., § 94
asper, -era, -erum, adj., harsh, savage, cruel, fierce
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero (the great orator)
clēmēns, -entis, adj., mild, merciful
Ablative of Measure of Difference, § 114
Ablative of Respect, § 115
Concessive Clauses with cum, § 192
dēprehendō, -ere, -hendidī, -hēnsus, seize, discover
laudātiō, -ōnis, f., praise, eulogy
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, read
optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, desire, pray for

X. PERSONAL APPEARANCE OF CAESAR

Caesar trāditur fuisse excelsā statūrā, ōre plēnō, nigris oculis, capite calvō. Quam calvītī dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe inimicīs iōcō erat, molestē ferēbat. Quā rē iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae, quod eī senātus dēcrēverat, libenter recēpit

Ablative of Description or Quality, § 116
Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177

amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, love
calvītium, calvītī, n., baldness
calvus, -a, -um, adj., bald
dēfōrmītās, -ātīs, f., disfigurement
equītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ride (on horseback)
ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, upset, overthrow
excelsus, -a, -um, adj., tall, high
gestō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wear

Gerund (an active verbal noun), § 223. 1–4
Gerundive (a passive verbal adjective), § 224. a–d

iocus, -ī, m., jest
laurea, -ae, f., laurel wreath
niger, -gra, -grum, adj., black, dark
nō, nāre, nāvi, ——, swim
persaepe, adv., very often
sōbrius, -a, -um, adj., sober, in one’s senses
ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make use of
CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR IMPERATOR
THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

CAESAR’S FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII

Gaul, its divisions and nations

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres; quorum
unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui
ipsorum linguæ Celtæ, nostræ Galli appellantur.
Hi omnès linguæ, institutæs, légibus inter sé differunt.
Gallös ab Aquitânis Garumna flūmen, à Belgis Matrona et 5
Séquana dividit.

The characters of the nations

Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā
cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, mini-
mēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae
ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique 10
sunt Germānīs qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum con-
tinenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque
reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidīānīs
proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs
prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.
The boundaries of each

Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtineere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodanō; continetur Garumnā flumine, Oceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Séquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnes. Belgae ab extrēmis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem flūminis Rhēni, spectant in septentriōnum et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia a Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeos montēs et eam partem Oceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnes.

Orgetorix, the Helvetian, plans to invade Gaul


The Helvetii are persuaded because they need more territory

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique locī nāturā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.

His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus faciē finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandi cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō gloriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem milia passuum ccxl, in lātitūdinem clxxx patēbant.
CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 58 B.C.
THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE

(See chapters 6-8)
They decide on the preparations that must be made

3. His rebus adduci et auctóritáte Orgetorígis permóti consitutuérunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinérunt comparáre: iúmentórum et carrórum quam maximum numerum cómerere, séméntés quam maximás facere, ut in itinere cópia frúmenti suppeteret, cum proximís civitátíbus pácem et amicitiam confirmáre. Ad eás rés cónficiendás biennium sibi satis esse duxérunt; in tertium annum profectiónem légé cónfirmant.

Orgetorix is placed in charge, but conspires with neighboring chiefs to seize the sovereignty

Ad eás rés cónficiendás Orgetoríx dux déligitur. Is légationem ad civitátes suscépit. In eó itinere persuádet Cásticó, Catamantáloedís filíó, Séquanó, cuíus pater régnun in Séquanís multós annós obtínerat et á senátú populí Rómáni amicus appellátus erat, ut régnun in civitáte suá occupáret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorígi Haeduó, frárí Divíciáci, qui eó tempore principá tum in civitáte obtínébat ac maximé plébí acceptus erat, ut idem cónárétur persuádet, eique filiam suam in matrimónium dat.

Perfacile factú esse illis probat cónāta perficere, proptrræa quod ipse suae civitátis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quin tótius Galliae plúrimum Helvētii possent; sē suis cópiis suqué exercítu illis rēgna conciliátūrum cón firmat. Hác orátione adducti inter sē fidem et iús iúrandum dant, et rēgnō occupató per trés potentissimós ac firmissimós populós tótius Galliae sēsē potīri posse spérant.

Orgetoríx is brought to trial, but escapes

4. Ea rés est Helvētiis per indicíum ēnūntiáta. Mōribus suis Orgetorígem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgérunt. Dam- nātum poenam sequi oportébat ut igni cremárétur.
Dieē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omniprem suam familiam, ad hominem milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs né causam 5 diceret sē ēripuit.

His death

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētūr, multītūdinemque homīnum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētii arbitrantur, quīn ipse sībī mortem cōnsciverit.

The Helvetii burn their towns and begin their journey

5. Post eīus mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōn-
stituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suīs exceant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida suā omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quādringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod 15 ēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditionis spē
sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sībī quemque domō efferre iubent.

They are joined by other tribes

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, uti eōdem ēūi cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vicisque exūstīs, ūnā cum 20 eīs proficiscantur; Bōīosque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant
et in agrum Nóricum trānsierant Nóreiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sībī adsciscunt.

The two possible routes are described

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō
exīre possent: ūnum per Séquanōs, angustum et difficile, 25 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singuli carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut
facile perpauci prohibère possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod

inter ūnes Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllis locīs vado trānsitur.

They decide to go through the Province

Cæsar takes measures to stop them

7. Cæsari cum id núntiátum esset eös per prōvinciam nos-tram iter facere cōnāri, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci, et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest 5 militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

They send an embassy to Cæsar to ask his permission

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētii certiōrés factī sunt, lēgā-tōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātīs, cuīus lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, quī 10 dicerent 'sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficīo iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.'

Cæsar puts them off to gain time

Cæsar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occi-sum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum 15 missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab inīriā et maleficīo existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum 20 sūmptūrum: si quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

Meanwhile he fortifies the bank of the Rhone to prevent their crossing

8. Interea eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, qui finēs Sēquanōrum
ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum undeviginti mūrum, in altitudinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii attempt to cross, but are driven back

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgāti ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus īunctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, allī vadīs Rhodānī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn ēnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnāti, operis mūnitione et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi, hoc cōnātū dēstīrērunt.

Persuaded by Dumnorix, a Hāeduan chief, the Sequani permit the Helvetii to pass through their territory

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgēm Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātīā et largītione apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgni adductus novis rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque uti inter sēsē dent perficīt: Sēquani, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibēant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant. 25
Caesar deems this movement also a danger to the Province

10. Caesar renuntiatur Helvætiis esse in animo per agrum Séquanorum et Haeduorum iter in Santonum finés facere, qui nón longē a Tolosátium finibus absunt, quae cívitās est in prōvincia. Id si fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum pe-

riculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmāni inimīcōs, locis patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret.

He adds to his forces and marches against the Helvetii

Ob eās causās ei mūnītiōni quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs conscribit, et trēs quae circūm Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernīs ēducit, et, quā proximum iter in ulterioriōrem Galliām per Alpēs erat, cum his quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

He meets with resistance, but crosses the Rhone with his army

Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāioceli et Caturigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnāntur. Complūrībus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hi sunt extrā prōvinciām trāns Rhōdanum prīmi.

The Helvetii ravage the country of the Haedui

11. Helvētii iam per angustiās et finēs Séquanōrum suās cōpiās trādu×erant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eis défendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt
rogatun auxilium: 'Ita se omni tempore de populō Rō-
mānō meritos esse ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostrī
agri vāstāri, liberi in servitūtem abduci, oppida expugnāri
non debuerint.'

The Haedui and their neighbors ask Caesar for help

Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōnsanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certīorem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessionēisque ha-
bēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adduc-
tus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus for-
tūnis sociōrum cōnsūmptis, in Santonōs Helvētii pervenīrent.

Three cantons of the Helvetii cross the Saône

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sē-
quanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibili lēnitāte ita ut ocu-
līs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicāri nōn possit. Id Helvētii ratibus ac lintribus iūncitis trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam fērē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigilīā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Caesar attacks and destroys the Tigurini, who had not yet crossed

Eōs impeditōs et inopīnantēs adgressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in pro-
xmlns silvās abdīdērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est.
And thus avenges a former disgraceful defeat

Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive casu sive consilio deorum immortaliun, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Römano intulerat, ea princeps poenás persolvit. Quä in re Caesar non solum publicás sed etiam privátas iniuriás ultus est; quod eius soceri L. Pisónis avum, L. Pisónem légatum, Tiguríni eodem proelió, quó Cassium, interfecerant.

Caesar crosses the Saône and receives a Helvetian embassy


Divico begs and threatens

Is ita cum Caesare égit: *“Si pácem populus Römanus cum Helvétiiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvétii, ubi éos tú, Caesar, cónstitueris atque esse volueris; sin belló persequi perseverábis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Römaní et pristinae virtútis Helvétiorum. Quod impróvisó únum págum adortus es, cum ei quí flúmen tránsierant suis auxilium ferre nón possent, nólí ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtúti tribuere, aut nós déspicere; nós

* Passages marked with a star have been changed from indirect to direct discourse. For the indirect form, see pp. 199 ff.
ita a patribus maiōribusque nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiis nītāmur. Quā rē nōli committere ut is locus ubi cōnstitimus ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et internecione exercitus nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.”

Cæsar offers conditions of peace which Divico declines .

14. His Caesar ita respondit: *" Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētii commemorāvērunt memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius fero, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidērunt; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cāvere; sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timērīendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvisci volō, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod mē invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptātis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāstis, memoriām dēpōnere possum? "Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter gloriāmini, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās tulisse admirāmini, eōdem pertinet. Cōnsuērunt enim dī immortālēs, quō gravius homi

15 nēs ex commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscis volunt, hīs secundīrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. "Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae pollicēmini vōs factūrōs intellegam, et si Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam.”

Divicō respondit: *“ Ita Helvētii ā maiōribus suīs institūti sunt uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populus Rōmānus est testis.” Hōc responsō datō discersit.
Caesar's cavalry meets with a slight reverse

15. Posterō die castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Cæsar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūti, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostrīs cadunt.

The Helvetii march north and Cæsar follows

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quingentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equītum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissīmō agmine proeliō nostrōs laccere coepērunt. Cæsar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praeentiā hostem rapīnīs populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissīmum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmium nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.

The Haeduī fail to furnish the grain which they promised

16. Interim cotīdiē Cæsar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent públicē pollēctī fāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cópia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī: cōnferri, comportāri, adesse dicere.

Cæsar is embarrased and upbraids the Haeduan chiefs

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellexit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātīs eōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cópiam in castrīs habēbat,—in
his Diviciācō et Liscō, qui summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, qui creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accusat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eīs non sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multō etiam graviōs, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

Liscus lays the blame on a faction opposed to the Romans


In private he discloses the power and ambition of Dumnorīx, the leader of this faction

Others support the charges of Liscus

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quærīt; reperit esse vēra: *" Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audāciā, magnā apud pīlēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectigālia parvō
5 pretiō redēmpta habet, propterēa quod iūlō licente contrā licērī audet nēmō. His rēbus et suām rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmpūtī semper alīt et circūm sē habet, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud finitīmās civitātēs largīter potest; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Bitu-
10 rigibus homīnī ilīcī nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāvit, ipse ex Helvētīis uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātre et pro-
pinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs conlocāvit.

They declare that Dumnorix favors the Helvetii

"Favet et cupit Helvētiēs propter eam adfinitātem, čōit
15 etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum ad-
ventū potentia eīus dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum
locum grātiae atque honōris est restitūtus. Si quid accidit
Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgni obtinendi
venit; imperīō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed
20 etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat.”

Cæsar discovers that Dumnorix caused the defeat of the
Roman cavalry

Reperiēbat etiam in quae īrītō Cæsar, quod proelium
25 equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium
eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīgē atque eius equitibus, — nam
equitātui, quem auxiliō Cæsari Haedui miserant, Dumnorīx
praerēt; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.
WAR WITH THE HELVETII

Other proofs of the treachery of Dumnorix. Caesar thinks he should be punished, but does not wish to offend Diviciacus

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent,—quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis sed etiam insulaeconsipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur,—satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret.

His omnibus rebus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstītiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur.

He summons Diviciacus, who pleads for his brother's pardon

Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocāri iubet, et cotidiānis interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsī praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta; et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā nōverat: nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur.

20. Diviciācus, multīs cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coeptī nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret. *"Sció," inquit, "haec esse vēra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capīt, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimum domī atque in relicuá Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam
posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur; ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgī com-
moveor. Quod sī quid eī abs tē gravius acciderit, cum ego 5 hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animi ā mē āvertentur."

**Dumnorix is spared, but is closely watched**

Haec cum pluribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eīs dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat finem ōrdandi faciat; 10 tanti eīs apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eīs voluntātī ac precibus con-
dōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs 15 suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

**Caesar prepares for battle**

21. Eōdem dīē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis 20 esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsum, qui cognō-
The error of Considius prevents the action

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentiō passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum currīt; dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignībus cognōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeeceptum ā Cæsare nē proelīum committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra 10 visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrīs exspectābat proelīōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātorēs Cæsar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre perterrītum, quod nōn vidisset prō visō 15 sībi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervālō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar marches toward Bibracte. The Helvetii follow

23. Postrīdıē eius diēi, quod omnīnō biduum supererat cum exercitū frūmentum mētīri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, 20 nōn amplius milibus passuum duodēvigintī aberat, reī fru·mentāriāe prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiōs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemīli, decurīōnis equītum Gal·lōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre per 25 territōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelīum nōn com·misissent, sive eō, quod rē fru·mentāriā interclūdi posse
cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostros ā novissimō agmine insequī ac laccēsere coepērunt.

*Both sides prepare for battle*

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātumque qui sustinēret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō tri-plicem aciem instruxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citerīōre proximē cōnscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferri et eum ab his qui in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnirī iussit. Helvētīi, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

*The battle begins*


*The Helvetii retreat, but rally*

Tandem volneribus dēfessī et pedem referre, et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passuum, ēō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōīi et Tulingi, qui
hominum milibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab la-tere apertō adgressī circumvenire; et id cōspicātī Helvētii,

As the battle plan shows, only the third line of the Roman army faced about (conversa signa, l. 5) to meet the advancing Boii and Tulingi. The other two lines continued to face the Helvetii as before. The verb intulērunt (l. 6) refers to the whole Roman force, which made the attack in two divisions as described

qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartitō 5 intulērunt: prima et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.
After a desperate conflict the Helvetii are defeated


The survivors retreat into the territory of the Lingones

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter volnera militūrum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostri ēōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesār ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque misit nē ēōs frumentō nēve aliā ré iuvārent; quī si iūvisserant, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum.

20 Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis ēōs sequi coepit.

The Helvetii negotiate for surrender

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditīōne ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convenissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūti flentēs pācem petissent, atque ēōs in eō locō quō tum es-

sent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūērunt. Ėō postquam Caesār pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs qui ad ēōs perfūgissent poposcit.
"ITA ANCIPITI PROELIO DIU ATQUE ACRITER PUGNATUM EST"

(See page 30, line 1)
Six thousand of them try to escape, but are captured

Dum ea conquestur et cónferuntur, circiter hominum mília sex eius pāgī qui Verbīgenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterrītī, nē armīs trāditis suppliciō adṣicere nutur, sīve spē salūtīs inductī, quod in tantā multītūdīne dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contędērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīt, quōrum per finēs ierant, his utī conquesterent et redūcerent, si sībi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditionēm accēpit.

The Helvetii and their allies return home

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germāniī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent, et fīnitīmi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

The Boii are allowed to settle among the Hædui

Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris libertātisque condicionēm, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.
The number of the Helvetii and their allies

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminātim ratiō confecta erat, qui numerus domō exīset eōrum qui arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot pueri, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat 5 capitum Helvetiorum milium cclxiii, Tulingōrum milium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xci. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eōrum qui domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est 10 numerus milium c et x.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The Gallic chiefs come to congratulate Caesar

30. Bellō Helvetiorum confectō totius ferē Galliae lēgāti, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnerunt:

*"Intellegimus," inquint, "tametsi prō veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Rōmāni ab his poenās bellō repetisti, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populi Rōmāni accidisse; propertēa quod eō consiliō florentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvetii reliquērunt, uti tōti Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā deligerent, quam ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitātēs stipendiāriās habērent."

A day is set for a future council

Petiērunt uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: 'Sēsē haberē quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī consēnsū ab eō petere 25
vellent.' Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

Certain chiefs have a private interview with Caesar

31. Eō conciliō dimissō, idem principēs civitātum qui ante 5 fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque uti sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: *"Nōn minus," inquīunt, "nōs id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea quae dixerimus ēnūntientur, quam utī ea quae velimus 10 impetrēmus; propterea quod, si ēnūntiātum erit, summum in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus."

Diviciacus describes the factions in Gaul and the bringing in of the Germans

Locūtus est prō his Diviciācus Haeduus: *"Galliae tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae; hārum alterius principātum tenent Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentiātū inter 15 sē multōs annōs contendentērunt, factum est utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamārunt, trāducti sunt plurēs; nunc sunt in Galliā ad 20 centum et viginti milium numerum.

The subjection of the Hāduī

"Cum his Hāduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armis contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsi accēpērunt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīserunt. Quibus proelīis calamitātibusque frācti, qui 25 et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicitiā
plurimum ante in Galliâ potuerant, coâcti sunt Sequanís obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō mi-nus perpetuō sub illōrum dicīone atque imperiō essent. Ûnus ego sum ex omnī civitāte Haeduōrum qui addūci nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex civitāte profūgi et Rōmam ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar.

The wretched lot of the Sequani

"Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs acci-dīt, propterea quod Arioivistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, qui est op-timus tōtius Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubet, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum vigintī quattuor ad eum vēnē-runt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parentur. Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsibunt; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuētūdō victūs cum illā comparanda.

The tyranny and cruelty of Arioivistus

"Arioivistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proelīō vicit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crū-dēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs poscit, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius: nōn possunt eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.
All Gaul looks to Caesar for deliverance

"Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum quod Helvētīī fēcērunt, ut domō emigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā Germānis petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitō quīn dē omnibus obsidibus qui apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercitūs vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dēterrēre potes nē maiori multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā potes dēfendere."

The silence of the Sequani


Diviciacus explains their desperate plight

Cum ab hīs saepeius quaerēret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: 20 *"Hoc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxiliōm implōrāre audent; absentisque Ariovistī crudēlitātem, velut si cōram adsit, horrent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās datur, Sēquanīs vērō, qui intra finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potes-tāte eius sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendi."
Caesar promises his assistance and dismisses the chiefs

33. His rebus cognititis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram; magnam se habere speret et beneficii suo et auctoritate ad ductum Ariovistum finem iniuriiis facturum. Hac oratione habitae concilium dimisit.

His reasons for deciding to expel Ariovistus

Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur qua re sibi eam rem cogitandum et susciendam putaret: in primis quod Haeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in dicione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turbissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabantur.

Paulatim autem Germanos consuecere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, populo Romaino periculose videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat quin, cum omnem Galliam occupassent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonicē fēcissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent; quibus rebus quam maturimē occurrendum putabant. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam adrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non vidēretur.

Caesar asks Ariovistus for an interview, but he declines

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque conloquiō deligeret: velle sese de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: *"Si quid mihi a Caesarō opus esset, ego
ad eum venirem; sī quid ille mē volit, illum ad mē venire oportet. Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audeō quās Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contra-
here possum. Mihi autem mirum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vici, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negoti sit.”

*Cæsar commands Ariovistus to restore the liberties of the Hædui*

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: *"Quoniam tantō mē populique Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū meō rēx atque amīcūs ā senātū appellātus sit, hanc mīhi populōque Rōmānō grātiam refert, ut in conloquium venire invitātus gravētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putet, haec sunt quae ab eō postulō: primum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcat; deinde, obsidēs quōs habet ab Haeduis reddat, Sēquanisque permittat ut quōs illī habent voluntāte eius reddere illīs liceat; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacessat, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum infерat."

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: *"Iūs est bellī ut quī vicerint, eis quōs vicerint, quem ad modum velint, imperent; item populus Rōmānus victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum,
sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre consuēvit. Si ego populō Rōmānō nōn praebībō quem ad modum suō iūre ētātur, nōn oportet mē á populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impedīri.

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

"Haeduī mihi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāvērunt et armīs congressī ac superātī sunt, stipendiāriī sunt factī. 5 Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit qui suō adventū vectigālia mihi deteriōra faciat. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque
his neque eorum sociis iniuriā bellum inferam, si in eō manēbunt quod convenit stipendiumque quotannis pendent; si id nōn fecerint, longē eis frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī aberit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congrēdiātur; intelleget quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimi in armīs, qui inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint."

New encroachments of the Germans are reported to Caesar, who hastens against Ariovistus

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesari mandāta referēbantur, et lēgāti ab Haeduīs et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliam trānsportāti essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trēveri autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripam Rḥēnī cōnsēdisse, qui Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovisti sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both strive to reach Vesontio. Caesar arrives there first

38. Cum tridūi viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontio nem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, tridūique viam ā suīs finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, magnopere sībi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbātur ut
BESANÇON (VESONTIO)
magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis, ut circino circumductum, paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, quae flumen intermittit, mons continet magnae altitudine, ita ut radicês eius montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidôconiungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatôque oppidô ibi praesidium conlocat.

Reports about the Germans frighten Caesar's men

10 39. Dum paucos diès ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeâtusque causâmorâtur, ex percontâtioâe nostrôrum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercâtorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanös, incrédibili virtûte atque exercitiaâione in armis esse praedicábant,—saepenumerô sês cum his congressôs nê voltum quidem atque aciem oculôrum dicêbant ferre potuisse,—tantus subitô timor omnem exercitum occupavit ut nôn mediocriter omnium mentês animôsque perturbât.

The inexperienced are panic-stricken

Hic primum ortus est a tribûnis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causâ Caesarem sequi nôn magnum in re militâri Ɔsum habébant; quorum alius alia causâ inlátâ quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessâriam esse diceret, petebat ut eius voluntâte discédere licêret; nôn nulli pudôre adducti, ut timôris suspicîonem vitârent, remanebant. Hi neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenêre poterant; abditi in tabernâculis aut suum fatum querêbantur aut cum familiâribus suiûs commune periculum miserâbantur. Volgô tôtis castris testâmenta obsignábantur.
Even the veterans are affected and prophesy a mutiny

Hörum vocibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī qui magnum
in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs centurionēsque quique equi-
tātui praerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex his minus timidōs
existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās iti-
nēris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs
atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē
supportārī possēt, timēre dīcebant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesari
nūntiābant, cum castra moverī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore
dictō audientēs miliēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar makes light of their fears and recalls the victories of Marius

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omni-
umque ārdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibītis centurionībus,
vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīnum quod, aut quam in partem
aut quō cōnsiliō dūcērentur, sībi quaerendum aut cōgitandum
putārent. *“Ariovistus,” inquit, “mē cōnsule cupidissimē
populi Rōmānī amicitiam adpetītīt. Ĉūr hunc tam temerē
quisquam ab officiō diessūrīm iūdicet? Mihi quidem per-
suādētur, cognitis meis postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum
pertsectā, eum neque meam neque populi Rōmānī grātiam
repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bel-
lum intulerit, quid tandem vereāminī? aut cūr dē vestrā
virtūte aut dē meā diligentiā ēspērētīs? Factum est eius
hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbrīs
et Teutōnis ā C. Mariō pulsis, nōn minōrem laudem ex-
ercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum est
etiam nūper in Itāliā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid
ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbis accēperant sublevābant.
Ex quō iūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē boni cōnstantia,
propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuistis,
hōs postēa armātōs ac victōrēs superāvistis.
"Even the Helvetians and other Gauls have often defeated the Germans"

"Denique hi sunt idem Germāni quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētīi congressī, nōn sōlum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superāvērunt; qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitūi nōn potuērunt. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hī, si quaerēnt, reperire poterunt, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatigātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque sūi potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōni contrā homīnēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

He deprecates their lack of confidence in him

"Quī suum timōrem in reī frumentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferunt, faciunt adrogranter, cum aut dē officiō imperātoris dēspērāre aut praescribere videantur. Haec mihi sunt cūrae; frumentum Sēquāni, Leucī, Līngonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agrīs frumenta mātūra; dē itinere vōs ipsī brevi tempore iūdicābitis. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dicuntur militēs, nihil eā rē commoveor; scīō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam défuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convic-tam; mea innocentiā perpetuā vitā, fēlicitās Helvētiōrum bellō est perspecta.

He proposes an immediate advance

"Itaque quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fui, repraesentabo, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra movēbō, ut quam prīnum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plúis valeat. Quod si praetereā nēmō"
sequetur, tamen cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō, dē quā nōn
dubitō, mihiqve ea praeōria cohors erit.” Huic legiōni Cae-
sar et indulserat praecepuē et propter virtūtem cōnfidebat
maximē.

*Remarkable effect of Caesar’s speech*

41. Hāc ārātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi

**ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH**

innāta est; princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum
eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque
esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde
reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnis militum et primōrum ōrdinum
centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesari satisfacerent: ‘Sē neque
umquam dubitāsse neque timuisses, neque dē summā belli
suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvissē.’
He advances near to the forces of Ariovistus

Eōrum satisfacciōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallis eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locis apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō die, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovisti cōpiās ā nostrīs milia passuum quattuor et vigintī abesse.

Ariovistus asks for a conference

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret.' Nōn respuit condicionem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābatur, cum id quod anteā petenti dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populique Rōmānī in eum bene- ficiis, cognitis suis postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā désisteret.

A conference is agreed upon; each party to bring only cavalry

Dies conloquiō dictus est ex eō die quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgāti ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: 'Verēri sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratione sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.'

Caesar takes precaution against treachery

Caesar, quod neque conloquium interposītā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātūi committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus eūqis Gallis equitibus dētrāctis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae,
Cui quam maximē cōnfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inridiculē quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit: 'Plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum; ad equum rescribere.'

*Caesar's speech. He pleads for peace, but renews his demands*


Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et pauci contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiis cōnsuēsse tribūi docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae ne cessitūdinis ipsis cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs consultā, quotīēns quamque honōrīfica in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haeduī tenuissent, prior etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent. 'Populi Rōmāni hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amicōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmāni adtulissent, id eis ēripī quis patī possēt?'
Postulavit deinde eadem quae légātis in mandātis dederat; nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; si nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

*Ariovistus makes an arrogant reply*

5 44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: *"Trānsī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiīs domum propinquōsque reli-quī; sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capiō iūre bellī quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōnsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallis, sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superātae sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, ego iterum parātus sum decertāre; si pāce ētī volunt, inīquum est dē stipendīō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt.*

"Amicitiam populi Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō et praeṣidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet, atque hac spē petii. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēditīci sub-trahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam adpetii.

CONFERENCE BETWEEN CÆSAR AND ARIOWISTUS, KING OF THE GERMANS

"Provincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra."

(See page 48, line 29)
nōn oporteat, si in vestrōs finēs impetum faciam, sic item vōs estis iniqui quod in meō iūre mē interpellātis.

"Quod frātrēs a senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dicis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperitus sum rērum ut nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxillium tulisse, neque ipsīs, in his contentiōnibus quās Haeduī mēcum et cum Sēquanis habuērunt, auxiliō populi Rōmānī usōs esse.

"Dēbeō suspicāri simulātā tē amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habēs, mei opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex hīs regionibus, tē nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod si tē interfēcerō, multīs nō-bilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum faciam (id ab ipsis per eōrum nūntios compertum habeō), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiām tua morte redimere poterō. Quod si discesseris et liberam possessionem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē praemiō remūnerābor, et quaecumque bella gerī volēs, sine ūllō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam."

*Cæsar restates his position and disputes the claim of Ariovistus to Gaul*

45. Multa ab Cæsare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negotiō dēsistere nōn posset: *"Neque mea neque populi Rōmānī consuētūdō patitur uti optimē meritōs sociōs dēseram, neque iūdicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam populi Rōmānī. Bellō superātī sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ab Q. Fabīo Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit neque in prōvinciam redēgit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportet, populi Rō-mānī iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium senātūs observārī oportet, libera dēbet esse Gallia, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus uti voluerit."
A treacherous attack of the Germans puts an end to the conference

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere, et ad nostros adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostros conicerere. Caesar loquenti finem fecit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suīisque imperāvit nē quod omnino tēlam in hostes recerent. Nam etsi sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam in volgus militum ēlātum est quā adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānis interdíxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium dirēmissēt, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandi maius exercitu iniectum est.

Cæsar declines a renewal of the conference

47. Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit:

'Velle sē dē his rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; uti aut iterum conloquiō diem cōstitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, ē suīs lēgātīs alīquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendi Cæsari causa visa nōn est; et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius dieī Germanī reti-

nerī nōn poterant quin tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus fēris obiectūrum existimābat.

Two of Cæsar's envoys are seized by Ariovistus

Commodissimīm visum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Caburī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, — cuīs pater ā C. Valerīō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat, et prop-

ter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam
Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuetūdīnē útēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset,—ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium qui hospitiō Ariovistī útēbātur. His mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: *"Quid ad mē vēnīstis? an specu- 

landī causā?" Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

_Ariovistus moves his camp. Cavalry skirmishes_

48. Eōdem dieō castra prōmōvīt et milībus passuum sex 

ā Caesāris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdīt. Postrīdiē eius dieī praeter castra Caesāris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milībus pas-

suum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō 

commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur, 

Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō dieō diēs continuōs quīnque 

Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelīō contendere, ēī potes-

tās nōn deēsset. Ariovistus īs omnibus diēbus exercitum 

castrīs continuīt, equestī proelīō cotidiē contendīt.

_The German method of fighting_

Genus hoc erat pugnae quō sē Gērmānī exercuerant. 

Equītūm milīa erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissīmī ac fortissīmī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salū-

tīs causā délēgerant; cum īs in proelīs versābantur. Ad 

eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; ī, si quid erat dūrius, concur-

rēbant; si quī graviōre volnere acceptō equō déciderat, cir-

cumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius 

recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs 

sublevāti equōrum cursum adaequārent.
Cæsar fortifies another camp and divides his forces

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Cæsar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germanī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab his, castrīs idōneum locum délēgit, aciēque triplicī iēstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertīam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Ēō circiter homi-num sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omni equitātū Aiovistus misit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Cæsar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertīam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quatuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.
Ariovistus attacks the smaller camp with part of his forces


A German superstition delays a general engagement

Cum ex captīvis quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proelīō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germanōs ea consuetūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārarent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dicere: ‘Nōn esse fās Germanōs superāre, si ante novam lūnam proelīō continē dissent.’

Caesar forces a decisive battle

51. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castrīs quod satis esse visum est reliquit, ālāriōs omnēs in conspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitudine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs uterētur; ipse triplicī instructā aciē ūsequde ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germanī suās cópiās castris ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedis et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquērētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiscēntēs, passīs manībus flentes, implōrabant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs tradērent.
49. Caesar singulis legionibus singulós légátošs et quaestórem praefécit, utí eós testés suae quisque virtútis habérét; ipse á dextró cornú, quod eam partem minímé firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commísit. Et ita nostrí 5 ácriter in hostés signó dató impetum fécérunt, itaque hostés repente celeriterque prōcurrérunt ut spatium pila in hostés coniciendí nón darétur. Reiectis pilís comminus gladiís pugnátum est. At Germāní celeriter ex consuetúdine suá phalange factá impetús gladiórum excēpérunt. Reperti sunt 10 complūrés nostri qui in phalanga insilirent et scúta manibus revellerent et dēsuper volnerarent. Cum hostium aciés á sinistró cornú pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, á dextró cornú vehementer multitúdine suórum nostram aciém premébant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equi- 15 tātui praererat, quod expeditior erat quam ei qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciém labōrantibus nostrís subsidiō misit.

52. Desperate fighting at close quarters

52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulós légátošs et quaestórem praefécit, utí eós testés suae quisque virtútis habérét; ipse á dextró cornú, quod eam partem minímé firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commísit. Et ita nostri 5 ácriter in hostés signó dató impetum fécérunt, itaque hostés repente celeriterque prōcurrérunt ut spatium pila in hostés coniciendí nón darétur. Reiectis pilís comminus gladiís pugnátum est. At Germāní celeriter ex consuetúdine suá phalange factá impetús gladiórum excēpérunt. Reperti sunt 10 complūrés nostri qui in phalanga insilirent et scúta manibus revellerent et dēsuper volnerarent. Cum hostium aciés á sinistró cornú pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, á dextró cornú vehementer multitúdine suórum nostram aciém premébant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equi- 15 tātui praererat, quod expeditior erat quam ei qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciém labōrantibus nostrís subsidiō misit.

53. The Germans flee. Ariovistus escapes

53. Ita proelium restitútum est atque omnès hostés terga vertérunt, neque prius fugere dēstitérunt quam ad flúmen Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervē- 20 nérunt. Ibi perpaucí aut viribus cōnfisí trānāre contendérunt aut lintribus inventís sibi salútem reperrerunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui nāviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus eā profugit; reliquōs omnès cōsecutī equités nostri interfécérunt. Duæ fuérunt Ariovistī uxōrés, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam 25 domō sēcum duxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Voccionis soror, quam in Galliā duxerat á frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periiit. Fuērunt duæ filiæ: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.
C. Valerius Procillus, cum a custōdibus in fugā trīnis catēnis vinctus traheōtur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesari nōn
minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium; sibi restitutum videbat; neque eius calamitate de tantâ voluptate et gratulatiione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat utrum igni statim necaretur an in aliud tempus reservaretur; sortium benefici se esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The end of the campaign. Caesar goes to Hither Gaul

54. Hoc proeliō trans Rhenum nuntiatō Suebi, qui ad ripās Rhēni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quōs Ubii, qui proximi Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs insecuti magnum ex eis numerum occiderunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximis bellis confessionis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulabat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hi-bernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.
BOOK II

CAESAR'S SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY

All the Belgian tribes combine against the Romans

The reasons for the conspiracy

Coniúrandi hás esse causás: primum, quod verērentur né omni pācātā Galliā ad eós exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllis Gallis sollicitārentur,—partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versāri nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiis studēbant,—ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eis qui ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsēquī poterant.

Cæsar moves against them early in the spring

2. His nūntiis litterīsque commōtus Cæsar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscripsit, et initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliām qui dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum misit.
Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certīōrem faciant. Hi cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quin ad eōs profiscerētur. Rē frumentāriā comparātā castra movet diebusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi promise aid and report on the situation

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opinīōne vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proxīmi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs cīvitātīs, mīsē-runt qui dicerent: *" Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populi Rōmānī permittimus; neque cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnsimus neque contra populum Rōmānum con-

15 iūrāvimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliqui omnēs Belgae in armis sunt, Germānique qui cis Rhēnum incolunt sēsē cum his coniūnxērunt, tantusque est eōrum omnium furor ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, qui eōdem iūre et isdēm lēgibus ūtuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magis-

20 trātum nōbiscum habent, dēterrēre potuerimus quin cum his cōnsentīrent."

The origin and warlike character of the Belgae

4. Cum ab his quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in

25 armis essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat:

*" Plērique Belgae sunt orti à Germanīis, Rhēnumque antiquitus traducti propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdērunt, Gallōsque qui ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlique sunt
qui patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fit uti cārum rērum memoria magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spiritūs in rē militāri sūmant.

*The strength of the Belgian tribes*

"De numerō eōrum omnia habēmus explōrāta, propertēa quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniunctī, quantum quisque multitūdinem in commūni Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; hi possunt cōnicere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitī ex eō numerō ēlecta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiōnēs nostri sunt finitimi; finēs lātissimōs fērācissimōsque agrōs possident. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoria Diviciācus, tōtius Galliāe potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis hārum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summa tōtius belli omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida habent numerō xii, pollicentur mīlia armāta l.; totidem Nervīi, qui maximē feri inter ipsōs habent longissimēque absunt; xv mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī x mīlia, Morīnī xxv mīlia, Menapiī vii mīlia, Caletī x mīlia, Velioçasses et Viromandui totidem, Aduatucī xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāmur <fūncicere posse> ad xl mīlia."

*Caesar asks the assistance of Diviciacus*

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberālīterque orātiōne prósecutus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum magnopere
The Belgæ attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi, eight miles away

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepperunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec: ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtis moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūlli. Cum finem oppugnāndi nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum
oppidō praerat, ūnus ex eis qui lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: ‘Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.’

_Caeser sends relief to Bibrax. The Belgae advance on his camp_

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus ľūsus qui nūntii ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et 5 funditōrēs Baleārēs sub-sidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rē-mis cum spē défēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī ac-cessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppi-dum morāti agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulāti, omnibus vicīs aedifici-isque quō adire potue-rant incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contende-runt et ā mīlibus passuum 26 minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus signifīcābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

_Cavalry skirmishes. Caesar fortifies his position and draws up his forces in front of the camp_

8. Caesar primō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proelīō supersedēre statuit; 25 cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliōs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent periclitābātur.
Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem instruēndam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō,— quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēdītus, tantum adversus in lātītūdinem patēbat quantum locī 5 aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lato-
ris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulātīm ad plānitiem redībat,—ab utrāque latere eius collis trān-
versam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlo-
cāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multi-
tūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnāntēs suōs circumvenīre possent.

Hōc factō, [duābus legionībus quās proximē cōnscripterat in castrīs relictīs] ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī pos-
sent, [reliquās sex legionēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cópiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxērunt]

A swamp between the two forces prevents a general engagement

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostīum ex-
ercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedi-
tōs adgrederentur parāti in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutri trānse-
eundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.

The Belgae attempt an attack in the rear

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendē-
runt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmonstronātum est. Ibi vadis repertīs partem suārum cópiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; si
minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui magnō nōbis ūsūī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

_Cæsar defeats them with great losses_

10. _Cæsar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, fundītōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem 5 trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est._ Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum cōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum repulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs inter- 10 fēcērunt.

_The Belgae, discouraged, decide to disband_

Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fellīsse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum iniquōrem prōgredi pugnandi causā vidērunt,
atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria déficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in finēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxisserint, ad eōs défendendōs undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domes-
ticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ēterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. His persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxiliūm ferrent nōn poterat.

*Cæsar pursues them and inflicts great slaughter*

11. Eā rē cōstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllo certō ērdine neque imperiō, cum sībi quīsque prīmum itineris locum pēteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Cæsar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum per-

25 spexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuīt. Prīmā lūce cōnfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum qui novissimum agmen morārētur praeāmisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit.
Hi novissimōs adortī et multa milia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent forti-terque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērunt, priōrēs, quod 4 abesse à periculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō conti-nērentur, exauditō clāmōre perturbā-tīs ērdīnibus omnēs in fugā sībi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostri interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dē-stītērunt sēque in castra, ut erat impe-rātum, recēpērunt.

He leads his army into the territory of the Suessiones

12. Postridīē eius diēi Caesār, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recipērent, in finēs Suessionōnum, qui proximi Rēmis erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Novio-dūnum contendit. Iīd ex itinere opp-pugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mū-rique altitūdinem, paucis dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit.

He prepares to storm Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender

Castrīs mūnitis vineās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsui erant comparāre coepest. Interim omnis ex fugā Sus-siōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque
constituitis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Rōmānōrum permoti, légātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditīone mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

The Bellovaci beg for mercy

5 13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs civitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus filīs, armīisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis, in dēditīōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter 10 milia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex 15 mūrō passīs manibus suō móre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Diviciacus, the Hāeduan, pleads for them

14. Prō īs Diviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dimissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba:

*Bellovaci omni tempore in fidē atque amicitiā civitātis Haeduae fuērunt; impulsī ab suis princīpibus, quī dicēbant Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intullērunt. Quī eius cōnsili princīpēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantum calamitātem civitātī intullissent, in Britanniam profugērunt. Petunt nōn sōlum Bellovaci sed etiam prō īs Haeduī ut tua clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtāris. Quod si fēceris, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōnsuērunt.*
Caesar spares the Bellovaci and receives the Ambiani in surrender

15. Caesar honóris Díviciácǐ atque Haeduórum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptúrum et cōnservātúrum dixit; et quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctoritāte atque hominum multitudine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. His tràdītis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab .eō locō in 5 finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, qui sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

He hears that the Nervii are defiant

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōri-busque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperīēbat: *"Nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercâtōribus; nihil patiuntur vīni reliqua-rumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferri, quod his rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimant; sunt hominēs fēri magnaeque virtūtis; increpitant atque incusant reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtūtem prōiēcerint; cōnfirmant sēsē neque lē- 15 gātōs missūrōs neque ullam condicionem pācis acceptūrōs."

He marches against the Nervii and their allies

16. Cum per eōrum finēs triduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis Sabim flūmen a castrīs suis nōn amplius mília passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsē-disse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnă cum 20 Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suīs (nam his utrīisque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); ex-spectāri etiam ab eīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs 25 exercitūi aditus nōn esset.
The Nervii decide to attack Caesar while he is pitching camp

17. His rēbus cognitis explōrātorēs centurīōnēsque praemittit qui locum castris idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut posteā ex captīvis cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostri exercītūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt; atque his dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrūm magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaēque legiōnēs magnum spatiōm absinter, hanc sub sārcinis adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīisque direptis futūrum ut reliquaē contra consistere nōn audērēnt.

The hedges of the Nervii

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium qui rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestriibus valent cōpiis), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātūm, si praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, tenerīs arboribus incisis atque inflexīs, crēbrisque in lātitūdinem rāmis ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effecerant ut ĵnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnimenta praebearent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostri impedirētur, nōn omittendum sībi cōnsilium Nervii existimāvērunt.

The Romans choose a hill for their camp. The Nervii hide on a hill opposite

18. Loci nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō æqualīter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine pari acclīvitāe collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius,
passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Intrā eās

silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitūm vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Romans begin to fortify their camp

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequebātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ārdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat,
cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen clau-dēbant praesiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum 5 fundītōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidēm in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impe-tum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem por-rēctā locā aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs insequēbant, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

The Nervii make a sudden and furious attack

Ubi prīma impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis qui in silvis abditi latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendi proelī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōn-stituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subītō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdībilī celeritāte ad flū-men dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. 20 Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occupāti erant contendērunt.

The situation of the Romans is critical

THE DEFEAT OF THE NERVII

Plan I shows the positions of the contending forces before the attack. Plan II shows their positions at the crisis of the battle.
Their skill and training serve them well

His difficultätibus duae rēs erant subsidiō,—scientia atque usus militum, quod superiōribus proelis exercitāti quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescībere quam ab aliis docēri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōni-bus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitis castris vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sé quae vidēbantur administrābant.

Lack of time compels the omission of all formalities and of some of the usual preparations for battle

21. Caesar, necessāriis rēbus imperātis, ad cohortandōs mil-10nitēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiōre ērātione cohortātus quam uti suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinē-rent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adici 15 posset, proelī committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causā profectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exīgitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommo-danda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

They fight as necessity demands

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō 25 atque ārdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in
parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectis prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortūnae quoque 5 ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

The Atrebates and Viromandui are defeated, but the Nervii gain the camp

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pilis ēmissīs, cursū ac lassitūdine ex-animātōs volneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs—nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat—celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen com- 10 pulērunt, et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī gladiis magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum iniquum prōgressī rūrsus resis-
tentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, 15 prōfligātīs Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis ripis proeliābantur. At tōtīs fērē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō
cornū legiō duodecima et non magnō ab ea intervāllō septima consīstitisset, omnēs Nerviī confertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, qui summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērant; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

_Panic prevails in the Roman camp_

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostri levisque armātūrae peditēs, qui cum eis ūnā fuerant, quōs prismō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipiērant, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostros victŏrēs flūmen trānsisse conspexerant, praedandi causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versāri vidissent, præcipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur.

_The Treveri think all is lost and hasten home_

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opinīō est singulāris, qui auxili causā ā civitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium
castra complēri, legiōnēs premi et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, déspērātis nostris rébus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potiōtōs, civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

_Caesar snatches a shield and rushes to the front_

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgerī signisque in unum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit,—quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortīum omnibus fērē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occisis, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextīō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus conceptō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proelīo excēdēre ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque à fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submitti posset,—scūtō ab novissimīs militī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūti posserunt.
His presence inspires his men

Cuius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmis suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paūlum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Caesar effectively combines two of his legions

5 26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstite-rat, item urgēri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius alīi subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius 10 resistere ac fortius pugnāre coeōrunt.

He receives reinforcements

Interim militēs legiōnēm duārum quae in novissimō ag-mine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sībi reliquī fēcērunt.

The tide of battle turns in Caesar's favor

20 27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam qui volneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innixi proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pug-25 nandō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent.
Caesar praises the valor of the enemy

At hostes etiam in extremā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmi eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insistērent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; his dēiectis et coacervātīs cádāveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remiterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī debēret ausōs esse trānīre lātissimum flūmen, ascensere altissimās ripās, subīre iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnūtūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii are almost completely destroyed

28. Hoc proeliō factō et prope ad internecionem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrés nātū, quōs unā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestiūaria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nilī impeditum, victīs nilī tūtum arbitrārentur, omnīm quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā civitātīs calamītāte, ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus sexāgintā vīx ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cōnservāvit, suisque finibus atque oppidis ēti iussit, et finitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērēnt.

The Aduatuci, allies of the Nervii, withdraw to their stronghold

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā diximus, cum omnībus cópiis auxiliō Nerviīs veniērent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contūlērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās
rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum cc relinquēbatur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant.

**Origin of the Aduatuci**

5 Ipsi erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonisque prōgnātī, qui, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedimentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdīam ex suīs ac praeāsidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hi post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitāti, cum aliās bellum inferrent aliās inlātum défenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum délēgerant.

**They ridicule Caesar's siege works**

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostri crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proelīis cum nostriś conten-

15 débant; posteā vāllō pedum xii, in circuitū xv mīliūm, crē-

brisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi

vineis āctīs aggere extrūctō turrim procul cūnstitūi vidērunt,

prīmum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod

tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: *"Quibusnam

20 manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statū-

rae"—nam plērumque hominibus Gallis prae magnītūdine

corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptui est—"tanti

oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōnfidunt?"*

But, becoming alarmed, they offer to surrender if allowed
to keep their arms

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūris vidērunt, novā

25 atque īnūsitātā specīē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce

misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī sunt: *"Nōn existimāmus
vōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovere possītis; nōs nos-
traque omnia tuae potestāti permittimus. Ūnum petimus ac
dēprecāmur: si forte prō tuā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine,

quam ab aliīs audīmus, statuerīs Aduatucōs esse cōnservan-
dōs, nōlī nōs armīs dēspoliāre. Nōbis omnēs fērē fīnitimi
sunt inimīci ac nostrae virtūti invident; ā quibus nōs dē-
fendere trāditīs armīs nōn poterimus. Nōbis praestat, si in
eum cāsum dēdūcāmur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō
patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interfici inter quōs dominārī 10
cōnsuēvimus.”
Cæsar demands their arms. They yield, but treacherously keep part of them

32. Ad haec Cæsar respondit: *"Magis cōnsuētūdine meā quam meritō vestrō civitātem cōnservābō, si, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigerit, vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditīōnis nūlla est condiciō nisi armīs trādītis. Id quod in Nerviis fēci 5 faciam, fīnitimīisque imperābō nē quam dēditīciis populi Rōmānī iniūriam inferant." Re nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervi armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circumcision parte tertīā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactīs eō dīc pāce sunt ūsī?

They make a night attack, but are defeated

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudi militēisque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quain noctū oppidānī ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditīōne factā nostrōs praeсидia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant,—partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex corticē factīs aut viminiibus intendīs, quae subitō, ut temporīs exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant,—tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitionēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōplīs repente ex oppidō ēruptionēm fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtīs iniquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnāri dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret.
Over fifty thousand of them are sold as slaves

Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius dieī refrāctis portis, cum iam

**Latin Manuscript**

The text of Book II, chapter 35, as it appears in a Latin manuscript of the ninth century. For many years the manuscript was in the monastery of St. Benedict at Fleury-sur-Loire. It is now in Paris and is known as Codex Parisinicus Latinus, 5763

defenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostrīs, sectiōnam eius oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quīn-5 quāgintā trium.

The tribes on the coast surrender to Crassus

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Viēnōs, Venellōs, Osismōs Coriosolitās, Esu-vīōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās civitātēs in 10 dicionem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.
The army goes into winter quarters. Caesar returns to Italy
A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome

35. His rēbus gestīs, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta huius belli ad barbarōs opinīō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolement lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. 5 Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesār, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque properābat, initiā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussīt. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

GALLIC COINS
BOOK III

CAESAR’S THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES

Galba is sent with one legion to guard a pass of the Alps

Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legione duodecimae et parte equitatis in Nantuates, Veragros Sedunosque misit, qui a finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano ad summatas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpes, quo magnus cum periculose magisque cum porteriis mercatoris ire consuerant, patiendo volabant. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legiornem hiemandi causae conlocaret.

He makes his winter quarters at Octodurus

Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque committibus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace factis, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus conlocare et ipse cum reliquis eius legioniis cohortibus in vicino Veragroorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle, non magna adiecta plenitiae, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum hic in duas partes fluimine divideretur, alteram partem eius vicin Gallis concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallum fossaeque munivit.
An army of Gauls seizes the heights above the town and threatens his camp

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs cernītōr factus est ex eā parte vici quam Gallis concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse, montēsque qui impendērent 5 maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī.

Id aliquot dē causis acciderat ut subitō Gallī belli renovandi legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum quod legiōnem—neque eam plēnissimam, detrāctīs cohortībus duābus et complūribus singillātim, qui commeātūs petendī causā missī erant—propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrērent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem
posse impetum suum sustinērī existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolē-bant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnāri et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sībi persuāsum habēbant.

*Conditions are unfavorable, but the Romans decide to defend the camp*

3. *His nūnțiis acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existi-māverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirēre coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī periculī praet-ter opīniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine armātōrum completā cōnspicerentur, neque subsi-dīō venirī neque commeātūs supportāri interclūsis itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modi sententiae dicēbantur, ut, impedimentis relictīs ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnīssent ad salūtem contende-rent. Maiōri tamen partī placuit, hoc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experīri et castra dēfendēre.*

*The Gauls make a violent attack with superior numbers*

4. *Brevī spatīo interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōnstitu-issent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapides gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integris viribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ullum frūstrā tēlum ex locō supe-riōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēn-sōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxiliōm ferre sed hoc superāri, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessi proelīō excēdēbant, alīi integris vīribus succēdēbant: quārum rērum*
After fighting six hours, the Romans decide to make a sally

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur ac nōn sōlum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmi pīli centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vol-

10 neribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōnsili magni et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celebrīter militēs certiōrēs facīt paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre refi-

15 cerent; post dātō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtīs in virtūte ponerent.

The Gauls are disastrously defeated

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt ac, subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā, neque cognōscendi quid fieret neque suī conli-

20 gendi hostibus facultātem relinquent. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spēm potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstā-

25 bat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsīs armīisque exūtīs sē intrā mūnitionēs suās recipiunt.
IAM AMPLIUS HORIS SEX CONTINENTER PUGNATUM EST
Galba withdraws to the Province

Quō proelīō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmenti commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō dīē omnibus eius vīci aedificiīs incēnsis in prōvincia revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolum legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

THE WAR WITH THE VENETI

The coast tribes revolt against Roman rule


The Veneti seize the Roman messengers

8. Huius est civitātīs longē amplissimā auctorītās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Veneti plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgāre cōnsue-runt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque aperti paucis portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsi, omnēs fērē quī eō mari úti
cōnsuērunt habent vectīgālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendi Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs existimābant.

Other states do the same and demand back their hostages

Hōrum auctōritāte finitimi adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōnsilia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam à maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servītūtem perferre mālint. Omniōrē maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnēm lēgātionem ad P. Crassum mittunt: ‘Si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.’

Caesar orders a fleet to be built and hastens to the scene

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Īceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā insti-
tuī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparāri iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātis, ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

The Veneti and their neighbors prepare for war

20 Veneti reliquaeque item civitātēs cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admississent intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānc tum inviolā-
tumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniec-
tōs, prō magnitūdine periculi bellum parāre, et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hoc maiōre spē quod multum nātūrā locī confidēbant.
They have great confidence in their natural advantages

Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuāriis, nāvigationēm impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllum facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vāda, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigationem in conclusō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Oceānō perspicībant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sībi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablīntēs, Mena-piōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Cæsar has good reasons for undertaking this war

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendi quās supra ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant:.iniūria retentōrum equītum Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post dēditionem, dēfectō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, in primīs né hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sībi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegēret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rébus studēre et ad bellum mōbilīter celeriterque excitāri, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condicionem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūres civitātēs cōnspirārent, partiendum sībi ac lātius distribuen-dum exercitum putāvit.
He divides his forces to keep the rest of Gaul loyal

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum légātum in Trēverōs, qui proximi flūmini Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō continent; Germānōsque, qui auxiliō à Gallis accessitī dicēbantur, si per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeant. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs xii et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītānīam proficiscī iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Gallīam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum légātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Corīsōlitās Lexoviōsque mittit, qui eam manum distinen-dam cūret.

Brutus is placed in command of the fleet

D. Brūtum adulēscemtē classi Gallicisqve nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus conveniēre iusserat, praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficiscī iubet. Ipse cō pedestribus cōpiōs contendit.

The town sites of the Veneti are described

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidiōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiīisque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod accidit semper hōrārum xii spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadis adflictārentur.

The difficulty of storming them

Ita utrāque rē oppidiōrum oppugnātiō impedīēbātur; ac sī quandō— magnītūdine operis forte superāti, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque his oppidī moenibus adaequātīs— despērāre fortūnis suis ceoperant, magnō numerō nāvium
adpulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua déportā-
bant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus
isdem opportūnitātibus loci défendēbant. Haec eō facilius
magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tem-
pestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque aperto 5
mari, magnis aestibus, rāris ac prope nūllis portibus, diiffi-
cultās nāvigandi.

The ships of the Veneti

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-
taeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum
nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere pos-
sent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad mag-
nitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātæ; nāvēs
tōtae factae ex rōbere ad quamvis vim et contumēliam per-
ferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōn-
fixa clāvis ferreis digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō 15
fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque
tenui ter cōnfectae, sive propter inopiam līni atque eius ūsūs
inscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērisimile) quod tantās
tempestātēs Oceani tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac
tanta onera nāvium regi vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse 20
arbitrābantur.

They are better adapted to existing conditions than those
of the Romans

Cum his nāvibus nostrae classī eius modi congressus erat ut
ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō locī
nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum, illīs essent aptōra et accommoda-
tiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta 25
in eīs erat firmitūdō — neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum
adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continē-
bantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō
dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōnsis-
rent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quā-
rum rērum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

*The Roman fleet arrives and is attacked by the Veneti*

14. Complūribus expugnātis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit
frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmi, neque hostium fugam captis

opprdīs reprimī neque eis nocēri posse, statuit exspectan-
dam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus
visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omni
genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs
adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, qui classī praer-
erat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae
nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstabat quid agerent aut quam ra-
tiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocēri nōn posse
cognōverant; turribus autem excītātis, tamen hās altitūdō
puppium ex barbaris nāvibus superābat; ut neque ex infere- riōre locō satis commodē tēla adigi possent et missa à Gallis gravius acciderent.

A Roman device disables the ships of the enemy

Una erat magnō ūsui rēs praeparāta à nostris,—falcēs praecātūae insertae adfixaeque longuriis, nōn absimili fōrmā mūrálium falcium. His cum fūnēs quī antennās ad mālōs dēstīnābant comprehēnsi adductique erant, nāvigīō rēmis incitātō praeerumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis antennae necessāriō coincidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentīisque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētūr. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant atque eō magis quod in cōnspectū Caesāris atque omnis exercūtūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercītū tenēbantur.

The Romans win the victory and capture the hostile ships

Disiectīs (ut diximus) antennīs, cum singulās binae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vi trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam bar- barī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum ei rei nūllum reperīrētūr auxiliūm, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstītit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotiōnem cōnfi cientiūmd maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectāti expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētūr.
16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aētātis in quibus aliquid cōnsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē recipèrent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.
"RELIQUOS SUB CORONA VENDIDIT"

(See page 94, line 10)
The War with the Venelli

Sabinus, arriving among the Venelli, finds them hostile

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus, cum eis cópiis quás à Caesare accéperat, in finés Venellórum pervénit. His praerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eárum omnium civitátem quae défécerant, ex quibus exercitum magnáisque cópiáisque coégerat; atque his paúcis diēbus Aulérci Ebuovicês Lexoviique senátu suo interfecísti, quod auctóres bellí esse nólébant, portás clausúrunt sǽque cum Viridovice consúnxerunt, magnaque praeterea multitúdo undique ex Galliâ perditórum hominum latrónumque convénerat, et quós spés praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agrí cultúrā et cotidiánō labóre sǽvocábát.

He leads the Gauls to the belief that he is afraid

Sabinus idóneō omnibus rébus locó castris sésē teñébat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duórum milium spatió cónsédisset cotidiéque prōductis cópiis pugnandi potestátem faceret, ut iam nón sólum hostibus in contemptióinem Sabinus veníret sed etiam nostrórum militúm vocíbus nón nihil carperétur; tantamque opiniónum timóris praebuit ut iam ad vallum castrórum hostés accédere audérent. Id eā dē causā fáciébat quod cum tantá multitúdine hostium, praeśertim ëo absente quí summam imperi tenēret, nisi æquó locó aut opporëunitáte aliquá datā, lēgató dimicandum nón exístimábát.

He strengthens this belief by a stratagem

edocet. Qui ubi pró perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetis premātur docet: 'Neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendi causā proficiscātur.' Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occasiōnem negotī bene gerendi āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īri oportēre.

Thoroughly convinced, they prepare an immediate attack

Multae rēs ad hoc cōsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabini cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum diligenter ab eis erat prōvisum, spēs Venetici belli, et quod fērē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dimittunt quam ab eis sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque conlectīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pērgunt.

They rush to the camp, where they arrive exhausted

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, examinātique pervēnerunt.

Sabinus suddenly sallies forth and defeats them

Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte loci, hostium inscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integris
viriibus militēs nostri cōnsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectāti, paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt.

Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvāli pugnā Sābinus et dē Sabīni victōriā Caesār est certior factus; civitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

THE WAR IN AQUITANIA

_Crassus is attacked by the Sotiates_

He defeats them and they surrender

21. Pugnātum est diū atque àcriter, cum Sōtiātēs superió-ribus victōriīs frētī in sua virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem posītam putārent; nostri autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquis legiōnibus, adulēscentulo duce, efficere possent per-
spici cuperent; tandem cōnfeci volneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfecō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turresque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temp-
tātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctis (cuius rei sunt longē perītissimī Aquitānī, propterēa quod multis locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentiā nostrōrum nihil īs rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Cras-
sīum mittunt, sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī, faciunt.

Adiatunnus and his brothers in arms

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, qui summam imperi tenē-
bat, cum dc dēvōtīs, quōs illī solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō, uti omnibus in vita commodīs ūnā cum eis fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint; si quid īs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sībi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfecō cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum īs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab ea parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eādem dēditionis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.
Other hostile tribes gather their armies against Crassus


Crassus believes that conditions demand an immediate action

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit,—suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile didūci, hostem et vagāri et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praeсидi relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sībi supportāri, in diēs hostīum numerum augēri,—nōn cunctandum existimāvit quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellexit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

Crassus offers battle, but the enemy declines

24. Prīmā lūce productīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē instītūtā, auxiliīs in médiam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsili caperent exspectābat. Iliī, etsī propter multitūdinem et vete rem bellī gloriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs
viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potiri; et, si propter inopiam rei frumentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis īnfīrmīōrēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hoc cōnsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiis, sēsē castris tenēbant.

Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opinīōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacrīōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtiūs nōn oportēre quin ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupidientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

**Crassus attacks the enemy’s camp**

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlis coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitionibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat) lapidībus tēlisque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus compor-
tandīs speciem atque opinīōnem pugnantium praebērent; cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōrē missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circum-
itīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse diligentīā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre.

**A Roman force surprises the camp in the rear**

26. Crassus equitūm praeffectōs cohortātus ut magnīs prae-
miis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī velit os-
tendīt. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eis cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intritae ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspici possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās diximus mūnitionēs pervēnērunt, atque his prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab his vidērī aut quid rei gerētur cognōscī posset.
The enemy abandon their camp and flee

Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostri redintegrātīs viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōnsuēvit, acrius impugnāre coepérunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, déspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per münitioṇēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis 5 campis cōnsectātus, ex milium l numerō, quae ex Aquitānīa Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstantābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the other Aquitanian tribes now surrender

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquītānīae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarīc bellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiānīi, Vocātēs, Tarsūtēs, Elusātēs, Gaiēs, Auscī, Garumnīi, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucēs ultimae nātiō- nēs anni tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

CAESAR’S EXPEDITION TO THE NORTH

Caesar marches against the Morini and Menapii

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam 15 aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morīnī Menapiique superērant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīssissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōn- fici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. 20

They hide in the forests and swamps

Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proelīo contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quā- rum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre
instituisset neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in oper nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et ē nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et complūribus interfectīs locīs impeditiōribus locīs secūti paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

Violent storms put an end to further action

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īstituit, et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque militibus a latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō dūrumque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte magnō spatii paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma inpedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās pēterērunt. Eius modi sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae uti opus necessāri intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtiōs sub pe-libus militēs contińērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisique incēnssis, Caesar exercitus redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitāribus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs conlocāvī.
CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 55 B.C.

This map shows also the location of the various camps where the divisions of Caesar’s forces were quartered after the campaign of 54 B.C. (see Book V, chapters 24 and 25)
BOOK IV

CAESAR'S FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE GERMANS IN GAUL

Harassed by the Suebi, two German tribes invade Gaul

Harassed by the Suebi, two German tribes invade Gaul

AQUAE secūta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeīō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tenceterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagitāti bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Strength and customs of the Suebi

immāni corporum magnitudine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locēs frigidissimīs neque vestītūs praetēr pellēs habērent quīcquām, quārum propter exiguitātem magnā est corporīs pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their relations with traders

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellarī cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō úllam rem ad sē importāri désiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn útuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmiā, hacc cotidiānā exercitātiōne, summi ut sint labōris, efficiunt.

Their horsemanship. Their sobriety

Equestrībus proelīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedībus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celerīter, cum ûsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquām aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equītum quamvis paucī adire audent.
They destroy and oppress their neighbors

3. Publicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc re significāri magnum numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter milia passuum centum agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; ei paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hū-māniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitātem Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfacti. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sībi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri are checked at the Rhine by the Menapii

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencteri, quōs supra diximus, qui complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrī expulsi et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagāti ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapīi incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūmi-nīs agrōs aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis aditū perterriti, ex eis aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant.
By a ruse they succeed in crossing into Gaul

Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regionēsque simulāvērunt, et tridui viam pōgressi rūrsus revertērunt, atque, omni hoc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, insciōs inopinantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt; qui, dē Germanōrum discessū per explōratōrēs certiōrēs factī, sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectī nāvi-busque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cópiis aluērunt.

Caesar distrusts the Gauls because of their fickle character

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, uti et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quīisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quae rērant; et mercātōrēs in oppidis volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti, dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

He finds proof of Gallic disloyalty and resolves on war with Germany

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā, Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficisci-tur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta
cognövit: missäs lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllis civitātibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātiūs iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condūsōrum, qui sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. 5 Principibus Galliae évocātīs Caesar ea quae cognōverat dis-simulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animis permulsis et cōnfirmātis, equitātūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

The German envoys ask Caesar for lands in Gaul

7. Re frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctis, iter in 10 ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgāti ab eis vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: 'Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferee neque tamen recūsāre, si lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōn- 15 suētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecāri. Haec tamen dīcere: vēnisse invi-tōs, ēiectōs domō; si suam grātiam Rōmānī velīnt, posse eis útilēs esse amīcōs; vel sībi agrōs attribuant vel patiāntur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnis Suēbīs 20 concēdere, quibus nē dī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

Caesar refuses and orders them to leave the country

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: 'Sībī nūllam cum his amicitiam esse posse, 25 si in Gallīā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs finēs tuēri nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Gallīā vacāre agrōs qui dari tantae praesertim multitūdīni sine
iniūriā possint; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgāti apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiis imperātūrum.'

The envoys seek delay

5 9. Lēgāti haec sē ad suōs relatūrōs dixērunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; interēā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrāri posse dixit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandiique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectāri equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel-lātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batavōrum, neque longius inde milibus passuum lxxx in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontīs, qui Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuatium, Helvētīorum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et ubi 20 Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs dēfluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulis effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīisque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, — multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

The envoys return. More parleying to gain time

25 11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum xii milibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgāti revertuntur; qui in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur
ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant uti ad eōs equitēs qui agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendi; quōrum si principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condicione quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ēōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīdūi spatium dare.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīdūi morā interpositā equitēs eōrum qui abessent reverteren-
tur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum III aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frec-
quentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs qui cum omni equitātū antecesserant mittit qui nūntiārent nē hostēs proelīo lacesserent; et, si ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

A treacherous attack is made on the Roman cavalry

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius dccc equitēs habērent, quod ei qui frūmentandi causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiis erat ab hīs petitūs, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus his resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossisque equis complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.
In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur III et lxx; in his vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitanus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuīs avus in civitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ab senātū, nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātri inter-clusō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs volneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, qui iam proeliō excesserat, procul ānimadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfactus est.

Cæsār dīcēt that the situation demands stern measures

Hoc factō proeliō, Cæsār neque iam sībi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condicionēs accipiendās arbitrabātur ab eis qui, per dolum atque insidiās petitā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque revertereōtur, summāe dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallōrum inōrmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātīs essent coāsecūti, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spati dandum existimābat.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre communicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, oppor-tūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridē eius diēi māne āedem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ësi Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitis, ad eum in castra vēnē-runt: simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandi sūi causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium pridē commi-sissent; simul ut, si quid possent, dē indūtiis fallendō impe-trārent. Quōs sībi Cæsār oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinērī iussit;
ipse omnès cōpiās castrīs ēduīt equitātumque, quod recentī
proelīō perterrītum esse existīmābat, agmen subsequit iussit.

_He then makes a quick march on the German camp and surprises it_

14. Acīē triplicī institūtā et celeriter viii milium itinere
cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur
Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterrītī, 5
et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque
cōnsili habendi neque arma cāpiendi spatiō datō, perturbantur,
cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an
fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū
et concursū significārētur, militēs nostrī pristīnī diēī perfidiā
10 incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma
cāpere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter
caursos impedimentaque proelium commiṣērunt; at reliqua
multitudō puerōrum mulierumque—nam cum omnibus suīs
domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant—passim fugere 15
coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

_The Germans are thoroughly demoralized and many perish_

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs inter-
fici vidērent, armīs abiectīs signīisque militāribus relictīs sē
ex castrīs ēiecrērunt, et cum ad cōnfluidentem Mosae et
Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēsperātā, magnō numerō 20
interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praeceptāvērunt; atque ibi
tīmōre, lassitūdine, vi flūminis oppressi periērunt. Nostri
ad unum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs volnerātīs, ex tanti
bellī tīmōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx milium
fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eis quōs in castrīs 25
retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cru-
ciātūsque Gallōrum verītī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre
sē apud eum velle dixērunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.
Caesar's reasons for believing that he ought to cross the Rhine


Accessīt etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tenc-terōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi præedandi frūmentandique causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēpērat sēque cum eis coniūnxe rat. Ad quōs cum Caesār nūntiōs misisset qui postulārent eōs qui sībi Galliaeque belliōm intulissent sībi dēderent, respondērunt: 'Populi Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr sūi quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?'

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ārābant ut sībi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbis premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblicae prohibērēt, exercītum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sībi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opinīōnem eius exercītūs, Ario visīō pulso et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultīmās Germānō-rum nātiōnēs, uti opinīōne et amicitīa populi Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercītum pollicēbantur.
He decides to bridge the river

17. Caesar his de causis quas commemoravi Rhenum transire decretaverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās faciendi pontis propōnēbatur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem,
altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat.

*The plan of the bridge*

Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsqipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dimēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis, intervāllo pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — eis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllo pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūntūra distābat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam partem revīncītis, tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō maiōr vis aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contextēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, si arborum trunci sive nāvēs dēiciendi operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vis minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

*Caesar crosses the bridge and invades Germany*

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportāri, omni opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgāti
veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberā-liter respondet obsidēsque ad sē adducī iuβet. At Sugaṃbri, ex eō tempore quō pōns institūtī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencērīs atque Usipetībus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaeque omnia exportā-5 verant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abiderant.

_The invasion fills the Germans with terror_

19. Cæsar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omni-bus vicīs aedificiīisque incēnsīs frūmentīisque succīsis, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab eis cognōvit: 'Suebōs, 10 posteāquam per explōrātorēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsisse, uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium 15 fēre regionum eārum quās Suebi obtinerent; hic Rōmānō-rum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse.'

_Cæsar returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge_

Quod ubi Cæsar comperit, omnibus eis rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Ger-mānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugaṃbros ulciserētur, ut Ubiōs 20 obsidīōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō xviii trāns Rhēnum cōn-sūmpťis, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.
THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

Caesar decides to invade Britain

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentrīōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsūi fore arbitrābātur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, adītūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognīta. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adīt quisquam, neque eis ipsīs quīcquam praeter ōram marītimam atque ēās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Gallīās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnītūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus instītūtis ūterentur, neque qui essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.

He sends Volusenius to reconnoiter and Commius as a peace envoy


25 Interim cōnsiliō eīus cognītō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae civitātibus ad eum lēgāti veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi
Rōmāni obtemperāre. Quibus auditis, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in ēa sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ībi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sībi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cuiusque auctōritās in ēis regionibus magni habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmāni fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volu-sēnus perspectis regionibus quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, quī nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quintō ēdī ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ībi perspexisset renūntiat.

While the ships are gathering, the Morini surrender

22. Dum in ēis locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgāti vēnē-runt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod
hominēs barbari et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperiti bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sī CAesar satis opportūnē acci-
disse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque belli gerendi propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum eis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit.

The muster of the fleet and disposition of the forces

Navibus circiter lxxx onerārii coāctis, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestīri, légātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant xviii onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum viii ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equītibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Tituriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottaē légātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum légātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. Sulpiciūm Rūfum légātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

Caesar crosses the channel and seeks a good landing place

23. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā fērē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armā-
tās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita monti-
bus angustē mare continēbātur uti ex locīs superiōribus in
litus tēlum adīgi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō conveni- rent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīisque militūm convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendīt, monuitque, ut reī militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulāreント

THE CLIFFS OF DOVER

(ut quae celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eis administrārentur. His dimissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter milia pas- suum viī ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōnstituit.
The Britons oppose the landing of the Romans

24. At barbari, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō
equitātū et essedāriis, quo plērumque genere in proeliis ūti
cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiis subsecūti nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi
prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod

A LARGE CATAPULT (*TORMENTUM*)

5 nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituí nōn pote-
rant; militibus autem, ignōtis locis, impeditīs manibus, magnō
et gravi onere armōrum pressīs, simul et dē nāvibus désili-
endum et in fluctibus cōnsistentendum et cum hostibus erat pug-
nandum; cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī,
10 omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locis, audāctēr tēla con-
icerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostri
The Romans land and the Britons flee


British envoys sue for peace. Caesar grants it

27. Hostēs proelīō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam prae mísse. Hunc illī ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Cae- saris mandātā déferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proelīō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt.

Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missī pacem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent,
ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quorum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis accessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. Interea suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitātēsque suās Caesari commendāre coepērunt.

A storm drives back the cavalry transports

28. His rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sólis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō déicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctībus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Wind and tide dash the fleet on the British coast

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, qui diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar ā āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et āonerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātēs, tempestās adflictābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquaē cum essent—fūnibus, ancorīs reliquisque armāmentīs āmīsīs—ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent, et omnia deērant
These disasters encourage the Britons to renew hostilities

30. Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equītēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānis deēsse intellegērent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscērent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōūs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellōne factā, frūmentō commealūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod, his superātīs aut rēditū interclūsis, nēminem postea bellī infe rendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar suspects their design and prepares accordingly

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen, et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōnferēbat, et quae gravissimē adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant īsui ex continentī comportāri iūbēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētūr, xii nāvibus āmissīs, reliquis ut nāvīgāri satis commodē posset effēcit.
Part of his men gather grain, others guard the camp

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuētūdine ūnā frumentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — ei qui pró portis castrōrum in statīōne erant Caesari nūntiāvērunt 5 pulverem maiōrem quam consuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidēri quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

The Britons attack a foraging party

Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliqvid novī á barbarīs initum cōnsili, cohortēs quae in statīōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in statīōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō longius á castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendo occupātōs subitō adorti, paucis interfecīs reliquōs incertis Ārdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The Britons' mode of fighting with war chariots

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnāe. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ārdinis plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātīm ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, si illī á multītūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum
habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum usū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt uti in déclivi ac praecipīti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevi moderāri ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnṣuērint.

The foragers are rescued. The Britons gather a great army

34. Quibus rébus perturbātis nostrīs novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt.  
Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevi tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, qui erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt.

Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem a pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suīs praedicāvērunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandi facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castrīs expulīssent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rébus celerīter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

They are defeated and their country is laid waste

35. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, si essent hostēs pulsi, celeritāte periculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstitūtī. Commissō proelīō diūtius nostrōrum militūm impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt
REVOLT OF THE MORINI AND MENAPII

The Morini attack Caesar's troops

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācētōs reliquerat, spē praedae ad-ductī primō nōn ita magnō suorum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum 25
illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celerīter ad clāmōrem homīnum circiter milia vi convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equītātum suīs auxīliō misit. Interim nostrī militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius 5 hōris iii fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucīs volneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex his occiderunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armīs tergā vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.
They are subdued. The Menapii hide away

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eis legiōnibus quās ex Britannia redūxerat in Morinōs, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē recipierent non habērent (quō perfugīō superiōre annō erant īūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgāti, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificīs incēnīsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Close of the campaign

Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnūm hiberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omninō civitātēs ex Britannia obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesāris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.
BOOK V

CAESAR'S FIFTH CAMPAIGN, 54 B.C.

THE REBELLION IN NORTHERN GAUL

Summary of Chapters 1–39

Cæsar contemplates a second invasion of Britain in the following spring (54 B.C.). He orders the building of a suitable fleet, and goes to northern Italy and thence to Illyricum to settle disturbances there (1). On his return to Gaul he has the new fleet assemble at Port Itius. Trouble among the Treveri calls him thither (2). Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, rival chiefs of the Treveri, appeal to him (3). He settles the dispute in favor of Cingetorix (4).

Cæsar's troops assemble at Port Itius (5).

Dumnorix, the crafty and ambitious Hæduan, again appears and tries to make trouble (6). Cæsar is on his guard. Dumnorix flees, but is captured and put to death (7).

Cæsar sails for Britain with more than eight hundred ships. The natives withdraw from the coast (8). Cæsar lands, and drives the Britons out of their stronghold (9). A storm damages the fleet (10). Cæsar has the ships hastily repaired, and sends word to Labienus, whom he left on the continent, to build others (11).

Cæsar describes the inhabitants of Britain and the resources of the country (12). He tells the shape and the size of the island (13). He describes the customs of the people (14). He again defeats the Britons (15). He describes their methods of fighting (16). He again defeats them (17). He crosses the Thames (18). Various tribes yield to him (19–22).

Cæsar returns to Gaul and distributes his army for the winter (23, 24; the camps are shown on the map facing page 103). Fresh risings occur among the Gauls, with reverses for the Romans (25–37).

Ambiorix, a prince of the Eburones, persuades the Aduatuci and Nervii to join the revolt (38). A large force attacks the camp of Quintus Cicero, the orator's brother (39).
THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.
Cicero makes vigorous preparations for resistance

Mittuntur ad Caesarem confessim ab Cicerōne litterae, magnis prōpositis praemiis si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex materiā quam mūnitōnis causā comportāverant turres admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō die multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne quā prīdiē resistitur: hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nulla pars noctūris temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegris, nōn volnerātīs 10 facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proxīmi diēi oppugnatiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praecūstae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur; pinnae lōricalēque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum 15 quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi par cere cōgerētur.

The Nervian chiefs try to persuade Cicero to retire. He refuses

41. Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermōnis adītum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloquī sēsē velle dicunt. Factā potestāte, eadem 20 quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: 'Omnem esse in armīs Galliām, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse, Caesariis reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnāri.' Addunt etiam dē Sabinī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fidei faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dicunt, si quicquam ab eis praesidi spērent qui 25 suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hoc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere consuetūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs
per sē incolunibus ex hibernis discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficiscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: 'Nōn esse consuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condicīōnem; si ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrāturōs.'

They lay siege to the camp

42. Ab hāc spē repulsi Nervii vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum quindecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum consuētūdine ā nōbis cognōverant et quōsdam dē exercītū nactī captīvīs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferramentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōsci potuit; nam minus hōris tribus milium passuum xv in cir-
cuitū mūnitionēm perfēcerunt. Reliquīisque diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās iīdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coeprērunt.

They make a furious assault, which is gallantly resisted

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē máximō coortō ventō ferventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentiēs erant tēctae, iacere coeprērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et venti magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulerunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sic uti partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere coeprērunt. At tanta militūm virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta
atque omnēs fortūnās conflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo
dēmigrādī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene
nē respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnēs ācerrimē
fortissimēque pugnārent. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissi-
mus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maxi-
mus numerus hostīum volnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut
sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant recessumque primīs ultīmi
nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam
locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis
centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque 1c
omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs si introire vel-
lent vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō.
Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectās dēturbātī turrisque
succēnsa est.

**Rivalry of two centurions**

44. [Erant in ea legiōne fortissimi virī, centuriōnēs, qui 15
iam prīmis ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pulō et L. Vore-
nus. Hi perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter
alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summis simul-
tātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pulō, cum ācerrimē ad
aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās?” Hic
diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiis iūdicābit.” Haec cum dixisset,
prōcēdit extrā mūnitionēs, quàque pars hostīum cōnfertis-
sima est visa inrumpit. Nē Vorenus quidem sēsē tum vāllō
continet, sed omnium veritus existimātiōnem subsequitur. 25
Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pulō pilum in hostēs immittit atque
ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trācit; quō percussō et
exanimātō hunc scūtis prōtegunt hostēs, in illum universi
tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfi-
gitur scūtum Pulōni et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Āvertit 30
c毋s vгinnam et gladium educere conanti dextram
moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorенus et labорanti subvenit. Ad hunc
se confestim a Pулоне omnis multitudo convertit; illum
5 verutn transfixum arbitrantur. Gladiо comminus rem gerit
Vorenus atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum prope//lit;
dum cupidius Instat, in locum dieiectus inferiorem concludit.
Huic rursus circumvento subsidium fert Pуло, atque
incolumes compluribus interfectis summa cum laude sesе intrа
10 munitionis recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine
utrumque versavit ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique
esset, neque diiudicari posset uter utri virtute anteferendus
videretur.

Summary of Chapters 45-47

Cicero makes efforts to inform Cæsar of his danger; but the letters
are intercepted, and the messengers are put to death. After many days,
when Cicero's forces are reduced almost to the last extremity, a message
finally reaches Cæsar through a slave (45).

Cæsar sends directions to his lieutenants. He bids Crassus to come
to him at once with one legion. He orders Fabius, with another legion,
to advance into the territory of the Atrebates, where he intends to join
him on the march. He sends word to Labienus to take one legion and
proceed to the territory of the Nervii, if he thinks it wise to do so (46).

Cæsar advances, and meets Crassus, whom he leaves in command at
Samarobriva (now Amiens), an important center of supplies. Continu-
ing his march, he is joined by Fabius. Labienus writes to Cæsar of the
danger in withdrawing one of his legions from winter quarters. He
describes what has taken place among the Eburones, and says that he
is threatened by the forces of the Treveri (47).

How a letter is conveyed to Cicero

48. Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium
15 legiorum dieiectus ad duas reciderat, tamen unum com-
muni salutl auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis

The Gauls abandon the siege and march against Caesar, who avoids a conflict

49. Gallī rē cognītā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relin-quunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt; haec erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem supra dēmōnstrāvimus repetit qui litterās ad Caesarem déferat; hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litterīs hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certīōrēs eōisque ad dimicandum animō cōnfirmat. Posterō die lūce primā movet castra, et circiter milia passuum III prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostīum cōnspicātur. Erat magnī periculi rēs tantūlis cōpiīs iniquō locō dimicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem
136 THE GALlic WAR—BOOK V

sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte existimābat. Cōnsidit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commū-

nit. Atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium vii, praeeritum nullis cum impediōmentis, tamen

5 angustiis viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim

speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dimissīs explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

Summary of Chapters 50 and 51

Mere skirmishes take place between the cavalry; for the Gauls are awaiting reënforcements, and Cæsar, through a pretense of fear, tries to draw the enemy to his own ground. At daybreak the Gallic cavalry approaches Cæsar’s camp, and engages with his cavalry. Cæsar orders his cavalry to yield and retire to the camp, while throughout the camp he causes a display of fear (50).

The Gauls are now tempted to give battle, and boldly attack the camp. Cæsar orders a general sally, and routs the enemy with great loss (51).

Cæsar reaches the camp of Cicerōnem, and congratulates him and his men on their gallant defense

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque

to intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dētrimentō illōrum

locum relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem
dī ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institutās turrēs, testūdinēs

mūnitionēsque hostium admirātur; prōductā legiōne cog-
noscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine

15 volnere. Ex his omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum

periculō et quantâ virtūte rēs sint administrātæ. Cicerō-
nem prō eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centurionēs

singillātim tribūnōsque milītum appellat, quōrum ēgregiām

fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū
Sabini et Cotta certius ex captīvis cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habiā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrimentum culpā et temeritāte lēgāti sit acceptum, hōc aequōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.

Summary of Chapters 53–58

The report of Cæsar’s victory reaches Labienus. When the Treveri hear what has taken place, Indutiomarus, their chief, defers his intended attack on Labienus. All signs now point to a general uprising of the Gauls, and Cæsar decides to spend the winter with his army (53). Cæsar calls the chiefs of the states to him, and is able to restrain a large part of Gaul; but the Senones and other tribes are ready to revolt (54). The Treveri, led by Indutiomarus, lose no time in making preparations (55). Many tribes join Indutiomarus, and he decides to attack Labienus (56). Labienus acts cautiously. He keeps his forces within his fortifications, and uses whatever means he has to feign fear (57). By an unexpected sally he puts the enemy to flight. Indutiomarus is captured and slain. The forces of the Eburones and Nervii withdraw, and Gaul becomes more peaceful (58).
BOOK VI

CÆSAR'S SIXTH CAMPAIGN, 53 B.C.

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

The campaign of 54 B.C. had been a series of disappointments and reverses. The expedition to Britain had been only moderately successful and led to no permanent results. On his return Cæsar had found Gaul in a condition of revolt. In spite of some successes the advantage had been, on the whole, with the Gauls, and they had gained fresh hope in their struggle for independence. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they received support from across the Rhine, a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check. His plans therefore included not only an invasion of the territory of the northern states, but also a second expedition into Germany.

Summary of Chapters 1–8

On account of the critical situation in Gaul, Cæsar sends recruiting officers to Italy to raise fresh levies, and also requests Pompey, his fellow triumvir, to send him the forces which were enlisted during his consulship in Cisalpine Gaul. He particularly desires these reinforcements to impress the Gauls with the strength and resources of Rome. In response to his request three more legions are added to his forces in Gaul (1). Cæsar learns what the Treveri and others are doing, and hastens his plans (2).

His first move is a swift inroad into the territory of the Nervii, whose fields he lays waste. Then he sets out against the Senones and Carnutes, and receives the submission of both states without a battle (3, 4). He next makes a swift march without baggage into the country of the Menapii, the most northerly of the Gallic peoples, and the ones who alone have failed to send ambassadors to him. They withdraw into their swamps and forests, but Cæsar follows them, ravaging their country, until ambassadors are sent to make peace (5, 6).

While Cæsar is thus engaged, the Treveri make preparation to attack Labienus, who is wintering in their territories. Timely reinforcements
permit Labienus to assume the offensive. He attacks the Treveri, while they are waiting for promised help from the Germans, and after destroying their forces takes possession of their country (7, 8).

Cæsar builds his second bridge across the Rhine

Cæsar postquam ex Menapiis in Trèverös vēnit, duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germāni auxilia contrā sē Trèverīs miserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum 5 trādūxerat facere pontem iństituit. Nōtā atque iństitūtā ratiōne, magnō militum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur.

He crosses, and spares the Ubii

Firmō in Trèverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab his subītō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubīi, qui ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditionem 10
venerant, purgandī sui causā ad eum légātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam: petunt atque ērant ut sībi parcat, nē commūni odiō Germanōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbis auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; adītūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquirīt.

*The Ubii inform Caesar that the Suebi are assembling their forces*

**10.** Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eis nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cognītis rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligiūt, Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperiōtōs homīnēs, inopīa cībāriōrum adductōs, ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse dēduīci; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

*Scouts report that the Suebi have retreated to the Bacenis forest*

Illī imperātā faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissis referunt: 'Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntii dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrunique cōpiis quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi infinitā magnitudine, quae appellētur Bācenīs; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriis incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad eis silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.'
SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

A digression on the Gauls and Germans is announced

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur de Galliae Germāniaeque moribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

The political organization of the Gauls

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus civitātibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōruminque redeat. Idque eius rei causā antiquitus īstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egoēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ûllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitātēs divisae sunt in duās partēs.

The factional struggle between the Hēduī and Sēquanī

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Hēduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hi, cum per sē minus valērent (quod summā auctōritās antiquitus erat in Hēduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlæ), Germānos atque Arioivismum sībi adiūnxeuerant, eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perduxerant. Proelīis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omni nōbilitāte Hēduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Hēduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab his principum filiōs acciperent, et públicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanīs cōnsili initūrōs, et partem finitimi agrī per vim
occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus, Diviciācus auxili petendi causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā rē redierat.

*The favor of Caesar gives the Hāedui the supremacy*

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus 5 Hāeduis redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod ei, quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam adgregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquis rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī principātum dimiserant.

*The Remi hold the second place*

10 In eōrum locum Rēmi successerant; quōs quod adae-
quāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, ei quī propter veterēs inimicitiās nūllō modō cum Hāeduisconiungi pote-
rant sē Rēmis in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritā-
15 tem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē princi-
pēs habērentur Hāedui, secundum locum dignitātis Rēnī obtinērent.

*The Gallic nobility and the common people*

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliquō sunt nu-
merō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene
20 servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibē-
tur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnītū-
dine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in
servitūtem dicant nōbilitibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia
sunt iūra quae dominis in servōs. Sed dē his duōbus
25 generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equītum.
The druids hold the religious and judicial power

Ille rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur. Ad eos magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causā concurririt, magnōque hi sunt apud eós honōre. Nam fere dé omnibus contrōversiis publicis privatisque constituent; et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenasque constituint; si qui aut privātus aut populus eorum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eós est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numerō impiōrum ac sceleratōrum habentur, his omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eorum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgione incommodi accipiatur, neque eīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ullus commūnicātur.

Their organization and their meetings

His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hoc mortuō, aut sī qui ex reliquis excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, si sunt plurēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs, dē principātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō totius Galliae media habētur, cōnsidunt in locō consecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, qui contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciāisque pārent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslātā existimātur; et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

Their prerogatives and system of education

14. Druidēs ā bello abesse consuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquis pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiis et suā
sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos non nulli vicennos in disciplinam permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis feri rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur: quod neque in volumgus disciplinam efferiri velint neque eos qui discunt litteris confisos minus memoriae studere — quod feri plerisque accidit ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant.

Their beliefs

In primis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios; atque hoc maximè ad virtutem excitari putant metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et iuventuti tradunt.

The knights do the fighting

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquid bellum incidit (quod feri ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accedere solèbat, uti aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut inlatae propulsarent), omnès in bellò versantur; atque eorum ut quique est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque novèrunt.

The Gauls are superstitious and offer human sacrifices

16. Natiō est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religiöni- bus; atque ob eam causam qui sunt affecti graviöribus morbis quique in proelis periculisque versantur, aut pro
A DRUID SACRIFICE
SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolāturōs vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur; quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācāri arbitrantur; públicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Alī immānī magnitūdīne simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vivīs hominibus compleant; quibus succēnsis circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplīcia eōrum qui in fūrtō aut latrócinio aut alīā noxiā 'sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dis immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplīcia dēscendunt.

The gods whom the Gauls worship


To Mars they give the spoils of war

18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dite patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicit. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātāles et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequatur.

There is no open association between boys and their fathers

In reliquis vitae institūtis hōc fērē ab reliquis differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adulēverunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerīli aētāte in pūblīco in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage customs and funeral rites

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus communīcant. Huius omnis pecūniāeconiunctīm ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sīcūt in liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, si rēs in suspicīōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestīōnem habent, et si compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciatās interficiunt.

Funera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivis cordi fuisset arbitrantur in ignem inferrunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō supra hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.
All news is first reported to the magistrates

20. Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgībus sānc tum, si quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnī cet; quod saepe homīnēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facīnus impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognītum est. Magistrātūs quae visa sunt occultant; quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multītūdīni prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loqui nōn concēditur.

The customs of the Germans are very different from those of the Gaules


Agriculture is discouraged. Land is held in common and apportioned yearly by the magistrates and leading men

22. Agri cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāsēō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agri modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque homīnum, quīque ūnā coīērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuētūdine
capit studium belli gerendi agri cultura commutent; ne lato fines parare studeant potentioris atque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, quae ex re factioines dissensionesque nascentur; ut animi aequitatem plèbem continent, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

They glory in wide frontiers of deserted land

23. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam lатissimē circum se vastatis finibus solitūdinēs habere. Hoc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agris finitimōs cedere, neque quemquam prope se audere consistere: simul hoc se fore tūtiōres arbitrantur, repentinae incursiōnis timōre sublātō.

They give great power to their chiefs

Cum bellum civitās aut inlatum défendit aut infert, magistrātus qui ei bellō praesint, et vitae necisque habeant potestātem, délīguntur. In pace nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

They rob outsiders, but respect guests

Latrocinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercentiae ac desidiae minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit se ducem fore, qui sequi velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt et quod causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicitur, atque a multitūdine conlaudantur; qui ex his secūti non sunt in désertōrum ac prōditōrum numero ducunt omniumque his rèrum postea
EARLY GERMANS

"Vita omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōnsistit".
The Gauls were once more valorous than the Germans, and sent colonies across the Rhine; but now they are inferior to them (24). The Hercynian forest and its animals are described (25–28).

Caesar returns to Gaul and proceeds against Ambiorix, who has the good fortune to escape (29, 30). The forces of Ambiorix disband, and withdraw to the forest and marshes (31).

Caesar marches to Aduatuca, and puts Quintus Cicero in command there (32). He then divides his forces, and proceeds to search for Ambiorix (33). Having learned of the difficulties before him, he seeks alliance with Gallic tribes against the Eburones, the people of Ambiorix (34).

The Sugambri, a German tribe near the Rhine, cross the river to join in plundering the Eburones, and advance toward Cicero’s camp (35). Cicero unwisely sends out large numbers of his men to forage (36). The Germans assault the camp and cause a panic (37). Publius Sextius Baculus again distinguishes himself (38). The foragers return, and reach the camp with some difficulty and loss (39, 40). The Germans lose hope and withdraw. Caesar arrives. Ambiorix again escapes (41, 42).

Caesar inflicts further military severities on the resisting tribes. He then distributes his legions in winter quarters and sets out for Italy (43, 44).
BOOK VII

CAESAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN, 52 B.C.

THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX

General movement among the Gauls for independence

QUIETÂ Galliâ Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdi caede; dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italīae coniūrārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliām Trānsalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adsingunt rūmōribus Gallī (quod rēs poscere vidēbātur) retinēri urbānō mōtō Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hāc impulsi occasiōne qui iam ante sē populi Rōmāni imperiō subiectōs dolērēnt liberius atque audāciōs dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē principēs Galliāe conciliis silvestribus ac remōtis locis queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnēm Galliāe fortūnam; omni- bus polllicitātiōnibus ac praemīis dēposcunt qui belli inītium faciant et sūi capitis periculō Galliām in libertātem vindicent. In primīs ratīōnem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hibernīs ēgredi, neque imperātor sine
praesidiò ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō, in acīē praestāre interfici quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam libertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes begin the revolt. Rapid spread of the news

2. His rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, principēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanctiātur petunt, conlātīs militāribus signīs (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquis déserantur. Tum conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore eius rei cōnstitūtō, a conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt, civēsque Rōmānōs qui negotiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, qui reī frumentāriae iūssū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae civitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae maiōr atque inlūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regionēsque significant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent ante primam cōnfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter clx.

Vercingetorix, chief of the Arverni, takes the lead

4. Simili ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, — cuius pater principātum
tōtius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum adpetēbat, ā civitāte erat interfectus,—convocātis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn existimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agris habet dēlectum egen- tium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sententiam per- dūcit; hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant; magnīs- que coāctis cōpiis adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suis ap- pellātur. Dimittit quōqueversus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant.

Many tribes join his standard

Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turo- nōs, Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnēs qui Ōce- anum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs civitātibus obsi- dēs imperat; certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūci
CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 52 B.C.
He maintains severe discipline

He invades the country of the Bituriges, who ask the Hœdui to send them assistance

The Hœdui fail them, and so, unable to resist, they join Vercingetorix
nihil nóbis cónstat, nón vidētur pró certō esse pónendum. Biturigēs eórum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs iungunt.

_Cæsar leaves Italy and hastens to Gaul_

6. His rēbus in Italiam Caesari nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānas rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegēret, in Trānsalpinam Gallīam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte adficiēbātur, quā ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proelīō dimicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quieti vidērentur suam salūtem rectē committi vidēbat.

_He proceeds to Narbo to counteract the plans of Lucterius_


_Cæsar crosses the Cévennes Mountains through the snow. Vercingetorix goes to protect the Arverni_

8. His rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsī móns Cevenna, qui Arvernōs ab
Helviis disclûdit, dûrissimō tempore anni altissimā nīve iter impediebat, tamen, discussā nīve in altitūdinem pedum vi atque ita viis patefactis, summō militum labōre ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnitōs existimābant, ac nē singulāri quidem umquam hominī eō tempore anni sēmitae patue- rant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem inferant.

Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterrītī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suis fortūnīs cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus diripī patiātur, praevertītīm cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Cæsar lēaves Brūtus in command and seeks reënforcements. Vercingetorix moves toward Gorgobīna, a town of the Boī

9. At Cæsar biduum in his locīs mōrātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorige üṣū ventūra opiniōne praecēperat, per causam supplemēnti equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscēntem his cōpiis praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equītēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suis inopīnantibus, quam maximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenīt. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quam multīs ante diēbus eō praemiserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Ḥaeduōrum in Lingōnēs contendit, ubi duae legīōnēs hiemābant, ut, si quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Ḥaeduis inirētur cōnsilī, celeritāte

Cæsar, though much perplexed, determines to relieve the Boii

10. Magnam haec rēs Cæsari difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat: si reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stipendiāriis Haeduōrum expugnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcis in eō praesidium positum vidēret; si mātūrius ex hībernīs ēduceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre visum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetī quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātēs alienāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, prae-mittit ad Bōiōs qui dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdinci legiōnibus atque impedimentis tōtiō exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

Summary of Chapters 11–62

Cæsar takes two towns near the Loire (11). Noviodunum surrenders; but when the inhabitants see Vercingetorix approaching, they prepare for defense (12). Cæsar takes Noviodunum, and marches toward Avaricum (13). Vercingetorix advises the Gauls to lay waste their country, and thus keep the Romans from supplies (14). The Gauls burn many of their cities, but spare Avaricum (15, 16). The Roman soldiers suffer from lack of food, but maintain a resolute spirit (17). Cæsar marches to engage with Vercingetorix (18). But he finds him too strongly entrenched to warrant an attack (19).
Vercingetorix is accused of treason; but he clears himself, and appeals to his countrymen (20, 21). The Gauls defend Avaricum with much skill against the Roman works (22, 23). They set fire to the Roman works, and make a sortie, displaying great heroism (24, 25). They finally decide to abandon Avaricum, but are dissuaded by the women (26). The Romans storm the walls and take the town. Most of the inhabitants are put to the sword (27, 28).

Vercingetorix appeals to the Gauls to continue the war (29). His appeal inspires them to further efforts, and he levies new troops (30, 31).

The Hædui appeal to Cæsar to settle a dispute (32). Cæsar goes to them in person (33). He then sends Labienus northward, and he himself proceeds to Gergovia (34, 35). Here he gains an advantage of position over Vercingetorix (36).

Some of the Hædui organize a revolt (37). Litaviccus, commander of the Hæduan contingent, halts his troops at some distance from Gergovia, and persuades them to desert the Roman cause (38). Eporedorix, a Hæduan, conveys the news to Cæsar (39). Cæsar goes to the Hædui and suppresses the revolt (40). He then hastens back to Gergovia to relieve Fabius (41). Further plots are made among the Gauls (42). The Hædui seek reconciliation with Cæsar, but do not cease plotting (43).

Cæsar now devotes himself to the capture of Gergovia (44). He skillfully arranges his troops, and by a sudden attack captures the enemy’s camp. His troops are eager to assault the town (45–47). The Gauls receive reinforcements (48). After a close and doubtful struggle the Romans are driven back. Cæsar reproves them for their too great eagerness, but praises their courage (49–52). After some skirmishing Cæsar advances toward the Hædui (53). He is confirmed in his suspicion that the Hædui mean to revolt, but tries to dissuade them (54). Eporedorix and Viridomarus kill the Roman garrison at Noviodunum, destroy Cæsar’s stores, and burn the town (55). Cæsar crosses to the north side of the Loire (56).

Labienus marches toward Lutetia, and is opposed by Camulogenus, a chief of the Auleri (57). Labienus falls back to Metiosedum, which he captures. He is followed by the enemy (58). He now learns of Cæsar’s repulse at Gergovia, and of the spread of the Gallic revolt (59). By a stratagem he induces the Gauls to divide their forces, and having attacked and routed them, he joins Cæsar (60–62).
Further extension of the revolt. Vercingetorix appointed commander in chief by a general vote. The Hædui dissatisfied


Vercingetorix lays extensive plans to spread the revolt and weaken the Romans

64. Ipse imperat reliquis civitātibus obsidēs; dēnique ei rei cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, xv milia numerō, celerīter convenire iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dicit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmi-cātūrum; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre;

_Cæsar sends to Germany for cavalry_

65. Ad hōs omnēs cássūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vigintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesāre lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnébantur. Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimis proeliō congressi pelluntur, et C. Valerīō Donnotaurō, Caburi filīō, prīncipe civitātīs, complūribusque aliis interfectis, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiis magnā cum cūrā et diligentīa suōs finēs tuentur. Cæsar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsis omnībus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Itāliā sublevāri poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās civitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat; equitēsque ab his arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, qui inter eōs proelīāriī cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs utēbantur, ā tribūnīs militum reliquisque equītibus Rōmānīs atque évocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīisque distribuit.
Vercingetorix addresses a council of cavalry officers, urging an attack on the Romans. They eagerly assent

66. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium cópiæ ex Arvernis equitēsque qui tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numero, cum Caesar in Sēquānos per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter milia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnis castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit; convocātīisque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinen-
dam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ētīum parum prōfīcī; maiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiūs reversūrōs neque finem bellandi factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impedītōs adoriantur. Si peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfidat, relictīs impedimentīs suae salūti cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriarum et dignitāte spoliātum īrī. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quin nēmō eōrum prōgresi modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō maiores faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrīm et terrōrī hostībus futūrum.' Conclāmant equītēs: 'Sanctissimō iūre iūrāndō cōnfīrmāri oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, qui nōn bis per agmen hostium perequītārit.'

The attack is made, and the Gauls are defeated with considerable loss

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō died in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō agmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque
DEFEAT OF VERCINGETORIX AT THE VINGEANNE

A Cæsar's camp the night before the battle
B The three camps of Vercingetorix
C The Roman column of march at the time of the attack
D The Gallic lines of infantry
E Cæsar's camp the night after the battle
F Cæsar's Roman cavalry
G Cæsar's German cavalry
H The Gallic cavalry
equitātum tripartitō divisum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Consistit agmen; impedimenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Si quā in parte nostri labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa īnferri Cæsar aciemque convertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad insequeendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxili cōnfirmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dépellunt: fugientēs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiis cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliqui, nē circumveniērentur verīti, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedes. Trēs nōbilissimi Haedui captī ad Cæsarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui contrōversiam cum Convictolitavi proximīs comitiis habuerat; et Cavarillus, qui post dēfeciōnem Litavicci pedestribus cōpiis praefuerat; et Eporēdorix, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haedui cum Sēquaniīs bellō contenderant.

\textit{Vercingetorix retires to Alesia, which Caesar determines to invest}

68. Fugātō omni equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtīnusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubīorum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedimenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter 111 mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbīs sitū perterritīisque hostibus, quod equitātū (quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnsidēbant) erant pulsī, adhōrtātus ad labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvāllāre instituit.
Description of Alesia and its defenses

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidēretur. Cuius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter milia passuum iii in longitu-
dinem patēbat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs, medi-
ocri interiectō spatīō, parī altitūdinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēve-ant, fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem vi pedum prae-
dūxerant. Eius mūniōnīs quae ab Rōmānis instituēbātur circuitus xi mūlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita viii castellaque xxiii facta; quibus in castellis interdiū stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ērup-
tiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs prae-
sidiis tenēbantur.

A cavalry battle in the plain. The Gauls are defeated with great slaughter

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitu-
dinem patēre supra dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vi ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs sub-
mittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō inrup-
tiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō
nostris animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī
multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs
coartantur. Germāni ācrius ūsque ad mūniōnēs sequuntur.

25 Fit magna caedes; nōn nūlli relictīs equīs fossam trānsire
et māceriam trānscedere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Ca-
sar quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn
minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Galli perturbantur; venirī ad sē cōnfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūlli perterriti in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multis interfectīs, complūribus equis captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry and calls for help from without

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque qui per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtētaturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūni libertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod si indiligentiörēs fuerint, milia hominum dēlecta lxxx ūnā sēcum interītūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre posse parcendo. Hīs datīs mandātis, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dimittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitīs poenam eis qui nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiis compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parēt et paulātim mētīri instituit; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Summary of Chapters 72–90

The last chapters of the seventh book (72–90) describe the siege and capture of Alesia. Froude says of this achievement: "The most daring feat in the military annals of mankind had been successfully accomplished. A Roman army which could not at the utmost have amounted to fifty thousand men had held blockaded an army of eighty thousand, not weak
Asiatics, but European soldiers, as strong and as brave individually as the Italians were; and they had defeated, beaten, and annihilated another army which had come expecting to overwhelm them, five times as large as their own."

Plutarch describes the surrender as follows:

"Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, came out of the gate and rode round Cæsar, who was seated; then he dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and sat quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

The fate remaining for this gallant patriot, who lacked only success to be hailed as the savior of his country, was to be kept in chains for six years, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. A gigantic statue in his memory stands to-day on the heights of Alesia (see p. 152). Cæsar's own narration closes with the surrender of Vercingetorix. The remainder of the story of the Gallic War is told in the eighth book by Cæsar's faithful officer and friend, Aulus Hirtius.

After the fall of Alesia, sporadic attempts at revolt in various parts of Gaul were put down, and a final rally of the patriotic party at the stronghold of Uxellodunum was crushed. Cæsar then invited the chiefs of the tribes to come to him, told them of the great future that lay before them as members of a splendid imperial state, and gave them magnificent presents. He so impressed them by his gracious clemency that they served him faithfully thereafter, and never again made an effort to recover their independence.
THE CIVIL WAR

BOOK III

CHAPTERS 82–112

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA AND THE BEGINNING OF THE ALEXANDRIAN WAR, 48 B.C.

Pompey joins Scipio in Thessaly

POMPEIUS paucis post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit cōntiōnātusque apud cūntum exercitum suīs agit grātīās, Scipīonis militēs cohortātur ut partā iam victōriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, receptisque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suōm cum 5 Scipīone honōrem partitur classicumque apud eum canī et alterum illi iubet praetōrium tendi.

The soldiers are confident of victory

Auctis cōpiis Pompēi duōbusque magnīs exercitibus coniunctis pristina omnium cōnfīrmātur opinīō et spēs victōriae augētur, adeō ut, quicquid intercēderet temporis, 10 id morāri reditum in Italiaṃ vidērētur, et, si quando quid Pompeius tardius aut cōnsiderātius faceret, ūnius esse negotium diēi, sed illum dēlectāri imperiō et cōnsulārēs praetōriōsque servōrum habēre numerō dicerent.

They quarrel over the division of the expected booty

Iamque inter sē palam dē praemiīs ac sacerdōtīs conten- 15 dēbant in annōsque cōnsulātum dēfiniēbant, alii domōs bonaque eōrum qui in castrīs erant Caesaris petēbant;
magnaque inter eós in cónsilió fuit contróversia, oportéretne Lúcili Hirri, quod is á Pompéiō ad Parthós missus esset, proximis comitiis praetóriís absentis rationem habéri, cum eius necessárii fidem implórárent Pompéi, praestáret quod proficiscentí recépisset, nē per eius auctóritátem déceptus vidérétur, reliquí, in labóre pari ac periculó nē únus omnés antecedéret, recúsárent.

canō, -ere, cecíni, cantus, sing.; sound
civilis, -e, civil; of citizens
classicum, -i, n., signal; trumpet
cónsiderátus, -a, -um, part. as adj., with deliberation
cónsuláris, -e, of consular rank
cónțióner, -ārī, -ātus, harangue, make an address
defíniō, -ire, -īvi, -ītus, determine
Hirrus, -ī, m., Lucilius Hirrus, a follower of Pompey

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, produce; gain
Parthī, -órum, m., the Parthians
particeps, -cipis, m., sharer
praetórium, -ī, n., a general’s tent
praetórius, -a, -um, adj., praetorian; masc. as noun, ex-prætor
sacerdótium, -ī, n., priesthood
Scipió, -onis, m., Quintus Cæcilius Metellus Pius Scipio, colleague of Pompey
Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly

3. partā iam victóriā: ‘as if the victory had already been gained.’
6. apud eum: ‘at his quarters.’
7. tendi: ‘to be set up’ (lit. ‘stretched’).
12. tardius aut cónsiderátius: ‘rather slowly or deliberately.’
14. servōrum habére numerō: ‘regarded as slaves.’
16. in annós: ‘for succeeding years.’
18. oportéretne Lúcili Hirri . . . absentis rationem habéri:
‘whether Lucilius Hirrus ought to be considered in his absence.’
21. praestáret . . . recépisset: ‘that he should fulfill that which he had guaran-
teed to him at his departure.’
22. eius: i.e. Pompey’s.
24. recúsárent: ‘made objection.’

The officers revile each other

83. Iam dē sacerdótio Caesaris Domitius, Scipió Spin-therque Lentulus cotidiānis contentiónibus ad gravissimās
verbōrum contuméliās palam descédérunt, cum Lentulus
aetātis honórem ostentáret, Domitius urbānam grātiam
dignitātemque iactáret, Scipió adfinitāte Pompéi cónfideret.
Postulāvit etiam L. Afrānium prōditīōnis exercitūs Acūtius Rufus apud Pompēium, quod gestum in Hispāniā diceret.

Domitius suggests a plan for future vengeance on their enemies

Et L. Domitius in cōnsiliō dixit placēre sibi bellō cōnfecētō ternās tabellās dari ad iūdicandum eis qui ĵōdinis essent senātōriī bellōque ūnā cum ipsis interfuissent, sententiāsque dē singulis ferrent qui Rōmae remānsissent quīque intrā præsēdia Pompēī fuissent neque operam in rē mīlitārī praestītissent; ūnām fore tabellam qui liberandōs omni periculō cēnsērent; alteram qui capitis damnārent; tertiam qui pecūniā multārent.

In their greed for spoils they forget that the victory is yet to be won

Postrēmō omnēs aut dē honōribus suis aut dē praemiis pecūniāe aut dē persequendīs inimīcitīōs agēbant, nec quibus rationibus possent, sed quem ad modum ūtī victōriā dēbērent cōgitābant.
Caesar vainly offers battle several days in succession

84. Ré frumentariā praeparātā confirmātisque militibus et satis longō spatiō temporis a Dyrrachinis prolēiūs intermissō, quō satis perspectum habēre militum animum vidērētur, tentandum Caesar existimāvit quidnam Pompēius propositi aut voluntātis ad dimicandum habēret. Itaque ex castris exercitum ēdūxit, aciemque instrūxit, primō sui locis paulōque ā castris Pompēī longius, continentibus vērō diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castris sui collibusque Pompeīānis aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs confirmātiōrem eius exercitum efficiēbat.

Being inferior in cavalry, he trains a mixed force of light-armed infantry and horse

Superius tamen institūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōnstrāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multōs partibus esset inferior, adulēscentēs atque expeditōs ex antesignānīs ēlectīs ad perniciātēm armis inter equītēs prolēiāri iūberet, quī cotidiānā consuetūdīdine usum quoque eius generis proeliorum perciperent. Hīs erat rēbus effectum ut equītum mille etiam apertioribus locīs vii milium Pompeianōrum impetum, cum adesset usus, sustinēre audērent neque magnopere eōrum multitūdine terrērentur. Namque etiam per ēōs diēs proeliōrum secundum equestre fēcit atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus quōs perfūgisse ad Pompeium suprā docuimus cum quibusdam interfēcit.

antesignānus, -ī, m., a soldier fighting in the first line
Dyrrachīnus, -a, -um, of Dyrrachium

pernīcitās, -ātis, f., swiftness
Pompeianus, -a, -um, of Pompey
tentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make trial

3. quō . . . vidērētur: a descriptive clause. The antecedent of quō is spatiō. 4. quidnam . . . habēret: 'what purpose or wish Pompey entertained
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR CONSUL
Despairing of a battle, Caesar decides to break camp

85. Pompeius, qui castra in colle habēbat, ad ἵναμάς ῥαδικῆς montis aciem instruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns, si iniquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar, nūllā ratione ad pugnam ēlici posse Pompeium existimāns, hanc sibi commodissimam bellī rationem iūdicāvit, uti castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendis castris pluribusque adeundis locīs commodiōre rē frūmentāriā u̲terētur, simulque in itinere ut aliquam occasīōnem dimicandī nanciscerētur et āsolītum ad labōrem Pompeī exercitum cotidiānis itineribus défatigāret.

Pompey unexpectedly offers battle. Caesar addresses his troops and leads them forth

His cōnstitūtīs rēbus signō iam profectionis datō tabernāculisque dētēnsis, animadversum est paulō ante extrā cotidiānam cōnsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompeī progressam, ut nōn iniquō locō posse dimicāri vidērētur. Tunc Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, 15 "Differendum est," inquit, "īter in praesentīā nōbīs et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō simus ad dimicandum parāti; nōn facile occasīōnem posteā reperiēmus"; confestimque expeditās cōpiās ēdūcit.
THE CIVIL WAR — BOOK III

Pompey, relying on his cavalry, is confident of an easy victory. He explains his plan of attack

86. Pompēius quoque, ut posteā cognitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō décertāre. Namque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōribus diēbus dixerat, priusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore uti exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum essent plērique admirātī, "Sciō mē," inquit, "paene incredibilēm rem pollicēri; sed rationēm cōnsili miē accipite, quō firmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātīs. Persuāsi equitibus nostrīs, idque mihi factūrōs cōnfīrmāverunt, ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere aperto adgrederentur et circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent quam ā nōbīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine periculō legiōnum et paene sine volnere bellum cōnfiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus." Simul dēnūntiāvit ut essent animō parātī in posterum et, quoniam fieret dimicandi potestās, ut saepe cōgitāvissent, nē ūsū manūque reliquōrum opinīōnem fallerent.

7. quō . . . prōdeātīs: clause of purpose. 9. sit accessum: impersonal. 10. prius: to be construed with quam. 15. in posterum: 'for the future.' — ut: 'as.' 16. ūsū manūque: i.e. in the actual test of their prowess; opposed to cōgitāvissent. — reliquōrum: 'the rest' (of their comrades who were not present).
Labienus follows, and speaks with contempt of Caesar’s army


All swear never to return to camp unless victorious

Haec cum dixisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque ut idem facerent hortātus est. Hoc laudāns Pompēius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquis fuit quisquam qui iūrāre dubitāret. Haec cum facta sunt in cōnsiliō, magnā spē et laetitiā omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiēbant, quod dē rē tantā et ā tam perītō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfīrmāri vidēbātur. 20

autumnus, -ī, m., autumn          pestilentia, -ae, f., scourge, pestilence
Brundisium, -ī, n., Brundisium, a    Trānspadānus, -a, -um, dwelling 
         seaport in southern Italy          across the Po
laetitia, -ae, f., gladness, joy

1. excēpit: ’followed’ (in speaking).—cum . . . dēspiceret (et) efferret: ’while he depreciated . . . (and) extolled.’ 3. qui . . . dēvicerit: clause of description. 9. continenti: i.e. Italy.—ex eis: construe with esse factās. 13. quod fuit rōboris: ’what strength there was”; rōboris, partitive genitive. 18. discessum est: impersonal, but translate, ’they departed.’
Formation of Pompey's line of battle


beneficiārius,-i, m., a soldier exempt from menial duties; a favorite Syriacus, -a, -um, of Syria

1. ad hunc modum: 'after this fashion.' 4. ex senātūs cōnsultō: 'by a decree of the senate.' 5. Mediam aciem: 'the middle of the line.' 7. trāductās: sc. esse. 8. Hās ... existimābat: 'Pompey considered these the steadiest that he had.' 10. numerō: ablative of respect. 14. prae-sidiō: dative of purpose. 15. impeditīs: 'presenting obstructions.'

Formation of Caesar's line of battle

89. Caesar superius institūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō conlocāverat, tametsī erat Dyrrachīnīs proeliis vehementer attenuāta, et huic sic adiūn-xit octāvam, ut paene ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX
EXPLANATION

Pompey's Line of Battle

a Two legions turned over to Pompey by Caesar before the Civil War began
b The center, commanded by Scipio
c The right wing, consisting of the Cilician legion in conjunction with the cohorts brought from Spain by Afranius
d The remaining cohorts
e A river
f The left wing, consisting of the cavalry commanded by Labienus, the archers and slingers
g Pompey
h Pompey's camp, guarded by seven cohorts

Caesar's Line of Battle

1 The right wing, consisting of the tenth legion, commanded by Sulla
2 The center, commanded by Domitius
3 The left wing, consisting of the eighth and ninth legions, commanded by Antony
4 The fourth line, of six cohorts, designed to protect the right wing against Pompey's cavalry
5 Caesar, opposite Pompey
6 Caesar's camp, guarded by two cohorts

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA, 48 B.C.
cōnstitūtās habēbat, quae summa erat milium xxii; cohortēs duās castrīs praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompēium cōnstitit. Simul his rēbus animadversīs quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē a multitūdine equitūm dextrām cornū circumvenērētur, celeriter ex tertīā aciē singulās cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex his quārtām instituit equitātūique opposuit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque eīs ‘dīēi victōriam in ēarum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre. Simul tertiae aciēi tōtique exercitūi imperāvit nē inīussū suō concurreret; sē, cum id fieri vellet, vēxillō signum datūrum.

Antōnius, -i, m., Marcus Antonius, the famous triumvir; served in the Civil War under Cæsar and was one of his active partisans attenuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make thin; lessen cōnstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātūrus, lit. stand together; cōnstat, depend upon (with in) Sulla, -ae, m., Publius Cornelius Sulla, an officer of Cæsar; nephew of Sulla, the great dictator

8. praeposuerat: ‘had placed in command.’ We should expect datives with the accusatives. 14. cōnstāre: ‘depended upon.’

Caesar reminds his men of his efforts for peace, then gives the signal for battle

90. Exercitum cum militāri mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur suaque in eum perpetui temporis officia praedicāret, imprīmis commemorāvit ‘testibus sē militibus ētī posse quantō studiō pācem petisset; quae per Vatīnium in conloquiīs, quae pēr Aulum Clōdium cum Scipioē ēgisset; quibus modis ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendīs lēgātīs contendisset. Neque sē umquam abūti militum sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō exercitūi privāre voluisse.’ Hāc habita ōratiōne exposcentibus militibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum dedit.
abōtor, -ūti, -ūsus, sacrifice
alteruter, -tra, -trum, either
Libō, -onis, m., Lucius Scribonius Libo, father-in-law of Sextus Pompey

2. sua . . . officia: 'his constant services to it.' 3. testibus . . . posse: 'he could call his soldiers to witness.' 4. in conloquiis: 'to gain a conference' (with Labienus).

Heroism of Crastinus, a veteran volunteer

tāriī eiusdem centuriae sunt prōsecūtī.

centuria, -ae, f., century, a company of nominally a hundred men
Crāstinus, -i, m., Crastinus

2. primum pilum . . . dūxerat: 'had been primipilus' etc. 5. quam . . . date: 'exert yourselves as you have resolved' (lit. 'give the service which you have resolved upon'). 6. ille: i.e. Cæsar. 8. ut . . . agās: 'that you will thank me whether alive or dead.'

Pompey does not charge, but awaits Caesar's attack

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spati, ut satis esset ad concursum utrīusque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō
He is criticized for so doing

Quod nóbis quidem nullo ratio factum a Pompéio vidétur, propterea quod est quaedam animi incitatio atque alacritas nátrraliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur. Hanc nôn reprimere, sed augére imperatórēs dēbent; neque frustrā antiquitus institútum est ut signa undique concinerent clamoremque universi tollerent; quibus rebus et hostes terrēri et suōs incitāri existimaverunt.

admonitus, -ūs, m., advice
concinō, -ere, -uī, —, sound together
distendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus, stretch out; break
excursus, -ūs, m., dash
incitātiō, -onis, f., enthusiasm
infringō, -ere, -frēgi, -frāctus, break

innātus, -a, -um, part. of innāscor, inborn
nátrraliter, adv., naturally
praedicō, -ere, -dixi, -dīctus, say beforehand; command beforehand, advise
Triārius, -ī, m., Caius Valerius

3. ut... excipierent: 'to await Cæsar's attack.' 4. distrahi: 'to be thrown into disorder.' 6. in... dispositi: 'and that they (i.e. the Pompeians) remaining in their ranks.' 7. leviusque... spērābat: 'he hoped that the javelins would fall with less effect' (lit. 'more lightly'). 8. retentis militibus: ablative absolute with conditional force.— immissis... occucurrissent: 'should charge against the missiles that were hurled against them.' 11. nōbis: 'to me,' i.e. Cæsar.—nulla ratio: 'with no good reason.' 13. nātrraliter... omnibus: 'implanted by nature in all.' 14. neque... institútum est: ‘nor was it a vain institution of our ancestors.’
Cæsar's men advance, halt to get breath, then charge

93. Sed nostri militēs datō signō cum infestis pilis prōcucurrissent atque animadvertisserunt non concurri ā Pompēiānis, ūsū perītī ac superiōribus pugnō exercitātī suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōnstitērunt, nē cōnsūmpsis viribus adpropinquārent, parvōque intermissō temporis spatīō ac rūrsus renovātō cursū pilā misērunt celeriterque, ut erat praecipientūm ā Cæsare, gladiōs strinxērunt.

Pompey's infantry receives the attack bravely. His cavalry attempts a flank movement

Neque vērō Pompēiāni huic rei défuerunt. Nam et tēla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ordinēs cōnservārunt pilisque missis ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēi cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversi prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitūdō sagittāriōrum sē prōfūdīt; quōrum impetum noster equitātūs nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit; equitēsque Pompēi hoc ācrius instāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram ā latere apertō circumāre coeperunt.

Cæsar's fourth line stampedes Pompey's cavalry, destroys the archers and slingers, and attacks the left wing in the rear

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae aciēi, quam instituerat sex cohortium, dedit signum. Illī celeriter prōcucurrērunt infestisque signis tantā vi in Pompēi equitēs impetum, fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret omnēsque conversi nōn sōlum locō excēderent, sed prōtīnus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus submōtīs omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstitūtī inermēs sine praesidīō interfectī sunt.
Eodem impetu cohortēs sinistrum cornū pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in acie Pompēiānis circumiērint eōsque ā tergō sunt adortī.

explicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, unfold;  
prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, with sē, rush forward
infestus, -a, -um, hostile; in hos-
tile array, i.e. with weapons and 
standards advanced
stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus, 
draw
turmātim, adv., by squadrons

1. cum: conjunction. 2. concurrī: impersonal. 3. ūsū ... exercitāti: 'skilled through practice and trained in former battles.' 8. huic rei défuērunt: 'lack resources to meet these tactics.' 24. etiam tum: 'even under these circumstances.'

Caesar's third line enters the action. Pompey's infantry breaks and flies

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integri défessis successissent, alī autem ā tergō adorirentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuē-
5 runt atque ūniversi terga vertērunt. Neque vēro Caesarem fefellit, quīn ab eīs cohortibus quae contra equitātum in quārta acie conlocātæ essent, initium victōriæ orīrētur, ut ipse in cohortandīs militibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim primum equitātus est pulsus, ab eīsdem factae caedēs sagit-
tāriōrum ac funditorum, ab eīsdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita atque initium fugae factum.

Pompey quits the field, flies to the camp, and retires into his tent in utter despair

Sed Pompēius, ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit atque eam partem cui maximē cōnfidēbat perterritum animadvertit, alīis quoque diffīsī aciē excessit prōtīnusque sē in castra

clārē, adv., loudly, clearly, distrīctly

diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, distrust, not have confidence

3. dēfessīs successissent: 'had come to the support of those who were exhausted.' 5. Caesarem fefellit: 'escape Caesar's notice.' 7. ut: 'as.' 12. ut: 'when.' 14. aliis . . . diffīsus: 'having no confidence in the others.' 17. sī quid dūrius acciderit: 'if it goes too hard with us.' 18. circumeō: translate as future; also cōnfīrmō. 20. summae rei diffidēns: 'apprehensive of the issue.'

Cæsar follows up his advantage and attacks the camp

95. Caesar Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis nūllum spatium perterritis dare oportēre existimāns, militēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō fortūnae uterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū (nam ad meridiem rēs erat perducta), tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parāti imperiō pāruērunt.

The camp is taken and its defenders flee

Castra ā cohortibus quae ibi praesidiō erant relictae in-dustriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius a Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliīs. Nam quī aciē refūgerant militēs, et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, missis plērique armīs signīs-que militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vāllō cōnstiterant multitudinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōnfectī volneribus locum reliquērunt, prōtīnusque omnēs
ducibus ēsi centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum in altissimōs montēs, qui ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfugiērunt.

cōnfugiō, -ere, -fugi, —, flee, industriē, adv., with energy

Thrāx, -ācis, m., a Thracian

3. beneficiō: 'favor.' 4. magnō aestū: ablative absolute.—rēs erat perducta: 'the contest had been prolonged.' 15. ducibus . . . tribūnis-que: 'under the leadership of the centurions and tribunes.'

Luxurious appointments of the camp

96. In castris Pompeī vidēre licēre trichilās strūctās, magnum argentī pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta, Lūci etiam Lentuli et nōn nūllōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā quae nīmiam lūxuriam et victōriae fidūciam dēsignārent, ut facile existimāri posset nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēi timuisset, quī nōn necessāriās conquirent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercitūi Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessārium ēsum dēfuissent.

Pompey with thirty horsemen escapes to the coast and embarks

10 Pompēius, iam cum intrā vāllum nostri versārentur, equum nactus dētrāctīs insignibus imperātōris decumānā portā sē ex castrīs ēīcīt prōtīnusque equō citātō Lārisam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō ītinere nōn intermissō, comitātū

15 equitum xxx ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dicēbātur, querēns tantum sē opinīōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērāset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

comitātus, -ūs, m., attendance; cōnstrātus, -a, -um, part. of cōn-
compány sternō, covered over, paved
hedera, -ae, f., ivy
Lārisa, -ae, f., Larissa, a town in Thessaly
Lentulus, -i, m., Lucius Cornelius Lentulus
nimius, -a, -um, excessive
protēctus, -a, -um, part. of protēgō, shielded
struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus, erect, build
trichila, -ae, f., arbor, summer-house


_Cæsar, leaving a guard at Pompey's camp and his own, pursues the retreating enemy with four legions_

97. Cæsar castris potitus, à militibus contendit nē in praedā occupāti reliqui negoti gerendi facultātem dimitterent. Quā rē impetrātā montem opere circummūnire instituit. Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisī ei locō, relictō monte, ūnìversī iugīs eius Lārisam versus sē recipere coeperunt. Quā rē animadversā Cæsar cōpiās suās divisit partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remīsit, iiiī sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodō-reque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit et prōgressus milia passuum vi aciem īnstrūxit.

_He besieges the remnants of Pompey's army on a mountain_

Quā rē animadversā Pompēiānī in quōdam monte cōn-stitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluebat. Cæsar militēs cohortātus, etsi tōtius diēi continentī labōre erant cōnfectīnoxque iam suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquāri Pompēiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere īlī dē dēditiōne missis lēgātis agere coepterunt.
They surrender and are pardoned. Caesar goes to Larissa

98. Caesar primâ lúce omnēs eós qui in monte cónsèderant ex superiōribus locis in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsatiōne fēcērunt passīisque palmīs próiecī ad terram flentēs ab eō sālūtem petivērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgēre iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō mīnōre essent tīmōre, omnēs cōnservāvit, militibusque suīs commendāvit, nē qui eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī désiderārent. Hāc adhibītā diligentiā ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrēre et eās quās sēcūm dūxerat in vicem requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit, cōdemque diē Lārisam pervēnit.

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius cc militēs désiderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmisit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius
mentionem supra fēcimus, gladiō in ōs adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum quod ille in pugnam proficiscēns dixerat. Sic enim Caesar existimābat eō proeliō excellentiissimam virtūtem Crāstini fuisse, optimēque eum de sē meritum iūdicābat.

Pompey's losses

Ex Pompēiānō exercitū circiter milia xv cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditionem vēnērunt amplius milia xxiii 10 (namque etiam cohortēs quae praesidiō in castellis fuerant sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multi praeferēcā in fīnitimās civitātēs refugērunt; signaque militāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta clxxx et aquilae viii. L. Domitius ex castris in montem refugiēns, cum virēs eum lassitūdine défēcissent, 15 ab equitibus est interfactus.

excellēns, -entis, part. of excellō, falsus, -a, -um, untrue surpassing mentiō, -ōnis, f., mention

1. désiderāvit: 'he suffered the loss of' (lit. 'he missed'). 4. gladiō ... coniectō: 'struck right in the face by a sword.' 5. quod ... dixerat: in chapter 91. 7. optimē ... meritum: 'that he had most excellently served his (Caesar's) interests.'

Caesar pursues Pompey into Macedonia, where the latter tries to raise an army

102.1 Caesar omnibus rēbus relictīs persequendum sibi Pompēium existimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex fugā recēpisset, nē rūrsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset, et, quantumcumque itineris equitātū efficere poterat, cotīdiē prōgredīēbatur, legiōnemque ūnam minōribus itineribus subsequī iussit. Erat ēdictum Pompēī nōmine Amphipolī prōpositum, utī omnēs eius prōvinciae iūniōrēs, Graeci civēsque Rōmānī, iūrandi causā convenīrent. Sed

1 Chapters 100 and 101 are omitted.
utrum āvertendae suspicionis causā Pompēius prōposuisset, 10 ut quam diūtissimē longiōris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an novis dēlēctibus, si nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre cōnārētur, existimāri nōn poterat.

At Caesar’s approach Pompey sails from Amphipolis

Ipse ad ancoram ūnā nocte cōnstitit et, vocātis ad sē Amphipoli hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessāriōs sūmptūs 15 corrogātā, cognitō Caesāris adventū, ex eō locō discessit et Mytilēnās paucis diēbus vēnit. Bīduum tempestāte retentus nāvibusque aliis addītīs āctuāriīs in Ciliciam atque inde Cyprum pervēnit.

At Cyprus he learns that Antioch is closed against him. Rhodes too is hostile

Ibi cognōscit cōnsēnsū omnium Antiochēnsium civiumque 20 Rōmānōrum qui illic negotiārentur arcem captam esse exclūdendi suī causā, nūntiōsque dimissōs ad eōs qui sē ex fugā in fīnitimās cīvitātēs recēpisse dicerentur, nē Antiochiam adirent; id si fēcissent, magnō eōrūm capitis periculō futūrum. Idem hoc L. Lentulō, qui superiōre annō cōnsul 25 fuerat, et P. Lentulō cōnsulāri ac nōn nūllis aliis acciderat Rhodi; qui cum ex fugā Pompēium sequerentur atque in īnsulam vēnissent, oppidō ac portū receptī nōn erant missīisque ad eōs nūntiīs ut ex īs locis discēderent, contrā voluntātem suām nāvēs solvērunt. Iamque de Caesāris 30 adventū fāma ad civitātēs perferēbātur.

āctuārius, -a, -um, fast-sailing
Amphipolis, -is, f., a city of Macedonía
Antiochēnsis, -e, adj., of Antioch;
masc. as noun, an inhabitant of Antioch
Antioch, -ae, f., Antioch, capital of Syria
Cilicia, -ae, f., Cilicia, a district of southeastern Asia Minor
corrogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, collect, obtain by soliciting
Provided with men and money he sails from Cyprus for Pelusium, a city on the easternmost mouth of the Nile

103. Quibus cognitis rébus Pompéius, dépositó adeundae Syriae cónsilió, pecúnia societátis sublátâ et á quibusdam privátis súmptá et aeris magnó pondere ad militárem úsum in návés impositó duoóbusque milibus hominum armátis, partim quós ex familiís societátis dèlégerat, partim á negótiatóribus coëgerat, quós ex suís quisque ad hanc rem idóneós existímabat, Pélúsium pervénit.

Through envoys Pompey begs Ptolemy, king of Egypt, for asylum in Alexandria

Ibi cášu réx erat. Ptolemaeus, puer aetátë, magnís cópiís cum soróre Cleopatrâ bellum gerěns, quam paucis ante mènsibus per suós propinquós atque amicós régnó expulerat; castraque Cleopatræ nón longó spatió ab eius castris distábant. Ad eum Pompéius mísit, ut, pró hospitió atque amicitia patris, Alexandriá recuperētur atque illius opibus in calamitáte tegerētur.
The envoys arise suspicion by talking with the king's troops

15 Sed qui ab eō missi erant, cōnfectō légatiōnis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgis conloquī coeptērunt eōsque hortārī ut suum officium Pompēīō praestārent nēve eius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs Pompēī milītēs, quōs ex eius exercitū acceptōs in Syria Gabīnius Alexandriam trāduxerat bellōque cōnfectō apud Ptolemaeum, patrem puerī, reliquerat.

Alexandria, -ae, f., Alexandria, capital of Egypt
Cleopatra, -ae, f., Cleopatra, the famous Egyptian queen
Gabīnius, -ī, m., Aulus Gabīnius, an officer of Cæsār
negōtiātor, -ōris, m., business man
Pēlūsium, -i, n., Pelusium, a city on the Nile
Ptolemaeus, -ī, m., Ptolemy, Egyptian king
societās, -ātis, f., esp. pūbicānōrum, guild of revenue collectors
Syria, -ae, f., Syria

2. pecūniā . . . sūmpťā: ‘taking money from the tax collectors’ guild and exacting it from certain private citizens.’
5. ex familiīs: ‘from the slaves.’
6. ex suis: ‘of his friends.’
8. aētāte: ablative of respect.
11. spatio: ablative of measure of difference.
15. quī: the antecedent is the subject understood of coeptērunt.—ab eō: i.e. by Pompey.

The king's advisers act treacherously

104. His tunc cognitis rēbus amici rēgis, qui propter aetātem eius in cūrātiōne erant rēgni, sive timōre adductī, ut postēa praedicābant, sollicitātō exercitū rēgiō, nē Pompēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret, sive dēspectā eius fortūnā, ut plērumque in calamitāte ex amīcis inimīcī exsistunt, his qui erant ab eō missi palam liberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venire itūssērunt; ipsis clam cōnsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulāri hominem audāciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum militum, ad interficiendum Pompēium misērunt.
GNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS
Pompey is murdered

Ab his liberāliter ipse appellātus et quādam nōtitiā Septimi prōductus, quod bellō praeđōnum apud eum ōrdinem dūxerat, nāviculam parvulam cōnscedit cum paucis suīs; ibi ab Achillā et Septimīō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in custōdiā necātur.

Caesar arrives in Asia and prevents the pillage of Diana's temple at Ephesus

105. Caesar, cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque reī causā senātōrēs omnēs ex prōvinciā évocāsse, ut his testibus in summā pecūniāe ūterētur, sed interpellātum adventū Caesaris prōfügisse. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae pecūniāe Caesar auxilium tuli.
diē Antiochiae in Syriā bis tantus exercitūs clāmor et signōrum sonus exauditus est, ut in mūris armāta civitās discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolemāide accidit. Pergami in occultis ac reconditis templī, quō praeter sacerdōtēs adire fās nōn est, quae Graeci ādvīra appellant, tympana sonuērunt. Item Tαrlībus in templō Vīctōriae, ubi Cesāris statuam cōnsecrāverant, palma per eōs diēs inter coāgmenta lapidum ex pavimentō exstītisse ostendēbātur.

Ampius, -ī, m., Titus Ampius Balbus, a friend of Pompey
Asia, -ae, f., Asia Minor
cōāgmentum, -ī, n., joint
cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make sacred
Diāna, -ae, f., Diana, the goddess
discurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run to and fro
Ēlis, -idis, f., Elis, a city in the Peloponnesus
ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, count, reckon
Ephesius, -a, -um, Ephesian
Ephesus, -ī, f., Ephesus, a city of Ionia
fānum, -ī, n., temple
līmen, -inis, n., threshold

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, the goddess
pavimentum, -ī, n., pavement
Pergamum, -ī, n., Pergamum, a city in western Asia Minor
Ptolemāis, -idis, f., Ptolemais, a city of Phoenicia
reconditus, -a, -um, deep, hidden
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m., priest
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus, sound, ring out
sonus, -i, m., sound
statua, -ae, f., statue, image
templum, -ī, n., temple
Tαrlīes, -ium, f., Tralles, a city of Caria
tympanum, -ī, n., drum, tambourine
valva, -ae, f., door

2. pecūniās: 'treasures.' 4. testibus in summā: 'witnesses to the amount.' 5. duōbus temporibus: 'on two occasions.' 7. repetītis . . .
diēbus: 'by recalling and reckoning the dates.' 10. ante: adverb, 'previously.' 12. Antiochiae: locative (as is also Pergamī below); see G. § 120. a.
13. armāta civitās: 'the citizens in arms.' 14. in occultis ac reconditis templī: 'in secret and remote parts of the temple.' 16. ādvīra: 'adyta,' a Greek neuter plural, 'shrines,' but meaning literally 'not to be entered.'
Cæsar with a small force follows Pompey to Egypt


At Alexandria he hears of Pompey's death. The Alexandrians resent Cæsar's display of authority

Alexandriae dē Pompēī morte cognōscit atque ībi primum ē nāve ēgrediēns clāmōrem militum audit quōs rēx in oppidō praesidi causā reliquerat, et concursum ad sē fierī videt, quod fascēs anteferrentur. In hōc omnis multitūdō maiestātem rēgium minūi praedicābat. Hōc sēdātō tumultū crēbrae continuīs diēbus ex concursū multitūdinis concitātiōnēs fībant complūrēsque militēs huius urbīs omnibus partibus interficiēbantur.

Achāia, -ae, f., Achaia, a Roman province, nearly corresponding to modern Greece
Asiāticus, -a, -um, of, or from, Asia
concitātiō, -ōnis, f., uprising
coniectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, infer
fascis, -is, m., a bundle; in the plural, fasces, the bundle of rods carried before the higher magistrates by a lictor
Fūfius, -ī, m., Quintus Fufius Calenus, a lieutenant of Cæsar
Rhōdius, -a, -um, of, or from, Rhodes
sēdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, allay, settle
2. Cypri: locative. — Aegyptum: accusative of the place whither. We should expect a preposition. 3. necessitūdinēs rēgni: 'his close relations with the kingdom.' 10. cōnfus... gestārum: 'relying on the reputation of his exploits.' 13. Alexandriāe: locative. 15. concursum... videt: 'saw a crowd throng toward him.'

Cæsar, detained by contrary winds, sends for more troops

107. Quibus rēbus animadversīs legiōnēs sibi aliās ex Asiā addūcī iussit, quās ex Pompeiānīs militibus cōnfēcerat. Ipse enim necessāriō etēsiis tenēbātur, qui nāvigantibus Alexandriā sunt adversissimi venti.

He decides to act as arbiter between Ptolemy and Cleopatra

5 Interim contrōversiās rēgium ad populum Rōmānum et ad sē, quod esset cōnsul, pertinēre existimāns, atque eō magis officiō suō convenīre, quod superiōre cōnsulātū cum patre Ptolemaeō et lēge et senātūs cōnsultō societās erat facta, ostendit sibi placēre rēgem Ptolemaeum atque eius sorōrem Cleopatram exercītūs quōs habērent dimittere, et de contrōversiās iūre apud sē potius quam inter sē armīs discuptāre.

disceptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, contend, etēsiae, -ārum, m., the etesian dispute winds, trade winds

3. etēsiās: these winds prevail more than a month every summer in the eastern part of the Mediterranean. 7. officiō suō convenire: 'it was in accord with his official duty.' 11. iūre apud sē: contrasts with inter sē armīs.

The king's friends, angered, plot to destroy Cæsar and his army

108. Erat in prōcūrātiōne rēgni, propter aetātem puerī, nūtrīcius eius, eunūchus nōmine Pothinī. Is primum inter suōs querī atque indignāri coepit rēgem ad causam dicendam evocāri; deinde adiūtōrēs quōsdam cōnsili sui nactus ex
The will of Ptolemy, father of Ptolemy and Cleopatra

In testāmentō Ptolemaei patris hērēdēs erant scripti ex duōbus filiis maiōr et ex duābus filiābus ea quae aetāte antecēdēbat. Haec uti fienter, per omnēs deōs perque foedera quae Rōmāe fēcisset, eōdem testāmentō Ptolemaeus populum Rōmānum obtestābātur. Tabulae testāmentī ūnae per lēgātōs eius Rōmam erant adlātēae, ut in aerariō pōne rentur (hae, cum propter públicās occupātiōnēs pōnī nōn potuissent, apud Pompēium sunt dēpositae), alterae eōdem exemplō relictæ atque obsignātæ Alexandriæ prōferēbantur.

adiūtōr, -ōris, m., helper, confed erate
aerārium, -i, n., treasury
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put down, deposit
eunūchus, -i, m., eunuch
hērēs, -ēdis, c., heir
infātus, -a, -um, part. of infō, elated
nūtricus, -a, -um, fostering; masc. as noun, guardian
prōcūrātiō, -ōnis, f., administration
prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, bring forward, find

3. rēgem...ēvocārī: 'that a king should be summoned to defend himself.' 13. Tabulae testāmentī ūnae: 'one copy of the will.' 16. alterae: i.e. tabulae.—eōdem exemplō: 'exactly like it'; ablative of description.

Achillās marches on Alexandria with the king's army

109. Dē his rēbus cum agerētur apud Caesarem, ipse maximē vellet prō commūnī amīcō atque arbitrō contrōversiās rēgum compōnere, subītō exercitus rēgius equitātusque omnis venire Alexandriam nūntiātur. Caesaris cōpiāe nēquāquam erant tantae, ut eis, extrā oppidum si esset 5
dimicandum, confideret. Relinquēbātur ut se suis locis oppidō tenēret consiliumque Achillae cognōsceret. Militēs tamen omnēs in armīs esse iussit, rēgemque hortātus est ut ex suis necessāriis quōs habēret maxīmæ auctorītātīs lēgātōs ad Achillam mitteret, et quid esset suae voluntātīs ostenderet.

_He kills the king's ambassadors, sent by Caesar's advice_

Ā quō missī Dioscorīdēs et Serāpiōn, qui ambō lēgāti Rōmae fuerant magnamque apud patrem Ptolemaeum auctōritātem habuerant, ad Achillam pervēnērunt. Quōs ille, cum in cōnspectum eius vēnissent, priusquam audīret aut cuius rei causā missī essent cognōsceret, corripī atque interfici iussit; quōrum alter acceptō volnere occupātus per suōs prō occīsō sublātus, alter interfēctus est. Quō factō rēgem ut in suā potestāte habēret Caesar efficit, magnam rēgium nōmen apud suōs auctorītātem habēre exīstimāns, et ut potius privātō paucōrum et latrōnum quam rēgiō consiliō susceptum bellum vidērētur.

ambō, ambae, ambō, both corripio, -ere, -ripiū, -reptus, seize, compōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, settle arrest

2. prō: 'in the capacity of.' 10. quid esset suae voluntātīs: 'what his desire was'; voluntātīs, partitive genitive. 16. occupātus per suōs etc.: 'was caught up by his friends and carried off for dead.' 20. privātō paucōrum et latrōnum... consiliō: 'by the private design of a few men, and brigands at that, than by that of the king.'

_The forces of Achillas, their number and character_

110. Erant cum Achillā cōpiae, ut neque numerō neque genere hominem neque ūsū rei militāris contemnendae vidērentur. Mília enim xx in armīs habēbat. Haec cōnstitābant ex Gabiniānīs militibus, quī iam in cōnsuētūdinem Alexan-

5 drīnae vitae ac licentiae vēnerant et nōmen disciplinamque
populi Rōmāni dēdidicerant uxōrēsque dūxerant ex quibus plērique liberōs habēbant. Hūc accēdēbant conlēctī ex praedōnibus latrōnibusque Syriae Ciliciaeque prōvinciae finitimārumque regiōnum. Multi praetereā capitis damnātī exsulēsque convēnerant; fugitīvīs omnibus nostrīs certus erat Alexan-driae receptus certaque vitae condīciō, ut datō nōmine militum essent numerō; si quis ā dominō prehenderētur, cōnsēnsū militum ēripiēbatūr, qui vim suōrum, quod in simili culpā versābantur, ipsī prō suō periculō dēfendēbant. Hi rēgum amīcōs ad mortem dēposcere, hi bona locuplētum diripere, stipendī augendī causā rēgis domum obsidēre, rēgnō expellere, aliōs arcessere vetere quōdam Alexandrīnī exercītūs institūtō cōnsuērant. Erant praetereā equītūs milīa duo. Inveterāverant hi omnēs complūrībus Alexandriāe bellīs; Ptolemaeum patrem in rēgnum redūxerant, Bibuli filīōs duōs interfēcerant, bella cum Aegyptiis gesserant. Hunc ûsum rei militāris habēbant.

Alexandrīnus, -a, -um, of Alexandria
Bibulus, -ī, m., Marcus Calpurnius
Bibulus, naval commander under Pompey
contemnō, -ere, -tempsi, -temptus, despise
dēdiscō, -ere, -didici, —, forget
exsul, -ulis, m., exile
Gabīniānus, -a, -um, of Gabinius
licentia, -ae, f., looseness
locuplēs, -ētis, rich
prehendō, see prēndō in the vocabulary

3. cōnstābant ex: 'consisted of.' 4. in cōnsuētūdinem . . . vēnerant: 'had become habituated.' 7. conlēctī . . . latrōnibusque: 'a collection of robbers and highwaymen.' 9. capitis damnātī: 'who had been condemned to death.' 10. fugitīvīs: dative of reference (G. § 85). 11. receptus: 'refuge.' — ut . . . essent: in apposition with condīciō. — militum essent numerō: 'they should enlist as soldiers.' 12. prehenderētur: 'was on the point of being seized.' 13. vim suōrum: 'violence offered to any of their number.' 14. prō suō periculō: 'at the risk of their lives.' — Hi: subject of cōnsuērunt, l. 18. 15. dēposcere: this and the following infinitives depend upon cōnsuērunt. 17. vetere quōdam . . . institūtō: 'by an old privilege of the Alexandrian army.'
Achillas seizes the whole city except the part occupied by Caesar

111. His cōpiis fidēns Achillās paucitātemque militum Caesaris dēspiciēns occupābat Alexandriam praeter eam oppidī partem quam Caesar cum militibus tenēbat. Primō imperū domum eius inrumpere cōnātus est; sed Caesar dis-5 positis per viās cohortibus impetum eius sustinuit.

At the port, however, Caesar gains the victory

Eōdemque tempore pugnātum est ad portum, ac longē maximam ea rēs adtulit dimicātiōnem. Simul enim diductīs cōpiis plūribus viās pugnābatur, et magnā multitūdine nāvēs longās occupāre hostēs cōnābantur; quārum erant l auxiliō missae ad Pompēium proeliōque in Thessaliā factō domum redierant, illae trirēmēs omnēs et quinquerēmēs aptae in-10 strūctaeque omnibus rébus ad nāvigandum, praeter hās xxii quae præsidi causā Alexandriæ esse cōnsuērant; cōnstrātae omnēs; quās si occupāvissent, classe Caesari ēreptā portum ac mare tōtum in suā potestāte habērent, commeātū auxiliis-que Caesarem prohibērent. Itaque tantā est contentiōne āctum quantā agī debuit, cum illī celerem in eā rē victōriam, hi salūtem suam cōnsistere vidērent. Sed rem obtinuit Caesar omnēsque eās nāvēs et reliquās quae erant in nāvāli-20 bus incendit, quod tam lātē tuēri parvā manū nōn poterat, cōnfirmātīque ad Pharum nāvibus militēs exposuit.

10. proeliōque . . . factō: 'and at the conclusion of the war in Thessaly.' 14. si occupāvissent: a future condition thrown into past time on the principle of indirect discourse (implied). Their own thought was, 'if

fidēns, -entis, part. of fidō, relying opposite Alexandria, with a
upon lighthouse of the same name,
nāvālia, -ium, n., docks, shipyards which was one of the seven
Pharus, -i, f., Pharos, an island wonders of the world

10. Pharus, -i, f., Pharos, an island wonders of the world
we shall have seized' etc. 17. *actum*: impersonal; 'the contest was carried on with as great a struggle as might have been expected' (lit. 'as it ought to have been carried on'). — *quantā*: correlative with *tanta*, ablative of manner. 18. *rem obtinuit*: 'won the contest.' 21. *exposuit*: 'landed,' 'set on shore.'

*Description of Pharos and its lighthouse*

112. Pharus est in insulā turris magnā altitūdīne, mirificīs operibus extrūcta; quae nōmen ab insulā accēpit. Haec insula obiecta Alexandriāe portum efficit; sed ā superiōribus regiōribus in longitūdinem passuum dccc, in mare iactis mōlibus, angustō itinere et ponte cum oppidō coniungitur. 5 In hac sunt insulā domicilia Aegyptiōrum et vicus oppidī magnitūdine; quaeque ibi cumque nāvēs imprūdentīā aut tempestāte paulum suō cursū dēcesserunt, hās mōrē prae-dōnum diripere cōnsuērunt. Eis autem invitis ā quibus Pharus tenētur, nōn potest esse propter angustiās nāvibus introitus in portum.

*Cesar takes possession of Pharos. Elsewhere the battle is indecisive. Caesar fortifies his headquarters*

Hoc tamen veritus Caesar, hostibus in pugnā occupātīs, militibus expositīs Pharum prehendit atque ibi praeсидium posuit. Quibus est rēbus effectum ut tūtō frūmentum auxiliaque nāvibus ad eum supportārī posseint. Dimīsit enim 15 circum omnēs propinquās prōvinciās atque inde auxilia ēvocāvit. Reliquīs oppidī partibus sic est pugnātum, ut aequō proelīō discēderētur et neutri pellerentur (id efficiēbant angustiae locī), paucisque utrimque interfectī Caesar locā maximē necessāria complexus noctū praemūnīt. In hoc trāctū oppidī pars erat rēgiae exigua, in quam ipse habitandi causā initiō erat inductus, et theātrum coniūnctum domui, quod arcis tenēbat locum aditusque habēbat ad portum et ad reliqua
The younger daughter of Ptolemy joins Achillas. The Alexandrian War now begins in earnest

Interim filia minor Ptolemaei regis, vacuam possessionem regni spērāns, ad Achillam sēsē ex rēgīa trāīcīt ēnūaque bellum administrāre coepit. Sed celeriter est inter eōs dé princīpātū contrōversia orta; quae rēs apud miliēs lārgi-tōnēs auxit; magnīs enim iactūris sibi quisque eōrum animōs conciliābat. Haec dum apud hostēs geruntur, Pothīnus, nū-tricius pueri et prōcūrātōr rēgni, in parte Caesāris, cum ad Achillam nūntiōs mitteret hortaretque ne negotiō désisteret nēve animō dēficeret, indicātis dēprehēnsisque internūntiīs, 35 ā Caesare est interfectus. Haec initia belli Alexandrīni fuērunt.

3. obiecta: 'situated opposite,' with the dative. — ā superiōribus regiōnibus: 'on the upper side.' 4. in mare iactis mōlibus: 'piles being set in the sea.' 7. magnitūdine: ablative of description; 'of the size of a town.' — cumque: with quae, equal to quae cumque; 'whatever ships.' 9. Eis . . . invitis: ablative absolute with conditional force. 10. nōn potest esse . . . nāvibus introitus: 'ships cannot enter.' 15. Dimīsit: supply homi-nēs as object. 22. arcīs tenēbat locum: 'served as a citadel.' 24. ut . . . habēret: 'that he might have them before him as a rampart.' 26. vacuum . . . spērāns: 'hoping to get possession of the kingdom (now left) vacant.' 29. princīpātū: 'leadership.' 30. magnīs . . . conciliābat: 'for each tried by generous gifts to win their allegiance.'
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

BOOK I

13. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: 'Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adoptus esset, cum ei qui flūmen trānsissent suīs auxiliōm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret, aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidīis nītērētur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et internecīōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

14. His Caesar ita respondit: 'Ēō sībi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētiīc commemorāssent sēmemoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus merītō populi Rōmānī accidissent; quī si alicuius iniūriae sībi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisset difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegērēt quā rē timērēt, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris con tumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vīm temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter
gloriarentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admirarentur, eōdem pertinēre. Consuēsse enim deōs im-
mortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum
doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, his secundīōrēs
interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnītātem concēdere. Cum
ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, utī ea quae
polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduīs dē iniūriīs
quās ipsīs sociisque cōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus
satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.’

10 Divicō respondit: ‘Ita Helvētīos ā maiōribus suis insti-
tūtōs esse, uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, consuērint; eius
rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.’ Hōc respōnsō datō
discessit.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus . . . prōpōnit: ‘Esse nōnnullōs
15 quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrīmum valeat, qui
privātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā
atque improbā ōratīōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum
cōnferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, si iam principātum
Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum
imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, si Helvētiōs supera-
verint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem
sint ēreptūri. Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs
gerantur hostibus ēnūntiāri: hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse.
Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesari ēnūntiārit,
25 intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam
causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.’

18. Eadem sēcṛētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra:
‘Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apūd
plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum.
30 Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduoīrum
vectigālia parvō pretiō redēmta habēre, proptereā quod illō
licente contrā licēri audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem
familiarem auxisse et facultatibus ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatum suum sumptum semper alere et circum se habere, neque solo domi sed etiam apud finitimam civitatem largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causa materem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo conlocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex mater et propinquas suas nuptum in aliam civitatem conlocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam adfinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia eius deminuta et Diviciacus frater in antiquum locum gratae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regnum obtinendi venire; imperii populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea quam habeat gratiam desesperare.'

20. Diviciacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrare coepit ne quid gravius in fraterem statueret. 'Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plius quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratiam plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulteriam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solo ad minuendam gratiam sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur; se se tamen et amore fraternello et existimatio ne volgli commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravium accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenet, neminem existimaturum non suam voluntate factum; quae ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.'

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum conveniunt: 'Intelligere se, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bellum repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usus terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse; propterea quod eoi consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas
Helvētii reliquissent, uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā déligerent, quem ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitātēs stipendiāriās habērent.'

5 31. Ea rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent; propterea quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.'

10 Locūtus est prō hīs Diviciācus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtius factionēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hi cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderit, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum ēmisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, qui et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanis obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrando civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetūrōs neque auxilium à populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omni civitāte Haeduōrum qui addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs dare. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrando neque obsidibus tenērētur.
Sed peius victoribus Sēquanis quam Haeduīs victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agri Sēquani, quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertīa Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucis mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxīī ad eum vēnisent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbe et crūdēlīter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimi cuiusque liberōs poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās à Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quin dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sīnt gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercītūs vel recenti victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē maiōr multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.'

Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hoc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxiliō implōrāre audērent; absentisque Ariovisti crūdēlitātem, velut sī
cōram adisset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, qui intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendi.'

5 34. Ei lēgātiōni Ariovistus respondit: 'Si quid ipsi ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisset; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportēre. Praeterea sē neque sine exercitu in eās partēs Galliae venire audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum vidēri quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negotiī esset.'

35. His responsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātīs mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suo populiō Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populoque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venire invitātūs gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eo postulāret:

prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trāduceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīisque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacereret, nēve his sociīisque eōrum bellum inferret. Si id ita fēcisset, sibi populoque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amicitiam cum eo futūram; si nōn impetrāret, sēsē—quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātūs cēnsuisset utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōs-que amīcōs populi Rōmānī dēfendere—sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglectūrum.'
36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse belli ut quī vicissent, eis quōs vicissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānūm victis nōn ad alterius praesciptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Si ipsa popūlō Rōmānō nōn praescribēret quem ad modum suō iūre uterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā popūlō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Haeduōs sībi, quoniam belli fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere qui suō adventū vectigālia sībi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque his neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, si in eō manērent quod convēnisset stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id nōn fecissent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sībi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglectūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrēderētur; intellectūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.'

patrum nostrorum memoriam, cum, Cimbris et Teutonis a C. Mariō pulsis, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritum vidēbatur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīli tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ĭusus ac disciplina quam ā nōbis accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicāri posse quantum habēret ĭn sē bonī cōnstantia, propōtereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs postēa armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

‘Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum sæpe-

10 numerō Helvētīi congressī, nōn sōlum ĭn suīs sed etiam ĭn illōrum finibus, plērumque superārint; qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quaerērent, reperire posse, diūturnitāte belli dēfatigātīs Gallīs, Ariovistūm, cum multōs ĭn mensēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuissent, neque suī potestā-

15 tem fēcissent, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōni contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capi posse.

‘Quī suum timōrem ĭn reī frūmentāriāe simulātiōnem an-

20 gustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adrogaanter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōrīs dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse ĭn agrīs frūmenta mā-

25 tūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevi tempore iūdicātūrōs.

‘Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dicantur (militēs), nihil sē ēā rē commovēri; scire enim, quibus-

30 cumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisset, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.
Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset, re-
praesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quârā vigiliā castra
mōtūrum, ut quam primum intelligere posset utrum apud
eōs pudor atque officium an timor plus valēret. Quod sī
praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne
itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohor-
tem futūram.'

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē
suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: 'Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē
nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum a Gallis; nōn
sine magnā spē magnīisque praemiīs domum propinquōisque
reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs
ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī quod
victōrēs victis impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed
Gallōs sībi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē
oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās
omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si
iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre;
sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre quod
suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

'Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sībi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō,
nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Si
per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditicii
subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi
Rōmānī amicitiam quam adpetierit.

'Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id
sē sūi mūniendi, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere;
eius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et
quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in
Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante
hoc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae
finibus ēgressum. Quid sībi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs
veniret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concēdi nōn oportēret, si in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic ītem nōs esse iniquōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

5 'Quod frātrēs a senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

10 'Dēbēre sē suspicāri simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, sūi opprimendi causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eīus morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemīō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ūllō eīus labōre et periculō cōnflectūrum.'

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quà rē negotiō dēsistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populi Rōmānī consuētūdinem pati uti optimē meritōs sociōs désereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populi Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi Rōmānī iūstīssimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iū-30 dicium senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliām, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.'

47. 'Quid ad sē venirent? an speculandi causā?'
BOOK II

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opinione vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Icium et Andebrogium, primōs cīvitātīs, misērunt, qui dicērent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquis Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contra populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, qui cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, qui eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus āntantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant, ĥéterēre potuerint quin cum hīs cōnsentirent.'

4. Cum ab eīs quaerēret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: 'Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquītus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdīsse; Gallōsque qui ea loca incolent expulisse, sōlōsque esse qui patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōs que intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī uti eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spiritūs in rē militāri sūmerent.

'Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta' Rēmi dicēbant, 'propterea quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniūnctī, quantum quisque multitūdīnem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et homīnīm numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta milia centum,
pollicitōs ex eō numerō élēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prōidentiamque summam tōtius belli omnium volūtāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō xii, pollicēri milia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, qui maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; xv milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs x milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Me-napiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Veliocassēs et Viroman-duōs totidem, Aduatucōs xix milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāri (cōnficere posse) ad xl milia.’


15. Eōrum finēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: ‘Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil pati vini reliquā-rumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his
rebus relanguescere animós et remitti virtútem existimárent; esse hominès ferós magnaeque virtútis; increpitare atque incúsāre reliquós Belgás, qui sé populó Rómanó dēdidissent patriamque virtútem prōiectissent; confirmāre sēsē neque lægátōs missūrōs neque ullam condicionem pācis acceptūrōs.'

31. Ubi véō movēri et adpropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inúsitātā speciē commōti lægátōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī: 'Nōn existimāre Rómanōs sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, qui tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere' dixērunt. 'Unum petere ac dēprecāri: si forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliis audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; á quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēductūrunt, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab his per cruciātum interfici īnter quōs domināri cōnsuēssent.'

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditōnīs nūllam esse condicionem nisi armīs trāditis. Sē id quod in Nervīs fēcisset factūrum, finitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēdīticiīs populi Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent.'
ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative
abl. abs. = ablative absolute
adv. = adverb
cf. = confer, i.e. compare
dir. = direct
disc. = discourse
f. = feminine
ff. = and following
fig. = figure
fut. = future
gen. = genitive
ill. = illustration
impers. = impersonal
impv. = imperative
ind. = indicative
indef. = indefinite
indir. = indirect
inf. = infinitive
Intro. = Introduction
l., ll. = line, lines
lit. = literally

m. = masculine
n. = neuter
neg. = negative
obj. = object or objective
p., pp. = page, pages
part. = partitive
pass. = passive
past abs. = past absolute
past descr. = past descriptive
perf. = perfect
plur. = plural
pred. = predicate
reflex. = reflexive
rel. = relative
sc. = scilicet, i.e. supply
sing. = singular
subj. = subject or subjective
subjv. = subjunctive
subord. = subordinate
subst. = substantive
transl. = translate
NOTES

THE ARGONAUTS

References preceded by a section sign (§) are to the Grammar (pp. 305 ff.)

Page xli, introduction. This introduction and the story of the Argonauts are taken (with a few slight changes) from “Fabulae Faciles,” a first Latin reader prepared by Mr. F. Ritchie, an Englishman. In style and in vocabulary the Latin imitates that of Cæsar, and is excellent in preparing for the reading of Nepos and Cæsar.

Page xli, Line 1 quorum: part. gen. with alter (§ 76).

xlii 2 Ex his: ‘of these (brothers).’ The abl. with ex is here used instead of the part. gen. With cardinal numerals (except mīlia) the abl. is the regular construction: ānus ex mīlitibus, ‘one of the soldiers.’

xlii 4 rēgni cupiditāte: ‘by a desire for (of) the kingdom’ (§ 75).

xliii 6 Quīdam . . . ex amīcis: quīdam commonly takes the same construction as cardinal numerals (see note on 1. 2).

xliii 3 cum . . . rediissent: ‘when they had returned,’ a descriptive clause of time (§ 194. b).

xliii 4 puerum mortuum esse: ‘that the boy was dead’ (lit. ‘had died’); puerum is the subj. of esse, an inf. in indir. disc. (§ 217. b). The direct words of the speaker were puer mortuus est. In indir. disc. the subj. (puer) becomes accusative, and the verb (est) becomes an inf.—haec: ‘this’ (lit. ‘these things’); Latin frequently uses the plur. to denote not two or more things, but the details or circumstances of one thing.

xliii 6 esset: ‘was,’ subjv. in an indir. question (§ 201).

xliii 7 cum: ‘since,’ introducing a causal clause (§ 195).—esse: as in l. 4.

—nesciō quam fābulam . . . fīnxērunt: ‘they got up some story, I don’t know what.’

xliii 10 nē . . . āmitteret: ‘that he should lose,’ obj. of veritus (§ 184).

xliii 10 vi, fraude: ablatives of means (§ 106).—Delphōs: place whither (§ 97). At Delphi, in central Greece, was the famous shrine of Apollo.

xliii 11 quī . . . cōnsuleret: ‘to consult,’ a clause of purpose (§ 175).—ōrāculum: ‘oracle.’ The word means here the priestess through whom Apollo delivered his prophetic utterances. The word ‘oracle’ may also mean the place where the utterance is delivered, or the utterance itself.
xlii 12 vēnisset: like esse in l. 6.

xlii 14 ut . . . cavēret: ‘to beware of’ (lit. ‘that he should guard against’), a clause of purpose depending on monuit (§ 183). — si quis: ‘if anybody’; a pronoun after sī is usually indef.

xlii 15 ut . . . factūrus esse: a clause of result (§ 187. II).

xlii 17 certam diem: the sing. diēs, when it denotes an appointed time or duration of time, is usually feminine.—Diē cōnstitūtā: abl. of the time at which (§ 119).

xlii 19 ā puerō: ‘from a boy,’ ‘from boyhood.’

xlii 21 in trānseundō . . . flūmine: ‘in crossing a river’ (lit. ‘in a river to be crossed’; § 224). — nesciō quō: see note on l. 7.

xlii 23 alterō pede nūdō: ‘with one foot bare’ (lit. ‘one foot being bare’; §§ 117, 118). — quem: ‘and him,’ ‘him.’ A rel. is equivalent to a connective and a demonstrative; the connective may be omitted in translating (§ 143).

xlii 25 dēmōnstrāvisset: to be translated as if ‘t were ind., ‘had spoken of.’ The form is subjv. because the rel. clause depends on esse, an inf. in indir. disc. (§ 208).

xlii 26 nōmine: ‘by name’; abl. of respect (§ 115).

xlii 28 illud: ‘the famous,’ a common meaning of this pronoun when it follows the noun. — Phrixus: Phrixus and his sister Helle escaped from their wicked stepmother by being carried away on a flying ram with a golden fleece. Helle fell into the sea (named Hellespont after her). Phrixus was carried to Colchis. He sacrificed the ram and gave the fleece to Æetes, who hung it in a sacred grove and had it guarded by a sleepless dragon.

xliii 1 ut . . . potīrētur: ‘of getting’ (lit. ‘that he should get’), a subst. clause in apposition with nēgōtium (§§ 181, 183). — vellere: for the case see § 107.

xliii 2 cum: ‘since’ (§ 189).

xliii 6 iter: accusative of extent of space with abesset (§ 96).

xliii 8 quī . . . docērent . . . dīcèrent: like quī . . . cōnsuleret, p. xlii, l. 11. xliii 11 ēsuī: ‘of use,’ ‘useful’ (lit. ‘for a use’; § 89).

xliii 21 operī: dative after prae in praerat (§ 84); but some verbs of this kind take the accusative.

xliii 22 nē . . . quidem: ‘not . . . even’; the emphatic word or words stand between nē and quidem.

xliii 24 paulō . . . lātor: ‘a little broader’ (lit. ‘broader by a little’; § 114). — quam quibus: ‘than those which’; the antecedent of quibus, if expressed, would be eae; quibus is in the abl. after ēti (§ 107). — nostrō mari: the Mediterranean. The author writes as if he were an ancient Roman.—cōnsuēvimus: the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect of certain verbs are to be translated as if they were the present, the past descriptive or perfect, or the future. Thus cōnsuēvī means ‘I am (lit. ‘have become’) accustomed.’
NOTES
xlvi 19 parvō intervallō: 'at a small distance apart' (§ 118).

xlvi 22 faciendum esset: 'needed to be done' (§§ 224. a, 201). — sublātīs ancorīs nāvem solvit: 'weighed anchor and set sail' (§ 117). If all verbs had a past participle active (as in deponent verbs, § 37), the abl. abs. would be far less frequent; here, for example, we should then have ancorās sublātus nāvem solvit, in which sublātus would agree with the subj. of solvit. Cf. adductus ... expulit (p. xli, l. 4) and veritus ... misit (p. xlii, l. 9).

xlvi 25 rēctā viā: 'in a straight course' (§§ 106. a, 120. note 1).

xlvi 26 caudā tantum āmissā: 'having lost its tail only'; see note on sublātīs ancorīs, l. 22.

xlvi 27 antequam ... concurrerent: 'before they should run together' (§ 197. b).

xlvii 1 quōrum auxiliō ... ēreptī essent: 'since by their aid they had been snatched,' a rel. clause of cause (§ 190 and note).

xlvii 12 trāditūrum: trāditūrum esse. When the inf. is formed with the participle, esse is often omitted.

xlvii 13 prius: 'first' (lit. 'before'). — perfēcisset: 'should perform,' like sī ... repperissent, p. xlvi, l. 5.

xlvii 17 serendi (erant): in such cases the auxiliary est is often omitted; for serendi see faciendum, p. xlvi, l. 22.

xlvii 19 rēi: 'his task.'

xlvii 23 eō ipsō cōnsiliō: like eō cōnsiliō, p. xlvi, l. 18; transl. ipsō by 'very.'

xlvii 27 quod ... aleret ... cōnfirmāret: see § 175.

xlviii 1 essent: 'were'; subjv. because it is subord. to ut ... oblineret. This is called the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).

xlviii 2 omnibus ... antecellēbat: see § 84. — magnitūdine et viribus: see § 115.

xlviii 7 ortā lūce: 'at daybreak' (lit. 'light having risen'; § 117).

xlviii 13 quā in rē: 'in this' (§ 143). A monosyllabic preposition often stands between adjective and noun.

xlviii 18 essent: as in l. 1.

xlviii 21 gignerentur: like essent, ll. 1, 18.

xlviii 24 dum: see § 198. III. b.

xlviii 25 ita ... ut: 'just as.'

xlviii 26 esset: like dēmōnstrāvisset, p. xlii, l. 25.

xlviii 27 ingenti magnitūdine: see § 116. — gladiīs galeisque: see § 106.

xlviii 28 mirum in modum: 'wonderfully.'

xlviii 29 dedisset: 'had given' (§ 208).

xlix 2 cum: 'since' (§ 189).

xlix 11 si ... mànississet: 'if she should stay.' Medea said in magnō erō periculō sī in rēgiā mànserō (§ 199. II. a); see note on p. xlvi, l. 5.
NOTES

xliv 17 prófuisset: ‘had aided’; like essent, p. xlvii, ll. 1, 18.
xli 10 nē... timēret: see § 183.
xlix 26 qui... essent: see § 175. — praesidiō nāvi: double dative (§ 89).
1 7 dum... dormit: see § 198. I.
1 12 id negōtium... periculi: ‘that this undertaking was one of the greatest danger’; pred. gen. (§ 77. a).
1 15 māturandum (esse) sibi: ‘that they ought to hasten’ (lit. ‘that there should be a hastening by them’; §§ 87, 222. II).
1 18 esset: ‘was’ (§ 201).
1 20 advenientibus occurrērunt: see § 84.
1 23 quod rés... ēvēnisset: ‘because, as they said, the undertaking’ etc. (§ 188. b).
1 27 inimicō... animō: ‘hostilely minded’ (§ 116).
li 1 hōc dolōre: ‘by his anger at this’ (lit. ‘by this anger’; § 109).
li 6 eādēm celeritāte quā: ‘with the same speed as’ (§ 110).
li 7 minimum āfuit quin... caperentur: like haud... morerētūr, p. xlv, l. 25.
li 8 neque... posset: ‘for the distance between them was only a javelin’s throw’ (lit. ‘for it was not farther between than whither’ etc.).
li 18 Neque opīniō eam fefellit: ‘nor was she mistaken.’ Literally?
li 21 quod necesse fuit: ‘as was inevitable.’
li 22 prius... quam: ‘until.’
li 24 prōgressus esset: like sī... repērissent, p. xlvii, l. 5. Ectes said nīhil mihi prōderit sī longius prōgressus erō (§ 199. II. a); translate this.
lii 5 neque dubium est quin... adsit: see § 186.
lii 6 Liceat... mihi: ‘permit me’ (lit. ‘let it be permitted to me’; § 172. b).
— dum vivam: ‘while I live’ (§ 214).
lii 9 rogāset: ‘asked’; a short form for rogāvisset (vi of the perf. stem is frequently omitted). His words were id faciam (fut.) quod rogāvisītī.
lii 14 Vultisne: for vultis see volō, § 42; for -ne see the vocabulary.
lii 15 fierī: see § 45.
lii 16 Num... potest: ‘this can’t be done, can it?’ See num in the vocabulary.
lii 10 possit: see § 201.
lii 22 dum... effervēscrēt: see § 198. III. b; cf. p. xlviii, l. 24.
lii 28 ipsae: agreeing with vōs (l. 27).
liii 6 quibus: see § 107.
liii 20 ultūram: like trāditūrum, p. xlvi, l. 12.
liii 23 induisset: 'put on'; like essent, p. xlviii, l. 1.
liii 24 nihil mali: 'no harm' (lit. 'nothing of harm'; § 76).
liii 25 mōre fēminārum: 'like a woman' (§ III).
liv 1 magnum . . . manēret: her direct words were magnum mihi erit
periculum sī diūtius hic manēbō (§ 210); translate this.
liv 7 itaque: 'and thus'; this is ita with -que attached, not the adv.
'i'taque ('therefore').
liv 9 cāsū sīve cōnsiliō: see § III.

THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL

Ivii 1 Chap. 1. Hannibal . . . Karthāginiēnsis: these words (without a
verb) serve as a title to the biography.
Ivii 3 superārit: cf. rogāset, p. lii, l. 9, and see note; for the mood see
§ 187. II and note 1.
Ivii 4 tantō praestitisse . . . quantō: 'as much surpassed . . . as' (lit. 'by
so much surpassed . . . by how much'; § 114). Praestitisse here takes the
accusative; see note on operē, p. xliii, l. 21. — prūdentīā: see § 115.
Ivii 5 antecēdat: 'excels'; for the subjv. see § 208.
Ivii 6 eō: populi Rōmānō.
Ivii 7 Quōd: 'in view of which,' 'and therefore' (see note on quem,
p. xlii, l. 23); the adverbial use of the accusative neuter singular.— nisi . . .
potuisset: a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. b) in indir.
disc. (§ 213). The dir. form would regularly be nisi dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs
superāre potuisset. But potuisset stands for potuit, the perf. ind., which is often
used instead of the past perf. subjv. when the verb (such as potuit) denotes
possibility, propriety, or necessity. Transl. superāre potuit 'he could have
overcome.' Instead of saying vidētur eum Rōmānōs superāre potuisset (§ 217. b),
'it seems that he could have' etc., the Latin prefers to make eum the personal
subj. of vidētur and say vidētur Rōmānōs superāre potuisset, 'he seems to have
been able to overcome the Romans.' When the subj. of the inf. is thus made
the subj. of the principal verb, we have what is called the personal construc-
tion in indir. disc.
Ivii 11 ut . . . deposuerit: 'that he gave up his life before that' (lit. 'that
he sooner gave up his life than he gave up that'); a clause of result (§ 179).
Ivii 12 qui . . . numquām dēstiterit: 'a man who never ceased,' or 'since
he never ceased'; a clause of characteristic (§ 177). The translation of such
clauses may begin with 'since,,' although,' 'such that,' or the like, according to the
context. — cum: 'although' (§ 192). — opum indīgēret: the gen. (instead
of the abl.) is sometimes used with verbs and adjectives denoting plenty or want.
NOTES

Ivii 13 animō: abl. after dēstiterit (§ 101).
Ivii 14 Chap. 2. ut omittam: ‘to say nothing of’ (§ 174).
Ivii 17 rubrō mari: ‘the Persian Gulf’; an early use of the name.
Ivii 18 vēnissent . . . fēcissent . . . comperisset . . . vidisset: all these depend on cum (§ 194. b).—quī . . . explōrāret darentque: see § 175.
Ivii 20 in suspicīōnem rēgī: ‘under the king’s suspicion’ (§ 85).
Ivii 21 alia atque: ‘otherwise than’ (‘other things than’).
Ivii 2 tempore: ‘opportunity’ (§ 117).
Ivii 3 commemorāset: cf. rogāset, p. lii, l. 9, and see note.
Ivii 4 puerulō mé: see § 118.
Ivii 5 utpote . . . nātō: ‘since I was not more than nine years old’ (explaining why he refers to himself as puerulō); nātō agrees with mé (l. 4).
Ivii 6 Karthāgine: see § 101. a.
Ivii 7 dum cōnficiēbātur: the present would be the proper tense (§ 198. I).
Ivii 10 Faciām . . . dederīs: see § 199. II. a.
Ivii 15 eādem mente: see § 116.
Ivii 17 nōn imprūdentere fāceris si mé cēlāris (for cēlāveris): ‘you would act not wisely if you should conceal (it) from me’ (§ 199. II. b); mé is accusative after cēlāris, which may take two accusatives (the person and the thing).
Ivii 18 frūstrāberis si nōn . . . posuerīs: see § 199. II. a.
Ivii 20 Chap. 3. Hac . . . aetāte: see § 119.—quā dīximus: the complete sentence would be quā dīximus eum profectum esse (supplied from profectus est).
Ivii 21 imperātōrem: pred. (§ 58).
Ivii 23 Id: his appointment.—Karthāginem: see § 97.
Ivii 25 vigintī annis nātus: cf. novem annōs nātō, l. 5; see § 119. note.
Duration of time is regularly expressed by the accusative (§ 96).

lx 4 quō factō: see § 117.
lx 6 eā (vīā) . . . quā (vīā): ‘there . . . where’; originally ablatives (§ 106. a).
lx 10 Chap. 4. Clastidē: see § 120. a.
lx 16 dextrō (oculō): see § 107.—cum: see § 192.
lx 22 ūnō proeliō: the famous battle of Cannae, 216 B.C. The Roman army was almost annihilated.

Ix 3 Chap. 5. dētrimentō exercitūs: ‘harm to his army’; obj. gen. (§ 75).
Ix 6 Quō . . . obiectō visū: see § 117.
Ix 9 Hanc post rem: cf. quā in rē, p. xlviii, l. 13, and see note.
Ix 11 diēbus: see § 114.
Ix 13 parī ac dictātōrem imperiō: parī ac dictātor fuit imperiō, ‘having the authority of dictator.’ For parī . . . imperiō see § 116. Dictātōrem agrees, by attraction, with magistrum (accusative).
Ix 15 absēns: ‘in his absence’; his brother Mago was in command.
lxi 18 Longum est: 'it would be a long story.' Here the Latin uses the
ind. where we use the subjv.
lxi 19 ex quō ... possit: 'that from this' etc. (§ 175).
lxi 23 Chap. 6. défensum: see § 226. a.
lxi 26 fugārat: for fugāverat; cf. rogāset, p. lii, l. 9. — Cum hōc: 'with him.'
lxi 27 quō valentior ... congrēderētur: see § 176; for the case of quō see § 114.
lxi 28 In conloquium convēnit: 'a conference was arranged.' Convēnit ēs
impers., 'it was agreed.'
lxi 29 Post ... paucīs diēbus: see § 114.
lxi 30 dictū: see § 226. b.
lxii 2 mīlia passuum trecenta: apparently an exaggeration or an error.
See the map, p. lx.
lxii 4 Hadrūmētī: like Clastidī, p. lx, l. 10.
lxii 5 novīs dilēctibus: see § 106.
lxii 10 Chap. 7. ad ... cōnsulēs: the names of the consuls were com-
monly used to designate the year of an event. The names may or may not be
connected by et.—His enim magistrātibus: see § 118.
lxii 11 qui ... agerent ... dōnārent ... pēterent: 'to express' etc. (§ 175)
lxii 12 quod ... fēcissent: 'because they had made' (§ 205; see also § 188. b).
lxii 13 eōs: i.e. the Romans.
lxii 14 eōrum: i.e. of the Carthaginians.—Fregellīs: see § 120.—essent:
'might be.'
lxiii 1 ex: 'in accordance with.'
lxiii 2 Mūnus ... Māgōnem: see §§ 202, 203. The direct words of the
senate were mūnus vestrum grātum acceptumque est; obsīdēs quō locō rogātis
erunt; captīvōs nōn remittēmus, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā suscepĭt bellum
est, ... habētīs ... Māgōnem.
lxiii 3 remissūrōs: the subj. is sē (to be supplied), referring to the Romans.
lxiii 4 cuius operā: 'through whose effort.'
lxiii 6 Hōc responsōs ... cognitō: see § 117.
lxiii 7 domum: see § 97.
lxiii 8 postquam ... annō secundō et vīcēsimō: 'twenty-two years (lit.
'in the twenty-second year') after he had become commander in chief.'
lxiii 11 parī diligentiā ... ac: 'as earnest (lit. 'of equal earnestness';
§ 116) as.'
lxiii 13 ut esset pecūnia ... penderētur: 'that there was money to pay.'
For ut esset see § 187. I; for quae ... penderētur, § 175.
lxiii 15 M. Claudīō ... cōnsulibus: see § 118, and the note on p. lxii, l. 10.
lxiii 16 suī exposcendī grātiā: 'for the purpose of demanding him'
(§ 224. b).—missōs: missōs esse (§ 217. b).
lxiii 17 senātus: 'an audience of the senate.'
NOTES 221

lxiii 19 quae . . . comprehenderent . . . cónsequí: 'to seize him if they could overtake (him).’ The direct words were comprehendite eum, sī poteritis cónsequí (§ 199. II. a; the impv., comprehendite, is equivalent to a fut. ind.). For the mood and tense of posset see §§ 208, 209 and note, 210.

lxiii 24 Chap. 8. sī . . . posset: 'to see if he could’ (§ 201).

lxiii 25 Antiochī spē: 'through their hope in Antiochus’ (obj. gen., § 75).

lxiii 27 Hūc: 'to this place’ (Cyrene).

lxiii 29 Illi: Hannibal and Mago. Begin the sentence with cum; illī, indicating a change of subj., and hence being emphatic, is placed first in the sentence (p. 405). — dēspērātis rēbus: 'despairing of success.’

lxiv 2 naufragiō: see § 106. — ā servulis: see § 104. — interfectum: interfectum esse (§ 217. b), depending on scriptum reliquērit, 'have left the statement’ (lit. 'have left written’; scriptum is the accusative neuter sing. of the past participle).

lxiv 3 sī . . . voluisset . . . dimicāsset (dimicāvisset): see § 199. III. b.

lxiv 8 Tiberi . . . Thermopylīs: after the adv. propius (§ 90).

lxiv 11 Quem: 'Antiochus.’ English is not well supplied with pronouns, and clearness often requires the repetition of the noun.

lxiv 13 vidēbat: 'Hannibal saw’; see the preceding note.

lxiv 16 In quō: 'in this battle.’ — cum: 'while.' — suī: 'his forces.’

lxiv 17 quō cornū: eō cornū quō (§ 140). — rem gessit: 'fought.’

lxiv 18 Chap. 9. verēns nē dēderētur: see § 184.

lxiv 19 sī . . . potestātem: 'if he had offered a chance at himself’ (§ 75).

lxiv 21 vir omnium callidissimus: 'this shrewdest of men’ (lit. 'shrewdest man of all’; § 76). — in magnō . . . prōvidisset: his direct words were in magnō erō periculō, nisi quid prōvidēro (§ 199. II. a); for quid see note on quis, p. xlii, l. 14.

lxiv 23 exīsse: for exiisse (from exēō); for the mood see § 217. b.

lxiv 25 summās (amphorās): 'the tops of the jars.’ A few superlative adjectives commonly denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant; thus summus mōns does not mean 'the highest mountain,’ but 'the highest part (top) of the mountain.’

lxiv 29 domī: 'at his house’ (§ 120. a).

lxv 2 tolleret: the obj., amphorās, is to be supplied.

lxv 6 Chap. 10. quam . . . armāvit: 'than arm.’

lxv 8 opibus: see § 115.

lxv 10 eō: 'Prusias’; see note on p. lxiv, l. 11.

lxv 11 et mari et terrā: 'both at sea and on land’; cf. terrā marique, 'on land and sea.’ The preposition in is not required with these expressions (§ 120). — utrobique: i.e. et mari et terrā.

lxv 12 quō magis: 'and all the more’ (§ 114).

lxv 13 quem sī . . . fore: see note on p. lxiv, l. 21.

lxv 17 armis: see § 115. — Imperāvit ... serpentēs ... conligi: see § 217. a. Imperō ordinarily takes the subjv. with ut (§ 183).

lxv 21 omnēs ut: ut omnēs; omnēs is more emphatic before ut (p. 405).

lxv 22 tantum ... sē défendere: 'merely to defend themselves.'

lxv 23 cōnsecūturōs (esse): see § 217. b; the verb of saying is implied in praeclīpit (l. 20). — Rēx ... factūrum (esse): the order of the words is determined by their emphasis (p. 405). Rēx is the subj. of veherētur, and this clause is in turn the obj. of seīrent (§ 201). For ut seīrent see § 187. I.

lxv 24 quem si ... fore: 'he promises that if' etc.

lxv 25 magnō iis ... praemiō fore: 'they shall be richly rewarded.' (lit. 'it shall be to them for a great reward'; § 89).

lxv 28 Chap. 11. dārētur: 'should be given' (§ 197. b).

lxvi 4 quod: 'because' (§ 188. a).

lxvi 7 quae ... pertinērent: see § 177.

lxvi 10 praeceptō: see § 111.

lxvi 16 Quae iacta ... concitārunt (concitāvērunt): 'the throwing of these (lit. 'which thrown') made the fighters laugh.' (lit. 'provoked laughter for' etc.; § 85).

lxvi 18 opplētās ... serpentibus: 'filled with serpents' (§ 106).

lxvi 22 aliās: 'on other occasions'; an adv.

lxvi 28 Chap. 12. qui Hannibale vivō ... existimārent: 'since they thought (§ 190) that so long as Hannibal lived' (§ 118).

lxvi 29 futūrōs: futūrōs esse.

lxvii 2 suum ... sibique: indir. reflexives, referring to the Romans (§ 133).

— sēcum: a dir. reflex. referring to Prusias (§ 132).

lxvii 3 illud ... nē ... postulārent: 'he objected to their asking' (§ 185).

— id ... fieri: see § 217. a; id is the antecedent of quod.

lxvii 4 quod ... esset: 'which was' (§ 214). — ipsi ... comprehendīrērent: 'that they themselves should seize (him)'; in indir. disc., a verb of saying being implied in recūsāvit. His direct words were ipsi comprehendīt (impv.).

lxvii 5 ubi esset: see § 208. — inventūrōs: (ēōs) inventūrōs esse (§ 217. b). His direct words were locum ubi est facile invenītēlis.

lxvii 7 múneri: see § 89. — aedificārat: aedificāverat.

lxvii 13 num ... obsidērētur: see § 201. note.

lxvii 15 occupātōs: occupātōs esse (§ 217. b).

lxvii 16 factum: factum esse (§ 217. b).

lxvii 17 Quam nē ... dimitteret: 'that he might not lose his life at another's will'; for aliēnō arbitriō see § 111. — memor ... virtūtum: see § 80.

lxvii 20 Chap. 13. perfunctus labōribus: see § 107.

lxvii 21 Quibus cōnsulibus: see note on p. lxii, l. 10. — interierit: see § 201.
NOTES

lxvii 23 scriptum reliquit: see note on p. lxiv, l. 2.
lxvii 26 Atque: 'and it is noteworthy that'; the conjunction et simply connects; atque always throws emphasis on what follows.—tantus ... tantisque: 'great' (do not say 'so great').
lxvii 27 non nihil temporis: see § 76. a.
lxvii 20 Huius bellī gesta: 'Hannibal’s (lit. ‘this man’s’) exploits in war'; for bellī see §§ 72, 73.
lxviii 1 duo: duo sunt.
lxviii 4 usus est doctōre: 'had as instructor' (§ 107).
lxviii 6 quot facilius ... possit: see § 176.—utrorumque: 'of both' (Roman and foreign leaders).

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

1 1 Chap. I. Gāius: the regular Latin form, usually written 'Caius' in English.—familia: abl. of origin (§ 102).
1 3 Cinnae: a prominent leader of the popular party.
1 4 Sullae: the great partisan of the nobility and the opponent of Cinna.
1 10 Rhōdum: Rhodes, an island near the coast of Asia Minor.
1 11 prōgreditur: historical present (§ 153. a).
1 13 per pecūniās magnās: 'by a great ransom.' What literally?
2 1 Chap. II. quaestor: an officer appointed as assistant to a consul or prōtōr in charge of a province; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.
2 6 Aedilis: an officer at Rome, among whose duties was the charge of public buildings and games; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.
2 7 lūdōs: games were presented in the circus in great variety, and often at great expense, by the officials to gain the favor of the people. See p. xii.
2 8 in aes aliēnum ... incidit: 'he incurred debt.'
2 9 Cōnsul: the consuls were the highest officers at Rome. Two were elected each year. See Introd. I. 5 and 6.—societātem: the alliance known as the First Triumvirate; see Introd. I. 6.
2 10 Lēgem ... tulisset: 'he had proposed a law.'
2 11 rem ad populum rettulit: 'he laid the matter before the people.'
3 5 Chap. III. primus Rōmānōrum: i.e. he was the first of the Romans to do these things.
3 11 conversum: past participle of convertō modifying aquiliferum; transl. by a clause, 'who had turned' (§ 220. e).
3 14 quibuscum: for the preposition cum as enclitic see § 150. a.
3 15 parātās: past participle modifying legiōnēs; vincē depends on parātās.
3 16 Chap. IV. Parthōs: a warlike people southeast of the Caspian Sea.
3 21 ut ... peteret: 'that he might be a candidate for the consulship a second time.'
4.1 sē... velle: 'that he wished to be a candidate while absent.'
4.4 Rubicönum: a small stream between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, the boundary of Cæsar's province. The crossing of this boundary with an army was equivalent to a declaration of war.
4.6 cōgitāns: see §167.
4.9 iacta est ālea: 'the die is cast'; i.e. 'the decisive step has been taken.'
4.10 Brundisium: a port of Calabria in southern Italy, whence ships sailed, and still sail, to Greece.
5.1 Chap. V. Epi'rus: Epi'rus, a district in northern Greece. See map, p. 167.
5.2 Dyrrachi: Dyrrach'ium, a town in Illyricum.—dum cópiae... pervenirent: 'until the forces... should arrive'; for the subjv. mood see §198.
5.3 ēgreditur: historical present (§153.a); transl. as a past abs. (§156.b); so also cónsendit.
5.8 prius: to be taken with quam; the parts of antequam and priusquam are often separated in this way; for the ind. mood see §197.a.
5.14 môre: some ablative of manner, even when not accompanied by an adjective, are used without cum.
6.1 Chap. VI. Āfricō: 'understand bellō.
6.2 Magni: an honorary name given to Pompey. See ill., p. 188.
6.6 Proeliō quōdam: 'in a certain battle'; proeliō is an abl. of time (§119), though the English idiom would lead us to expect in proeliō, an abl. of place where.
6.7 suōrum: the possessive reflex. adjective (§132); sc. mīlitum.—quod... servāsset: a cause stated on the authority of some one other than the writer (§188.b); 'he upbraided Fortune because (as it seemed to him) she had kept him for this disaster.'
6.9 sibi: the dative of reference (§85), often used with the dative of purpose or end (§89); 'he thought that that war would prove disastrous to him' (lit. 'for a disaster to him').
6.13 omnium: an obj. gen. (§75.b); if victor, on which the gen. depends, were a verb, omnium would be the dir. obj. (accusative), vīcit omnēs.
7.2 Chap. VII. annumque... accommodāvit: i.e. he made the number of days in the calendar year accord with that in the solar year. See §227.a.
7.3 Repetundārum: a gen. used with a verb of convicting; 'those convicted of extortion.'—convictōs: a past participle agreeing with eos understood.
7.4 quae... minuerent: a rel. clause of purpose (§175).
7.5 exercuit: 'enforced.'
7.7 Dictātor: a Roman magistrate appointed in times of danger and having absolute power. When Cæsar was appointed dictator in perpetuum, that
NOTES

is, for a term extending beyond the period of danger and necessity, it was feared that he was aiming at regal authority. See Introd. I. 9.

7 8 insolentius: 'too arrogantly'; see § 145.
7 13 īnus et alter rogābant: i.e. people generally were asking etc.
8 Chap. VIII. The dramatic events recorded in this chapter are graphically presented by the colored plates, pp. 8, 305.
8 6 Nōnne scīs: 'don't you know?' See § 170. a. 2.
8 7 Īdūs Mārtīās: see § 227. d.
8 8 cum . . . vēnisset: note the difference in time between vēnisset and recūsāret (I. 10); 'when he had come . . . when he kept refusing.'
8 11 Caesarem: obj. of volnerat, of which Casca is the subj.
9 1 Chap. IX. si . . . data esset: 'if it had been in his power to choose' (lit. 'if the power of choosing had been given to him'); a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. b).
9 2 prīdiē quam occīsus est: 'on the day before he was killed.' There is a comparative idea in prīdiē ('the day sooner'), which allows the use of the same construction as follows prior quam (§ 197. a).
9 3 conlātō: with sermōne; sermōnem cōnferre, 'to carry on a conversation.'
9 5 quō . . . hōc: these abls. of measure of difference may best be translated by the English correlatives the . . . the' (cf. "the deeper the well, the colder the water"); lit. 'by how much the more infrequent . . . by so much the more praiseworthy.'
9 7 Cum enim dēprehendisset: 'for when he had seized.'
9 8 ab eīs . . . restiterant: 'by those who had opposed him'; for the case of sībī, see § 83.
9 15 Chap. X. Caesar . . . statūrā: 'Caesar is said to have been tall' (lit. 'of high stature'). The abl. of description, statūrā, is in the pred. of the sentence, as are also ēre, oculīs, and capite (§ 116. b). See Introd. I. 11.
9 16 Quam: 'and this,' or simply 'this'; see § 143.
9 17 molestē fērēbat: 'he was annoyed at' (lit. 'he bore ill').
9 18 gestandae: the gerundive is to be carefully distinguished from the gerund, which is always governed as a noun, but has an active verbal force and so sometimes, but not generally, has an obj. in the accusative. The gerundive is pass. and agrees with its noun like an adjective. The gerund form corresponding to iūs laureae gestandae would be iūs gestandī lauream, 'the right of wearing the laurel wreath.' The gerundive is to be translated in the same way, though lit. it means 'the right of the laurel wreath to be worn.'
10 1 Rei militāris . . . perītissimus: see § 80. See Introd. I. 12.
10 3 equō: 'on horseback.'— pedibus: 'on foot.'
10 5 ut . . . pervenīret: a result clause.
10 7 ut visum est: 'as it seemed.'
11 Chap. 1. Gallia: the whole country of Gaul excepting the Roman Province (Ulterior Prōvincia) and Cisalpine Gaul (Citerior Prōvincia, now known as northern Italy). See the map at the beginning of the book, and the Introd. II. 1. — omnis: 'as a whole.' — divisa: past participle used as an adjective.

11 2 ūnam: sc. partem from partēs above. — incolunt: 'inhabit.' The words quārum ... incolunt etc. may be translated freely, 'one of which is inhabited by the Belgae' etc. — quī: the antecedent is ei ('those') understood, subj. of incolunt.

11 3 ipsōrum: shown to be emphatic by its position (see Composition, Lesson I. 2); 'in their own language.'

11 4 linguā: abl. of respect (§ 115). — inter sē: 'from one another' (lit. 'among themselves').

11 5 Gallōs etc.: trace these boundaries on the map. Use the maps in all cases to locate the names of places and peoples.

11 6 dividit: the verb is sing. because the rivers make one boundary (§ 68).

11 7 Hōrum: part. gen. with fortissimī (§ 76). — propterea quod: 'because' (lit. 'because of this, that').

11 8 cultū: 'civilization,' as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — hūmānitāte: 'refinement,' of mind or feeling. — prōvinciae: Ulterior Prōvincia, the southeastern part of Transalpine Gaul. See map and Introd. II. 1. This territory was organized as a province, and was under the influence of Roman civilization.

11 9 mercātōrēs: traders, or peddlers. They traveled with mules, pack horses, and wagons.

11 10 effēminandōs: gerundive (§ 224. b). Distinguish carefully from the gerund.

11 11 Germānīs: dative with an adjective of nearness (§ 90). — Rhēnum: this natural boundary has always been patriotically guarded by the Germans and has inspired their well-known song "Die Wacht am Rhein."

11 12 Quā de causā: 'and for this reason'; for the translation of a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

11 14 cum: 'while.' — suis and ipsī: both refer to the Helvetii, eōs and eōrum to the Germans. For the reflexive suis see § 132.

12 1 quam . . . dictum est: 'which it has been said (above) the Gauls occupy.' For the indir. disc. see § 204. The dir. disc. would be Gallī obtinent. Do not transl. obtinēre 'obtain.'
12 3 ab Sēquanīs: 'on the side of' etc.
12 4 vergit etc.: 'slopes to the north'; the highlands are along the southern boundary, and most of the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly.
12 5 Galliae: Central (or Celtic) Gaul, the country just described, not Gallia omnis.
12 6 spectant in: 'face,' or 'lie toward.'
12 9 inter occāsum etc.: 'toward the northwest,' i.e. from the Province, the quarter from which this direction and that mentioned in l. 6 are considered.
12 11 Ch. 2. M(ārcō) Messālā et M(ārcō) Pisōne cōnsulibus: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. b). Transl., 'in the consulship of Marcus Messala' etc.
12 12 coniūrātiōnem: 'a conspiracy.' The Helvetii had been governed by kings, but were now ruled by chiefs from among the nobles (nōbilēs). Orgetorix, by making himself leader of the emigration, hoped to gain royal power over the Helvetii, and through them to extend his sway over the whole of Gaul.—civitāti: dative after persuāsit (§ 83).
12 13 ut . . . exequent: subst. clause used as the obj. of persuāsit (§ 183).
12 14 perfacile esse etc.: indir. disc. after a verb of saying implied in persuāsit. The dir. words of persuasion used were perfacile est etc., potīrō being the subj. and perfacile in the pred. of est. 'He persuaded them . . . (saying) that it was very easy.'—cum . . . praestārent: causal clause (§ 189).—omnibus: dative with a compound verb (§ 84).
12 15 imperīō: see § 107. a.
12 17 ūnā ex parte: 'on one side.'
12 22 His rēbus fiēbat: 'from these causes it came about' (§ 109).—ut . . . vagārentur: 'that they roamed about less widely' etc.; but transl. more freely and naturally, 'from these causes it came about that they were becoming less free to wander.' The clauses ut . . . vagārentur . . . possent are the subjs. of fiēbat (§ 187. II).
12 23 finitimīs: see § 84. —quā ex parte: 'and for this reason'; for this translation of quā see § 143 and cf. p. 11, l. 12. —hominēs: 'being men,' in apposition with the subj. of adficībantur.
12 24 bellandi: gerund (§ 223. a).
12 26 milia passuum: 'miles.' The passus was the stretch from where one heel is raised to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five
Roman feet. A Roman mile (1000 paces) was about 400 feet less than ours. —
milia: accusative of extent (§ 96).

12 27 passuum: part. gen. (§ 76). — CCXL: ducenta quadrāgintā; always
give the Latin words for numerals when reading the text. — patēbant: keep
in mind the difference in meaning between the past descr. and the perf.
(§§ 154. b, 156).

13 1 CHAP. 3. His rēbus: 'by these considerations' (§ 109).
13 2 quae . . . pertinērent: dependent clause in indir. disc. (§ 203. a).
There is, to be sure, no verb here that expressly means 'say' or 'think,' but
from the main verb cōnstituērunt one can see that the clause expresses the
thought of the Helvetii, not of Cæsar, and for this reason the subord. verb
is in the subjv.

13 3 quam maximum: 'as great as possible.'
13 6 cōnfi-ciendās: 'completing'; gerundive, denoting purpose (§ 225. a).
13 7 in tertium annum . . . cōnfirmant: 'fix . . . for the third year.' For
the tense of cōnfirmant see § 153. a.
13 9 Casticō: see § 83.
13 10 filiō, Sēquanō: in apposition with Casticō (§ 58).
13 12 ut . . . occupāret: subst. clause, obj. of persuādet (§ 183). For the
past tense see the rule for sequence of tenses (§§ 162, 164).

13 13 quod: rel. pronoun with rōgnum for antecedent (§ 137). — Dumn-
origi: indir. obj. of persuādet (l. 15). Dumnorix was a younger brother of
Diviciacus (l. 14), a strong representative of the old aristocratic clan-spirit
among the Hædui. He was ambitious for power, a vigorous leader of the
anti-Roman faction among his people, and caused Cæsar much trouble for
many years.

13 14 Diviciācī: this Hæduan chief had been in Rome, knew Cicero and
other prominent Romans, and was the constant friend and ally of Cæsar in
his campaigns. He represented the popular element that was opposed to the
old clannish aristocracy, of which such men as Orgetorix and Dumnorix were
the leaders.

13 15 ut idem cōnārētur: 'to make the same attempt.'
13 17 Perfacile: pred. with esse of the sentence of which cōnāta perficere
is the subj. (§ 48. I. b); n. gender because the subj. is an inf. Cōnāta is n. plur.
accusative, obj. of perficere. — factū: see § 226. b. — illis probat: 'undertook
to show them'; historical present (§ 153. a).
13 19 esse: indir. disc. with a verb of saying understood; (he told them)
there was no doubt that' etc. (§ 203. a). — quin . . . possent: see § 186. —
Galliae: see § 76.

13 20 sē . . . conciliātūrum (esse): the indir. disc. continues; (he told
them) that he would win over' etc. The dir. form was conciliābō. Remember
that the reflexives sē and suus in their various forms refer, as a rule, to the subj. of their clause, and in įdir. disc. to the subj. of the verb of saying (§ 133).

13 21 őratiōne: do not transl., 'oration'; the meaning is rather a 'plea,' or 'argument.' For the case see § 109. — *fidem et iūs iūrandum*: transl. freely, 'an assurance confirmed by oath.'

13 22 rēgnō occupātō: abl. abs. expressing time (§ 117. b). Such a construction can generally be expanded in translation into a clause denoting time, cause, condition, or concession, introduced by 'when,' 'since,' 'if,' or 'though,' according to the context. — *per trēs . . . populōs*: i.e. the Helvetii, Hædui, and Sequani.

13 23 Galliae: see § 81. d. — *posse*: equivalent to a fut. inf.; indir. disc. with sēsē as subj. (§ 204).

13 24 Chap. 4. Mōribus: see § 111.

13 25 ex vinculis: lit. 'out of chains'; i.e. '(standing) in chains.' We should say simply 'in chains.' — *causam dicere*: 'to plead his cause.' — Damnātum: a past participle expressing condition (§ 220. c) and modifying sum understood, which would be the obj. of sequī; the subj. of sequī is poenam, which is explained by the subst. appositive clause ut . . . cremārētur (§ 183, third example). The whole expression damnātum poenam sequī . . . ut ignī cremārētur is the subj. of oportēbat. The following diagram will show the relation of these words:

\[
\begin{align*}
\{ & \text{poenam (ut [is] cremārētur ignī)} \\
& \text{sequī ([eum] damnātum)} \\
& \text{oportēbat}
\end{align*}
\]

Transl. freely, 'he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned with fire.'

14 1 Diē: see § 119. — *causae dictiōnis*: 'for the trial' (lit. 'of the pleading of the case'). Dictiōnis depends on diē, and causae is the obj. gen. after dictiōnis (§ 75. b).

14 2 familiam: 'clansmen.' See the vocabulary for the various meanings of this word. — *ad*: 'about'; adv. modifying the numeral adjective decem.

14 3 clientēs: 'retainers'; volunteer or adopted followers, the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul.

14 4 nē . . . diceret: neg. clause of purpose (§ 174).


14 9 quīn . . . cōnscīverit (from cōnscīscō): 'that he committed suicide' (§ 186). The construction is analogous to that following nōn est dubium.

14 10 Chap. 5. nihilō: 'none the less'; lit. 'less by nothing' (§ 114).

14 11 ut . . . exeant: subst. clause in apposition with id (§ 183).
14 13 numerō: see § 115; ad as above in l. 2.—vĭcōs: 'villages,' i.e. unfortified groups of houses; oppida, on the other hand, are fortified (walled) towns capable of defense.

14 14 incendunt: 'set on fire.'

14 15 combūrant: 'burn up.'—domum: see § 97. The verbal idea of 'returning' in the noun reditiōnis allows this construction, which is usual only with verbs.—spē sublātā: equivalent to a temporal clause (§ 117. b). Sublātā is from tollō.

14 16 ad . . . subeunda: see § 225. a.

14 18 uti . . . proficiscantur: subst. clause, dir. obj. of persuādent (§ 183). In this clause āsī agrees with the omitted subj. of proficiscantur.

14 19 cōnsiliō: abl. with āsī (§ 107. a).—vīcis exūstīs: abl. abs.

14 22 receptōs . . . adsciscunt: transl., 'they receive the Boii into their own number (ad sē) and unite them to themselves as allies.'

14 23 Chap. 6. Erant etc.: 'there were in all (only) two ways' etc. See the map facing page 13.

14 24 possent: the subjv. in a clause of description (§ 177. a).

14 25 inter . . . Rhodanum: about nineteen Roman miles from Geneva. The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman Province.—vix quā . . . dūcerentur: 'where carts could scarcely be drawn in single file.' Dūcerentur is a subjv. of description, like possent in l. 24.

15 1 possent: a subjv. of result (§ 179).

15 2 multō: see § 114. While this route was easier, it required them to crush the Roman force at Geneva before they could use it.

15 3 pācāti erant: 'had been subjugated,' three years before. The Roman idea of 'pacifying' a people was to subdue them.

15 4 locīs: see § 120. b.—vādō: 'by ford(ing)' (§ 106).

15 7 persuāsūrōs (esse): indir. disc. Observe that esse is frequently omitted. The dir. expression was persuādēbimus (§ 204).

15 8 bonō animō: 'well disposed' (§ 116. b).—vidērentur: subord. clause in indir. disc. (§ 208).

15 9 paterentur: see § 183; suōs and the subj. of paterentur (understood) refer to the Allobroges; ēōs refers to the Helvetii.

15 11 conveniāvit: see § 175.—a. d. v. Kal. Apr.: = ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprilīs; transl. as if it were quintō diē ante Kalendās Aprilīs, 'on the fifth day before the Calends of April,' i.e. March 28 (§ 227. h, i).

16 1 Chap. 7. Cāesari: almost any word in a Latin sentence may be made emphatic by being placed first. CĀESAR here makes his first appearance. His dramatic entrance at the critical moment, after the stage has been carefully set by describing how difficult the situation was, is characteristic of his style and of the man. Observe how carefully he has set forth (1) the geography of the
country, chap. 1; (2) the situation and plans of the Helvetii, chaps. 2–6; and then (3) how he centers attention on himself, the main figure, as he enters on the scene. Observe that he regularly writes of himself in the third person.

16 2 ab urbe: Cæsar was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship preparatory to setting out for his province. See Introd. I. 7. The word urbs in Latin writers regularly means Rome, the CITY. — quam maximis potest itineribus: ‘by the longest possible marches’ (§ 124).

16 3 ulterior: i.e. beyond the Alps, Ulterior Pròvincia.

16 5 imperat: here used in the sense ‘to make requisition on.’ Pròvinciae is the indir. obj., and numerum the dir. obj.

16 6 legiō: this was the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous.

16 7 certiorēs factī sunt: ‘were informed’ (lit. ‘made more certain’). It

16 9 qui dicerent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); not ‘who said,’ but ‘who should say,’ or, in better English, ‘to say.’ The construction after dicerent is indir. disc. The direct words of the ambassadors were nōbis est in animō . . . quod aliud iter habēmus nūllum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbis facere liceat.

16 10 sibi: dative of possession (§ 88).

16 12 ut . . . liceat: subst. clause, obj. of rogāre (§ 183).

16 13 memoriā tenēbat: ‘remembered’ (lit. ‘held by memory’); equivalent to a verb of knowing and so followed by indir. disc.

16 14 sub iugum: the iugum was made by sticking two spears into the ground and laying another across them above. Conquered soldiers were made to pass under this as a sign of subjugation; this act was equivalent to the modern ‘laying down arms.’

16 15 concēdendum (esse): impers., depending on putābat.— hominēs: subj. of temperāturōs (esse) depending on existimābat.— inimicō animō: abl. of description (§ 116).

16 16 datā facultāte: abl. abs. expressing condition (§ 117. a).

16 18 dum . . . conveniērent: ‘until the men should’ etc. (§ 198. III. b).

16 19 diem: the meaning here is ‘time,’ not ‘day.’


16 21 Chap. 8. legiōne: abl. of means (§ 106).

17 1 milia: accusative of extent (§ 96). Cæsar’s diem ad deliberaundum was used in fortifying the south bank of the river. The whole distance was, as Cæsar says, about nineteen miles, but the banks were so steep that only about three miles in all actually needed defense. Where this was necessary, the bank was cut down so as to be vertical. Then a trench was made a short distance back from the bank and running parallel to it. The earth from the trench was thrown in front of it to increase the height of the river bank. The pedum sēdecim is the distance from the top of the wall of earth to the bottom of the ditch.
17 2 pedum: gen. of description (§77).
17 3 quō faciuliš . . . posset: why is quō used instead of ut? See §176.
17 4 sē invitō: abl. abs.; ‘against his will’ (§117.e).—cōnārentur . . .
posset: note that these verbs are in secondary sequence after the historical
presents dispōnit and commūnit (§164).
17 6 negat sē . . . posse: ‘says he cannot’ etc. Do not transl. negat
‘deny.’
17 8 cōnentur: subjv. because it is in a subord. clause in indirect disc.
(§208).—prohibītūrum (esse): supply sē for subj. and eōs for obj.
17 10 nōn numquam: ‘sometimes’; the two negatives equal an affirmative.
17 11 sī . . . possent: indirect question depending on cōnātī; ‘having tried
to see’ whether etc. (§201).
17 12 cōnātū: see §101.
17 14 Chap. 9. ūna . . . via: ‘only the one way.’
17 16 possent: subjv. in a causal clause (§189).
17 17 ut . . . impetrārent: a purpose clause (§174).—eō déprecātōre: ‘by
his intercession’ (lit. ‘he being intercessor’).
17 18 grātiā: ‘personal influence’; abl. of cause (§109).
17 20 novīs rēbus: ‘revolution’; dative (§83).
17 22 obstrictās: used as a pred. adjective.
17 23 patiantur . . . dent: subjv. in subst. clauses of result (§187. I).—
obsidēs: these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as
security for fidelity. If the compact was broken, the hostages were held
responsible and punished.
17 24 Sēquani . . . Helvētīi: sc. obsidēs dent; dent is followed by the
purpose clauses nē . . . prohibeant and ut . . . trāneant (§174).
18 4 Chap. 10. fieret: subjv. in a subord. clause in indirect disc. after intelle-
gēbat (§208).
18 5 futūrum (esse) ut . . . habēret: ‘it would be to the great peril of the
Province to have’ etc.; ut . . . habēret is a subj. clause of result, subj. of
futūrum (esse) (§187. II).
18 6 locīs: abl. of place where (§120. b).
18 7 finitimōs: pred., ‘have as neighbors’ etc.
18 8 mūniōnī: see §84.—Labiēnum: an officer in whom Cāesar had
the greatest confidence, and to whom he generously gives much credit.
18 9 lēgātum: see Introd. III. 6.b. See vocabulary for two meanings of
this word. The context will always tell which is intended.
18 10 duās: the eleventh and twelfth legions. —trēs: the seventh, eighth,
and ninth. These together with ēa legiōne quam sécum habēbat (p. 16, l. 21), which
was already on the field of action, made up the six legions of Cāesar’s army.
18 15 Complūribus . . . pulsīs: pulsīs agrees with hīs (abl. abs.) (§117. b).
18 21 Chap. 11. angustiás: the pass between the Jura Mountains and the Rhone, described in chap. 6.

19 1 rogātum: supine (§ 226.  a and note). A word of saying is implied in rogātum which accounts for the following indir. disc. The dir. form was Ita omnī tempore . . . meriti sumus ut paene in conspectū exercitus vestrī agrī vāstāri, līberī in servītium abdūcī, oppida expugnāri nōn dēbuerint (§ 179).

19 6 dē populātīs: pass., though from a deponent verb.

19 9 sibi . . . nihil esse reliquī: 'that they have nothing left' (lit. 'there was nothing of a remainder to themselves'). For reliquī see § 76; for sibi, § 88.

19 11 exspectandum (esse): impers.; transl. by the active, 'he must not' etc.

19 12 pervenīrent: see §§ 198. III. b, 162.

19 13 Chap. 12. Flūmen est Arar: 'there is a river (called) the Saône.'

19 14 lēnitāte: abl. of description (§ 116).

19 15 in . . . fluent: indir. question (§ 201). The clause is the subj. of possit.

19 16 trānsibant: note the continuative force of the past descr. (§ 154. a).

19 17 partēs: obj. of -dūxisse; flūmen is accusative, depending on trāns-

in trādūxisse (§ 95).

19 18 citrā: 'on this side of' (as viewed from Rome).

19 19 dē tertiiā vigillīā: 'in the third watch,' i.e. between midnight and 3 A.M. See vocabulary.

19 23 mandārun: contracted from mandāvērun.

20 4 quae pars . . . intulerat, ea . . . persolvit: the normal order would be ea pars quae etc.; the antecedent of quae is pars, which is drawn into the rel. clause and made a part of it (§ 140).

20 5 prīnceps poenās persolvit: 'paid the penalty first'; prīnceps, though an adjective, is used with the force of an adverb (§ 126).

20 7 eius soceri: 'his father-in-law,' L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia, and consul of the present year (see end of chap. 6).

20 11 Chap. 13. pontem . . . faciendum cūrat: 'had a bridge made' (§ 224. d).

20 13 cum . . . intellegent: see § 195.—diēbus vigintī: 'in the course of twenty days' (§ 119).

20 14 ut . . . trānsīrent: a result clause in apposition with id (§ 187. I).

20 17 Si . . . faciet . . . ibunt . . . erunt: a future more probable condi-

tion (§ 199. II. a).

20 20 incommodi: for gen. see § 81. a.

20 22 Quod: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a).

20 23 suis: see §§ 82, 132. Suis is used as a subst. (§ 127).

21 1 ut . . . contendāmus . . . nitāmur: see § 179.
21 8 eō . . . quō: abls. of measure of difference (§ 114); 'I am the more incensed, the less' etc.
qui sī 'if it.' The subj. of fuisset is qui, which refers to the Roman people. Note the accent of alicu'ius.
21 11 quā rē timēret: quā rē is equivalent to propter quod with quicquam understood for the antecedent; 'the Roman people did not know that anything had been done by them to cause them to fear' (lit. 'on account of which they' etc.). Timēret is thus a subjv. of description (§ 177); observe that the collective noun populus Rōmānus takes a singular verb (§ 65. a).
21 12 Quod sī: 'but if' etc.
21 13 contumēliae: see § 81. a. — volō: see § 199. I. a.
21 14 quod . . . temptāstis . . . vexāstis: 'the fact that' etc. These clauses are in apposition with iniūriārum (§ 182).
21 17 Quod . . . glōriāminī . . . admirāminī: 'the fact that' etc. These quod clauses are the subjects of pertinet (§ 182); for the singular verb see § 67.
21 19 Cōnsuērunt: emphatic position (see note on p. 11, l. 3); 'it is the custom of the gods to grant' etc. (lit. 'the gods are wont'). — quō gravius . . .
doleant: see § 176. Cf. also p. 17, l. 3.
21 20 quōs: the antecedent of this rel. is hūs (§ 139).
21 23 Cum . . . sint: a concessive clause (§ 192. note). Cum with the subjv. may mean 'when,' 'since,' or 'although'; the presence of the word tamen, 'nevertheless,' in the main clause is generally a sure indication of the last meaning. — sī . . . dabuntur: see § 199. II. a.
21 24 ut . . . intellegam: see § 174. — Haeduīs: see § 84. a.
21 25 ipsis sociisque: see § 84.
21 28 utī . . . cōnsuērīnt: a result clause with the antecedent word īta (§ 179 and note). — cōnsuērīnt: contracted from cōnsuēverīnt.
21 29 Hōc respōnso datō: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. b).
22 2 Chap. 15. equitātum: see Introd. III. 2. — quem . . . coāctum habēbat: 'which he had, collected'; more strictly 'held (had in hand) after being collected' (§ 156. b. note).
22 4 videant: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); transl. 'to see' (lit. 'who should see'). It is followed by the indir. question quās . . . faciant as object.
22 5 cupidius: 'too eagerly' (§ 145). — aliēnō locō: 'on unfavorable ground' (lit. 'on another's ground'); see § 120. b.
22 10 novissimō agmine: 'at their rear'; abl. of place where. When an abl. of place is qualified by an adjective, the preposition is sometimes omitted; regularly so before certain words (§ 120. b).
22 12 rapinis: see § 101.
22 15 quīnīs aut sēnīs: distributives; ‘five or six miles each day.’—
milibus: see § 105.
22 16 CHAP. 16. Haeduōs frumentum . . . flāgitāre: ‘demanded grain of
the Hāedui’ (§ 93).

22 17 essent . . . pollicitī: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc.;
‘which (as he said) they had promised’ (§ 208. b). If Cāsar had given this as
a fact on his own authority, he would have written erant . . . pollicitī.—flāgi-
tāre: historical inf. Transl. as if past descr. ind. (§ 218).

22 18 frumenta: the plur. is regularly used of standing grain. The crops
of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last
of June); the green fodder (pābulī) was scarce because Cāsar was following
in the path of the Helvetii, whose thousands of cattle had swept the country
almost bare.—nē . . . quidem: ‘not . . . even of green fodder.’ A word
standing between nē and quidem is made emphatic.

22 19 frumentō: abl. with ītē (§ 107. a).
22 20 flūmine Ararī: see § 120. b. note 1.
22 22 Diem: see § 96.—dūcere: historical inf. (§ 218); also dūcere, l. 23;
cf. flāgitāre, l. 17.—coniērī, comportārī, adesse: the subj. is frumentum.
Note the climax, ‘they said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was
already at hand.’
22 24 diūtius: ‘too long’; cf. cupidīnus, l. 5.—quō diē: abl. of time (§ 119).
Do not transl. diē.

23 1 summō magistrātui praerat: ‘held the chief office.’ For the case of
magistrātui see § 84.
23 2 vergobretum: see § 94.
23 4 possēt: the subj. is frumentum understood. For the mood see
§ 214.
23 5 propinquīs hostibus: ‘with the enemy so near’; abl. abs.
23 6 sublevētur: Cāsar is telling why he blamed the Hāedui; but, looking
back to that time as he writes, he speaks of himself as some other person
upon whose authority the reason is given; ‘he blamed them because (as he
said)’ etc. (§ 188. b).
23 7 quod sit dēstitūtus: subjv. on the same principle as sublevētur;
‘because (as he said) he had been left in the lurch.’
23 9 CHAP. 17. quod: rel. pronoun, obj. of tācuerat. The antecedent is
id understood, obj. of prōponīt.

23 11 valeat: subjv. of description (§ 177. a).
23 12 improbā ōrātiōne: ‘shameless talk.’
23 13 nē frumentum cōnferant: see § 185.
23 14 Praestāre: ‘that it is better.’—si . . . possint: see § 199. II. b.
23 16 quin . . . sint ēreptūrī: see § 186. The verb is an active periphrastic form (§ 222. I).

23 17 Haeduis: dative of separation (§ 86).

23 19 quod . . . ēnūntiāvī: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a); cf. p. 20, l. 22 and note.

23 20 quantō . . . fēcerim: indir. question (§ 201).

23 23 CHAP. 18. pluribus praesentibus: 'in the presence of many' (§ 117. e).

23 24 dimittit: historical present (§ 153. a). A number of others follow.

24 1 esse vēra: 'that the facts are as follows'; explained by the quotation following.—Ipse est Dumnorīx: 'Dumnorix is the very man.'

24 2 summā audāciā: 'of the utmost boldness' (§ 116).

24 5 pretīō: abl. of value (§ 108).—redēmpta habēt: see § 156. b. note; cf. p. 22, l. 3.—illō licente: 'when he bid'; the verb is from liceor, not licet.

24 6 rēbus: see § 106.

24 7 ad largiendum: 'for bribery' (to buy political support); see § 223. c.

24 8 sūmtū: see § 106.

24 9 domī: see § 120. a.

24 10 causā: 'for the sake' etc. This is the regular meaning of the word when following the gen. For the case see § 109 and note.

24 12 sorōrem ex mātre: 'sister on the mother's side,' 'half sister.'


24 15 suō nōmine: 'on his own account' (§ 109).

24 17 Si quid accidit: see § 199. I. a.

24 19 imperiō: 'under the rule' (§ 112).

24 21 quod: 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. a).

24 22 diebus: see § 114; there is a comparative idea in ante (lit. 'before by a few days').

24 24 auxiliō Caesari: 'as an aid to Caesar' (§ 89).

25 2 CHAP. 19. accēderent: see § 189; the following quod clauses are in apposition with rēs ('facts'). The verbs are in the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b); cf. p. 22, l. 17 and note.

25 3 dandōs: see § 224. d; cf. p. 20, l. 11.

25 4 iniussū suō etc.: 'without his authority or that of the state.'

25 5 ipsis: i.e. himself and the Hāeduī. For the case see § 117. e.

25 6 causae: part. gen. depending on satis, which is used as a noun (§ 76. a).—qua ē ... animadverteret: 'should proceed against (or 'punish') him'; subjv. of description (§ 177).

25 8 quod ... cognōverat: 'the fact that he knew,' the clause is in apposition with ānum, 'only one thing, namely' (§§ 181, 182, second example); for the meaning of cognōscō in the perf. tenses see vocabulary.
NOTES

25 9 studium: ‘attachment,’ as a partisan.
25 10 voluntātem: ‘good will,’ as a friend.
25 11 nē: ‘that’ (§ 184). — eius: i.e. of Dumnorix.
25 13 prius quam...cōnārētur: ‘before he should attempt’ (§ 197. b).
25 16 summmam...fidem: ‘full confidence.’—eō: refers to Diviciacus, as does ipsō (l. 17); while apud sē (l. 19), ‘in his presence,’ refers to Cæsar.
25 20 ipse: i.e. Cæsar (§ 136). The gist of the request is in sine eius offensione animī, referring to the displeasure of Diviciacus, whose friendship he desires to retain. Cæsar’s diplomacy is constantly apparent.
25 22 Chap. 20. complexus: i.e. he embraces Cæsar’s knees, falling at his feet.
25 23 nē quid gravius: ‘that not any too severe measures’ (§ 122); gravius is an adjective modifying quid.
25 24 ex eō: ‘from that fact,’ referring to haec esse vēra.
26 4 cum...teneō: ‘while I hold.’
26 6 voluntātē: see § 111.
26 10 tanti: ‘of so great account,’ gen. of value (§ 78). — utī...eius voluntātē ac precibus condōnet: ‘that in deference to his wish and prayers he would overlook’ etc. The clause is one of result (§ 179).
26 13 reprehendat: indir. question (§ 201). Two more instances follow.
26 15 Diviciācō frātrī: ‘for the sake of his brother, Diviciacus’ (§ 85).
26 19 Chap. 21. milia: see § 96.
26 20 cognōscerent: the subj. is qui, whose antecedent is quōsdam, or some such word, to be supplied as the obj. of misit (§ 142). For the mood of the verb see § 175.
26 21 faciēm (ascēnsum) esse: subj. of renūntiātum est.—Dé tertiā vigiliā: cf. p. 19, l. 19 and note.
26 22 prō praetōre: the prător had the power to command an army; a lēgātus might be given such power temporarily, and he was then called lēgātus prō praetōre.
26 24 cōnsili: pred. gen. after quid sit, ‘what his plan is’ (§ 77. a). — dē quārtā vigiliā: the third watch always began at midnight; but the length of the watches varied according to the season, being shorter in the short nights of summer. This was in June, and the fourth watch began about 2.30 A.M.
26 26 reī: see § 80.
26 28 in: sc. exercitū.
27 2 Chap. 22. ipse: ‘(and) he himself,’ i.e. Cæsar.
27 3 passibus: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114), or of comparison after longius (§ 105. note 2).
27 4 Labiēnī: *sc. adventus.*—equō admissō: 'at full speed.'
27 6 armīs: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans, as may be seen by a comparison of the illustrations, pp. 31, 45, 52, 69.
27 7 insignībus: i.e. devices on shields, helmets, etc.—stags' horns, eagles' plumes, etc.
27 8 Caesar . . . instruit: the inference from the report would be that Labienus and his men had been overwhelmed. Cæsar in consequence falls back.
27 9 ut: 'since,' 'inasmuch as.'—erat . . . praeceptum: impers.; this verb cannot take a personal pass. construction (§ 83. a). The grammatical subj. is the clause nē . . . committeret, a negative subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).
27 13 Multō . . . diē: abl. of time; 'late in the day' (§ 119).
27 15 quod nōn vidisset: 'what he had not seen'; ıă understood, the obj. of renūntiāsse, is the antecedent; prō vīsō, 'as if seen' (lit. 'for a thing seen').
27 16 intervāllo: *sc. eōdem,* 'at the same interval as usual'; for the case see § 112.
27 21 Chap. 23. milibus: for the construction cf. note on 1. 3.
27 22 prōspiciendum (esse): impers.; sc. sibi, dative of apparent agent (§ 87); 'he thought he ought to look out for the supply of grain.'
27 23 averterit: toward the north; the Helvetii were traveling westward; see campaign map, facing p. 12.
27 24 fugitivōs: 'runaway slaves.'
27 25 quod . . . existimārent . . . cōnfiderent: subjv. because the reason is not given as surely the right one, but merely as the supposed one (§ 188. b).
27 26 eō magis: 'all the more' (lit. 'more by this'); see § 114.
27 28 rē: abl. of separation (§ 101).—interclūdi: complementary inf. (§ 217. c) after posse, the subj. of which is eōs (Rōmānōs) understood.
28 1 itinere conversō: 'facing about' (lit. 'altering their course completely'); i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, they returned and gave Cæsar the chance he was waiting for.
28 3 Chap. 24. id: governed by animum advertit, as a compound verb.
28 4 qui sustinēret: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).
28 5 in colle mediō: 'halfway up the hill' (§ 125).—triplicer aciem: see Introd. III. 12.
28 6 legiōnēm: gen. of material (§ 79). The four veteran legions (VII–X) stood side by side, each in three lines. Legions XI and XII, which he had last raised (proxeīmē conscriptserat), were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle and so were set to guard the camp. See battle plan.
28 8 sarcinās: see ill., p. 69, and Introd. III. 9. d.
28 10 cum omnibus suis carris: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the custom of migrating peoples to go to battle with their families and carts; the former for encouragement, the latter for defense.

28 12 phalanx: great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx.

28 14 Chap. 25. suo (equō remōtō) etc.: i.e. his own and those of his officers. Cæsar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run." Officers and men, sharing danger on equal terms, would be equally brave. Cæsar understood human nature thoroughly.

28 17 pilis: see Introd. III. 9. c, with the ill., p. xxiv.

28 18 Gallis . . . impedimentō: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).

28 19 pluribus: 'several.'

28 20 ferrum: i.e. the long iron shank of the pilum.

28 21 inflexisset: subjv. in a causal clause (§ 189).—sinistra impedītā: abl. abs. denoting cause (§ 117. c); transl. 'since the left hand (which carried the shield) was hampered.'

28 22 multī ut: transl. as if it were ut multī; multī is made emphatic by its position. Ut here introduces a clause of result.

28 23 nudō: 'unprotected.'—corpore: abl. of manner (§ 110).

29 1 agmen . . . claudēbant: 'brought up their rear.' The Boii and Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had formed the van of the Helvetian line of march, and consequently became the rear when the line faced about (p. 28, l. 1) to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (laterē apertō) as they came on the field from the road (hence ex itinere). The right side is said to be exposed since the protecting shield is carried on the left arm.

29 2 novissimīs praesidiō: see § 89, and cf. Gallīs . . . impedimentō, p. 28, l. 18.

29 3 adgressī: 'having attacked.'—cūmveniēre: sc. coeptērunt from l. 5.

29 5 conversa signa . . . intulērunt: 'faced about (lit. 'bore reversed standards') and charged in two divisions' (bīpartītā). See battle plan.

29 6 victīs . . . submōtīs: i.e. the Helvetii (§ 83); venientēs refers to the Boii and Tulingi.

29 7 resistērunt . . . sustinērunt: see § 174.

30 1 Chap. 26. pugnātum est: see § 66; transl. 'the fight was carried on' (lit. 'it was fought').

30 3 alterī . . . alterī: the Helvetii and the Boii and Tulingi respectively (§ 144. d).—ut: as.

30 5 cum: concessive (§ 192).—hōrā septimā: the day from sunrise to
sunset was divided into twelve equal parts (hōrae). The length of the hours varied, therefore, according to the length of the day. As sunset at this time was about eight o'clock, the daylight hours were equal to about an hour and a quarter of our time. This would make ab hōra septimā a little past 1 P.M.

30 6 āversum: ’in retreat,’ ‘fleeing’ (lit. ‘turned away’).—Ad multam noctem: ’till late at night.’

30 9 coniciēbant ... subiciēbant: ’hurled’ (from above), ’thrust’ (from below). For the use of the past descr. see § 154. a.

30 11 impediēmentīs castrīsque: see § 107. a.

30 12 captus est: agrees with the nearer subject (§ 67).

30 14 tōtā nocte: see § 119. note.

30 16 cum ... potuissent: a causal subjv. (§ 189).

30 18 nē ... iuvārent: ’(telling them) that they should not’ etc. The subjv. stands for nālīte iuva re of dir. disc. (§§ 206, 203. a).

30 19 si iuvissent: the dir. disc. would be si iuveritis, ’if you shall have aided.’—locō: ’estimation.’

30 22 Chap. 27. Quī cum: ’when they’ etc. (§ 143).

30 26 quī ... perfūgisent: a subord. clause in implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b; cf. p. 22, l. 16; p. 25, l. 2). Cæsar’s words might have been, ”Trādite obsīdēs ... quī ad vōs perfūgerunt.”

32 1 Dum ... conquiruntur et cōnferentur: transl. as past (§ 198. I).

32 3 perterritī: although mīlia is n., the participle agreeing with it is m., the construction being according to sense instead of form.—nē...adācerentur: depending on the verbal idea in timōre, the subjv. being used as with verbs of fearing (§ 184).

32 4 quod ... existimārent: the subjv. is used because the reason is not given by the author as his own, but as the supposed reason of the Helvetii (§ 188. b).

32 5 occultārī: ’be hid’ from Cæsar.—ignōrāri: ’be unknown’ to anybody.

32 8 Chap. 28. Quod ubi: a rel. beginning a sentence and followed by a conjunction should be transl. by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun after the conjunction, as here quod ubi = ubi hoc (§ 143). Cf. Quī cum, p. 30, l. 22.—quōrum: the antecedent is hīs, indir. obj. of imperāvit, which has for its dir. obj. the subst. clause utī ... redūcerent.

32 9 si ... vellent: this subord. clause is part of what Cæsar said, and depending on the clause utī...redūcerent is also subjv. (§ 214). Cæsar’s words probably were, ”Conquirite et redūcite, si mihi pūrgāti esse vultis” (or ”volētis”).—sibi: ’in his sight’ or ’estimation’; dative of reference (§ 85).

32 10 in hostium numerō habuit: ’he treated as enemies’ (lit. ’he held in the number of enemies’); i.e. he put them all to death, as a necessity of war and a warning to others.
NOTES

32 16 ipsōs: the Helvetii and their allies, as opposed to the others who were to provide food. — quōs: the rel. agrees with the nearer of the antecedents.
32 22 petentibus Haeduis: 'to the Hædui at their request' etc.; dative after concessit, of which the dir. obj. is ut Bōiōs conlocārent. The Boii would be valuable allies to the Hædui.
32 24 parem... atque ipsī erant: 'equal with their own' (lit. 'as they themselves were').
33 1 Chap. 29. tabulae: 'tablets,' of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called stilus. See illustration, p. 56.— litteris Graecīs: this refers merely to the letters. There was a Greek colony at Marseilles, from which they had adopted the Greek alphabet, but not the language. The Gauls had no alphabet of their own, and probably written language was not used to any extent.
33 3 ratiō: 'an account.'— qui... exisset: an indir. question.
33 4 possent: subjv. of description (§ 177). The antecedent of qui is eōrum.
33 8 ad mīlia xcii: 'about 92,000.'— Summa: 'the sum'; fuērunt agrees with the plur. pred. If we deduct the Boii, who were adopted by the Hædui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other noncombatants. Probably more escaped than the record shows.

The War with Ariovistus. The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans, under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had seized a large share of territory, and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman senate, to make safe, passed a decree promising favor and friendship to the Helvetii. At the same time they sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (chap. 35), recognizing his claim on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This occurred the year before, during Cæsar's consulship. However, now that the fear of the Helvetii was past, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.
33 13 Chap. 30. grātulātum: see § 226. a.
33 15 populī Rōmānī: an obj. gen. (§ 75. b).
33 16 eam rem... accidisse: 'nevertheless that event has happened not less advantageously (ex īsū) to the land of Gaul than to the Roman people.'
33 17 eō cōnsiliō: abl. of cause (§ 109), and explained by the appositive clauses of purpose uti . . . habērent (§ 183, third example). — florentissimis rebus: abl. abs. equivalent to a concessive clause (§ 117. d); 'although they were in prosperous circumstances.'

33 19 imperiō: see § 107. a. — domiciliō: dative of purpose (§ 89).

33 24 voluntāte: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

34 1 iūre iūrando . . . sānxērunt: 'ordained by oath that no one, except (those) to whom it should have been intrusted by common consent, should make known (their meeting).'

34 4 Chap. 31. idem: nominative plur. — ante: adv.

34 6 dē suā omniumque salūte: 'concerning their own safety and (that) of all.'

34 7 Caesarī ad pedēs: dative of reference (§ 85); transl., 'at Caesar's feet.'

34 9 nē . . . ēnūntientur . . . uti . . . impetrēmus: subst. clauses in apposition with id, the obj. of contendimus and labōrāmus (§ 183, third example; cf. p. 33, l. 17).

34 12 Galliae tōtius: this does not include all of the Gallia defined in chap. 1, but only the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

34 13 alterius . . . alterius: 'the one . . . the other' (§ 144. d); gens. after principātum.

34 15 uti . . . arcesserentur: a clause of result, subj. of factum est, 'it came to pass' (§ 187. II).

34 16 mercēde: 'for pay' (§ 108).

34 24 quī: the antecedent is ēi understood, subj. of coāctī sunt (§ 142).

35 3 sēsē . . . repetītūros (esse) . . . recūsātūros (esse): indir. disc. depending on the idea of saying in cōvitātem obstringere (§ 203. a). The words of their oath were 'we will neither demand back hostages . . . nor refuse' etc.

35 4 quō minus . . . essent: a clause following a verb of refusing (§ 185). Transl. by an inf., 'refuse to be under their dominion' etc., i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

35 6 Ěnus . . . sum: 'I am the only one.'

35 7 potuerim: see § 177. a. — ut iūrārem: 'to take an oath.'

35 8 Rōmam ad senātum: note that the preposition is used only with senātum; why not with Rōmam? See § 97.

35 9 postulātum: supine (§ 226. a).

35 11 peius: n. adjective used as a noun; 'a worse fate.'

35 14 dē alterā parte tertīā: 'from a second third.'

35 15 paucis mēnsibus ante: 'a few months before' (lit. 'before by a few months'). Ante is an adv. followed by an abl. of measure of difference (§ 114).

35 17 Paucis annīs: abl. of time within which (§ 119).
35 19 neque ... agrō: 'neither can the Gallic land be compared with that of the Germans.'

35 20 haec: 'this of ours.'—illā: 'that of the Germans.' The Gauls regarded the Germans as savages.

35 22 ut semel: 'as soon as.'

35 24 nōbilissimī cuiusque: 'of all the noblest'; the sing. form of quisque when used with superlatives has the meaning of 'every,' 'all.'

35 25 omnia exempla cruciātūsque: lit. 'all examples and tortures'; the meaning is that he employed every kind of torture.

35 27 barbarus, irācundus, temerārius: 'savage, passionate, hasty'

36 1 auxīli: part. gen. depending on the indef. pronoun quid, 'anything,' 'something' (§ 76. a).

36 2 Gallīs: dative of agent (§ 87) with est faciendum, the subj. of which is idem, which in turn is explained by the appositive clause ut ... experiantur.

36 4 Haec: emphasized by position, as if he said, 'Why! if this very conversation should be reported' etc. (cf. note on p. 11, l. 3).

36 5 quīn ... sūmat: see § 186.

36 7 exerciūs: gen.; 'that of the army.'

36 8 nē ... trādūcātur: see § 185.

36 9 Rhēnum: depending on trāns in trā(ṃ) dūcātur (§ 95. note).

36 15 Chap. 32. quae ... esset: indir. question (§ 201).

36 16 respondēre: historical inf. (§ 218). Observe that the subj. is nominative. Cf. fīdītāre, p. 22, l. 17.

36 20 Hōc: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114); freely translated, 'on this account.' It is explained by the appositive clause quod ... audent (§ 182).

36 21 nē ... quidem: 'not even in secret.' Cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.

36 22 absentis: predicate; 'even when absent' (§ 220. a).

36 23 velut ... adsit: see § 200.

36 24 tamen: 'after all' (whatever they might have to suffer).—Sēquanīs: dative of apparent agent (§ 87).

37 2 Chap. 33. sībi ... cūrāe etc.: 'that he would see to it' (lit. 'it would be for a care to him'); see § 89.

37 3 et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte: construe after adductum, 'induced by both his favors and his influence'; beneficiō refers to services that would inspire gratitude, auctōritāte to the prestige that would inspire fear in Ariovistus.

37 6 secundum ea: 'besides these considerations'; secundum is here used as a preposition.—quā rē ... putāret: 'on account of which he thought'; a descriptive clause (§ 177).

37 8 quod ... vidēbat ... intellegēbat: 'the fact that he saw ... that he knew' etc. The clauses are in apposition with multae rēs in l. 6.
37 11 quod: rel. pronoun; the antecedent is the preceding indir. disc. Haedui . . . tenērī, . . . obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanōs, describing the plight of the Hædui and Sequani.— in tantō . . . Rōmāni: 'in view of the great power of the Roman people.'

37 15 perīculōsum: 'he saw that it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine' etc. Germānōs is the subj. of cōnṣuēscere, and multītūdinem is subj. of venère. These two clauses are the subjds. of perīculōsum (esse). The whole clause is the obj. of vidēbat (§§ 217. b, 203).— sibi . . . temperātūrōs . . . quīn . . . exirent: 'would refrain (check themselves) from going forth.' For sibi see § 83; for exirent, see § 185.

37 17 ut . . . fēcissent: 'as the Cimbri and Teutons had done before.' The form in the dir. disc. would be fēcērunt (§ 208).

37 19 quibus rēbus: see §§ 143, 84.— occurrentum (esse): impers. Were the agent expressed, it would be sibi. Transl. freely, 'possibilities which he thought must be met at once.' Observe again that a verb which governs the dative (like occurrentum) cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subj.

37 22 Chap. 34. ut . . . mitteret: a clause of purpose, subj. of plactut (§ 183, fourth example).

37 23 qui . . . postulārent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).— medium utriusque: 'between the two.'

37 24 conloquiō: 'for a conference.'— velle: depends on the verb of saying implied in postulārent.— rē pūlicā: here 'matters of public interest' rather than 'the state.'

37 26 Si . . . esset: a condition contrary to fact (§ 199. 1. b).

38 1 si quid ille mē volt: volt takes here two objs. like verbs in § 93. Transl., 'if he wants anything of me.'

38 7 negōti: part. gen. with quid.— sit: indir. question.

38 9 Chap. 35. mandātis: denoting a stern command. Cæsar now lays aside the language of diplomacy and presents his ultimatum.

38 10 affectus: a participle denoting concession (§ 220. d).

38 12 gravētur . . . putet: a result clause explaining hanc grātiam (§ 187. 1).

38 15 nē quam: 'that not any.'

38 17 quōs: the antecedent is eōs understood, the obj. of reddere (§ 142). The subjvs. in this sentence (except liceat) are introduced by nē, or ut implied, and are subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with haec.— illī . . . illīs: the Sequani.

38 23 quod . . . posset: 'so far as he could do it to the advantage of the republic.'— commodō: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

38 26 Chap. 36. ut . . . imperent: a subst. clause in apposition with iūs
The antecedent of qui is eī understood, the subj. of imperent. The dative eīs is governed by imperent (§ 83).

38 27 vicerint: see § 214. — quem ad modum: ‘in what manner.’
38 29 victis: dative with imperāre (§ 83); the participle is used as a noun.
   — ad: ‘according to.’
39 4 mihi: see § 90.
39 6 quī . . . faciat: a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190).
40 1 sī . . . manēbunt: ‘if they will abide by the condition.’
40 3 longē . . . aberit: i.e. the fact that the Roman people call them brothers will do them little good (lit. ‘will be far from them’).
40 4 Quod: ‘as to the fact that’ (§ 182. a).
40 6 congridiātur: subjv. in a command (§ 172. b). — quid . . . possint: ‘what they can do.’

40 10 Chap. 37. questum: supine denoting purpose (§ 226. a).
40 11 quod . . . populārentur: a reason given on another’s authority, which takes the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; ‘because (as they said) the Harudes were devastating their fields’ (§§ 188. b, 208. b).
40 12 nē obsidibus quidem: cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.
40 13 Trēveri: sc. questum veniēbant.
40 16 commōtus: a participle denoting cause (§ 220. b).
40 17 mātūrandum sibi (esse): impers. with dative of apparent agent; transl, ‘that he should have to hasten’ (§ 222. II. note).
40 19 resistī: impers.; transl., ‘resistance could not be so easily made’ (§ 83. a). — celerrimē: for the form see comparison of ācriter (§ 17).
40 20 contendit: the general direction is north. Just where Ariovistus was is uncertain.

40 21 Chap. 38. trīduī: gen. of measure (§ 77. b). — viam: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).
40 22 occupandum: gerundive agreeing with Vesontiōnem. Distinguish from the gerund (§§ 224. b, 225. a).
40 23 quod: the antecedent is Vesontiōnem, but the agreement is with oppidum (§ 138).
40 24 Id: refers to ad occupandum Vesontiōnem.
40 25 praecavendum (esse): impers.; the subj. is nē accideret, a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183, fourth example).
40 26 ūsuī: dative of purpose or end (§ 89). Another dative might be looked for with this one. See § 85.
40 27 idemque: sc. oppidum. — ut . . . facultātem: ‘that it afforded a great opportunity for protracting a war’; a clause of result.
42 2 ut: ‘as if.’
42 4 pedum: pred. gen. after est (§ 77. a and b). For the construction
with *amplius* see § 105, note 2. The present site corresponds almost exactly to Cæsar's description. See illustration, p. 41.— *quā*: 'where.'

42 5 *altitūdine*: abl. of description (§ 116).— *rādicēs*: obj., and *ripae* subj., of *contingant.*

42 6 *Hunc (montem) . . . efficit*: 'this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.'

42 7 *nocturnīs . . . itineribus*: transl., 'marches by night and by day.'

42 11 *morātur*: see § 198. I. Cf. p. 32, l. 1.

42 12 *vōcibus*: 'reports' or 'talk.'— *magnitūdine . . . virtūte . . . exer-citātiōne*: abls. of description (§ 116); cf. *altitūdine*, l. 5.

42 15 *congressōs*: 'having met them.'

42 17 *nōn mediocriter*: 'in no slight degree,' 'greatly.'

42 19 *Hic*: i.e. *timor. — ortus est ā*: 'began with' (lit. 'rose from').— *reliquis*: young Romans of noble families often accompanied commanders in their campaigns for the sake of military experience. Cæsar probably alludes to these. See Introd. III. 6. d.

42 20 *urbe*: i.e. Rome.— *nōn magnum*: 'very little.'

42 21 *alius aliā causā inlātā*: 'on various pretexts' (lit. 'another, another pretext having been alleged'). Notice that in Latin this double statement is condensed, only the second half being fully expressed. This is the regular idiom when *alius* is repeated in another case, and should be remembered (§ 144. d. 1).

42 22 *quam . . . diceret*: see § 177.

42 25 *voltum fingere*: freely, 'to put on a brave face.'

42 28 *testāmenta obsignābantur*: the seal was necessary to the validity of the will. The making of the wills shows that they had given up hope of ever returning home.

43 1 *magnum . . . ūsum*: 'long experience in the service.'

43 3 *Quī*: the antecedent is *ei* understood, the subj. of *dīēbant.*

43 6 *rem frēmentāriam*: lit. the obj. of *timēre*, 'they feared the supply of grain, that it might not' etc.; transl. it as if it were the subj. of *posset*, 'they feared that the supply of grain might not' etc. This figure of speech, which consists in placing a word *before* the clause in which a statement is made regarding it, is called "prolepsis." Compare

"Who knows the ways of the world,
How God will bring them about."

Observe the force of *ut in ut . . . posset* depending on *timēre* (§ 184).

43 8 *castra moverī ac signa ferri*: 'to break camp and advance.' These are the regular military expressions. Note the idiom *signa ferri*, 'advance.'
NOTES

43 9 audientēs: used in the sense of 'obey' (i.e. 'hearken to'), and so followed by the dative (§ 83).

43 11 Chap. 40. adhibitis centuriōnibus: the centurions were not ordinarily invited into the councils of war; hence this special assertion. In addition to all the other grave dangers and difficulties of the war with the powerful German king, Cæsar now suddenly finds himself face to face with a peril still more serious: that of a possible mutiny of his own army. The campaign was a hazardous undertaking, even with his men eager and willing to fight. With his men reluctant, and some of them even rebellious, Cæsar stands for the moment alone, and his indomitable courage is nowhere better shown. He meets the emergency with the same decision and energy that he displays on the battle field, and manifests, in addition to supreme courage, marvelous diplomacy and knowledge of human nature. This speech, one of the most remarkable of antiquity, stamps Cæsar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. Skillfully glossing over the difficulties of the undertaking, masterfully meeting every one of the alleged causes for hesitation, now by reason, now by appeal, he contrives to inspire his men with the invincible spirit of Rome that conquered the world.

43 12 quod . . . putārent: a reason given on another's authority (§ 188. b). Here Cæsar the writer gives the reason of Cæsar the soldier, as if he were another person.

43 18 quaerendum . . . cōgitandum: sc. esse; an impers. construction (§§ 224. a, 66).

43 15 Cūr . . . quisquam . . . iūdict: a rhetorical question; 'why should any one consider?' The question implies the answer that no one should consider (§ 172. d. note).

43 16 Mihi . . . persuādētur: 'I am convinced' (§ 83. a).

43 20 quid . . . vereāmini: cf. note on l. 15.

43 22 periculum: from the root of the verb ex-perior, 'try'; the word which came to mean 'danger' originally meant 'trial,' and this is the meaning here.— Cimbris et Teutonis: these were a great horde of barbarians that about forty years before had crossed the Rhine, swept through Gaul, and were about to invade Italy. Their seemingly irresistible march was checked by the Romans under Marius, and they were practically destroyed.

43 24 meritus (esse) vidēbātur: 'was seen to have deserved.'

43 25 servīlī tumultū: 'in the uprising of the slaves,' i.e. the insurrection of slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, 73-71 B.C. These consisted, at least in part, of Germans captured by Marius. The abl. denotes time.— quōs: this refers to servōs as antecedent implied in the adjective servīlī.— aliquid: adverbial accusative (§ 99); transl., 'somewhat.'

43 27 bonī: see § 76. a.
44 2 suis: 'their own' (of the Helvetii). — illōrum: 'of the Germans.'
44 4 Si quōs: 'if any.' — adversum proelium: the defeat at Magetobriga; see p. 35, l. 23.
44 6 Ariovistum: subj. of vēcisse in indir. disc.
44 7 neque sui potestātem fēcisset: 'and had given them no chance at him.'
44 9 ratiōne . . . cōnsiliō . . . virtūte: see § 106.
44 10 Cui ratiōni . . . hāc: this expression is equivalent to hāc ratiōnē cui; the antecedent is attracted into the rel. clause (§ 140); 'by this stratagem, for which there was opportunity against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hopes that our army can be caught.'
44 12 Qui: the antecedent is eī understood, the subj. of faciunt.
44 15 mihi . . . cūrae: 'I will take care of these things' (§ 89); cf. p. 37, l. 2.
44 18 Quod etc.: 'as to its being said that the soldiers will not obey the commands or advance' (§ 182. a).
44 19 quibuscumque etc.: lit. 'to whomsoever the army has not listened to the word, to these fortune has been lacking' etc.; dictō depends upon audiēns, and the two words combined, dictō audiēns, are treated as a single expression equivalent to a verb of obeying, governing the dative quibuscumque, whose antecedent is eis understood, governed by défuisse.
44 22 innocentia: this disproves avāritiam as fēlicitās does male rē gestā. Observe the reversed order (chiasmus) of the words, a figure common in verse and oratory:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{male rē gestā} & \quad \text{avāritiam} \\
\text{innocentia} & \quad \text{fēlicitās}
\end{align*}
\]

Compare in English:

"So like they were, no mortal
Might one from other know;
White as snow their armor was,
Their steeds were white as snow."

vītā: see § 119. note.
44 24 quod . . . conlātūrus fui: sc. id as the antecedent of quod and the obj. of repraesentābō.
45 2 praetōria cohors: 'bodyguard,' made up of the bravest men.
45 7 Chap. 41. innāta est: sing. verb agreeing with the nearest subj. (§ 67).
45 8 optimum iūdicum fēcisset: 'had expressed the very highest opinion'; a reason stated on another's authority (§ 188. 6).
45 10 cum tribūnīs . . . ēgērunt etc.: 'arranged with the tribunes to apologize' (satisfacerent).
45 12 neque dē summā belli etc.: 'nor supposed that the judgment concerning the policy of the campaign was theirs (suum), but their general's.'

45 13 suum . . . imperātōris: preds. after esse (§ 73. a).

46 1 itinere exquisītō . . . ut . . . dūceret: lit. 'a route having been sought out that led' etc.; lit. 'such that it led,' rather an unusual result clause. The route lay in a northeasterly direction, and entered the valley of the Rhine near the southern part of the Vosges Mountains. See the campaign map, p. 39.

46 2 eī: 'in him'; dative after fidem habēbat, which is equivalent to a verb of trusting (§ 83).

46 3 milium: (sc. passuum) gen. of measure modifying circuitū (§ 77. b). Transl., 'by a circuit of more than fifty miles through an open country.'

46 5 cum . . . intermitteret: a causal clause (§ 189).

46 9 Chap. 42. Quod: a rel. preceding its antecedent, id.—per sē: 'so far as he was concerned.'

46 10 accessisset: the subj. is Cæsar.

46 12 ad sānitātem revertī: 'was beginning to return to his senses.'

46 13 petenti: 'when he (i.e. Cæsar) asked it.'—ultrō policerētur: 'he now promised of his own accord.'—magnamque in spem venīebat: 'he began to have great hopes.'

46 15 fore: the lack of a fut. participle of the verb dēsistere is supplied by the periphrasis fore utī . . . dēsisteret, lit. 'that it would be that' etc.

46 16 conloquiō: see § 89.

46 18 nē . . . addūceret: a subst. clause used as obj. (§ 183). It would be a prohibition in dir. disc. (§ 172. c).

46 20 uterque . . . venīret: in the dir. disc. veniāt (§ 172. b).—aliā ratiōne: 'on any other terms' (§ 111).

46 23 Gallūrum equitātui: he had no other; see Introd. III. 2. They numbered about 4000.

46 24 commodissimum: pred. adjective after esse, whose subj. is the inf. clause eō . . . impōnere (§ 216).—omnibus equis . . . dētrāctis: see § 117. b.—Galliēs equitibus: dative of separation (§ 86).

46 25 eō: adv.; 'on them,' i.e. the horses.

47 2 si quid etc.: 'if there should be any need of active service'; quid is adverbial accusative (§ 99).—factō: see § 107. c.

47 3 nōn inridiculē: 'not without wit.'—ex militibus: instead of mili-tum (§ 76, exception).

47 4 pollicitum: sc. esse.

47 6 ad equum rescribere: 'he was making knights of them.' The wit (cf. nōn inridiculē) in this expression consists in the fact that it has two meanings: (1) 'to enroll in the cavalry,' and (2) 'to enroll among the equitēs
THE GALIC WAR — BOOK I

(knights),' a privileged and wealthy class in Roman society. In other words, it is a pun. It is not often that Cæsar deviates from his straightforward narrative for an anecdote of any kind, and the fact that he does so here shows his keen sense of humor.

47 8 Chap. 43. spatiō: see § 114.
47 10 equis: 'on horseback'; abl. of means.
47 18 praeter sē dēnōs: 'besides themselves ten each'; dēnōs is a distributive numeral.
47 17 amicus: sc. appellātus esset (§ 94. note).—mūnera . . . missa (essent): the gifts are not mentioned but they may have included embroidered robes and jewelry.
47 18 et . . . et: 'both . . . and.'
47 22 Docēbat: 'he showed'; followed by a series of indir. questions (§ 201) introduced by quam, 'how'; quamque, 'and how' (l. 22); quotiēns quamque, 'how often and how'; ut, 'how' (l. 24).
47 23 ipsīs cum Haeduis intercēderent: 'existed between the Romans (ipsīs) and the Haeduī' (lit. 'to themselves with the Haeduī').
47 26 prius . . . quam . . . adpetissent: see §§ 197. a, 208.
47 27 ut . . . vellet: a result clause explaining hanc cōnsuētūdinem (§ 187, third example).
47 28 suī nihil: 'nothing of their own' (dignity etc.); suī is used substantively and is a part. gen. (§ 76. a).
47 29 quod: 'what they had brought to the alliance,' the rel. preceding its antecedent, id (§ 139).
47 30 quis . . . posset: the dir. form of this rhetorical question (§ 171) was quis . . . possit? For the mood see § 172. d and note. Transl., 'who could suffer this to be taken from them?' The thought is that the Romans would allow no one to deprive their allies of the prestige they had enjoyed before they became Rome's allies. Note that cēs is a dative (§ 86).
48 2 nē . . . inferret . . . redderet . . . nē . . . paterētur: these clauses are in apposition with eadem.
48 5 Chap. 44. paucā: in contrast with multā in the next line.
48 8 magnā spē magnisque praemīis: transl. as if it were magnā spē magnōrum praemīorum.
48 12 ad mē opponendum: a gerundive expressing purpose (§ 225. a).
48 16 pāce: see § 107. a.
48 19 oportet: impers.; the grammatical subj. is amīcitiam . . . esse (§ 216. b).
48 23 Quod . . . trādūcō: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a).
48 24 Galliae impugnandae: see § 225. b. For mē mūniendī see § 224. c.
48 26 nisi rogātus: 'except upon invitation' (lit. 'having been asked').
251

NOTES

48 28 finibus: see § 101.
48 29 Quid tibi vis: lit. 'what do you wish for yourself?' i.e. 'what do you mean?' (§ 85).
48 30 haec Gallia: 'this part of Gaul.' — Ut ... sic: 'as ... so.' Oportet is impers. Freely, 'as I ought not to be given a free hand if ... so.'
49 4 rērum: see § 80.
49 5 bellō ... proximō: four years before.
49 7 habuĕrunt: for indic. see § 208. a. So habēs, l. 10.
49 9 Dēbeō suspicārī etc.: 'I have grounds for suspecting that the army which you, under the pretense of friendship, have in Gaul, you are keeping for the purpose of crushing me.'
49 10 mei opprimendī: see § 224. c, and cf. p. 48, l. 24.
49 12 Quod: 'but'; so in l. 15. — nōbilibus ... grātum: Cæsar, as the head of the popular party at Rome, was especially obnoxious to the senate and the aristocracy. Many would have rejoiced to hear that disaster had befallen him, and it is quite possible that suggestions of this sort had come to Ariovistus from Rome.
49 14 compertum habeō: almost the same in force as commērī (§ 156. b. note); cf. p. 24, l. 5.
49 15 tuā morte: see § 106.
49 18 sine īūlō tuō labōre: 'without any toil on your part.'
49 19 Chap. 45. in eam sententiam ... quā rē: 'to this effect (to show) why.' — quā rē ... posset: an indir. question. Transl. freely, 'why he could not recede from his position.'
49 24 quibus: with ignōvit (from ignōscō); see § 83.
49 26 antiquissimum quodque tempus: see note on p. 35, l. 24.
49 29 suis: 'its own,' referring to Gaul. — voluerit: subjv. in a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190). Transl., 'which, though conquered in war, the senate has permitted to enjoy its own laws.'
50 1 Chap. 46. geruntur: see § 198. I.
50 2 tumulum: governed by proprius, which sometimes has the force of a preposition.
50 5 nē ... reicerent: dir. obj. of imperāvit; the indir. obj. is suīs.
50 7 committendum nōn putābat ut ... dīci posset: 'he thought that no ground should be given for saying'; the subj. of committendum is the ut clause (§ 187. I).
50 8 per fidem: 'under pretense of (through) good faith.'
50 10 omnī Galliā: abl. of separation with interdixisset. Rōmānīs is the indir. obj.
50 11 interdixisset: subjv. in an indir. question together with fecissent and dirēmissēt: 'when it was reported what insolence Ariovistus had displayed (lit.
THE GALlic WAR — BOOK I

‘having employed what insolence’), how he had ordered the Romans out of all Gaul, how his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that fact had put an end to the interview.’ The indir. questions are subs. of *ēlātum est.*

50 13 pugnandi: gerund; obj. gen. (§ 75. b).

50 15 Chap. 47. coeptae: this verb is regularly pass. in form when used with a pass. inf.

50 16 uti . . . cōnstituēre: following velle, the idea of asking being implied (§ 183); mitteret is in the same construction.

50 17 sui: refers to Cæsar, sē (l. 18) to Ariovistus.

50 18 causa visā nōn est: ‘there did not seem to be a good reason.’

50 19 et ēō magis, quōd: ‘and all the more on this account, that’ etc.; cf. p. 12, l. 16 and note. — retinērī . . . quīn: ‘be kept from’ (§ 185).

50 21 missūrūm . . . obiectūrūm: sc. esse.

50 23 Commodissīnum: pred. adjective with mittere (p. 51, l. 2) as subj. (§ 216. a).

50 24 virtūte et hūmānītāte: not ‘virtue and humanity’; it is rarely safe to transl. a Latin word by the English word derived from it. Transl., ‘worth and culture.’

50 25 cīvītāte: abl. of means.

50 26 quā multā . . . ūtēbātūr: ‘which Ariovistus spoke freely’ (§ 107. a).

51 1 quōd in ēō: ‘because in his case.’

51 2 peccāndī . . . causa: ‘grounds for committing an offense.’

51 3 ūtēbātūr: ‘enjoyed.’ Cf. ūtēbātur in l. 1. Observe how the verb ūtōr demands different translations according to the context. In every instance, however, the idea of ‘use’ remains fundamental.

51 7 Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit: ‘as they were trying to speak he shut them off.’

51 13 Chap. 48. supportārētur: subjv. by attraction (§ 214). So also vellet (l. 16).

51 15 instrūctam habuīt: ‘kept his line drawn up’; cf. compertum habeō, p. 49, l. 14.

51 18 castrīs: the “place where” may be expressed without a preposition when the idea of means is prominent.

51 19 hoc: explained by the following description.

51 21 singulī (equītēs) singulōs (peditēs): i.e. one apiece.

51 23 si quīd erat dūrius: ‘if there was unusual trouble’ (lit. ‘if there was anything too hard’); see § 122.

51 25 si quō . . . prōdeundum: ‘if there was need of advancing to any place.’

51 26 ut . . . ađaequārent: ‘that by holding on to (lit. ‘supported by’) the horses’ manes they kept up with them in speed.’ — iūbīs: abl. of means.
52 3 Chap. 49. castris: dative with an adjective (§ 90). By this move Cæsar has two camps, the first and larger one about two miles east of the Germans, and the second, a smaller one, rather more than half a mile to the south of them. See map, p. 56.

52 4 acié triplici: see Introd. III. 12.

52 8 expedītā: agreeing with mília in form, but with hominum in sense.

52 9 terrērent: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

53 1 Chap. 50. īnstitūtō suō: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

53 13 sortibus: 'lots,' of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance.—vāticinātiōnibus: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly prophecies arising from inner emotions.—utrum . . . necne: see § 170. b. 2.

53 14 eās: i.e. mātrēs familiae.—Nōn esse fās: 'it was not fated.'

53 15 novam lūnam: a common superstition of many people.

53 18 Chap. 51. quod satis esse visum est: sc id, obj. of reliquit and antecedent of quod.—ālāriōs: the auxiliaries, as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, ālāriī, from āla, 'wing.'

53 19 prō: 'in front of.' Cf. this meaning with the one in l 20.

53 20 prō hostium numerō: 'in comparison with the number of the enemy.'

53 21 ad speciem: 'for a show,' i.e. as if the two legions (p. 52, l. 12) were still there.

53 22 necessāriō: the Germans had to come out and fight because their camp was not fortified strongly enough to withstand Cæsar's assault.

53 24 intervālis: see § 112.

53 27 Eō: 'thereon,' i.e. on the carts and wagons.

53 28 proficiscentēs: '(the men) as they advanced' (§ 167); obj. of implūrābant.

54 1 Chap. 52. singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs: 'a lēgātus in command of each legion'; however, having at this time only five lēgātī he appointed his quartermaster (quaestōrem) over one of the six legions. Read the description of a battle in the Introd. III. 12, and look at the illustration on p. 31 and the one facing p. 86.

54 3 eam partem: of course, the left wing of the enemy.

54 6 pīla . . . coniciendī: the gerund with dir. obj. (§ 223. note). The gerundive construction might have been used (§ 224. b).

54 9 impetūs: accusative plur., fourth declension.

54 10 ĵnislīreṇt . . . revellerent . . . volnerārent: subjvs. in clauses of description. The meaning is that they leaped upon the roof formed by the shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (dēsupér).

54 11 Cum: 'although.'
54 16 tertiam aciem: this line had been kept as a reserve for just such emergencies.

54 18 Chap. 53. prius . . . quam . . . pervenērunt: see § 197. a.

54 22 ea: abl. of means. It refers to nāviculam, obj. of nactus (from nanciscor).

54 23 reliquōs omnēs: said to have been 80,000 in number.

54 24 Duae . . . uxōrēs: among the Germans only chiefs had more than one wife, and this was for the sake of honor and alliances.—nātiōne: see § 115.

54 25 dūxerat: ‘had brought.’ In the next line dūxerat means ‘had married.’

55 1 Procillus: see p. 50, l. 23.—trīnis: used instead of tribus. Catēnae is usually found in the plur., and with such nouns distributive numeral adjectives are generally used instead of cardinals.

55 3 Quae . . . rēs: i.e. the rescue of Procillus. Cæsar’s joy in the safety of his young friend offers a pleasing contrast to his usual sternness. For the rel. see § 143.

56 4 neque . . . dēminuerat: ‘nor had fortune by his loss detracted aught from an occasion of such joy and congratulation.’

56 5 tēr: it was the regular custom of the Germans to consult the lots three times.

56 6 cōnsultum (esse): impers.

56 11 Chap. 54. Rhēnum: prope, propior, and proximus sometimes govern the accusative. Cf. p. 50, l. 2 and note.

56 13 mātūrius: ‘earlier.’ This was in September.

56 16 conventūs: the governor of a province not only commanded the army, but administered justice as well.

BOOK II

Cæsar by his first campaign (58 B.C.) had made himself master of central Gaul, and had made his conquest sure by establishing the winter quarters of his legions among the Sequani. During the winter, while he was in Cisalpine Gaul, the Belgian Gaels, fearing that they should be the next victims of Roman aggression, united in a conspiracy to resist any further advance of Roman arms. This was reported to Cæsar, who, with characteristic energy, set out for the country of the Belgae as early in the spring (57 B.C.) as there was pasture enough to support his baggage animals.

The Belgian tribes, inhabiting what is now northeastern France, Belgium, and part of the Netherlands, were remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Romans. They lived amidst forests and swamps hard to penetrate, and had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence. In his campaign
against these tribes, especially the Nervii, Cæsar met the most formidable and desperate resistance yet encountered.

57 1 Chap. 1. Cum esset etc.: for the subj. see § 194. b.; esset is emphatic by its position. The clause is closely connected with the last sentence of the first book: in ceteriorem Galliam . . . profectus est. Cum esset Caesar in ceteriorem Galliā etc. The effect may be brought out in translation by the use of a noun: ‘during Cæsar’s stay in Cisalpine Gaul.’

57 2 dēmōnstrāvimus . . . dixerāmus: In referring to himself as the writer Cæsar, like many modern writers, regularly uses the plur.—adferēbantur: the past descr. shows repeated action; ‘kept coming in.’ The force of the tense is aided by crébrī.

57 4 quam: agrees with partem, though its real antecedent is Belgās (§ 138). It is the subj. of esse.

57 5 inter sē: ‘to one another.’

57 6 hās esse causās: ‘that the following were the reasons’; explained by the quod clauses.—quod verērentur . . . sollicitārentur: subord. clauses in indir. disc. (§ 208).—nē . . . addūcerētur: subst. clause, obj. of verērentur (§ 184).

57 7 omni pācātā Galliā: ‘after the subjugation of all Gaul’; abl. abs. (§ 117. b). Galliā refers to central (or Celtic) Gaul.

57 8 ab nōn nūllis Gallīs: abl. of agent (§ 104).

57 9 ut . . . ita: ‘just as . . . so,’ correlatives.—Germānōs . . . versāri: obj. of nōluerant.

57 10 hiemāre . . . inveterāscere: these infs. with their subj. exercitum are in indir. disc. after the idea of thought in molestē ferēbant, ‘they took it hard.’

57 11 mōbilitāte: abl. of cause (§ 109).

57 12 novis imperiis studēbant: ‘were eager for a change of government’ (lit. ‘new ruling powers’); for the dative see § 83.—ab nōn nūllis . . . quod: ‘by some also (sc. sollicitābantur) they were incited because.’

57 13 ad . . . facultātēs: ‘the means for hiring soldiers.’—condūcendōs: see § 225. a.

57 15 rem: i.e. royal power.—imperiō nostrō: ‘under our dominion’; abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).—cōsequi: complementary inf. (§ 217. e). In the passage above, beginning with Coniūrandī, note that the subord. verbs in indir. disc., that is, those that are a part of the report of Labienus, are in the subjv. mood (§ 208). Those, on the other hand, that are in the ind. (nōluerant, ferēbant, studēbant, habēbant, occupābantur, poterant) are not quoted from the report of Labienus, but state facts on Cæsar’s authority (§ 208. a).

57 16 Chap. 2. nūntiis: abl. of cause.—duās legiōnēs: he had already six legions, numbered VII–XII, so that the addition of these two new ones, numbered XIII and XIV, made eight legions (about 30,000 men) for the Belgic campaign.
57 17 initā aestētē: abl. abs. expressing time when (§ 117. b).
57 18 qui dēdūceret: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).
58 1 cum prīnum: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry horses and baggage animals could subsist.
58 2 Dat negotiōnum Senonibus: 'he enjoins on the Senones' (lit. 'he gives business to the Senones').
58 3 utī . . . cognōscant . . . faciant: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with negotiōnum (§ 183; third example).— gerantur: subjv. by attraction, depending on cognōscant (§ 214).
58 4 sē: an indir. reflex., referring to Cæsar (§ 133).— cōnstanter: 'consistently,' i.e. without variation.
58 5 manūs: accusative plur.; 'small bands,' or 'companies.'
58 6 dubitandum (esse): impers. inf. in indir. disc. after exīstimāvit; 'he thought that he ought not to hesitate.'— quīn . . . proficiscerētur: 'to set out' (§ 186); quīn can follow only a verb with a negative.
58 7 diēbus: abl. of time within which (§ 119).
58 9 CHAP. 3. Eō: adv.— omnium opinīōne: 'than any one expected' (lit. 'than the opinion of all'); opinīōne is used after the comparative without quam (§ 105).
58 10 Rēmī: these were friendly to the Romans.— Galliae: dative (§ 90).— ex Belgīs: 'of the Belgæ'; used instead of the part. gen.
58 11 lēgātōs: 'as ambassadors.' What other meaning does lēgātus have?
58 12 qui dicerent: see § 175.— Nōs . . . in fīdem . . . permittimus: 'put ourselves under the protection (good faith)' etc.
58 15 parātī: a participle used as an adjective. Depending on it are the complementary infinitives dare, facere, recipere, and iuvāre (§ 217. c).
58 16 oppidīs: properly an abl. of means, but to be translated as if it were abl. of place, 'in our towns.'
58 18 cis Rhēnum: i.e. the west (or Gallic) side.
58 19 tantus . . . ut . . . potuerimus: 'so great is the frenzy of them all that we have not been able to restrain even the Suessiones' etc.; a clause of result with the antecedent word tantus (§ 179. note).
58 22 quīn . . . cōnsentīrent: 'from leaguing with'; subjv. clause after a negatived word of hindering (§ 183). Note that the perfect subjv. (potuerimus) is followed by a secondary tense.
58 24 CHAP. 4. quae . . . quantaque . . . essent: indir. question (§ 201).
58 25 quid . . . possent: 'what strength they had in war'; quid is an adverbial accusative (§§ 98 and 99).
58 26 Plērique: 'the most of.'— à Germānīs: abl. of origin with a preposition (§ 102).— Rhēnum: depending on trāns in trā(ns)dūctī (§ 95. note).
58 28 sōlique: 'and . . . the only ones.'
NOTES


59 2 quā ex rē fit utī . . . sūmant: 'from this fact it comes about that they assume' etc. The result clause utī . . . sūmant is the subj. of fit (§ 187. II). — memoriā: abl. of cause (§ 109).

59 5 omnia habēmus explōrāta: 'have found out and possess all (the facts) about' (dē) etc. The expression habēmus explōrāta differs only slightly from explōrāvimus (§ 156. b. note, and cf. contemptum habēō, p. 49. l. 14).

59 6 propinquitātibus: 'ties of blood.' — adfinitātibus: 'alliances by marriage.'

59 9 virtūte: abl. of respect (§ 115).

59 10 armāta milia centum: equivalent to armātōrum hominum milia centum; grammatically, armāta agrees with milia. Likewise ēlēcta in the next line agrees grammatically with milia, but is translated 'picked men.'

59 11 sībī: dative of reference (§ 85).

59 14 cum . . . tum: 'not only . . . but.'

59 17 summa: 'the chief command.' — voluntāte: see § 111.

59 18 numerō: see § 115.

59 19 ferī: pred. adjective after habentur, which is a copulative verb (§§ 48. II. b, 94. note). Transl. 'who are regarded as particularly savage.' — inter ipsōs: 'among them,' i.e. the Belgāe.

59 23 Condrūsōs etc.: subjs. of posse, which depends on arbitrāmur.

59 24 Germānī: for the case cf. ferī, l. 19.

59 26 Chap. 5. cohortātus . . . prōsecūtus: 'after he had encouraged . . . and addressed them' etc.

59 27 liberōs obsidēs: 'their children as hostages'; obsidēs is an appositive. If faith was broken, the hostages were punished; often they were sold into slavery.

59 28 Quae omnia: 'and all this' etc.; for a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

60 1 quantō opere . . . intersit: 'how greatly it concerned'; indir. question. The subj. of intersit is the inf. clause, manūs . . . distinērī. — reī publicae . . . salūtis: gens. with intersit (§ 81. c).

60 2 nē . . . cōnflīgendum sit: gerundive in a neg. clause of purpose. The verb is imperfs.; transl. 'that it might not be necessary to contend' etc.

60 3 Id fierī posse: 'this (he said) could be done.'

60 4 intrōdūxerint . . . coeperint: in a fut. condition. In the dir. disc. these verbs would be in the fut. perf. ind.

60 6 Postquam . . . posuit: 'as soon as he was aware that all the forces of the Belgāe had been gathered into one place and were advancing against him, and had learned from the scouts whom he had sent forward, as well as
from the Remi, that they were not now far away, he hastily led his army across the river Aisne, which is on the outer boundaries of the Remi, and there pitched his camp.' For ind. with postquam see §193.—coāctās: equivalent to a clause (§220. e).

60 8 flūmen: depends on trāns in trā(ns)dūcere (§95); cf. Rhēnum, p. 58, l. 26, and note.

60 9 exercitum: obj. of the transitive verb trādūcere.—trādūcere: complementary inf. with mātūrāvit; 'hastened to lead.'

60 10 castra: this camp was about twelve miles northwest of Rheims. Traces of it were discovered in 1862.—Quae rēs: 'this movement,' i.e. his having crossed the river and pitched his camp where he did. For Quae see §143.—et latus ... mūniēbat et post eum ... reddēbat, et ... efficiēbat: the three ετ's are translated 'both ... and ... and.'

60 11 post eum quae erant tūta ... reddēbat: 'made safe the country in the rear of his position' ('what things were behind him'); tūta is a pred. adj.

60 13 ut ... possent: a subst. clause of result, obj. of efficiēbat (§187. I). The subj. of possent is commedātus, l. 12.

60 14 efficiēbat: the subj. is still Quae rēs.

60 15 in alterā parte: 'on the other side,' i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, toward the Remi. Caesar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side toward the Suessiones. See campaign map, facing p. 57, and battle plan, p. 63.

60 16 pedum duodecim: gen. of measure with altitūdinem (§77. b).

60 17 duodevīgintī pedum: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width.

60 18 Chap. 6. nōmine: abl. of respect (§115).

60 19 milia passuum octō: 'eight miles'; milia is accusative of extent (§96).—passuum: part. gen. —ex itinere: 'on the march,' i.e. turning aside from' their course to attack the town.

60 20 Aegrē ... sustentātum est: 'it was with difficulty that they held out'; the verb is a pass. intransitive and hence impers. (§83. a). In English such verbs should be given a personal subject.

60 21 Gallōrum ... est haec: 'the (mode of) attack, (which is) the same for the Gauls and the Belgae, is as follows' (haec).

60 22 circumiectā multitūdine: abl. abs.—moenibus: dative (§84).

60 23 iaci: complementary inf. with coēptī sunt. When are the forms of coēpī pass.? Cf. p. 50, l. 15 and note.—dēfēnsōribus: abl. of separation.

60 24 testūdine factā: 'having made a testūdō'; see Introd. III. 13.

60 25 Quod: 'this,' i.e. the actions just described.—multitūdō: a sing. collective noun may have a plur. verb, as often in English (§65. a).

60 26 cōnsistendī: gen. of the gerund with potestās (§223. a).

60 27 nūlli: dative of possession (§88).
60 28 summā nōbilitātē et grātiā: 'a man of the highest' etc. (§ 116).
61 1 oppidō: dative with praerat (§ 84). — ūnus ex eis: 'one of those'; a construction used in place of the part. gen. (§ 76, exception).
61 2 Nisi . . . posse: indir. disc. depending on the idea of reporting contained in nūntium mittit. Transl. 'unless reinforcements (he said)' etc.—sibi: i.e. Iccius.
61 4 Chap. 7. Eō: 'thither,' i.e. to Bibrax.—isdem ducibus ūsus: 'employing the same men (as) guides'; for the abl. see § 107. a; ducibus is an appositive (§ 58)
61 5 Numidās et Crētas: these peoples (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. Crētas is a Greek form.
61 6 Baleārēs: the inhabitants of the Balearic Isles, east of Spain, were famous slingers.—subsidiō oppidānis: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).
61 11 hostibus: 'from the enemy'; dative (§ 86).
61 12 potiundī: gerundive. Note the less regular spelling potiundī instead of potiendi.
61 15 morātī . . . dēpopulāti . . . vīcis . . . incēnsis: the first two past participles are in the nominative case agreeing with the subj., because, being from deponent verbs, they are active in meaning; incēnsi, however, could not be used in a similar way, because, coming from a regular verb, it is pass. and means 'having been burned.' To employ this pass. meaning the abl. abs. had to be used.
61 18 quō: adv.; 'to which.'
61 20 omnibus cōpiis: for the omission of cum see § 113. note.—ā milibus passuum minus duōbus: 'less than two miles off'; ā is used adverbially; milibus is abl. of measure of difference (§ 114). Minus does not affect the construction (§ 105. note 2). In the next line milibus is abl. after the comparative amplius. Thus we have here both of the allowable constructions.
61 24 Chap. 8. prīmō: 'at first.'
61 25 eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis: 'their high reputation for valor'; virtūtis is an obj. gen. (see note on p. xlvi, l. 1).—proelīō: abl. (§ 101).
61 26 quid . . . posset . . . quid . . . audērent: indir. questions; lit. 'what they were able, what they dared.' The thought may be rendered 'the prowess of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers.'—virtūte: see § 115.
62 1 locō . . . opportūnō . . . idōnēō: abl. abs. (§ 117. c).
62 4 tantum: correlative with quantum 'as much . . . as.' The rel. adjective quantus is used as a subst. in the same way as the rel. pronoun qui. In this sentence the antecedent tantum is accusative of extent; the rel. quantum is the dir. obj. of occupāre.—adversus: 'in front.'—locī: part. gen. with quantum, but more conveniently translated with tantum, 'over as much ground.'
62 5 ex utrāque parte: 'on each side.'
62 6 dēiectūs: accusative plur. modified by lateris; 'lateral slopes' (lit. 'slopes of the side').—in fronte etc.: 'falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain.' See battle plan, p. 63.
62 7 trānsversam fossam: 'an intrenchment at right angles,' i.e. to the slope of the hill.
62 8 passuum quadringentōrum: gen. of measure (§ 77. b).
62 9 extrēmās: 'the ends of' (§ 125).—tormenta: see Introd. III. 4, with the accompanying illustrations and those on pp. 104 and 120.
62 10 quod ... poterant: a parenthetical clause of explanation and hence not attracted to the subjv. Transl. 'because they were so strong in numbers.'
62 14 esset: 'if they were needed anywhere'; a fut. more probable condition (§ 199. II. a) attracted into the subjv. by the influence of ut . . . possent (§ 214).
62 16 cōpiās . . . ēductās instruxėrunt: transl. 'led out and drew up.'
62 17 Chap. 9. Palūs erat: 'there was a swamp'; i.e. in the low valley of the Miette brook. See battle plan, p. 63.
62 18 Hanc (paludem) sī nostri trānsirent: '(to see) whether our men would cross this' (§ 201). Note the difference in translation between sī, 'if,' introducing a condition, and sī, 'whether,' introducing an indir. question.
62 19 ut . . . adgredere_nt: a purpose clause depending upon āparātī etc.
62 21 contendēbatūr: impers. Transl. 'a cavalry engagement was going on.'
62 22 nostrīs: dative (§ 90).
62 27 eō cōnsiliō: 'with this intent.'—ut . . . expugnārent . . . interscin-derent . . . populārentur . . . prohibērent: subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with eō cōnsiliō (§ 183, third example).—si possent . . . si . . . potuisserent: represent respectively the fut. and fut. perf. ind. of the dir. form. For the change to the subjv. see § 208. b.
63 2 ad bellum gerendum: is this gerund or gerundive? why? See § 223. c and note, and § 224. b.
63 5 Chap. 10. levis armāturae: see § 77, and the ill., p. 65.
63 6 trāducit: with two accusatives (§ 95).
63 9 cōnantēs: with relictūs.
63 10 equitātū: considered as means, and therefore no preposition.— circumventōs interfecėrunt: 'surrounded and killed' (§ 220. c).
63 13 spem . . . fefellisse: 'that their expectations had failed' (lit. 'that hope had cheated them').
63 14 pugnandī causā: a gerund construction expressing purpose (§ 225. b).
64 1 ipsōs: i.e. the Belgē.
64 2 cōstituērunt etc.: 'they decided that it was best for each one to return to his own home, and that they should assemble from all sides to
defend those into whose territory the Romans should first lead their army.'
The two objects of ċonstitiērunt are (1) the inf. clause optimum esse domum
suam quemque revertī (of which revertī is the subj. and optimum esse the
pred.), and (2) the subst. purpose clause (ut) ... convenīrent. The omission
of ut is a reversion to an earlier form of expression. For the case of domum
see § 97.

64 4 intrōdūxissent: past perf. subjv., attracted from the fut. perf. ind.
by being made part of the purpose clause (ut) ... convenīrent (§ 214).
64 10 quod ... cognōverant: ind. because Cæsar gives the reason on
his own authority (§ 188. a). The clause is in apposition with haec ratiō.
64 13 His persuādērī ... nōn poterat: 'these could not be persuaded'
(lit. 'it could not be persuaded to these'). Verbs that take the dative in the
active are imper. in the pass., the dative being retained (§ 83. a).—ut ... 
morārentur neque ... ferrent: subst. clauses of purpose, grammatical subs.
of poterat (§ 183). Cæsar has manifestly succeeded in his plan of separating
the forces of the Belgæ.

64 16 Chap. 11. secundā vigiliā: approximately from 9 to 12 P.M.
64 17 strepitū ... tumultū: abls. of manner (§ 110).
64 19 ōrdine ... imperiō: abls. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).
64 20 cum ... peteret ... properāret: descriptive temporal clauses ex-
pressing cause (§ 195).
64 22 ut ... vidērētur: subst. clause of result, obj. of fēcerunt (§ 187. I,
first example); 'they made their departure seem like a rout.'
64 23 per: see § 104. note.—speculātōrēs: 'spies.' They obtained infor-
mation by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the 'scouts,' explōrātōrēs,
were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.
64 24 veritus: 'fearing.'—discēderent: indir. question (§ 201).
64 25 castrīs: 'in camp'; lit. 'by camp,' the Romans regarding the rela-
tion as means rather than as place (§ 106).
64 26 ab explōrātōribus: abl. of agent (§ 104). Compare this construc-
tion with per speculātōrēs, l. 23, where Cæsar gave the speculātōrēs directions,
and used them as a 'means to an end,' hence the preposition per (§ 104. note);
here the explōrātōrēs are 'voluntary agents,' hence ab with the abl.—qui ... 
morārētur: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).
64 27 His: dative with praefēcit (§ 84).
65 1 multa mīlia: see § 96.
65 2 cum: cf. note on p. 64, l. 20.
65 3 ab extrēmō agmine: 'in the rear.'—quōs: the antecedent is ei
understood, subj. of cōnsisterent and sustinērent.
65 4 priōrēs: sc. et, 'and those that were in the van.'—quod ... vidē-
rentur ... continērentur: the verbs are in the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).
65 8 sibi: dative of reference (§ 85).
65 10 tantam ... quantum fuit diēi spatium: 'killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed' (lit. 'as great a number as the space of the day was'). Cf. p. 62, l. 4 and note.  
65 15 Chap. 12. priusquam ... reciprent: ‘before the enemy should recover themselves’ (§ 197 b).
65 17 in finēs Suessiōnum ... dūxit: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other. "Divide and conquer" was a famous Roman proverb.
65 19 magnō itinere: see Introd. III. 11, and the ill., p. 45.
65 20 ex itinere: i.e. as soon as he arrived, without waiting to construct the usual works preliminary to storming.
65 22 esse: supply id (oppidum) for subject.
65 23 paucis dēfendentibus: abl. abs. denoting concession (§ 117 d); 'though there were few defenders.'—expugnāre: 'to take' (by storm); cf. oppugnāre (l. 20), 'to attack.'
65 24 vineās: see Introd. III. 13.—quaque: the antecedent of quae is ea understood, the obj. of comparāre.
65 27 aggere ... turribus: see Introd. III. 13.
66 1 magnitūdine ... celeritāte: abls. of cause (§ 109), modifiers of permōti.
66 4 ut cōnservārentur: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of petentibus (§ 183).
66 5 Chap. 13. obsidibus: in apposition with prīmēs and fīliēs.
66 8 Quī cum: 'and when they'; cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.
66 10 maiōrēs nātū: 'the older men' (lit. 'greater in respect to birth'); nātū is abl. of respect (§ 115).
66 11 vōce significāre: 'show by the tones of their voices'; of course they could not speak Latin.
66 12 in eius fīdem ac potestātem venire: 'placed themselves under his protection and submitted to his commands' (lit. 'came into his faith and power').
66 13 cum ... accessisset ... pōneret: 'when he had approached and was pitching his camp.' Mark the difference in tenses; the clauses denote time and circumstance (§ 194 d).
66 15 passīs manibus: 'with hands outstretched' (in supplication); passīs is from pandō.—suō mōre: 'according to their custom' (§ 111).
66 23 quantum ... intulissent: indir. question.
66 25 ut ... ētāris: a subst. clause, obj. of petunt (§ 183).
66 26 Quod: a connecting rel., referring to the idea in the preceding sentence; cf. Quī, l. 8.
66 28 qua: indef. pronoun with bella. For the form see § 28, footnote 1.
NOTES 263

67 1 Chap. 15. honōris Diviciāci . . . causā: "out of respect for Diviciacus" (lit. 'for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus').
67 2 receptūrum: sc. esse. The omission of esse is very common.
67 3 auctoritāte: abl. of description (§ 116).
67 4 multitūdine: abl. of respect (§ 115).
67 10 mercatóribus: dative (§ 88).—vini: part. gen. with nihil.
67 13 virtutis: see § 77.
67 14 qui . . . dēdiderint . . . prōiēcerint: "for having surrendered" etc.; a descriptive causal clause giving the reason for increpitant and incusant (§ 190).
67 17 Chap. 16. eōrum: i.e. of the Nervii.—trīdum: '(marched) for three days'; accusative of duration of time (§ 96).
67 18 nōn amplius milia: milia is accusative of extent of space and is not affected by amplius; cf. p. 61, l. 20, and see § 105. note 2.
67 22 utī . . . experīarentur: a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).
67 24 quīque: equals quī plus que, 'and those who.' The antecedent of quī is cōs understood, the obj. of coniēcisse.
67 25 quō: rel. adv., equivalent to in quem referring to locum.
68 3 ūnā: an adv. 'along (with him).'</p 57, l. 18. exception.
68 4 quīdam ex hīs: for abl. with ex instead of part. gen. see § 76, exception.
68 5 eōrum diērum cōnsuetūdine . . . perspectā: the following diagram shows the relation of the words:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{cōnsuetūdine} & \text{perspectā} \\
\hline
\text{diērum} & \text{itineris} \\
\hline
2 \text{eōrum} & 1 \text{exercitūs} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

Cōnsuetūdine is modified by group 1 and the whole phrase is modified by group 2; lit. 'the custom of the march of our army of those days having been observed,' freely 'after they had observed the usual order of march of our army during those days.'

68 6 inter singulās legiōnēs: 'between the several legions.' For the usual order of the line of march see Introd. III. 11.
68 8 negotī: part. gen. depending on quīquām. Cf. p. 67, l. 10.—cum . . . vēnisset . . . abessent: subjvs. in indir. disc., representing the fut. perf. and fut. ind. respectively of the dir.
68 10 **hanc** . . . **quā**: both refer to **prīma legiō**.—**sarcinis**: see Introd. III. 9. d, and the illustrations, pp. 45 and 69.

68 11 **ut** . . . **nōn audērēnt**: subst. clause of result, subj. of **futūrum (esse)** (§ 187. II); lit. 'it would come to pass that they would not dare.'

68 12 **Adiuverbēbat**: the subj. is the subst. clause of fact **quod Nervī**: . . . **effecerant** (§ 182, first example), and the obj. is **cōnsilium**.

68 13 **Nervī** etc.: this sentence is a good example of the Latin "periodic structure," in which, by holding the leading verb in abeyance, the thought is kept in suspense until the period is completed. **Nervī**, the subject in the nominative case, indicates that those people are the **doers** of an act that remains unexpressed until the reader has been informed of the circumstances attending the act. Holding the subj. **Nervī** in mind, he finds first **when** the act was performed (**antiquitus**); then **why** it was done (**cum . . . possent**); next **for what purpose** (**quō facilius . . . impedirent**); then **by what means** (**teneris arboribus . . . interiectis**); lastly, all is locked together into a completed whole by the **act itself** (**effecerant ut . . . praebērent**).—**nihil possent**: 'had no strength'; **nihil** is adverbial accusative (§ 99).

68 14 **quicquid possunt** etc.: cf. **nihil** (l. 13), and transl. 'all the strength they have is in infantry.'

68 15 **quō facilius . . . impedirent**: a clause of purpose with a comparative (§ 176).

68 16 **vēnissent**: attracted into the subjv. from the fut. perf. ind. because of its position in the purpose clause (§ 214).

68 17 **in lātitūdinem**: i.e., when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang out on all sides and made a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briers and thorns. Traces of such hedges still exist.

68 18 **ut** . . . **praebērent**: an obj. clause of result depending on **effecerant** (§ 187. I).—**īnstar**: an indeclinable noun, regularly followed by the genitive. Transl. 'like a wall' (lit. 'the image of a wall').

68 19 **quō**: 'into which'; a rel. adv. followed by **posset** in a clause of description (§ 177). Cf. **quō**, p. 67, l. 25.

68 20 **cum**: 'since' (§ 189).

68 21 **omittendum (esse)**: a pass. periphrastic denoting obligation, followed by **sibi**, a dative of agent (§ 87).

68 24 **Chap.** 18. **aequāliter dēclīvis**: 'with even downward slope.'

68 26 **parī acclīvitāte**: see § 116. The description proceeds from the high ground northwest of the Sambre **downward** (**dēclīvis**) to the stream; then across the river up the **ascent** (**acclīvitāte**) on the other side.—**adversus huic et contrārius**: 'opposite this and facing it.' See map, p. 71.

69 1 **passūs** . . . **apertus**: 'open at the base for about two hundred paces'; for **passūs** see § 96.—**infīmus**: see § 125.—**ab superiōre parte**: 'along the upper portion.'
NOTES

69 2 silvestris: an adjective modifying collis.—ut non ... posset: a neg. clause of result. What would ne posset express?
69 3 in apertō locō: the open space of two hundred paces mentioned above.
69 4 secundum: a preposition governing flūmen.
69 5 pedum ... trium: see § 77. b.
69 6 CHAP. 19. cōpiis: see § 113. note.
69 7 aliter ... détulerant: 'was different from what the Belgae had reported' (lit. 'held itself otherwise than' etc.).
70 1 cōnsuētūdine suā: 'according to his custom' (§ 111).—legiōnēs expeditās: see Introd. III. 11.
70 2 conlocārat: contracted from conlocāverat.
70 3 proximē cōnscriptae: 'most recently levied.' These were legions XIII and XIV (see p. 57, l. 16 and note), which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.
70 7 reciprent ... facerent: 'kept retiring' etc.; the continuous action, indicated by the past tense, is emphasized by identidem.
70 8 neque ... audērent: 'and our men dared not follow them further than to the line to which the open space extended.'—quem ad finem: translated as if it were ad finem ad quem.
70 9 cēdentēs: agrees with eōs, the obj. understood of insequī. The omission of the pronoun in cases like this is the rule.
70 10 opere dimēnsō: see Introd. III. 10, and the ill., p. 52.
70 13 quod tempus ... convēnerat: 'the time that had been agreed upon' (lit. 'which time had' etc.). Tempus is in apposition with the clause ubi ... viōsa sunt. An antecedent in apposition with something preceding is always placed in the rel. clause.
70 15 atque (ita ut) ipsī sēsē confirmāverant: 'and just as they had determined to do,'
70 20 adversō colle: 'straight up the opposite hill'; abl. of the way by which (§ 120. note 1).
70 22 CHAP. 20. Caesari: see § 87.—vēxillum: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to show that a battle was impending; see Introd. III. 7.
70 23 prōpōnendum: sc. erat; so with the several periphrastics that follow, the proper form of sum must be supplied.
70 24 tubā: the signal to take their places in the ranks; see Introd. III. 8.—ab opere: i.e. the work of fortification.
70 25 qui: the antecedent (ēr) is the subj. understood of arcessendi (erant).—aggeris: 'material for a mound.'
70 26 signum dandum: the last signal for immediate action (§ 224. a).
72 1 difficulitātibus ... subsidiō: see § 89, and cf. p. 61, ll. 6 and 7.—scientia ... ēsus: 'theoretical knowledge and experience.' The words are
in part. apposition with \textit{duae rés}, and name only the first of the two helpful circumstances; the second is stated in the clause \textit{quod . . . vetuerat} below.

72 2 \textit{quid . . . oportéré}: indir. question, obj. of \textit{praescribere}.

72 4 \textit{quod . . . vetuerat}: 'the fact that he had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.'

72 7 \textit{nihil iam}: 'no longer'; \textit{nihil} is adverbial accusative (§99).—\textit{per sē}: 'on their own responsibility.'—\textit{quae vidēbantur}: 'what seemed best.' The antecedent of \textit{quae} is \textit{ea} understood, the obj. of \textit{administrābant}.

The battle with the Nervii, one of the most critical episodes in Cæsar's career, is referred to by Longfellow, in "The Courtship of Miles Standish," in the following lines:

Now, do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders, When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too, And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier, Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains, Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns; Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons; So he won the day, the battle of something-or-other.

72 10 Chap. 21. \textit{quam in partem}: equivalent to \textit{in eam partem in quam} (§140).

72 11 \textit{decimam}: this was Cæsar's favorite legion; cf. p. 45, ll. i ff.

72 12 \textit{uti . . . rethinérént . . . perturbārentur . . . sustinérént}: obj. clauses of purpose, expressing indirectly the commands given in his address (\textit{órātiōne cohortātus}).

72 14 \textit{quam quō}: introducing a rel. clause of description; transl. 'than the distance to which' (lit. 'than whither').

72 16 \textit{pugnantibus}: sc. \textit{suis} or \textit{militibus}, dative with \textit{occurrīt} (§84).

72 18 \textit{ut . . . tempus dēfuerit}: a clause of result. Observe that in such clauses there is usually some antecedent word meaning 'so,' 'such,' 'so great,' 'to such a degree,' etc., on which the result clause depends; the words here are \textit{tanta} and \textit{tam} (§179. note).—\textit{ad insignia accommodanda}: see §225. \textit{a}; 'for fitting on the decorations' (of the helmets etc.). See Introd. III. 9. \textit{b.}, and the ill., p. 74.


72 20 \textit{Quam . . . cōnstitiit}: 'into whatever place chance took him, and whatever standards he saw first, there each took his stand.' So well were the soldiers drilled that each could fight well even among troops not his own.

72 23 Chap. 22. \textit{magis ut . . . quam ut reī militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat}: 'rather as . . . demanded than as the theory and practice of warfare did.'
NOTES

267

72 25 cum . . . resisterent . . . impeditētur: see § 189.—aliae alia in parte: see note on p. 42, l. 21.

73 3 neque quid . . . prōvidēri (poterat): 'neither could the necessities (lit. 'what was necessary') in each part be foreseen.'—quid . . . esset: see § 201.

73 6 ēventūs variī: subj. of sequēbantur; modified by fortūnae.

73 7 Chap. 23. In this chapter three sets of encounters, occurring at practically the same time, are described in order, (1) that of the Atrebates with the ninth and tenth legions, (2) that of the Viromandui with the eighth and eleventh, and (3) that of the Nervii with the seventh and twelfth. Study carefully the lower battle plan, p. 71.—ut . . . constiterant: 'from their position' etc. (lit. 'as they had taken their position').

73 8 aciē: a genitive form.—pilīs emissīs: see Introd. III. 9 and 12.

73 9 his: i.e. the Atrebates; dative with obvēnerat (§ 84).

73 11 cōnantēs: sc. eōs (§ 167), obj. of insecūtī; 'while they were trying to cross.

73 12 Ipsi: 'they themselves.'

73 13 prōgressī: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill from which the enemy had rushed to the attack.

73 18 nūdātīs: 'being exposed.' The only legions left near the camp were the seventh and twelfth on the right wing.—cum . . . cōstitisset: see § 189.

74 1 intervāllō: abl. (§ 114).

74 2 duce Boduōgnātō: abl. abs.; 'under the leadership of Boduognatus.'

74 4 apertō latere: 'on the exposed flank'; i.e. on the right, not protected by shields.


74 7 ūnā: adv.

74 8 pulsōs: sc. esse; subj. quos.—dixeram: 'have said,' p. 70, l. 17. When this is read, the writing is past; hence the past perf. for an earlier page.

74 10 decumānā portā: see Introd. III. 10 and the ill., p. xxxv.

74 13 praecipītēs: adjective agreeing with cālōnēs, but with the force of an adv., 'pell-mell,' 'in utter confusion' (§ 126). Concerning cālōnēs see Introd. III. 5.

74 14 quī etc.: this refers to the baggage train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as rear guard; see p. 70, ll. 1–4.—clāmor: the shouts of the men; fremitus, the confused noise of the train.

74 15 oriēbātur: sing. because of the single idea conveyed by clāmor fremitusque (§ 68).

74 16 quōrum . . . virtūtīs opinīō: 'whose reputation for valor' (lit. 'opinion of valor'); obj. gen. § 75 b).

75 1 complērī . . . premī . . . tenērī . . . fugere: indir. disc. after vidissent. These present tenses represent what they saw going on.
The Gallic War — Book II

75 4 pulsōs superātōsque ... potitōs: sc. esse.

75 7 Chap. 25. Caesar: subj. of processit (l. 27). This is another instance of the periodic sentence; see note on p. 68, l. 13. In translating such long sentences it is desirable to make several short ones, each complete in itself. This example illustrates well how much more freely the absolute construction is used in Latin than in English. As a rule, it is well to avoid transferring it literally into English, as, ‘the standard bearer having been killed’ etc. However, a sparing use is permissible.

75 9 ubi: construe with vīdit (§ 193). — signis: see the illustrations, pp. 73 and 75.

75 11 sibi ... impedimentō: ‘hindered one another in fighting’ (§ 89).

75 17 prīmipılı: in partial apposition with centuriōnibus. For the office see Introd. III. 6. e. Baculus was one of Cæsar’s best centurions.

75 22 ab novissimis: ‘in the rear.’ — désertō locō: ‘deserting their post.’

75 25 in angustō: ‘in a difficult situation,’ or ‘at a crisis.’ — vīdit: repeated from l. 12, on account of the length of the sentence.

75 26 posse[t]: see § 177. The rear guard had not yet arrived.— scūtō ... militī dētrāctō: ‘snatching a shield from a soldier.’ For the dative militī cf. hostibus, p. 61, l. 11, and see § 86. For a description of the scūtum see Introd. III. 9. b.

75 29 possent: a purpose clause introduced by quō with a comparative (§ 176).

76 2 etiam ... rēbus: ‘even in his own extreme peril.’

76 5 Chap. 26. cōnstiterat: from cōnistiō; ‘had taken its position.’

76 6 monuit: with two accusatives, tribūnōs and the subst. clause ut ... coniungerent ... inferrent (§§ 93, 183), which represents one accusative.

76 7 conversa etc.: ‘should face about and charge the enemy (in opposite directions’) (lit. ‘bear turned standards against’).

76 8 alius aliī etc.: ‘one was helping another’; see § 144. d. i.

76 11 legiōnum duārum: i.e. XIII and XIV. See battle plan.

76 13 colle: i.e. the site of the Roman camp.

76 14 Labiēnus: he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see the first lines of chapter 23 and the battle plan.

76 16 Qui: i.e. the soldiers of legion X. How should Quī cum be translated?

76 17 quō ... esset quantōque ... versārētur: indir. questions after cognōvissent; ‘in what condition matters stood’ etc.

76 19 nihil ... fēcērunt: ‘left nothing undone in the way of speed’ (lit. ‘made nothing of remainder’); reliquī is a part. gen. (§ 76. a).

76 21 Chap. 27. qui: the antecedent is ei understood, in partial apposition with nostrī. — prōcubuissent: see § 177.
76 22 redintegrārent: result, depending on tanta (§ 179. note), as are also occurrerent (l. 23) and praeferent (l. 25).

77 2 ut ... insisterent ... pugnārent ... conicerent ... remitterent: result clauses dependent on the antecedent word tantam. Cf. p. 76, l. 20.—iacentibus insisterent: 'stood on the fallen.'

77 3 his: refers to proximī; transl. 'these too.'

77 4 qui: the antecedent is el understood, subj. of conicerent and remitterent.—ut ex tumulō: 'as if from a mound.'

77 5 pīla ... remitterent: i.e. they picked up and hurled back the Roman javelins.

77 6 ut ... débēret: 'so that we may consider that not without good hope of success did men' etc. (lit. 'so that it ought to be judged that not in vain did men' etc.). The subj. of débēret is the inf. clause hominēs ... aūsōs esse (§ 216. b). The ut clause expresses the result of the entire preceding description.

77 8 quae: the antecedents are the insfs. trānsire, ascenderēre, and subīre; transl. quae 'deeds which.' Facilia is pred. adjective.—The battle with the Nervii was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Only the steadiness of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence at the critical moment saved the day.


77 13 cum ... arbitrārentur: a causal clause (§ 189).—impeditum (esse) etc.: 'there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. 'nothing impassable to') the conquerors.'

77 14 victīs: dative (§ 85).

77 18 quī ... possent: this is a descriptive clause and would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.

77 21 finitimīs: dative (§ 83).—ut ... prohibērent: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of imperāvit (§ 183).

77 23 Chap. 29. supra: in p. 67, l. 23, the Aduatuci were said to be on the way to reënforce the Nervii.—diximus: tense as in English; contrast dixerāmus, l. 12.—cum ... veniērent: 'while they were on their way.'

77 27 Quod: transl. as a demonstrative pronoun, and cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.—cum ... habēret: a concessive clause (§ 192).

78 2 pedum: gen. (§ 77. b). For the case used after amplius see § 105. note 2.

78 4 conlocābant: the past descr. tense often denotes an action in progress (§ 154. a).

78 6 impedimentīs: refers to cattle as well as to portable baggage.

78 8 custōdīam: 'a guard' for booty etc.—praesidium: 'a garrison' to hold the place.
78 9 ūnā: adv.; 'with it.' — Hī: i.e. the six thousand. — eōrum: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons. — obitum: 'destruction.' The Teutons were totally defeated by Caius Marius at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C.; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellae.

78 10 cum aliās . . . aliās . . . défenderent: 'while sometimes they were waging war (aggressively) and sometimes were defending themselves when attacked' (lit. 'were warding off war brought against them').

78 14 Ch. 30. parvulisque proelīs: 'skirmishes' (lit. 'small battles').

78 16 oppidō: abl. of means, hence the omission of in; but transl. 'in the town.'

78 17 vineis . . . aggere . . . turrīm: see Introd. III. 13.

78 18 inridēre . . . increpitāre: historical infinitives (§ 218). — quod . . . instituerētur: subjv. in a causal clause stating a reason on another's authority; 'because (as they said)'; etc.; see § 188. b.

78 19 Quibusnam . . . cōnfidunt: -nam thus used with an interrogative word denotes extreme inquisitiveness. The early writers agree that the Gauls and Germans were tall and large as compared with the Romans. The Aduatuci, unused to Roman methods of warfare, supposed that their assailants, who in their eyes seemed puny, intended to lift on their wall the tower that they were building; hence their jeering question: 'Pray, by what strength of hand do you — especially being such puny little fellows — expect to set a tower of such weight on our wall?'

79 1 Ch. 31. qui . . . possitis: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).


79 9 quāmovis: from the pronoun quīōvīs.

80 1 Ch. 32. cōnsuētūdine . . . merītō: see § 111.

80 3 ariēs: see Introd. III. 13. b and accompanying illustrations.

80 4 nisi armīs trāditīs: 'except on the condition of the surrender of your arms' (lit. 'except your arms having been surrendered'). — in: 'in the case of.'

80 5 nē . . . inferant: a subst. clause, obj. of imperābō. The indir. obj. is fīnitimīs (§ 83). — quam: an indef. adjective pronoun modifying iniūriam.

80 7 facere: sc. sē as subj. We should expect factūrōs (esse).

80 8 ut propē . . . adaequārent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep chasm between the wall and the end of the agger almost to the top. The clause is one of result.

80 12 eō diē pāce sunt ūsi: 'for that day they enjoyed peace.' For the case of pāce see § 107. a.

80 14 Ch. 33. quam: cf. l. 5.

80 16 ante initō . . . cōnsiliō: abl. (§ 111); ante is an adv. modifying initō.
80 20 quā: 'where.'
80 23 ignibus: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watchtower.
80 24 concursum est, pugnātum . . . est: impers. use of the pass.
80 25 ita acriter . . . ut: correlative; 'as bravely as.'
80 26 qui . . . iacerent: see § 177.
80 27 pugnāre dēbuit: impers.; transl. as if virīs (l. 25) were the subj., 'as brave men ought to fight.' — in ùnā virtūte: 'in valor alone.'

81 1 ad: adv.; 'about'
81 3 sectiōnem . . . universam: i.e. the whole people with all their possessions were sold as slaves.
81 5 milium: pred. gen. after esse understood (§ 77. a; see also § 116. a. 1).
82 Chap. 35. The student is urged to try to read the Latin manuscript of this chapter as it appears on page 81.
82 3 incolerent: subjv. by attraction (§ 214).
82 4 qui . . . pollicērentur: a rel. clause of purpose. — datūrās: takes the f. gender from nātōnibus.
82 5 in Italian Īllyricumque: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, which formed part of Cæsar's province. He went there, however, only during the winter.
82 6 in Carnutēs: to be taken with dēductīs, l. 9.
82 10 supplicātīō: 'a public thanksgiving.' Ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. — quod: the antecedent is the whole idea in the preceding clause.

BOOK III

The events recorded in Book III belong chiefly to the campaign of the year 56 B.C.; but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, described in the opening chapters, occurred in the latter part of 57 B.C., beginning upon Cæsar's return to Italy after the subjugation of the Belgae.
83 1 Chap. 1. Cum in Italian proficiscerētur: connected in thought with in Italian profectus est, p. 82, l. 9. — Galbam: this officer later became one of the assassins of Cæsar, his old general.
83 6 portōriēs: these Alpine tribes subsisted largely by mining, grazing, and the levying of tolls on the goods of travelers.
83 8 arbitrārētur: subjv. of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b). — utī . . . conlocāret: a subst. clause, obj. of permīsit.
83 10 secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs etc.: expand this series of abls. abs. into clauses; cf. § 117, second paragraph.
THE GALIC WAR — BOOK III

83 16 hic: refers to vīcus.
83 18 vacuam: pred. adjective after relictam.—ab his: 'by these,' i.e. the Gauls.
84 6 Chap. 2. ut . . . caperent: a subst. clause of result, in apposition with id, 'it.'
84 8 neque eam plēnissimam: 'and that not entirely full.' This legion (the twelfth) had suffered severe losses in the battle with the Nervii (Book II, chap. 25), and was below normal strength before these detachments were sent off.
84 11 cum ipsī . . . dēcurrerent: 'when they should charge down from the hills into the valley.'
85 1 Accedebat quod: 'and besides' (lit. 'it was added that'). The subj. of accedebat is the clause quod . . . dolēbant (§ 182). A subst. clause with ut and the subjv. might have been used (§ 187. II).
85 2 abstrāctōs: sc. esse.
85 3 Rōmānōs . . . adiungere: indir. disc. after sibi persuāsum habēbant, 'they were convinced' (lit. 'they had it persuaded to themselves'). With persuāsum habēbant cf. coāctum habēbat, p. 22, l. 3; compertum habeō, p. 49, l. 14; habēmus explōrāta, p. 59, l. 5; and notes.
85 7 Chap. 3. perfectae: agrees with the nearer subj., mūniṭiōnēs, but belongs to opus as well.
85 8 esset provīsūm: impers., 'arrangements had been made.'
85 9 timendum (esse): a pass. periphrastic (§§ 38. II, 224. a). Transl. 'that there need be no fear of war.'
85 14 venīrī: depends on posset, understood from possent, l. 15. Posset is used impersonally, lit. 'neither could it be come for aid'; freely, 'and since no one could come to help them.'
85 15 nōn nūllae . . . sententiae: 'several opinions' (or 'votes'), given by the officers in council.
85 16 ut . . . contenderent: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with eius modī.
85 18 Maiōrī . . . placuit: 'the majority decided' (lit. 'it pleased the majority').—tamen: 'nevertheless'; i.e. in spite of other sententiae.
85 20 Chap. 4. ut . . . dārētur: a result clause.
85 22 dēcurrere, conicere, prōpugnāre, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superārī: historical infinitives (§ 218); as usual, describing the situation.
85 23 gaesaque: Gallic javelins of unknown form.
85 26 ēō: adv.
85 27 quod . . . excēdēbant . . . succēdēbant: subst. clauses explaining hoc (§ 182).
86 1 nōn modo . . . sēd nē . . . quidem: 'not only not, but not even,' etc.
We should expect another negative after modo, but the Latin regularly omits it in this expression where both parts have the same predicate.

86 3 sui recipiendi: 'of recovering himself' (§ 224. c).
86 4 Chap. 5. Cum . . . pugnārētur: 'when the fight had been going on.'
86 8 Baculus: see p. 75, ll. 17-18 and note.
86 11 virtūtis: gen. of description.
86 12 ünam esse spem salūtis: 'that there was only one hope of safety' etc.—si . . . experīrentur: a conditional clause in apposition with spem. Note that docent, a historical present ind. (§ 153. a), allows secondary sequence, experīrentur (§ 164).—extrēmum auxilium: 'the last resource.'
86 14 intermitterent, excipierent, rēraperent, pōnerent: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205), following certiōrēs faciēt in the sense of 'instructs.'
86 15 tēla missa excipierent: 'should (merely) catch (on their shields) the weapons that were hurled'; i.e. they should throw none back.
86 16 post: adv.
86 18 Chap. 6. Quod iussī sunt faciēunt: 'they did as (what) they were ordered.' Faciēunt and the other presents that follow are historical.
86 19 sui conligendi: see § 224. c; 'of collecting their wits' (lit. 'of collecting themselves'); cf. l. 3.
86 21 undique circumventōs interficiēunt: 'they surrounded on all sides and killed.'
86 24 tertiā parte interfectā: abl. abs.; plūs does not affect the case (§ 105. note 2).
86 26 armīs: abl. of separation.—exūtīs: belongs with cōpiēs. The enemy threw down their arms as they fled.
87 2 aliō . . . meminerat, aliīs . . . viderat: 'remembered that he had come with one plan (i.e. to open a way into Italy) . . . but saw that he had encountered other conditions.'

The episode of the uprising of the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni is concluded with chapter 6. With the following chapter begins the account of the main campaign of 56 B.C. against the hardy coast tribes, particularly the Veneti. Cæsar's courage and resourcefulness are nowhere more strikingly shown.

87 12 Chap. 7. Crassus: see p. 81, ll. 7 ff.
87 13 mare: accusative after proximus; cf. p. 56, l. 11.
87 15 complūrēs: modifies cīvitātēs.
87 17 Coriosolitas: accusative plur. of Coriosolītēs.
87 19 Chap. 8. Huius . . . cīvitātis: i.e. of the Veneti.
87 21 in Britanniam . . . cōnsuērunt: i.e. for the purposes of trade.—cōnsuērunt: contracted from cōnsuēvērunt, 'are accustomed.' The present would mean 'grow accustomed.'

NOTES
274  THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK III

87 22 scientiā . . . üsū: abs. of respect (§ 115).
88 1 vectīgālēs: adjunct accusative with omnēs (§ 94).
88 2 se: subj. of recuperātūrōs (esse); suōs agrees with obsidēs.
88 5 subita . . . repentina: ‘sudden . . . unexpected.’
88 10 quam . . . perferre: ‘than to endure,’ quam following the com-
parative idea in mālīnt.
88 13 remittat: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending
on the message implied in lēgātiōnem . . . mittunt. The dir. disc. would be
sī vīs tuōs recipere, obsidēs nōbīs remiit(e) (§ 205).
88 14 Chap. 9. Caesar: observe again how Cæsar has stated the difficulties
and set the stage for action, and then personally appears as the chief actor.
88 15 aberat longius: ‘was too far off’; i.e. to take immediate command
in person.—nāvēs . . . longās: ‘war galleys’; see Introd. III. 14. a, and the
illustrations, pp. 92, 94, 117. The Gallic ships used sails alone and had no
oars.—It will be remembered that Cæsar, at the close of the previous year
(57 B.C.), had set out for Illyricum and Italy (p. 82, ll. 5–9). In April, 56 B.C.,
before his return to Gaul, he had a conference with the other triumvirs,
Pompey and Crassus, and arrangements were made whereby the latter were
to be consuls for the year 55 B.C., and Cæsar’s term as governor of Gaul
was to be extended for five years after the expiration of his first term (54 B.C.).
Plans were also made to increase Cæsar’s legions from eight to ten, and to pro-
vide pay for them from the public treasury. Cæsar seems thus to have been
planning for future military support when he should finally return to Rome.
88 21 quantum . . . admīsisissent: transl. freely, ‘how great a crime they
had committed’ (lit. ‘how great a crime they had brought upon themselves’).
88 22 lēgātōs . . . retentōs: explanatory of facinus.—quod nōmen:
transl. as if the order were nōmen quod, with nōmen in apposition with lēgātōs,
and cf. p. 70, l. 13 and note.
88 25 hoc maiōre spē: ‘their hope being greater on this account.’
89 2 înscientiam: i.e. the Romans’ lack of acquaintance.
89 4 diūtius: ‘very long’ (lit. ‘longer,’ i.e. than they desired); see § 145.
89 5 ut . . . accīderent: ‘although everything should turn out contrary to
their expectations’ (§ 192).
89 6 posse and the following infinitives depend on perspicēbant (l. 10).
89 7 gestūri essent: an active periphrastic (§ 222. I) and a subjv. in indir.
disc.
89 8 longē aliam . . . atque: ‘very different . . . from.’
89 9 conclūsō: i.e. like the Mediterranean, with which the Romans were
familiar.
89 12 ubi . . . cōnstatbant: ‘where it was evident that Cæsar would first
wage war.’
NOTES

89 13 Sociōs: pred. accusative with Osismōs etc.

89 18 CHAP. 10. multa: in part. apposition with this word are the nouns iniūria, rebellio, dēfectio, coniūrātiō, and the neg. purpose clause nē . . . arbitrārentur. This relation may be represented as follows:

\[
\text{iniūria} \quad \text{rebellio} \\
\text{multa} \quad \text{dēfectio} \\
\text{coniūrātiō} \quad \text{nē . . . arbitrārentur}
\]

89 21 neglectā: i.e. left unpunished.

89 22 sibi idem licēre: ‘that the same opportunity was open to them’ (lit. ‘the same thing was permitted to them’).

89 25 ōdisse: ‘hate’; perf. in form, but present in meaning (§46)—priorquam . . . cōnspirārent: see §197.b.

90 3 CHAP. 11. adeat . . . contineat . . . prohibeat: commands in indir. disc. (§205).

90 4 arcessiti (esse): depends upon dīcēbantur and agrees with its subj. in case; ‘were said to have been invited.’

90 10 distinendam cūret: cf. pontem faciendum cūrat, p. 20, l. 11 and note; cūret is subjv. in a rel. clause of purpose.

90 16 CHAP. 12. eius modi . . . ut . . . habērent: ‘of such a sort that they had’ etc. (§179).

90 17 lingulis: some of these narrow tongues of land are several miles long.

90 18 cum . . . incitāvisset: ‘when the tide had risen.’

90 20 minuente: ‘at the ebb’; intransitive.

90 21 utrāque rē: ‘in either case’ (lit. ‘by each circumstance’), i.e. by land or by sea.

90 23 his . . . adaequātis: ‘when these (i.e. aggere ac mōlibus) were brought level with the walls of the town.’ The towns, being at the ends of the tongues of land, were inaccessible by land during high tide. The Romans, by extending dikes along the sides of the promontories, shut off the water and were thus enabled to extend the agger in each case up to the walls of the town. (For the agger see Introd. III.13.b.) As soon as the Romans were in a position to take a town, the inhabitants escaped in ships to the next town.

91 1 cuius rei: i.e. nāvēs taken collectively.

91 3 Haec . . . faciēbant: ‘this they continued to do’; past descr. of repeated action (§154.c). There is the same force in dēportābant and recipiēbant above.

91 4 partem: accusative of duration of time (§96).
91 5 summa: with difficultās.—vāstō . . . marī etc.: abl. abs. In each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

91 8 Chap. 13. Namque: introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti; ‘(but the Veneti had less trouble) for.’—ipsōrum: ‘their own.’

91 9 aliquidō: abl. of measure of difference.—quam nostrārum nāvium: ‘than (those) of our ships.’

91 10 quō facilius . . . possent: purpose with a comparative word (§ 176).

91 13 quamvis: from quīvīs.

91 14 trānstra etc.: ‘the cross beams of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a (man’s) thumb.’

91 15 crassitūdine: abl. of description.—prō: ‘instead of.’

91 16 pellēs: the Romans used sails made of flax; the Veneti of skins, untanned (pellēs) or tanned (alilēs).

91 20 tanta onera nāvium: ‘ships of so great weight.’

91 22 nostrae classi: dative of possession (§ 88), but transl. ‘the encounter of our fleet with’ etc.

91 23 ānā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum: ‘only in swiftness and the power of the oars’; abl. of respect.—reliqua: ‘(but) everything else.’

91 25 nostrae: sc. nāvēs.—rōstrō: abl. of means; for a description of the rōstrum see Introd. III. 14. a.

91 27 cōpulis: ‘grappling hooks.’

91 28 Accēdēbat ut: ‘there was this additional advantage, that,’ followed by the subst. result clauses ut . . . ferrent . . . cōnsisterent . . . timērent.—sē ventō dedissent: ‘ran before the wind.’

92 1 cōnsisterent: ‘rode at anchor.’

92 2 nihil: see § 99.

92 3 nāvibus: see § 87.

92 6 Chap. 14. neque eīs nocēri posse: ‘nor could they be harmed’; only the imper. construction can be used with the pass. of verbs of this sort; see § 83. a, and note on p. 64, l. 13.

92 7 prīmum . . . visa est: ‘as soon as it was seen.’

92 10 neque satis Brūtō . . . cōnštābat quid agerent: ‘and it was not clear to Brutus . . . what they should do.’

92 14 turribus autem excitātīs: the word tamen following shows that this abl. abs. has adversative force (§ 192. note); ‘though towers had been erected (on the Roman ships), nevertheless’ etc.

93 1 ex barbarīs nāvibus: ‘of (lit. ‘from’) the barbarians’ ships.’

93 4 magnō ēsuī: ‘of great service’; dative of the end (§ 89); in fact, it turned threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint of possible defeat.—falcēs: in apposition with rēs.
NOTES

93 6 mūrālium falcium: 'wall hooks,' long poles with sickle-shaped hooks, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Introd. III. 13. b). The gen. limits fōrmae understood, dative after absimilī (§ 90); 'of a shape not unlike (the shape) of wall hooks.' Fōrmā is abl. of description.—Hīs . . . praerumpēbantur: 'whenever the ropes which fastened the yards to the masts had been seized and drawn tight by these, the ship was driven forward by the oars and (in consequence) the ropes were torn off.'

93 7 adductī erant . . . praerumpēbantur: note the distinction in tenses and see § 196.

93 9 Gallicīs nāvibus: dative of reference (§ 85).

93 13 in cōnspectū Caesāris atque omnis exercitūs: they had an audience that was calculated to inspire their best efforts. Cæsar does not forget the dramatic setting of his narrative.

93 14 paulō fortius: 'a little braver (than usual).'

93 17 CHAP. 15. cum . . . circumsteterant . . . contendēbant: the same use of tenses as in ll. 7-8, to express repeated action in past time.—bīnae ac ternaē: distributives; 'when two or three ships (of the Romans) had surrounded each ship (of the Veneti).'

93 24 Quae . . . rēs: i.e. the sudden calm.—ad negotium cōnficiendum: 'for finishing the business.'

93 27 ad terram pervēnerint: 'came to land.' For the exception to the rule of sequence see § 163 c.—cum . . . pugnārētur: 'although the battle had been going on.'

93 28 hōrā fērē quārtā: about 10 A.M.

94 2 CHAP. 16. cum . . . tum: 'not only . . . but also.'

94 4 nāvium quod: 'all the ships' (lit. 'what of ships'); part. gen.

94 5 neque quō sē reciprent . . . dēfenderent habēbant: 'had no place to which they could flee (for refuge) nor any way to defend their towns.' The subjunctive clauses are descriptive (§ 177). Cf. quō . . . tolerārent, p. 32, 1. 15.

94 8 eō gravius . . . quō: abls. of measure of difference. Transl. 'the more severely . . . that.'—vindicandum (esse): impers., but transl. 'punishment should be inflicted.'

94 10 sub corōnā vēndidit: 'sold at public auction' (lit. 'under the wreath'); captives in war, when being sold for slaves, wore wreaths. The custom arose from the crowning of animals intended for sacrifice. The selling of captives by their conquerors was common in antiquity, and Cæsar's act must not be judged by modern standards.

95 1 CHAP. 17. Q. Titūrius Sabinus . . . in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit: see p. 90, ll. 8-11.

95 7 nōlēbant: i.e. the senate. Plur., referring to senātū, a collective noun (§ 65. a).
95 9 perditórum: 'desperate.'
95 12 idoneō . . . locō: 'in a place suitable in all respects.'
95 13 cum . . . consédisset: concessive.
95 15 hostibus etc.: equivalent to in contemptiónem . . . hostium; dative of reference.
95 19 eō absentē: i.e. Caesar.
95 21 légátō: dative of agent with dimicandum (esse).
95 25 Chap. 18. quid fieri velit ēdocet: 'he tells him what he wants done.'
96 1 prō perfugā: 'in the character of a deserter.'
96 3 neque longius abesse quin proximā nocte: an expression amounting to 'and that not later than the following night.'
96 7 īri: impers., depending on oportère.
96 8 superiorōrum diērum: depends on Sabīnī cunctátīō taken together. In apposition with rés are cunctátīō, cōnfīrmátīō, inopia, spēs, and the clause quod . . . crēdunt.
96 12 nōn prius . . . quam: 'not . . . until.'
96 13 sit concessum: see § 197. b.
96 15 ut explōrātā victōriā: 'as if victory were already assured.'—quibus . . . compleant: a rel. clause of purpose.
96 18 Chap. 19. passūs mille: accusative of extent of space. Mille is here an indeclinable adjective.
96 19 quam minimum spatī: 'as little time as possible'; subj. of daretūr.
96 20 examinātique pervēnērunt: 'and they arrived all tired out.'
96 26 Quōs: a connecting rel. equivalent to eōs and obj. of consēctī (§ 143).
97 2 equitēs: nominative.—paucōs: 'only a few,' the regular meaning of this word.—qui . . . évāserant: 'who had escaped from the fleeing crowd.'
97 6 ut: correlative with sic.—ad bella suscipienda etc.: they were eager and ready for undertaking war, but lacked grit in enduring reverses.
97 9 Chap. 20. The third campaign of the year 56 b.c., that against the Aquitani, begins at this point. It seems to have been quite unnecessary, as well as difficult and dangerous.—P. Crassus: see p. 90, ll. 5-8.
97 12 Praeōnīnus . . . Mānius: these defeats were twenty-two years before (78 b.c.), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for ten years against Rome (82-72 b.c.).
97 17 Galliae provinciae: 'of the province of Gaul.'
97 18 his regiōnibus: dative after finitimae, which agrees with civitātēs.—nominātīm ēvocātīs: 'having been called to the colors' or 'having been drafted.'
98 1 Chap. 21. superiōribus victōriīs: see § 107. b.
98 3 quid . . . possent: indir. question, subj. of perspicī.—sine imperātōrē . . . adulēscēntulō duce: an imperātor is the commander in chief of an army; dux refers to any person holding a command.
NOTES

98 9 cuniculīs: ‘mines’ (lit. ‘rabbits’), so called from their likeness to rabbits’ burrows. These were intended to run under the Roman agger. The roof was propped up with wooden posts, and when these were set on fire and burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.
98 11 diligentiā: abl. of cause. The Romans doubtless destroyed the enemy’s mines by countermines.
98 14 faciunt: ‘they do (so).’
98 18 Chap. 22. commodis: with fruantur (§ 107. a). The clause is in apposition with condiciō.
98 19 quōrum . . . amicitiae: ‘to whose friendship.’
98 22 quī . . . recūsāret: a rel. clause of description.
98 23 cum his: repeated from cum . . . dēvōtīs on account of the long parenthesis; ‘with these (I say).’
99 3 Chap. 23. paucīs diēbus . . . erat: ‘within only a few days after he had arrived there’ (lit. ‘within which it had been come there’).
99 5 quōqueversus: ‘in every direction.’
99 7 citeriōris Hispānii: pred. gen. This was northern Spain.—finitimae Aquitānii: ‘bordering on Aquitania’; fīnitimae is a pred. adjective after quae sunt.
99 11 Q. Sertōriō: see note on p. 97, l. 12.
99 12 cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmānī: because of their service under Sertorius they were familiar with Roman methods of warfare.
99 15 Quod: explained by the four appositive clauses suās cōpiās . . . augērī.
99 19 nōn . . . dēcertāret: ‘he thought a battle should not be delayed.’

What is the literal translation?
99 19 No. 24. duplicī: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three divisions (triplex aciēs).
99 24 in mediam aciem: i.e. where they would be kept steady by the legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings.—quid . . . cōnsili: ‘what plan’ (lit. ‘what of plan’); part. gen.
100 1 victōriā: abl. with potiū (§ 107. a).
100 2 sēsē recipere: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.
100 3 infirmiōrēs animō: ‘dispirited’; for the case of animō see § 115.
100 5 prōductis cōpiās: concessive; ‘although’ etc. (§ 117. d).
100 6 opiniōne timōris: ‘the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.’
100 8 exspectāri . . . quin . . . īrētur: freely, ‘that they should go to the camp without further delay.’
100 10 ad hostium castra: this is the only instance in the “Commentaries” of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a carefully chosen level stretch between the hostile camps.

100 13 CHAP. 25. quibus: abl. with cōndebat (§ 107. b).—lapidibus . . . comportandis: ‘by supplying (the regular soldiers) with stones and javelins and fetching turf for (building) an agger.’ The gerundives express means.

100 15 opinioinem pugnantium: i.e. they gave the impression of being actually engaged in fighting (§ 221).

100 17 ex locō etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

100 19 ab decumānā portā: i.e. ‘in the rear,’ where this gate was situated; see Introd. III. 10 and the illustration on p. xxxv. The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps. Cf. note on p. 99, l. 12.

100 26 CHAP. 26. omnium oculis . . . intentīs: ‘while the eyes and minds of all were bent on the battle.’

100 28 prius . . . cōnstitērunt . . . quam . . . posset: equivalent to cōn-

101 2 quod plērumque . . . consuēvit: '(a thing) which usually happens.' The antecedent of quod is the idea contained in redintegrātīs vīribus. For the tense cf. note on p. 87, l. 21.

101 4 per: ‘over.’

101 6 quae: accusative plur., subj. of convēnisse. It takes its gender from the antecedent mīlium.

101 13 CHAP. 27. tempore: cf. quibus, p. 100, l. 13, and see § 107. b.


101 18 arbitrātus: ‘thinking’; the past participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a present. Cf. veritus, p. 64, l. 24.

101 19 aliā . . . ac: ‘other . . . than’ or ‘different . . . from.’

101 22 continentēs: ‘continuous’: i.e. far-stretching.

101 23 eō: ‘thither’; i.e. to the silvās and palūdēs.

102 6 CHAP. 29. deinceps: i.e. in the days next following.

102 9 conversam: ‘fronting’; i.e. with the boughs turned toward the enemy. — prō vāllō: ‘as a palisade.’

102 11 cōnfectō: ‘cleared’ (of timber); lit. ‘finished.’

102 12 tenērentur: ‘were being seized.’

102 13 eius modi . . . utī . . . intermitterētur: ‘such that the work was necessarily interrupted.’

102 14 sub pellibus: the tents were of leather.
In Book IV the scene shifts to the German frontier. In the winter of 56-55 B.C. two of the lesser German tribes, the Tencteri and Usipetes, crowded by the powerful Suebi, crossed the Rhine into Gaul. At the earliest moment Cæsar concentrated his forces in this quarter for the defense of Gaul, drove the Germans back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territory, and thus assured the supremacy of the Roman arms.

103 1 CHAP. 1. Pompēiō . . . Crassō: i.e. the year 55 B.C. The year was defined by naming the consuls in office (§ 228). The Triumvirate had decided that Cæsar should hold the government of Gaul while the other two members kept control of affairs at Rome.

103 4 quō: adv., equivalent to in quod.

103 11 Hi . . . illī: 'the latter . . . the former' (§ 134. a).—annō post: 'the following year.' For the case of annō see § 114.

103 12 ratiō: 'theory' (theoretical knowledge); ūsus, 'practice' (knowledge derived from experience).

103 13 privāti: there was no private ownership, but all lands were held as common property. Further, no community remained in one place longer than a year, probably that they might not become too much attached to one place.

103 15 frūmentō: abl. of means.—maximam partem: see § 99. Transl. 'for the most part.'

103 17 quae rēs: i.e. the mode of living just described. Rēs is subj. of alit and efficit.

103 18 nūllō officiō . . . adsuēfactī: 'accustomed to no service' (lit. 'trained by no service'; see § 106). The clause quod . . . faciunt is parenthetical.

104 2 locis frigidissimīs: 'even in their extreme climate' (§ 117. d).—neque: correlative with et, l. 4.

104 3 vestitus: part. gen. with quicquam.

104 6 CHAP. 2. eō ut . . . habeant: 'on this account, that they may have (persons) to whom' etc.

104 8 quam quō . . . dēsiderent: 'than because they want' etc. A reason given as supposable but not real is expressed by the subjv. (§ 188. b).

104 15 impēnsō . . . pretiō: 'at high cost.'

104 17 importātīs nōn ūtuntur: 'do not import for use.'

104 22 labōris: pred. gen. of description (§ 77. a).

104 27 mōribus: abl. of accordance.

104 29 quamvis paucī: 'however few.'

105 1 Vinum omnīnō . . . importārī nōn patiuntur: 'wine they do not allow to be brought into their country at all.'
105 4 Chap. 3. Pūblīcē: 'as a community.'
105 7 ūnā . . . Suēbis: 'extending from (the territory of) the Suebi in one direction.'
105 9 ut est captus Germānōrum: 'according to the standard of the Germans.'
105 10 paulō . . . hūmāniōrēs: 'somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race' (i.e. Germans).
105 13 cum: concessive, as shown by the following tamen (§ 192. note).
105 15 vectīgālēs sībi fēcērunt: 'have rendered them tributary to themselves.'
105 23 Chap. 4. trāns flūmen: i.e. on the east side; cīs Rhēnum (l. 24), the west side.
106 1 Illī: i.e. the Germānī.
106 4 viam: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).
106 5 cōnfectō: with itinere.
106 11 partem: accusative of duration of time.
106 14 Chap. 5. veritus: transl. as if present, 'fearing.' Cf. p. 64, l. 24.
106 15 nihil . . . committendum (esse): 'no confidence should be placed in them.'
106 16 Est . . . cōnsuētūdinis: 'for it is a Gallic custom' (lit. 'for there is this (point) of Gallic custom'); the following subjv. clauses are in apposition with hoc.
106 17 etiam invītōs: 'even though they are unwilling.'
106 21 rēbus atque auditiōnibus: 'facts and rumors.'
106 22 quōrum eōs . . . paenitēre: see § 81. b.—in vēstigiō: 'on the spot.'
106 23 plērique: i.e. the viātōrēs and mercātōrēs.—ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant: 'give answers fashioned according to the wish of their questioners' (eōrum).
106 25 Chap. 6. graviōrī bellō: 'too serious a war' (§ 122).
106 26 cōnsuērat: contracted from cōnsuēverat.—ad exercitum: in winter quarters among the Aulerci and Lexovii; see p. 102, l. 17.
106 27 ea . . . facta (esse): ea is explained by the inf. clauses missās (esse) lēgātiōnēs and invitātiōsque (esse) eōs.
107 2 omnia . . . fore parāta: used for the fut. pass. inf. depending on some word of promising implied in invitātiōs; '(with the promise that) all things would be made ready.'
107 8 equitātū imperātō: 'cavalry being levied'; observe the meaning of imperō here.
107 10 Chap. 7. equitibus dēlēctīs: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.
NOTES

107 16 quicumque: the antecedent is eis understood as indir. obj. of resister.

107 17 Haec tamen dicere: 'that this, however, they did say'; supply se as the subj. of dicere and the following infs.

107 19 eis: i.e. to the Romans.—attribuunt: subjv. for the impv. of dir. disc. (§ 205).

107 20 eos: i.e. agrōs

107 21 concèdere: 'yield,' as inferior.

107 22 reliquum etc.: 'there was no one else on earth' etc. Observe the emphatic position of reliquum; cf. p. 21, l. 19; p. 36, l. 4; and notes.

107 23 possint: subjv. in a clause of description (§ 177).

107 24 CHAP. 8. quae visum est: 'what it seemed proper (to answer).'

Cæsar gives us only the last part of his speech, but we may imagine that it was after the fashion of his words to Ariovistus (Book I, chap. 43).

107 26 qui . . . potuerint: the verb in this clause of description would be subjv. in the dir. disc. also; likewise qui . . . possint, l. 28.

108 2 quorum sint etc.: 'whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him and complaining.'

108 6 CHAP. 9. post diem tertium: i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually included in the Roman reckoning (§ 227.g).

108 7 propius sē: 'nearer them,' sē being an indir. reflex. For the case see note on p. 56, l. 11.

108 10 trāns: i.e. westward.

108 13 CHAP. 10. Vosegō: 'the Vosges.' Cæsar is wrong here; the Meuse really rises a considerable distance west of the Vosges Mountains.

108 14 parte . . . receptā: the Rhine branches in these regions; one branch, the Vacalus, unites with the Meuse about eighty miles from its mouth. See the map.

108 20 multis . . . effectīs: transl. actively, 'making many' etc.

108 26 CHAP. 11. ut erat cōnstitūtum: 'as had been arranged.'

109 2 præmitteret: used without an obj.; transl. 'send word.'

109 3 sibique ut potestātem faceret: 'give them an opportunity.'

109 4 quorum sī . . . fēcisset: 'and if their leading men and senate should give them an oath-bound pledge'; fēcisset represents a fut. perf. ind. in the dir. disc. (§§ 208, 209. note). The verb is singular because it agrees with the nearest subject (§ 67) or because the two subjects form a single idea (§ 68).

109 5 condiciōne: abl. with āsurōs (esse); see § 107. a.

109 7 daret: subjv. in an indir. command or request (§ 205).

109 8 ēōdem illō pertinēre: 'tended the same way'; ēōdem and illō are advs.—ut . . . reverterentur: a purpose clause explaining ēōdem illō.

109 14 qui nūntiārent: a rel. clause of purpose. The antecedent of qui
is the omitted obj. of mittit.—né ... lacesserent ... sustinērent: commands in indir. disc. (§§ 205, 206).
109 16 accessisset: see § 198. III. b.
109 18 CHAP. 12. amplius: as usual, this word has no effect on the construction (§ 105. note 2).
109 22 indūtīs: dative of purpose.
109 23 resistentibus: sc. nostrīs, hīs being the indir. obj.
109 24 subfossis etc.: 'after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men.'
109 26 ut ... vēnissent: note that désisterent is subjv. of result with ut, and that vēnissent depends on it (§ 214); otherwise the clause with prius ... quam would be in the ind. (§ 197. a).
110 3 genere: see § 102.
110 6 quoad: see § 198. II; compare this use of quoad with that on p. 109, l. 15.
110 11 CHAP. 13. ab eis qui ... intulissent: 'from men who' etc.; a clause of description.
110 13 dūm ... augērentur: see § 198. III. b.
110 14 dēmentiae: descriptive gen. in the pred. after esse (§ 77. a); the subj. is exspectāre. Transl. 'he thought it was the height of madness to wait.'
110 15 quantum ... auctōritātis: 'how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle'; for auctōritātis see § 76. a.
110 17 quibus: i.e. the enemy; a connecting rel., indir. obj. of dandum (esse).
110 19 nē quem ... praetermitteret: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with cōnsiliō. Quem is an indef. pronominal adjective, 'any.'
110 20 quod ... vēnērunt: explanatory of rēs.
110 23 simul ... simul: 'partly ... partly.'—pūrgandī sui causā: 'for the purpose of excusing themselves' (§§ 224. c, 225. b).—quod ... commississent: see § 188. b.
110 25 ut ... impetrārent: 'that they might obtain through treachery whatever they could in the way of truce.'
110 26 Quōs ... oblātōs (esse) gāvisus: 'delighted that they were put in his power'; gāvisus is from gaudeō.
111 6 et ... et: correlative; celeritāte and discussī explain omnibus rēbus.
111 7 perturbantur, cōpiāsne ... an ... an ... praestāret: 'they were confused as to whether it was better' etc. (§§ 201, 170. b. 1).
111 9 Quōrum timor cum: equivalent to cum timor eōrum (§ 143).
111 11 qui: the antecedent is the subj. understood of restitērunt.
111 16 ad quōs cōnsectandōs: 'to hunt them down.' This action of Cæsar's seems cruel. When thanksgivings were proposed in the senate for
NOTES

Caesar’s victory, Cato, Caesar’s inveterate enemy, moved that he should be surrendered to the barbarians for this butchery. Such justification as can be found for the act rests on Caesar’s conviction that to secure the Roman power the Germans on the west side of the Rhine must be destroyed and that river kept as the boundary of the Roman possessions.

111 17 Chap. 15. Germānī etc.: i.e. the Germans who were fighting heard the cries of those who were being massacred.

111 23 ad ānum: ‘to a man.’
111 27 veritē: see p. 106, l. 14 and note.
111 28 libertātem: ‘(this) privilege.’
112 3 Chap. 16. iūstissima: ‘the most important.’
112 7 Accessit . . . quod . . . recēperat . . . coniūnxe rat: the quod clause is the subj. of accessit. Transl. ‘a further reason was’ etc. (lit. ‘it was added that’). A subj. clause with ut often follows accēdō.
112 8 quam . . . trānsīsse: see p. 108, ll. 8 ff.
112 13 dēderent: a subst. clause without ut after postulārent.
112 15 suī . . . imperi: pred. gen. after esse; ‘under his power’ (§ 73. a).
112 17 Ubii autem: ‘moreover the Ubii’ etc. This introduces the third of Cæsar’s reasons (multīs dē causīs, l. 1) for crossing the Rhine. The first is introduced by illa fuit iūstissima (l. 2), the second by Accessit etiam quod (l. 7).
112 20 premerentur: see § 188. b.
112 21 id sibi . . . satis futūrum (esse): ‘(saying that) that would be enough for them.’

113 3 Chap. 17. neque suae neque populi Rōmānī dignitātis etc.: ‘and he decided that it was in keeping neither with his own dignity nor with that of the Roman people’; for dignitātis see § 77. a.

114 3 Ratīōnem: ‘plan.’ A good idea of the structure of this bridge can be gained by a careful comparison of the text with the diagram on p. 113. Any pupil handy with tools will find it interesting and helpful to make a wooden model of a section of this bridge. The site of the bridge was probably near Bonn, where there is to-day a magnificent structure, bearing a Latin inscription stating that Cæsar built a bridge there in the year 55 B.C.—bīna: ‘in pairs.’

114 4 dimēnsa ad altitūdinem: ‘measured (and cut) according to the depth of the river.’
114 5 pedum duōrum: i.e. between the timbers of each pair.
114 7 nōn sublicaē modō dērectē ad perpendiculum: ‘not perpendicularly, like a pile’ (lit. ‘in the fashion of a pile’).
114 8 ut . . . prōcumbent: ‘so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.’
114 10 ab inferiōre parte: 'downstream.' — contrā . . . conversa: 'slanting against'; conversa agrees with duo (tigna).
114 11 Haec utraque . . . distinēbantur: 'these two sets were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal (in thickness) to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum . . . distābat), with a pair of clamps at each end.'
114 12 bipedālibus trabibus: compare with pedum duōrum, l. 5. The timbers were just wide enough to fit in between the piles forming each pair.
114 14 quibus (tignis) . . . revinctis: 'after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions,' i.e. by the horizontal beams.
114 15 rērum: 'structure.'
114 16 quō maior . . . hōc artius: 'the greater . . . the more closely'; abls. of measure of difference. A model constructed according to this description will readily illustrate how the whole structure is the more tightly locked together the greater the pressure exerted against the sloping tigna from above or below.
114 17 Haec . . . contextēbantur: 'these (the framework of timber) were covered with beams placed lengthwise.'
114 19 sublicae . . . agēbantur: 'piles were driven also on the lower side in a slanting direction' (so as to stay the bridge against the current).
114 20 prō ariete subiectae: 'serving as a buttress.'
114 21 aliae item: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. These were probably independent of the bridge.
114 24 neu . . . nocērent: 'and that they (truncī etc.) might not harm the bridge.'
115 4 hortantibus eis quōs: 'at the instigation of those whom.'
115 10 Chap. 19. premerentur: implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b).
115 13 utī . . . dēmigrārent . . . dēpōnerent . . . convenirent: obj. clauses of purpose following the verbal phrase nūntiōs . . . dūmisissē, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice.
115 15 hunc etc.: 'this had been selected about the middle.'
115 19 ut . . . iniceret . . . ulcīscerētur . . . liberāret: substantive clauses of purpose in apposition with rēbus (§ 183, third example).
115 22 satis . . . prōfectum (esse): 'enough had been done.'
116 1 Chap. 20. Caesar's brief expedition to Britain described in the following chapters marks the beginning of the national history of England. Caesar was the first Roman who entered Britain, and the first author who wrote about it from personal knowledge.
116 2 ad septentriōnēs: 'toward the north'; cf. p. 12, l. 4 and l. 9.
116 4 bellīs: abl. of time (§ 119). — inde: i.e. from Britain.
116 6 sī . . . cognōvisset: a fut. condition in indir. disc. changed from the fut. perf. ind. (§§ 208, 209, note, 210). The clauses are subs. of fore.
116 9 illī: adv.
116 12 quanta . . . poterat: the indir. questions are obs. of reperire.
116 15 qui: with portūs, 'what harbors.'
116 18 Chap. 21. nāvī longā: see the illustrations, pp. 92, 117.
116 23 quam . . . classem: lit. 'what fleet he had built'; transl. as if the order were classem quam fecerat. For the attraction of the antecedent into the rel. clause see § 140.
116 27 qui polliceantur: a rel. clause of purpose, but transl. by the pres. participle.
117 6 magnī: gen. of indef. value (§ 78).
117 7 adeat: a subst. clause without īt, obj. of imperat.
117 9 quantum: sc. tantum: so far as opportunity could be given to him etc.
117 10 qui . . . audēret: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).
117 14 Chap. 22. superiōris temporis: 'of the season before'; see Book III, chap. 28.
118 1 cōnṣuētūdīnis: see § 80.
118 2 fēcissent: the reason is given on the authority of the lēgātī, hence the verb is in the subjv.
118 6 hās . . . antepōnendās: 'that occupation about these trifling matters should take precedence of (the invasion of) Britain.'
118 8 imperat: 'demands,' with accusative of dir. and dative of indir. obj.
118 9 Nāvibus . . . onerāriīs: see Introd. III. 14. b, and the ill., p. 117.— quot: sc. tot as the antecedent; '(as many) as he thought' etc.
118 10 quod: the antecedent is īd understood, the obj. of distribuit; 'what galleys he had besides' (lit. 'what of galleys,' part. gen.).
118 13 ā: adv. 'away,' 'off.' — tenēbantur quō minus: 'were detained from'; the usual construction after verbs of hindering (§ 185).
118 16 in Menapiōs . . . in eōs pāgos: with dūcendum, which agrees with exercitum, obj of dedit. The gerundive here expresses purpose (§ 224. d).
118 20 Chap. 23. nactus: from nancīscor.
118 21 tempestātem: 'weather.' — tertā vigiliā: probably soon after midnight.— solvit: 'cast off' the ropes; i.e. weighed anchor. — ulteriorīrem portum: the port eight miles away (l. 13). See the map.
118 23 hōrā . . . quārtā: about 10 A.M. The distance across is about thirty miles. He sailed from a port at or near Boulogne, and his approach to Britain was near Dover. There he lay at anchor till half past three.
118 26 montibus angustē etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore. See the ill., p. 119.

119 2 dul... convenirent: when is dul, 'until,' followed by the ind.? See § 198. III. a.

119 5 Volusēnō: cf. p. 116, l. 18, and p. 117, l. 8.—monuitque... administrārentur: 'and enjoined upon them that everything should be done promptly (lit. 'at the nod and at the time') as military science and particularly control of ships demand, since the latter have a swift and unsteady motion' (lit. 'as things which have' etc.). The obj. of monuit is the subst. clause (ut)... administrārentur.

119 6 postulārent: see § 214.

119 7 habērent: see § 190.

119 9 His dimissis etc.: the first et connects dimissīs and nactus, the second ventum and aestum. Why are dimissīs and nactus not in the same construction? See note on p. 61, l. 15.

119 11 prōgressus: toward the north.

120 2 Chap. 24. essedāriīs: the essedum was a two-wheeled war chariot. —quō...genere: 'a kind (of fighting) which'; refers to the fighting both on horseback and with the chariots. Genere is attracted into the rel. clause.

120 3 ēgregī: the inf. is common after prohibēō instead of the subjv. with nē, quīn, or quō minus (§ 185. a).

120 5 cōstitūī: 'to ride,' 'to be anchored.'

120 6 militūs: dative of agent with the impers. pass. periphrastics désiliendum...cōnstitendum...pugnandum erat; pressīs modifies mili-tūs, 'weighted as they were.'

120 9 cum illī etc.: 'while they' (the Britons) etc.; a cum clause of description.

121 1 generis: see § 80.

121 2 pedestrībus: 'on land,' where the main strength lay in infantry.

121 4 Chap. 25. nāvēs longās: subj. of removērī, incitārī, and cōstitūī; the whole clause is the obj. of iussit (§ 183. note).

121 5 barbarīs inūsitātor: 'more unfamiliar to the barbarians,' i.e. than ordinary ships.

121 8 latus apertum: i.e. the right, unprotected by shields; cf. p. 74, l. 4.

121 9 inde: i.e. from the ships.

121 10 tormentīs: see Introd. III. 4.

121 19 qui: the antecedent is the subj. understood of inquit. For other conspicuous actions of the tenth legion cf. p. 45, l. 2; p. 76, l. 15.—aquilam: see Introd. III. 7.

121 20 obtestātus etc.: 'appealing to the gods that the action might result favorably to the legion.'
289

121 23 ego certē: 'I, at any rate.' The nominative of personal pronouns is not used except for emphasis. See colored plate, facing p. 120.

121 26 inter sē: 'one another.'—né . . . admitterētur: a subst. clause, obj. of cohortātī.

121 29 adpropinquāvērunt: the subj. is militēs implied.

122 1 Chap. 26. tamen: 'nevertheless,' i.e., in spite of the fact that they fought fiercely.

122 3 alius aliā ex nāví: see § 144, d. i. Transl. 'men from different ships rallied about whatever standards they happened on.'

122 4 signis: dative, depending on occurrerat (§ 84).

122 5 ubi . . . cōnsperērant: 'whenever they saw'; cf. similar clauses introduced by cum meaning 'whenever,' p. 93, ll. 6 and 17 (§ 196).

122 6 singulārēs: 'scattered soldiers.'

122 8 latere apertō: see p. 121, l. 8.

122 10 speculatōria nāvīgia: swift, light boats for reconnoissance.—quōs: the antecedent is hīs, 'whomsoever he saw hard pressed, to these' etc.

122 11 simul (atque): 'as soon as' (§ 193).

122 13 longius: 'very far.'

122 14 equitēs: concerning these see chap. 23, first sentence.

122 15 fortūnam: Cæsar's belief in fortūna was real. Cf. p. 44, ll. 18–23.

122 20 Chap. 27. Commius: cf. p. 117, l. 3.

122 22 ōrātōris modō: 'in the character of an envoy.'

122 24 remisērunt: sc. cum, i.e. Commium.

122 26 ignōscerētur: impers. (§ 83, a).

122 27 cum . . . petīssent: concessive.

123 6 Chap. 28. post diēm quārtum: 'three days after,' according to our reckoning (§ 227, g).—quam: after the comparative idea implied in post.

123 11 aliae . . . aliae: 'some . . . others.'

123 13 propius: adv. with the force of a preposition. Cf. p. 50, l. 2, and p. 56, l. 11.

123 14 tamen: i.e. though Britain was so near.—ancoris iactis: concessive; 'since, though the anchors had been cast, began to fill.'

123 15 adversā nocte: 'in the face of the darkness.'—in altum prōvec-tae: 'putting out to sea' (lit. 'into the deep').

123 17 Chap. 29. ut esset: a result clause, subj. of accidit (§ 187, II).—qui diēs: why does diēs stand in the rel. clause?

123 18 aestūs maximōs: 'very high tides'; the ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were strange to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

123 20 nāvēs: obj. of complōbat.

123 25 id quod: id is in apposition with the clause magnā . . . facta est.
123 27 quibus ... possent: a result clause; quibus = ut eis.
124 1 quod ... cōnstābat: see § 188. a; ‘because it was clear to all.’ The subj. of oportère is hiemāri, and the whole clause is subj. of cōnstābat.
124 7 CHAP. 30. paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscent: ‘inferred the fewness of soldiers from the small size of the camp.’
124 8 hōc: ‘on this account’; correlative with quod.
124 10 factū: see § 226. b.—duxērant: ‘they considered.’ What does dūcō usually mean?
124 11 prohibēre ... prōdūcere: subs. of esse.—his ... interclūsis: ‘if these should be overcome or cut off from return’; abl. abs. expressing condition.
124 15 dēdūcere: i.e. from their farms; cf. p. 123, ll. 3-4.
124 16 CHAP. 31. At: regularly introduces a new scene or a new speaker.
124 17 ex ēventū nāvium: ‘from what had befallen the ships.’—quod ... intermiserant: the clause explains eo.
124 18 fore ... suspicābātur: ‘began to suspect that what actually happened would happen.’ For this use of the past descr. tense see § 154. c.
124 20 quae ... nāvēs, ēarum: transl. as if ēarum nāvium quae.
124 21 aēre: the Romans used the word aēs for both copper and bronze. These metals were more commonly used than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust.
124 22 quae: the antecedent of quae is ea, the subj. understood of comportāri.
124 24 reliquīs ... effēcit: ‘he managed so that they could sail tolerably well with the rest’ (lit. ‘it could be sailed’).
125 1 CHAP. 32. Dum ... geruntur: see § 198. I.—frumentātum: supine (§ 226. a).
125 5 statiōne: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.
125 6 quam cōnsuētūdō ferret: ‘than usual.’
125 8 aliquid ... initum (esse): inf. clause in opposition with id.
125 9 cōnsili: part. gen.
125 11 armāri: ‘to arm themselves.’
125 15 ūna: ‘only one.’—suspicāti: as present; ‘supposing.’ Cf. arbitratūs, p. 101, l. 18 and note.
125 17 dispersōs ... occupātōs: agreeing with nostrōs understood, the obj. of adortī.
125 20 CHAP. 33. ex essedīs: these chariots held several men each besides the driver.
125 21 equōrum: obj. gen.; ‘the very terror that the horses cause.’
125 26 expeditum ... receptum: ‘a ready retreat.’
incitātōs equōs sustinēre: 'to check their horses in full gallop.'

iugō: 'the yoke,' resting on the necks of the horses and supporting the end of the pole or tongue (tēmō).

Quibus rēbus: 'by means of these tactics.' — perturbātis nostrīs: dative of indir. obj. after tulīt.

qui: i.e. the Britons; the antecedent is the subj. understood of discessērunt.

126 16 continērent . . . prohibērent: subjvs. of description.

126 19 suī līberandi: 'of setting themselves free' (§ 224. c).

23 Chap. 35. idem . . . fore: 'that the same thing would happen'; explained by the result clause ut . . . effugērunt.


1 tantō spatiō . . . quantum: 'over as much ground as'; spatiō is abl. (§ 106. a).

10 Chap. 36. propinquā diē aequinocti: 'since the time of the equinox (in September, usually a stormy season) was near.'

11 īnfirmis . . . subiciendam: 'that unseaworthy ships should be exposed to storms' (lit. 'that with unseaworthy ships the voyage should be exposed to storms'). Nāvibus is the abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).

19 quōs reliquae: obj. and subj. respectively of capere potuērunt understood.

Chap. 37. Quibus ex nāvibus: the onerāriae duae mentioned in l. 18.

22 in castra: i.e. of which Sulpicius Rufus had command (p. 118, ll. 17 ff.).

24 prīmō: adv.

25 si . . . nōllent: attracted into the subjv. from the present ind. (§ 214).

1 orbe factō: 'forming a circle.' The arrangement was somewhat like that of the modern hollow square.

3 Chap. 38. siccitātēs: the plur. is used because many swamps are referred to.


13 supplicātiō: cf. p. 82, ll. 9 ff., where the supplicātiō of fifteen days was said to exceed in time any ever granted before.
BOOK V

131 2 Chap. 40. pertulissent: for the fut. perf. (§ 199. II. a); it is subjv. to imply indir. disc. (§ 208. b).

131 12 praeūstae sudēs: heavy stakes of wood, sharpened at the end, and charred to harden the point. They were hurled by the tormenta.

131 14 contabulantur: 'are built up with a series of floors.'—attexuntur: 'are attached' (to the towers).

131 16 cum: see § 192.

131 16 ut: 'so that.'—ultrō ... vocibus: 'when the soldiers ran to him voluntarily and pleaded with him.'

131 17 sibi parcere: see § 83.

131 19 Chap. 41. sermonis aditum: 'right to claim an interview.'—causamque amīcitiae: 'ground for friendship.'

131 25 Errāre ... spērent: see §§ 199. I. a, 210.—eōs: Cicero and his men.—quicquam ... praesīdī: see § 76. a.—ab eīs ... qui ... diffidant: eīs refers to the Romans in the other camps.

131 26 hōc ... animō: see § 116.

131 27 ut ... recūsent: they are willing to be friends, but not subjects; they merely refuse to admit a standing military force.

131 28 cōnsuētūdinem: the custom of having winter quarters in Gaul.

132 1 incolumibus: agreeing with illīs.

132 5 sē adīūtōre ūtantur: 'they may use him as an advocate.'—His direct words were mē adīūtōre ūtimīnī (§ 205).

132 6 spērāre sē prō eīus iūstitiā: 'that he (Cicero) hopes that in accordance with his (Caesar's) sense of justice.'

132 7 Chap. 42. spē: of betraying Cicero.

132 10 nūllā ... cōpiā: 'having no supply' (lit. 'there being no supply').

132 11 quae essent: see § 177.

132 12 exhaūrīre: 'to dig out (with their hands) and carry away (in their cloaks).'—The one verb does the work of two. An example of what is called "zeugma," a yoking.

132 14 XV: probably an error; the distance seems incredible.

132 18 Chap. 43. ferventēs ... glandēs: 'red-hot, soft balls of clay.'

132 20 casās: the thatched huts of the encampment.

132 26 ut ... dēcēderet ... respiceret ... pugnārent: see § 179. —cum: see § 192.

133 5 hunc ... ut: 'had this result, that.'

133 6 ut: 'inasmuch as.'

133 7 primis: 'to those in front' (next to the wall).—ultimī: 'those in the rear.'
133 11 hostēs . . . coepērunt: 'they began to invite the enemy (to come in) if they wanted to come in.' — vellent: implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b); their direct words were sī vultis, introīte (§ 205).

133 15 Chap. 44. qui . . . prīmis ordinibus adpropinquārent: see § 177. a. The men would soon be centurions of the first rank.

133 18 dē locō: 'for rank,' 'for promotion.'

133 21 locum: 'opportunity.'

133 26 Mediocrī spatiō relictō: i.e. between him and the enemy.

133 30 Pullōni: see § 85. — āvertit . . . vāginam: 'this mishap turned the scabbard aside.'

134 1 cōnanti: eī cōnauī (§ 85).

134 7 in locum . . . concidit: 'plunging (lit. 'plunged') into a hollow, he fell.'


134 15 reciderat: 'he had been reduced.'

135 12 bīduō: 'for two days' (§ 119. note).

135 13 Ille perlēctam . . . recitat: 'Cicero, having perused it, reads it aloud.'

135 19 Chap. 49. Gallum . . . repetit: 'asks for the Gaul'; Vertico's slave, who carried Cicero's letter to Cæsar (chap. 45).

135 20 qui . . . dēferat: see § 175.

135 21 admonet . . . faciat: see § 183. In such cases the subjv. is often used without ut.

135 23 eum: Cæsar.

135 25 animō: see § 115.

136 1 aequō animō . . . existimābat: 'he thought that he might with composure slacken his speed.'

136 3 haec: referring to castra, and obj. of contrahit. — erant . . . hominum: see § 77. a.

136 5 angustiīs viārum: 'by narrowing the streets (of the camp)'; angustiīs is an abl. of means (§ 106).

136 6 hostibus: see § 85.

136 10 Chap. 52. neque . . . locum relinqui: 'that no opportunity was left.' — dētrimentō illōrum: 'to do them harm' (§§ 89, 75).

136 14 decimum quemque: 'one man in ten.'

136 17 meritō: in the face of overwhelming odds Cicero had acted with great ability and courage.

136 19 cāsū Sabini et Cottae: these lieutenants of Cæsar had been slain.

137 2 rem gestam (esse): the destruction of Sabinus and Cotta.


137 4 hōc . . . quod: 'for this reason, that'; hōc is abl. (§ 114).
137 5 beneficiō . . . virtūte eōrum: see § 106; eōrum refers to Cæsar’s soldiers. — expiātō incommoddō: see § 117.

BOOK VI

139 4 Chap. 9. Ambiorix: the treacherous chief of the Eburones, whom Cæsar had vowed to destroy.
139 6 Nōtā . . . ratīone: 'on the plan already tried and approved’; cf. Book IV, chap. 17.
140 1 pūrgandi sui causā: 'for the sake of clearing themselves.’
140 6 Cognitā: ‘having inquired into.’
140 9 Chap. 10. paucis post diēbus: see § 114.
140 18 quaeque: quae is the subj. of gerantur; -que connects mittant and cognoscant.
140 20 Suēbōs omnēs . . . cōnstituisse: indir. disc. after referunt.
140 24 prō nātīvō mūrō: 'as a natural wall.’
140 26 prohibēre: 'protects.’
141 1 Chap. 11. ad hunc locum: ‘to this point’ (of the narrative).
141 2 quō: adv., 'how.’
141 7 eōrum iūdīciō: ‘according to their (the Gauls’) judgment’ (§ 111).— exīstimantur: merely explanatory, and hence the ind. (§ 178).
141 8 quōrum: the antecedent is prīncipēs.
141 9 redeat: 'is referred’ (§ 177). — īnstītūtum: sc. esse.
141 10 nē quis . . . egēret: subst. clause in apposition with eius rei.
141 13 Haec . . . Galliae: ‘this same state of affairs exists in general throughout Gaul.’
141 16 Hi: 'the latter’ (§ 134. a).
141 19 iactūris: 'sacrifices.’
141 24 iūrāre: i.e. the Hāedui. — nihil . . . cōnsili: ‘no plan’ (§ 76).
142 3 infectā rē: ‘without having accomplished his purpose.’
142 5 novis: sc. clientēlis.
142 6 ei: subj. of vidēbant.
142 8 reliquis rebus: see § 115.
142 10 quōs . . . intellegēbātur: ‘because it was perceived that these (the Remi) were equal (to the Hāedui) in the favor of Cæsar.’
142 11 grātiā: see § 115.
142 13 dicābant: ‘gave up’; distinguish from dīcēbant.
142 21 cum: ‘whenever,’ ‘as often as’ (§ 196).
142 23 quibus . . . in servōs: ‘who possess over them all the same rights that masters have over slaves’; for quibus and dominōs see § 88.
142 24 his . . . generibus: i.e. the genera duo in l. 19.
143 1 intersunt: 'participate in,' 'occupy themselves with.'
143 3 hi: i.e. the druids.
143 4 eōs: i.e. the Gauls.
143 5 quod ... facinus: 'any crime.'
143 7 idem: 'they also.'
143 8 qui ... privātus ... populus: qui is the indef. adjective, 'any.'
eōrum ... stetit: 'has not abided by their decision.'
144 5 Chap. 14. ea: neuter plur. referring to numerum versuum. — cum ... ütantur: concessive (§ 192).
144 6 ratiōnibus: 'transactions.'
144 8 neque ... studere: 'nor do they wish that those who are learning should, through dependence on written words, give less attention to the memory.'
144 10 praesidiō litterārum: 'because of the reliance on written form.'
144 12 animās ... trānsire ad aliōs: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples, and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions.
144 14 metū mortis neglēctō: 'by disregarding the fear of death' (§ 117).
144 22 ut ... amplissimus, ita plūrimōs: 'the more powerful ... the greater number.'
145 5 Chap. 16. habent institūta: this differs from instituērunt in denoting that the custom, established in the past, still continues; cf. p. 49, l. 14.
145 6 simulācra: wooden figures resembling human beings.
145 12 dēscendunt: 'resort to' (lit. 'descend to').
145 14 Chap. 17. Mercurium: 'a Mercury.' Cæsar does not mean that these gods had actually the same names as those of the Romans; he discovers rather a similarity in their attributes and functions.
145 18 ferunt: 'they call.'
145 22 cēperint: subjv. of implied indir. disc., for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir.; dēvovent looks to the future.
145 25 neglēctā ... religiōne: 'in violation of his vow' (§ 117).
145 26 aut capta ... aut ... audēret: 'has dared either to conceal booty at his house or to carry it away when consecrated' (lit. 'laid down').
THE GALIC WAR — BOOK VI

146 3 Chap. 18. spatia . . . finiunt: as emblematical of the darkness of the underworld, the home of Dis, or Pluto. This use is common to many primitive peoples. The English word “fortnight” is a relic of it. The custom apparently arose from keeping time by the changes of the moon.

146 5 dies subsequatur: i.e. they count from the first night instead of from the first day.

146 7 cum adoléverunt: cf. p. 145, l. 21; p. 142, l. 21.

146 9 filium . . . dúcunt: ‘they consider it disgraceful’ etc.

146 11 Chap. 19. Viri . . . communícant: i.e. they set aside from their own resources a sum equal to the dower brought by the wife, and the total amount is maintained as a common fund.

146 14 fructúsque: ‘revenues,’ ‘profits.’ — vitā: see § 115.

146 19 si . . . vēnit: i.e. if there are suspicious circumstances.— in servílem modum: among the Romans slaves were tortured to extort confession of crime.

146 20 compertum est: i.e. that there has been foul play.

146 22 prō cultū: ‘considering the degree of civilization.’

146 23 cordī: ‘dear’; dative of cor, ‘heart.’

146 24 suprā hanc memoriam: ‘before our time.’

146 25 iūtīs: ‘regular.’

147 1 Chap. 20. Quae civítātēs: equivalent to eae civitātēs quae.

147 2 habent . . . sāntum: ‘have it established by law.’

147 4 nēve: ‘and that . . . not.’ — quō: indef.

147 7 quae vīsa sunt: ‘what seems best’ (to conceal).

147 13 Chap. 21. Deórum . . . Lūnām: Tacitus, on the contrary, speaks of their worship of Mercury, Mars, and Hercules also. But Cæsar’s knowledge of the religion of the Germans may have been incomplete, or some new deities may have been introduced in the century and a half between Cæsar and Tacitus. In other particulars there is a striking agreement in the accounts.

147 17 á parvīs: ‘from childhood.’

147 20 Chap. 22. fīnēs . . . propriōs: ‘private lands.’

147 22 in annōs singulōs: ‘each year.’

147 24 quantum . . . agri: see § 76.

147 23 aliō: adv.

147 24 nē . . . commūtēnt: this and the following clauses are in apposition with causās.

148 1 agri cultūrā: ‘for agriculture’; abl. of price (§ 108).

148 5 ut . . . contineant: ‘that they may keep the common people in a contented frame of mind.’

148 9 Chap. 23. proprium virtūtis: ‘significant of their valor’ (§ 73. a).

148 16 iūs dicunt: ‘administer justice.’

148 19 ea: refers to latrōcinia.
NOTES

148 21 quī . . . profiteantur: 'that those who are willing to follow are to give in their names.' Profiteantur represents an impv. (§ 205).

148 25 omniumque . . . derogātur: 'and thereafter confidence is withdrawn from them in everything.'

BOOK VII

150 3 Chap. 1. P. Clōdī: Publius Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party. He was a bitter enemy of Cicero (the orator), whom he had succeeded in driving into exile. Clodius was killed in a street brawl on the twentieth of January of this year, by Milo, a ruffian of the aristocratic party. For a while all orderly government was at an end, and the Gallic leaders hoped that a new uprising might be successful.

150 7 quod . . . vidēbātur: the antecedent of quod is retinērī . . . posse. It naturally seemed to the Gauls impossible for Cāser to quit Italy at this crisis.

150 9 qui . . . dolērent: 'being indignant' (§ 177); the characteristic subjv. often approaches a relation of cause. — ante: adv., modifying dolērent.

150 11 prīncipēs Galliae: subj. of queruntur.

150 12 locīs: see § 120. b.

150 13 Accōnis: the leader of the recent rebellion among the Senones; Cāser had him put to death.

150 15 qui . . . faciānt . . . vindicent: purpose (§ 175); sc. ēōs, the antecedent of quī.

150 16 suī capitis periculō: 'at the risk of their lives' (§ 108).

150 18 ut . . . interclūdātur: depends on ratiōnem esse habendam.

151 5 Chap. 2. prīncipēs . . . fāctūrōs: 'that they will be the first of all to make war.'

151 7 obsidibus: see § 106. — cavēre inter sē: 'take security from each other.' — nē rés efferātur: the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.

151 8 conlātīs . . . signīs: by placing their standards together they pledged themselves to support each other.

151 15 Chap. 3. negotiandī: their business was money lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were controlled by Roman citizens.

152 3 incendit: sc. ēōs.
THE GALIC WAR — BOOK VII

152 6 Prohibētur: 'an attempt is made to prevent him.'
153 1 quodque ante tempus: 'and before what time'; quod is interrogative
   (§ 201).
153 4 dubitantēs: 'those who hesitated.'
153 15 CHAP. 5. dē cōnsiliō: 'on the advice.'
153 17 Qui: meaning the cōpiās equitātīs peditātīisque.
153 20 quibus . . . cognōverint: 'who they knew had this plan' (§ 88).
153 22 ipsī: the Bituriges.— Id eāne dē causā quam . . . fēcerint:
   'whether they did this for the reason which.'
153 23 quod . . . cōnstat: 'because it is not at all clear to us.'
154 1 nōn . . . pōnendum: Cāser refuses as a historian to make a positive
   statement of what he does not know.
154 4 CHAP. 6. virtūte . . . Pompēi: 'by the energy of Pompey.' Pompey
   had been made dictator.
154 6 quā . . . posset: indir. question (§ 201) depending on the idea of
   doubt in difficūltae.
154 8 sē absente: Cāser knew well his own influence over his army.—
   dimicātūrās (esse): sc. eās, i.e. the legions.
154 9 sī ipse . . . vidēbat: the most submissive Gauls were not at such a
   time to be depended on, if they had the slightest chance to capture him.
154 10 eīs: indir. obj. of commītī, the subj. of which is salūtem.
154 16 cōnsiliis antevertendum (esse): see § 84; the subj. of antevertendum
   is ut . . . proficīscerētur.
154 18 Rutēnis prōvinciālibus: a part of the Ruteni had been incorporated
   in the Province.
154 24 CHAP. 8. quod . . . putābat: 'because he (Lucterius) thought.'—
   periculōsum: sc. esse.
154 25 proficisciētur: 'he (Cāser) sets out.'
155 1 dūrissimō tempore anni: Pompey was put in authority on February 25
   (by the old calendar, which was now about six weeks ahead of the true time);
   Cāser, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cévennes about the
   middle of January.
155 5 nē singulāri quidem . . . homīni: 'not even to a solitary wayfarer,'
   to say nothing of an army.
155 14 fortūnis cōnsulat: see § 85.
155 19 CHAP. 9. ūsū . . . praeceperat: 'he had suspected would come to
   pass.'— per causam: 'on the pretext'; his real motive was to join his
   main force.
155 21 Brūtum: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterwards one of Cāser's assas-
   sins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with
   the Veneti (p. 90, l. 12).
155 22 datūrum . . . absit: this was a mere pretense; his real design was to reach his army, but he fears to let his own men know his plans.

155 25 recentem: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.

155 28 ubi . . . hiemābant: his route would lie due north up the Saône, along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was not far from three hundred miles.—quid . . . cōnsilī: see § 76. a.

155 29 dē suā salūte: 'affecting his own safety'; opposed to any design on his forces.

156 1 reliquās legionēs: two legions were somewhere near the Treveri, and six at Agedincum, about one hundred and forty miles apart.

156 2 priusque . . . quam . . . posset: see § 197. b.

156 6 Hāedulīisque attribuerat: see p. 32, ll. 22–25.

156 8 Chap. 10. difficultātem: the dilemma in which Cāsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions, sī . . . continēret, nē . . . dēficeret, and sī . . . ēdīceret, nē . . . labōrāret.

156 10 stipendiāriīs: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.

156 11 quod . . . vidēret: 'since it (Gaul) would see that friends found no protection in him (Cāsar).'

156 13 ab rē frūmentāriā: 'in respect to his supply of corn.'

156 14 tantā . . . acceptā: 'by such reproach' (§ 117).

156 16 praemittit . . . quī . . . doceant: see § 175.

158 2 Chap. 63. circummittuntur: i.e. by the Hædui.


158 6 ratiōnēsque . . . commūnicet: not simply consult, but share the direction of affairs.

158 12 illī: i.e. the Remi (see Book II, chap. 5) and the Lingones.

158 17 requīrunt: 'recall with regret.'

158 18 summae speī: 'of high ambition.'

158 21 Chap. 64 Ipse: i.e. Vercingetorix.—ei reī: i.e. for bringing the hostages.

158 22 Hūc: at Bibracte, the capital of the Hædui.

158 23 peditātū . . . contentum: contentus takes the abl.

158 25 perfacile . . . factū: see § 226. b.

159 1 aequō . . . animō: 'without complaint.'—modo . . . corrumpant: 'only let them destroy'; for corrumpāmus ('let us destroy'), a hortatory subjv. (§ 172. a) in indir. disc.

159 2 quā . . . iactūrā . . . videant: 'since they see (§ 190) that by this loss.'

159 5 hūc: 'to these.'

159 7 Alterā ex parte: i.e. from the west.

159 11 superiōre bellō: the war eight years before, in which the Allobroges had been subdued (p. 15, ll. 3, 4).
159 14 Chap. 65. cohortium: not legionary troops, but auxiliaries levied in the Province.

159 15 L. Caesare: a cousin of Julius, consul iir 64 b.c.

159 16 ad omnēs . . . oppōnēbantur: 'were arrayed against the enemy in every quarter.'

159 19 mūrōsque: 'strongholds'; not simply the walls of the oppida.

159 22 interclūsis . . . poterat: from this we see how much Cæsar was hampered by the plan of campaign that Vercingétorix employed.

159 25 equitēsque: the German cavalry were far superior to the Gallic.

159 26 qui . . . consuerant: see p. 51, ll. 19–27.

159 27 minus idōneis equīs: these are described in Book IV, chap. 2.

160 2 Chap. 66. equitēsque qui . . . imperāti: see p. 158, ll. 22, 23.

160 4 per . . . finēs: bearing from near Agedincum (where he had been joined by Labienus, chap. 62) toward the east, and thus leaving the hostile Hœdui to the south. This movement, checked by the attack of Vercingétorix, explains how the crisis of the campaign came to be the siege and capture of Alesia (see the map facing p. 150).

160 9 Id: i.e. the flight of the Romans.

160 11 parum prōfici: 'that little advantage was gained.'— reversūrōs (esse): i.e. Rōmānōs.

160 13 adoriantur: for adorīāmur ('let us charge on them'; § 172. a), in indir. disc.—Si peditēs . . . nōn posse: the attack was to be made on the baggage train, which was guarded by cavalry. Vercingétorix knew Cæsar's weakness in this arm, and did not suspect the German reënforcement. If the infantry stopped to assist the cavalry (suīs), the march would be delayed.

160 14 magis futūrum: 'is more likely.'

160 16 dignitāte etc.: by the dishonor of retreat with loss of baggage.— spoliātum iri: fut. inf. pass.—Nam dē equītibus hostium: i.e. even the Gauls whom he was addressing could not suppose that the Roman cavalry would wish an engagement.

160 17 quin . . . audeat, nē ipsōs . . . dubitāre: 'even they themselves ought not to doubt that' etc.

160 18 Id quō . . . animō: 'that they (i.e. the Gauls) may do so (i.e. attack the Romans) with greater courage' (§ 176).

160 19 prō castrīs: 'in front of the camp,' by way of defiance, to support by a demonstration the attack of the cavalry.

160 21 confirmārī oportēre: 'that they ought to bind themselves.'

160 26 Chap. 67. ā primō agmine: 'at the front of the (Roman) line of march.'

162 5 aciemque convertī: by a change of front, turning the line of march into a line of battle.

162 14 proximis comitiīs: i.e. of the Hœdui, for chief magistrate.
NOTES

162 19 Chap. 68. Alesiam: "Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide tableland, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Vercingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible."—Froude’s "Cæsar."

162 23 quantum: 'as far as.'
164 2 Chap. 69. locō: in apposition with colle (§ 54. note).
164 6 parī altitūdinis fastīgiō: 'of equal height.'
164 7 quae pars... hunc omnem locum: 'all that part of the hill which.' Pars, the antecedent of quae, is put in the rel. clause (§ 140); hunc omnem locum takes the place of hanc omnem (partem); cf. p. 68, l. 23, where the antecedent noun appears in both clauses (Loci... quem locum).
164 10 mūnitionīs: Cæsar constructed a line of contravallation, that is, a series of works surrounding the town, to resist a sortie.
164 11 tenēbat: 'extended.'
164 13 statīōnēs: in the daytime a mere picket guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (excubītōribus) on their walls.
164 17 Chap. 70. intermissam collibus: 'lying between (lit. 'broken by') hills.'
164 20 castrīs: 'camps,' plur.; on the high ground south of the city.
164 23 angustīōribus: 'too narrow,' either from unskillful construction or more easily to prevent the entrance of the enemy.
164 24 ācrius: 'with all the more vigor.'
165 1 venīrī... existīmantēs: 'thinking that an immediate attack is to be made on them'; for venīrī see § 66.
165 4 portās: the gates of the town; these were closed to prevent those who manned the exterior defenses from rushing into the town in a panic.
165 11 Chap. 71. suae... sē: referring to Vercingetorix (§ 133).—neu: 'and not,' the regular way of continuing a neg. purpose. We say 'and not'; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of neu.
165 14 Ratiōne initā: 'having made a calculation.'
165 17 nostrum opus (erat) intermissum: i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.
165 21 cōpiās omnēs: not those holding the fortification east of the town (p. 164, ll. 7–10), but all the outlying pickets elsewhere.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Before beginning an analysis of the passages in indirect discourse study carefully §§ 202–213 in the Grammar.

NOTES ON THE PASSAGES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

In general, in analyzing constructions in indirect discourse, first be sure to get the meaning of the passage; next consider what the direct quotation would be; and then determine the reasons for the changes in mood and tense.

In the analysis of the following passages it will be well for the pupil to compare carefully the passages in indirect discourse with the corresponding passages of the direct as given in the first two books of this text.

BOOK I

199 1 Chap. 13. Si . . . voluisset: in the dir. disc. of this statement (p. 20, l. 17), the subj. of the main clause is Helvētiī and the preds. are ēbunt and erunt. These verbs become fut. inf. (§ 204), while Helvētiī becomes accusative, Helvētiōs (§ 92), with which the fut. participles in the inf. (ītūrōs, futūrōs) agree.

The first subord. verb, faciet, becomes subjv. (§ 208); and the tense is past (§ 209 and note), because the main verb on which the whole passage depends is the perf. ēgīt, a secondary tense (§§ 161, 162). On the same principle the other subord. verbs, cōnstitueris and vōlueris, are changed to the subjv. mood (§ 208) and the past perfect tense (§ 209 and note).

199 4 sin bellō . . . Helvētiōrum: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 20), the main verb is the impv. reminīscere, which becomes subjv. (§ 205), and takes the past by the rules of sequence.

199 6 Quod . . . dēspiceret: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 22), the main verb is nōlī, with the infs. trībuerē and dēspicerē. These expressions are changed to past subjvs., trībueret and dēspiceret, with nē (§§ 162, 206). The subord. verbs adortus es and trānsierant are changed regularly to the past perfect subjv.; possent, being already subjv. (§ 194. b), remains in the same form.
199 ๐ ἵππος ... σὲ: both these pronouns were nōs in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24); for their equivalence to each other see § 136. a. ἵππος is essentially emphatic, σὲ not especially so; hence ἵππος is appropriate to the emphatic contrast with suae; moreover, σὲ referring to the Helvetii could not without confusion have been used in the same sentence with suae referring to Cæsar.

— σὲ ... niterentur: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24), the main verb is didicimus, which is changed regularly to the inf. didicisse. The subord. verbs, contendimus and nītāmur, are already subjvs. (§ 179) and remain in the same mood, but are changed from the present to the past by the rule of sequence.

199 11 Quā rē ... prōderet: in the dir. disc. (p. 21, l. 2), the main verb is nōtī, which with committēre is changed to nē committeret (cf. note on l. 6). The subord. verb cōnstitimus becomes past perfect subjv. regularly; while capiat and prōdat, being already in the subjv. (§ 187. I), remain in the same mood, but are changed to the past by the rule of sequence.

199 18 Chap. 14. fuisse: this represents the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in past time, and stands for fuit in the dir. disc. If the dir. form had been fuisset, as we might have expected (§ 199. III. b), we should have had futūrūm fuisse in the indir. (§ 213. a). — déceptum: sc. esse.

199 19 commissum: sc. esse. This depends on intellegere, a verb of thinking, and is thus in indir. disc. within indir. disc.

199 24 posse: a main verb in a rhetorical question (§ 207. II. a).

200 4 doleant: we might have expected dolērent; see § 162 and § 163. a. The same principle applies to velint, which might have been vellent; it applies also to the remaining subord. verbs in the chapter.

200 14 Chap. 17. Note that most of the subord. verbs in this chapter would be in the subjv. in the dir. disc. All these, of course, simply remain in the subjv., subject to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

201 12 Chap. 18. Sī quid accidat: a less probable fut. condition (§ 199. II. b) in indir. disc. In indir. disc. the more probable and the less probable fut. condition have the same form and cannot be distinguished (§§ 210, 211).

201 23 Chap. 20. Quod sī ... accidisset: do not mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. form was acciderit, ‘if anything shall have happened’ (§ 199. II. a).

201 25 futūrūm (esse) utī ... āverterentur: see § 212.

202 6 Chap. 31. Nōn minus etc.: the verb of saying is easily understood (§ 203. a).

203 7 Futūrum esse ... utī ... pellerentur: see § 212.

203 32 Chap. 32. velut si córam adesset: be careful not to mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. disc. was velut sī ... adsit (§ 200 and note).

204 5 Chap. 34. ipsī: for mihi of the dir. disc. For this use of the intensive pronoun for the reflexive see note on p. 199, l. 9, and § 136. a.
204 6 ventūrum fuisse: the regular form for the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in indir. disc. (§ 213. a).

204 14 Chap. 35. Throughout this chapter Caeser is speaking to the ambassadors. The references to Ariovistus, therefore, are in the third person.

204 25 Si . . . fecisset: a more probable fut. condition representing the fut. perf. ind. in dir. disc.

205 9 Chap. 36. qui . . . faceret: note that this would be faciat in the dir. disc. (§ 190).

205 26 Chap. 40. iūdicaret: a deliberative question in the dir. disc. (§ 172. d and note); verērentur and dēspērārent following are in the same construction; for the change to indir. disc. see § 207. II. b.

206 12 Si . . . commovēret: a non-committal condition in indir. disc. (§§ 199. I. a, 210).

BOOK II

210 28 Chap. 14. inciderint: in dir. disc. this would be incidērunt in a past non-committal condition (§ 199. III. a).

211 3 Chap. 15. dēdidissent: this would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.; so also prōiēcissent (§ 190).
From the painting by Sir Edward Poynter

THE IDES OF MARCH

(See page 8)
ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

A. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

1. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION — Ā-stems, Gen. Sing. -ae
SECOND DECLENSION — O-stems, Gen. Sing. -ī
THIRD DECLENSION — Consonant stems and Ī-stems, Gen. Sing. -īs
FOURTH DECLENSION — U-stems, Gen. Sing. -ūs
FIFTH DECLENSION — Ė-stems, Gen. Sing. -ēī

a. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. The stem is formed from the base by adding to it the distinguishing vowel of the declension. Observe below the base and stem of domina.

2. FIRST DECLENSION. Ā-STEMS

domina, lady  Stem dominā-  Base domin-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singulār</th>
<th>Terminations</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domina</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominām</td>
<td>-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominā</td>
<td>-ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Dea and filia have the termination -ābus in the dative and ablative plural.
3. **SECOND DECLENSION. 0-STEMS**

**a. Masculines in -us**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>STEM</th>
<th>BASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>dominus</strong></td>
<td>domino-</td>
<td>domin-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. | dominus | -us   |
| Gen. | dominī  | -ī    |
| Dat. | dominō  | -ō    |
| Acc. | dominum | -um   |
| Abl. | dominō  | -ō    |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domini</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominŏrum</td>
<td>-ŏrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominōs</td>
<td>-ŏs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -e in the vocative singular, as domine.

2. Proper names in -ius, and filius, end in -i in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as Vergi'lii, filī.

**b. Neuters in -um**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>STEM</th>
<th>BASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pīlum</strong></td>
<td>pīlo-</td>
<td>pīl-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. | pīlum | -um   |
| Gen. | pīlī  | -ī    |
| Dat. | pīlō  | -ō    |
| Acc. | pīlum | -um   |
| Abl. | pīlō  | -ō    |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pīla</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pīlŏrum</td>
<td>-ŏrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pīlis</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pīla</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pīlis</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -i in the genitive singular, not in -ii, and the accent rests on the penult.

**c. Masculines in -er and -ir**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STEMS</th>
<th>BASES</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>puer</strong></td>
<td><strong>puer-</strong></td>
<td><strong>puero-</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ager</strong></td>
<td><strong>agr-</strong></td>
<td><strong>agro-</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vir</strong></td>
<td><strong>vir-</strong></td>
<td><strong>viro-</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. | puer | ager | vir   |
| Gen. | puerī | agrī | virī |
| Dat. | puerō | agrō | virō |
| Acc. | puerum | agrum | virum |
| Abl. | puerō | agrō | virō |

---

306 LATIN GRAMMAR
FORMS

4.

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
<td>virōrum</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>virōs</td>
<td>-ōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Terminations**

3. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only.

2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: a. masculines and feminines; b. neuters.

**Third Declension**

5.

**1. Consonant Stems**

- **Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular:** masculines and feminines only

- **Bases or Stems:** prīncip-

- **Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>prīnceps</td>
<td>miles¹</td>
<td>lapis¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>principis</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>lapidis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>principī</td>
<td>militī</td>
<td>lapidī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>principem</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>lapidem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>principe</td>
<td>milite</td>
<td>lapide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>principēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>principum</td>
<td>militum</td>
<td>lapidum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>principēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ In the nominative a final -t or -d of the stem is dropped before -s.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Consent, m., legio, f., ordo, m., pater, m.,</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cōnsul</td>
<td>legiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cōnsulis</td>
<td>legiōnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cōnsuli</td>
<td>legiōni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cōnsulem</td>
<td>legiōnem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cōnsule</td>
<td>legiōne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular

a. Masculines and Feminines

|   | Consent, m., legio, f., ordo, m., pater, m., |
|---|------------------------------------------|---|
| Nom. | cōnsul | legiō | ōrdō | pater |
| Gen. | cōnsulis | legiōnis | ōrdinis | patriis |
| Dat. | cōnsuli | legiōni | ōrdini | patri |
| Acc. | cōnsulem | legiōnem | ōrdinem | patrem |
| Abl. | cōnsule | legiōne | ōrdine | patre |

1 In the nominative a final -c or -g of the stem unites with -s and forms -x; and a final -t or -d is dropped.

2 Stems in -in and -ōn drop -n and end in -ō in the nominative.
### b. Neuters

| Flúmen, n., river | Tempus, n., time | Opus, n., work | Caput, n., head |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Nom.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Gen.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Dat.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Acc.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Abl.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flúmen</td>
<td>flúminis</td>
<td>flúmini</td>
<td>flúmen</td>
<td>flúmine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempus</td>
<td>temporis</td>
<td>temporī</td>
<td>tempus</td>
<td>tempore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opus</td>
<td>operis</td>
<td>operī</td>
<td>opus</td>
<td>opere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caput</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>capitī</td>
<td>caput</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Nom.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Gen.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Dat.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Acc.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Abl.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flúmina</td>
<td>flúminum</td>
<td>flúminibus</td>
<td>flúmina</td>
<td>flúminibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temporā</td>
<td>temporum</td>
<td>temporibus</td>
<td>opera</td>
<td>operibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opera</td>
<td>operum</td>
<td>operibus</td>
<td>capita</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capita</td>
<td>capitum</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Terminations**

- -is
- -i
- -e

**Note.** Most stems in -er and -or have -us in the nominative singular.

### II. I-Stems

#### a. Masculines and Feminines

| Caedes, f., slaughter | Hostis, m., enemy | Urbs, f., city | Cliēns, m., retainer |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Stems</strong></th>
<th><strong>Bases</strong></th>
<th><strong>Singular</strong></th>
<th><strong>Terminations</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caedi-</td>
<td>caed-</td>
<td>caedes</td>
<td>-s, -is, or -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hosti-</td>
<td>host-</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbi-</td>
<td>urb-</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clienti-</td>
<td>cliente-</td>
<td>cliēns</td>
<td>-em (-im)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Nom.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Gen.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Dat.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Acc.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Abl.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caedes</td>
<td>caedis</td>
<td>caedi</td>
<td>caedes</td>
<td>caedis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>hostis, -ēs</td>
<td>hostis, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>urbis, -ēs</td>
<td>urbis, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cliēns</td>
<td>clientis</td>
<td>clientis</td>
<td>clientis, -ēs</td>
<td>clientis, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>urbe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cliente</td>
<td>cliente</td>
<td>cliente</td>
<td>cliente</td>
<td>cliente</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Avis, cīvis, finis, ignis, nāvis, have the abl. sing. in -ī or -ē.
2. Turris has accusative turrim and ablative turri or turre.
b. Neuters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Insigne</em>, n.</td>
<td>decoration</td>
<td><em>Animal</em>, n.</td>
<td>animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Calcar</em>, n.</td>
<td>spur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stems**
- *Insigni-*
- *Animali-*
- *Calcari-*

**Bases**
- *Insign-*
- *Animal-*
- *Calcar-*

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><em>Insigne</em></td>
<td><em>Animal</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>Insignis</em></td>
<td><em>Animalis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>Insigni</em></td>
<td><em>Animali</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>Insigne</em></td>
<td><em>Animal</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><em>Insigni</em></td>
<td><em>Animali</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><em>Insignia</em></td>
<td><em>Animalia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>Insignium</em></td>
<td><em>Animalium</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>Insignibus</em></td>
<td><em>Animalius</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>Insignia</em></td>
<td><em>Animalia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><em>Insignibus</em></td>
<td><em>Animalius</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

7. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. *U*-STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Adventus</em>, m.</td>
<td>arrival</td>
<td><em>Cornu</em>, n.</td>
<td>horn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stem**
- *Adventu-*  
- *Advent-*

**Base**
- *Advent-*  
- *Cornu-*

**Terminations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><em>Adventus</em></td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-ź</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>Adventus</em></td>
<td>-ús</td>
<td>-ús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>Adventui</em> (Ӛ)</td>
<td>-uí (Ӛ)</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>Adventum</em></td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><em>Adventū</em></td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td>-ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><em>Adventūs</em></td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>Adventuum</em></td>
<td>-uum</td>
<td>-uum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>Adventibus</em></td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>Adventūs</em></td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><em>Adventibus</em></td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 8. The Fifth Declension. ō-stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
<td>remr</td>
<td>reē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>diēi</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>reē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>diēi</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>reē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>diem</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>rem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>reūrum</td>
<td>reūrum</td>
<td>reūrum</td>
<td>reūrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>reibus</td>
<td>reibus</td>
<td>reibus</td>
<td>reibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
<td>reīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>reibus</td>
<td>reibus</td>
<td>reibus</td>
<td>reibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9. Special Paradigms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STEMS</th>
<th>deo-</th>
<th>domu-</th>
<th>vi- and viri-</th>
<th>iter- and itiner-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BASES</td>
<td>de-</td>
<td>dom-</td>
<td>v- and vir-</td>
<td>iter- and itiner-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deus</td>
<td>dei</td>
<td>dei</td>
<td>deum</td>
<td>deo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>domō, -ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis</td>
<td>vis (rare)</td>
<td>vi (rare)</td>
<td>vim</td>
<td>vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iter</td>
<td>itineris</td>
<td>iter</td>
<td>itineri</td>
<td>itinerere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dei, di</td>
<td>dei, di</td>
<td>dei, di</td>
<td>dei, di</td>
<td>dei, di</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīrēs</td>
<td>vīrēs</td>
<td>vīrēs</td>
<td>vīrēs</td>
<td>vīrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itineres</td>
<td>itineres</td>
<td>itineres</td>
<td>itineres</td>
<td>itineres</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**a.** The vocative singular of deus is like the nominative.

**b.** The locative of domus is domī.
ADJECTIVES

10. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. O-STEMS AND Ā-STEMS

a. Adjectives in -us

bonus, good Stems bono- m. and n., bonā- f. Base bon-

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bona e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bona e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>boni</th>
<th>bona e</th>
<th>bona</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Adjectives in -er

liber, free Stems libero- m. and n., liberā- f. Base liber-

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>liberum</td>
<td>liberam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>liberī</th>
<th>liberae</th>
<th>libera</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
<td>liberārum</td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
<td>liberās</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Pulcher, Pretty

**Stems** pulcro- m. and n., pulchrā- f.  **Base** pulchr-  

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulcher</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
<td>pulchrām</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrā</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
<td>pulchrārum</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The Nine Irregular Adjectives

**Alius, Another**  **Stems** alio- m. and n., aliā- f.  **Base** ali-

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliūd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ālius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>aliōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliūm</td>
<td>aliām</td>
<td>aliūd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ālii</td>
<td>aliae</td>
<td>alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aliōrum</td>
<td>aliārum</td>
<td>aliōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unus, One, Only**  **Stems** uno- m. and n., ūnā- f.  **Base** ūn-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ūnus</td>
<td>ūna</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ūnīus</td>
<td>ūnīus</td>
<td>ūnūrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ūni</td>
<td>ūni</td>
<td>ūnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
<td>ūnam</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ūnō</td>
<td>ūnā</td>
<td>ūnō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### a.
So also ulla, nullus, sōlus, tōtus, alter (altera, alterum), uter (utra, utrum), neuter (neutra, neutrum).
ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

I. THREE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ácer, ácris, äcre, keen, eager</td>
<td>ácri-</td>
<td>åcr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ácris</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ácrem</td>
<td>ácrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. TWO ENDINGS

omnis, omne, every, all Stem omni- Base omn- |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>omnem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

III. ONE ENDING

pär, equal Stem pari- Base par-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pär</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>parem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pari</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have -i in the ablative singular.
### 13. Present Active Participles

**amāns**, **loving**  
**Stem** amanti-  
**Base** amant-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>amantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>amāntī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>amantem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>amante, -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**iēns**, **going**  
**Stem** ienti-, eunti-  
**Base** ient-, eunt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>iēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>euntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>euntī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>euntem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>eunte, -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 14. Regular Comparison of Adjectives

**Positive**  
**Comparative**  
**Superlative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>MASC.</strong></th>
<th><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></th>
<th><strong>NEUT.</strong></th>
<th><strong>MASC.</strong></th>
<th><strong>FEM. NEUT.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus (alto-)</td>
<td>altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber (libero-)</td>
<td>liberior</td>
<td>liberius</td>
<td>liberrimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher (pulchro-)</td>
<td>pulchrior</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāx (audāci-)</td>
<td>audāciōr</td>
<td>audācius</td>
<td>audācissimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis (brevi-)</td>
<td>breviōr</td>
<td>brevius</td>
<td>brevissimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer (ācri-)</td>
<td>ācriōr</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 15. Declension of Comparatives

**altior**, **higher**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>altior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>altiōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>altiōri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>altiōrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>altiōre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### PLUR, MORE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plús</td>
<td>plürís</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plús</td>
<td>plüre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plürēs</td>
<td>plürium</td>
<td>plüribus</td>
<td>plüris (-ēs)</td>
<td>plüra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um, good</td>
<td>melior, melius, better</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um, bad</td>
<td>peior, peius, worse</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um, worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um, great</td>
<td>maior, maius, greater</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um, greatest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um, much</td>
<td>—, plús, more</td>
<td>plürimus, -a, -um, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um, small</td>
<td>minor, minus, smaller</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um, smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senex, senis, old</td>
<td>senior</td>
<td>maximus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iuvenis, -e, young</td>
<td>iúnior</td>
<td>minimus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus, veteris, old</td>
<td>vetustior, -ius</td>
<td>veterrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e, easy</td>
<td>faciliōr, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -e, difficult</td>
<td>difficiliōr, -ius</td>
<td>difficillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -e, similar</td>
<td>similiōr, -ius</td>
<td>similillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -e, dissimilar</td>
<td>dissimiliōr, -ius</td>
<td>dissimillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e, low</td>
<td>humiliōr, -ius</td>
<td>humillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e, slender</td>
<td>graciōlė, -ius</td>
<td>gracillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterus, outward</td>
<td>exterior, outer, exterior</td>
<td>extrēmus, —, last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferior, lower</td>
<td>infimus, —, last</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterior, later</td>
<td>postrēmus, —, last</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior, higher</td>
<td>suprēmus, —, highest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[cīs, citrā, on this side]</td>
<td>citerior, hither</td>
<td>citimus, hithermost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[in, intrā, in, within]</td>
<td>interior, inner</td>
<td>intimus, inmost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[praē, prō, before]</td>
<td>prior, former</td>
<td>prīmus, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[prope, near]</td>
<td>propriōr, nearer</td>
<td>proximus, next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ultrā, beyond]</td>
<td>ulterior, further</td>
<td>ultimus, furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cărē (cārus), dearly</td>
<td>cărius</td>
<td>cărissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē (miser), wretchedly</td>
<td>miserius</td>
<td>miserrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācriter (ācer), sharply</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile (facilis), easily</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diū, long, a long time</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>diūtissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene (bonus), well</td>
<td>melius, better</td>
<td>optimē, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male (malus), ill</td>
<td>peius, worse</td>
<td>pessimē, worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere, greatly</td>
<td>magis, more</td>
<td>maximē, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum (multus), much</td>
<td>plūs, more</td>
<td>plūrimum, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum, little</td>
<td>minus, less</td>
<td>minimē, least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe, often</td>
<td>saepius</td>
<td>saepissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting unus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

**Cardinals**

(How many)

| 1, unus, -a, -um | one |
| 2, duo, duae, duo | two |
| 3, trēs, tria | three, |
| 4, quattuor | etc. |
| 5, quīnque | |
| 6, sex | |
| 7, septem | |
| 8, octō | |
| 9, novem | |
| 10, decem | |
| 11, īnดecim | |
| 12, duodecim | |
| 13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs) | |
| 14, quattuordecim | |

**Ordinals**

(In what order)

| prīmus, -a, -um | first |
| secundus (or alter) | second |
| tertius | third, |
| quārtus | etc. |
| quintus | |
| sextus | |
| septimus | |
| octāvus | |
| nōnus | |
| decimus | |
| īnđecimus | |
| duodecimus | |
| tertius decimus | |
| quārtus decimus | |
Cardinals

15, quīndecim
16, sēdecim
17, septendecim
18, duodevīgintī (octōdecim)
19, ūndevīgintī (novendecim)
20, vigintī
21, vigintī ūnus or ūnus et vigintī, etc.
30, trīgintā
40, quadrāgintā
50, quīnquāgintā
60, sexāgintā
70, septuāgintā
80, octōgintā
90, nōnāgintā
100, centum
101, centum (et) ūnus, etc.
120, centum (et) vigintī
121, centum (et) vigintī ūnus, etc.
200, ducentī, -ac, -ā
300, trecentī
400, quadringentīti
500, quīngentī
600, sexcentī
700, septingentī
800, octingentī
900, nōngentī
1000, mille

Ordinals

quīntus decimus
sextus decimus
septimus decimus
duodēvīcēnsimus
ūndevīcēnsimus
vīcēnsimus
vīcēnsimus prīmus or ūnus et vīcēnsimus, etc.
trīcēnsimus
quadragēnsimus
quīnquāgēnsimus
sexāgēnsimus
septuāgēnsimus
octōgēnsimus
nōnāgēnsimus
centēnsimus
centēnsimus (et) prīmus, etc.
centēnsimus vīcēnsimus
centēnsimus (et) vīcēnsimus prīmus
ducentēnsimus
trecentēnsimus
quadringentēnsimus
quīngentēnsimus
sexcentēnsimus
septingentēnsimus
octingentēnsimus
nōngentēnsimus
millēnsimus

20. Declension of duo, two, trēs, three, and mille, a thousand.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trēs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>duōs or duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trīs or trēs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. Mille is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of ūnus cf. § 11.
PRONOUNS

21. 

FIRST PERSON

SING. ego, I; PLUR. nōs, we

SING. Nom. ego
Gen. meī
Dat. mihi
Acc. mē
Abl. mē

PLUR.

Second Person

SING. tū, thou, you; PLUR. vōs, you

SING. tū
Gen. tuī
Dat. tibi
Acc. tē
Abl. tē

PLUR.

vōs
vestrum, -tri
vōbīs
vōs
vōbīs

a. The demonstrative pronoun is, ea, id is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person.

22. 

REFLEXIVE

FIRST PERSON

SING. me, myself
PLUR. us, ourselves

SING. Gen. meī
Dat. mihi
Acc. mē
Abl. mē

PLUR. nostrum, -tri
vestrum, -tri
nōbīs
nōbīs

SECOND PERSON

SING. thee, you, yourself
PLUR. you, yourselves

SING. tuī
Dat. tibi
Acc. tē
Abl. tē

PLUR. vēstrum, -tri
vōbīs
vōs
vōbīs

THIRD PERSON

SING. him/her/it self
PLUR. themselves

SING. suī
Dat. sibi
Acc. sē, sēsē
Abl. sē, sēsē

PLUR.

NOTE. Reflexive pronouns have no nominative.

23. 

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

The possessive pronominal adjectives my, mine, your, yours, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

SINGULAR

1st Pers. meus, mea, meum
2d Pers. tuus, tua, tuum
3d Pers. suus, sua, suum

my, mine
your, yours
his (own), her (own), its (own)

PLURAL

1st Pers. noster, nostra, nostrum
2d Pers. vester, vestra, vestrum
3d Pers. suus, sua, suum

our, ours
your, yours
their (own), theirs

NOTE. Meus has the irregular vocative singular masculine mi; as, mi fili, O my son.
24. *Suus* is used only as a reflexive, referring to the subject; as, *puer patrem suum videt*, *the boy sees his (own) father*; *agricolae agrōs suōs amant*, *the farmers love their (own) fields*.

When not reflexive, *his*, *her*, and *its* are usually expressed by *eius*, the genitive singular of *is*, *ea*, *id*; and *their* by *eōrum* (masculine and neuter) and *eārum* (feminine), the genitive plural of *is*, *ea*, *id*. Thus:

*puer patrem eius videt*, *the boy sees his (not his own) father*

*agricolae agrōs eōrum amant*, *the farmers love their (not their own) fields*

25. **INTENSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE**

These pronouns belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings *-iōs* and *-ī* in the genitive and dative singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ipse, self</strong></td>
<td><strong>hic, this (here), he</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>iste, this, that (of yours), he</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsae</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ipsī’us</td>
<td>ipsī’us</td>
<td>ipsī’us</td>
<td>ipsōrum</td>
<td>ipsārum</td>
<td>ipsōrum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsōs</td>
<td>ipsās</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hī</td>
<td>hae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td>istud</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>istī’us</td>
<td>istī’us</td>
<td>istī’us</td>
<td>istōrum</td>
<td>istārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
<td>istud</td>
<td>istōs</td>
<td>istās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

ille, that (yonder), he

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ill̲e</td>
<td>ill̲a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ill̲íus</td>
<td>ill̲íus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ill̲i</td>
<td>ill̲i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>ill̲ud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ill̲ō</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ill̲i</td>
<td>illāc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ill̲ōrum</td>
<td>ill̲ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ill̲is</td>
<td>ill̲is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ill̲os</td>
<td>ill̲is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ill̲is</td>
<td>ill̲is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

is, this, that, he

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>eac</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>eārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>iis, eis</td>
<td>iis, eis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>iis, eis</td>
<td>iis, eis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

idem, the same

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>iī́dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eiuśdem</td>
<td>eōruńdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eídem</td>
<td>iiśdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>euńdem</td>
<td>eōśdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eṓdem</td>
<td>eiśdem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>caédem</td>
<td>eadémen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eōruńdem</td>
<td>eōruńdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>iiśdem</td>
<td>iiśdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eāśdem</td>
<td>eāśdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eiśdem</td>
<td>eiśdem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. In the plural the two i's in iīdem and iisdem are pronounced as one, and the forms are sometimes written idem and isdem.

26.

RELATIVE

qui, who, which, that

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>quōrum</td>
<td>quārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quōs</td>
<td>quās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The interrogative adjective quī, quae, quod, is declined like the relative.

28. INDEFINITES

quīs and quī, as declined above, are used also as indefinites (some, any). The other indefinites are compounds of quīs and quī.

quisque, each

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MASC. AND FEM.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quīsque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius'que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quemque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quōque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29. quīdam, a certain one, a certain

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has quoddam and the substantive quiddam.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MASC.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Nom. | quīdam | quaedam | \{quoddam \}
| Gen. | cuius'dam | cuius'dam | quiddam (subst.) |
| Dat. | cuidam | cuidam | cuius'dam |
| Acc. | quendam | quandam | quoddam |
| Abl. | quōdam | quādam | quōdam |

1 qua is generally used instead of quae in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.
### Norn, quidam

**Gen.** quorundam  
**Dat.** quibusdam  
**Acc.** quosdam  
**Abl.** quibusdam

#### FORMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quidam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. quorundam</td>
<td>quœrun’dam</td>
<td>quœrun’dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. quibusdam</td>
<td>quibus’dam</td>
<td>quibus’dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quosdam</td>
<td>quœsdam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quibus’dam</td>
<td>quibus’dam</td>
<td>quibus’dam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 30. quisquam, substantive, *any one (at all)*

**MASC. AND FEM.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. quisquam</th>
<th>quisquam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’quam</td>
<td>cuius’quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuiquam</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quemquam</td>
<td>quemquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quôquam</td>
<td>quôquam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEUT.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. quis quam</th>
<th>quis quam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. quis quam</td>
<td>quis quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. quis quam</td>
<td>quis quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quis quam</td>
<td>quis quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quis quam</td>
<td>quis quam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 31. aliquis, substantive, *some one*. aliquī, adjective, *some*

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> aliquis</td>
<td>aliqui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> alicu’ius</td>
<td>alicu’ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> aliquem</td>
<td>aliquem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> aliqō</td>
<td>aliqō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>NEUT.</strong></th>
<th><strong>FEM.</strong></th>
<th><strong>MASC.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aliquae</td>
<td>alicua</td>
<td>aliquod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alicu’ius</td>
<td>alicu’ius</td>
<td>alicu’ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquam</td>
<td>aliquam</td>
<td>aliquod</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural for both Substantive and Adjective**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> aliqū</td>
<td>aliqūae</td>
<td>aliqūae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> aliqū’rum</td>
<td>aliqū’rum</td>
<td>aliqū’rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> aliqūōs</td>
<td>aliqūōs</td>
<td>aliqūōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural for both Substantive and Adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> aliqū</td>
<td>aliqūae</td>
<td>aliqūae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> aliqū’rum</td>
<td>aliqū’rum</td>
<td>aliqū’rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> aliqūōs</td>
<td>aliqūōs</td>
<td>aliqūōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### a. quis (qui), *any one, any*, is the least definite of these. aliquis (aliquī), *some one, some*, is more definite than quis. quisquam, *any one (at all)*, and its adjective ullus, *any*, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.
REGULAR VERBS

32. FIRST CONJUGATION. Ā-VERBS. AMŌ

Principal Parts amō, amāre, amāvi, amātus

Pres. Stem amā-  Perf. Stem amāv-  Part. Stem amāt-

ACTIVE  PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I love, am loving, do love, etc.  I am loved, etc.

amō amāmus amor amāmur
amās amātis amāris, -re amāmini
amat amant amātur amantur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.  I was loved, etc.

amābam amābāmus amābar amābāmur
amābās amābātis amābāris, -re amābāmini
amābat amābant amābātur amābantur

FUTURE

I shall love, etc.  I shall be loved, etc.

amābō amābimus amābor amābimur
amābis amābitis amāberis, -re amābimini
amābit amābunt amābitur amābuntur

PERFECT

I have loved, loved, did love, etc.  I have been (was) loved, etc.

amāvī amāvīmus amātus, \{ sum amātī, \{ sumus
amāvistī amāvistis es amātī, \{ estis
amāvit amāvērunt, -re -a, -um -ae, -a sunt

PAST PERFECT

I had loved, etc.  I had been loved, etc.

amāveram amāverāmus amātus, \{ eram amātī, \{ erāmus
amāverās amāverātis erās amātī, \{ erātis
amāverat amāverant erat -ae, -a erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have loved, etc.  I shall have been loved, etc.

amāverō amāverimus amātus, \{ erō amātī, \{ erimus
amāveris amāveritis -a, -um -ae, -a eritis
amāverit amāverint erint
## FORMS

### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amem</th>
<th>amēmus</th>
<th>amer</th>
<th>amēmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amēs</td>
<td>amētis</td>
<td>amēris, -re</td>
<td>amēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amet</td>
<td>ament</td>
<td>amētur</td>
<td>amentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārem</td>
<td>amārēmus</td>
<td>amārer</td>
<td>amārēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārēs</td>
<td>amārētis</td>
<td>amārēris, -re</td>
<td>amārēmini-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāret</td>
<td>amārent</td>
<td>amārētur</td>
<td>amārentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāverim</th>
<th>amāverīmus</th>
<th>amātus, sim</th>
<th>amāti, sīmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāverītis</td>
<td>-a, -um sis</td>
<td>-ae, -a sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāvissem</th>
<th>amāvissēmus</th>
<th>amātus, essēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvissēs</td>
<td>amāvissētis</td>
<td>amātī, essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvisset</td>
<td>amāvissent</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PERFECT

| amātō, thou shalt love | amātō, he shall love |
| amātōte, you shall love | amantō, they shall love |
| amantō, they shall love | amantō, they shall be loved |

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā, love thou</td>
<td>amāre, be thou loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāte, love ye</td>
<td>amāmini, be ye loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE

| Pres. | amāre, to love |
| Perf. | amāvisse, to have loved |
| Fut.  | amātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to love |

#### INFINITIVE

| Pres. | amāri, to be loved |
| Perf. | amātus, -a, -um esse, to have been loved |
| Fut.  | amātum īrī, to be about to be loved |

#### PARTICIPLES

| Pres. | amāns, -antis, loving |
| Fut.  | amātūrus, -a, -um, about to love |
| Past  | amor, about to be loved |

#### GERUND

| Nom. | amandi, of loving |
| Gen. | amandō, for loving |
| Dat. | amandum, loving |
| Acc. | amandō, by loving |
| Abl. | amandō, by loving |

**GERUND**

**Gen.** amandō, for loving
**Dat.** amandō, for loving
**Acc.** amandum, loving
**Abl.** amandō, by loving

**SUPINE (Active Voice)**

**Nom.** amandō, about loving
**Gen.** amandum, about loving
**Dat.** amandus, about loving
**Acc.** amandum, about loving
**Abl.** amandō, about loving

---

1 Sometimes called the future passive participle.
33. **SECOND CONJUGATION. Ē-VERBS. MONEŌ**

**Principal Parts** moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

**Pres. Stem** monē- **Perf. Stem** monu- **Part. Stem** monit-

### ACTIVE

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I advise, etc.</td>
<td>I am advised, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>monēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>monētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēt</td>
<td>monēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST DESCRPTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was advising, etc.</th>
<th>I was advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall advise, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>monēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>monēbunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have advised, I advised, etc.</th>
<th>I have been (was) advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>monuīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistī</td>
<td>monuīstis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monuērunt, -re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had advised, etc.</th>
<th>I had been advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerās</td>
<td>monuerātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have advised, etc.</th>
<th>I shall have been advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerō</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Monēam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēās</td>
<td>Monēātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneāt</td>
<td>Moneānt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Monērēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monērēs</td>
<td>Monērēritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēret</td>
<td>Monērent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Monuerīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuerīs</td>
<td>Monuerītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuerit</td>
<td>Monuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PERFECT</td>
<td>Monuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuisset</td>
<td>Monuissetis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuisset</td>
<td>Monuisset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Monē, advise thou \ Monēte, advise ye</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēre, be thou advised \ Monēmini, be ye advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Monētor, thou shalt be advised \ Monētor, he shall be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monētō, thou shalt advise \ Monētō, you shall advise \ Monētō, they shall advise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Monēre, to advise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>Monuissent, to have advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>Monitūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitum ēri, to be about to be advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Monēns, -entis, advising</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>Monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitus, -a, -um, having been advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Monitus, -a, -um, having been advised, advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

| Nom. | Monendī, of advising |
| Gen. | Monendō, for advising |
| Dat. | Monendum, advising |
| Acc. | Monendō, by advising |
| Abl. | Monendō, by advising |

**SUPINE (Active Voice)**

<p>| Acc. | Monitūm, to advise |
| Abl. | Monitū, to advise, in the advising |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td><strong>I rule, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I am ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regimus</td>
<td>re'gor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>regitis</td>
<td>rec'geris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regit</td>
<td>regunt</td>
<td>rec'gitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST DESCRIPTIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was ruling, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbam</td>
<td>regēbāmus</td>
<td>regē'bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbās</td>
<td>regēbātis</td>
<td>regēbā'ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbat</td>
<td>regēbant</td>
<td>regēbā'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall rule, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall be ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regēmus</td>
<td>rec'gar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēs</td>
<td>regētis</td>
<td>rec'geris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reget</td>
<td>regent</td>
<td>rec'gitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>I have ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I have been ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxi</td>
<td>rēximus</td>
<td>rectus, {sum } rēcti, {sumus }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxistī</td>
<td>rēxistis</td>
<td>-a, -um {es } -ae, -a {est }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxit</td>
<td>rēxērunt, -re</td>
<td>rectus, {-a,-um } erāt, {-ae,-a }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>I had ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I had been ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeram</td>
<td>rēxerāmus</td>
<td>rectus, {-a,-um } erāt, {-ae,-a }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeras</td>
<td>rēxerātis</td>
<td>{-erāmus } rēcti, {-erātis }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerat</td>
<td>rēxerant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have been ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerō</td>
<td>rēxerimus</td>
<td>rectus, {-a,-um } erō, {-ae,-a }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeris</td>
<td>rēxeritis</td>
<td>{-erōmus } rēcti, {-erōtis }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerit</td>
<td>rēxerint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>regam</em></td>
<td><em>regamus</em></td>
<td><em>regar</em></td>
<td><em>regamus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regás</em></td>
<td><em>regátis</em></td>
<td><em>regáris, -re</em></td>
<td><em>regámini</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regat</em></td>
<td><em>regant</em></td>
<td><em>regátur</em></td>
<td><em>regantur</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| *regerem* | *regerémus*
| *regerés* | *regerétis*
| *regeret* | *regerent* |

#### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxerim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxeris</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxerit</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxissem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxissēs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxisset</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>rege</em></td>
<td>rule thou¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regite</em></td>
<td>rule ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regere</em></td>
<td>be thou ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regimini</em></td>
<td>be ye ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>regitō</em></td>
<td>thou shalt rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regitō</em></td>
<td>he shall rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regitōte</em></td>
<td>ye shall rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>reguntō</em></td>
<td>they shall rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regitor</em></td>
<td>thou shalt be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regitor</em></td>
<td>he shall be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>reguntor</em></td>
<td>they shall be ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

**Present**

- *regere, to rule*
- *rēgō to be ruled*  [ruled]
- *rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, to have been*

**Future**

- *rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to rule*
- *rēctum īri, to be about to be ruled*

### PARTICIPLES

**Present**

- *regēns, -entis, ruling*
- *regendus, -a, -um, to be ruled*

**Future**

- *rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule*
- *rēctum īri, to be about to be ruled*

**Past**

### GERUND

**Nom.**

- *regendī, of ruling*

**Gen.**

- *regendō, for ruling*

**Dat.**

- *regendum, ruling*

**Acc.**

- *regendō, by ruling*

**Abl.**

- *regendō, by ruling*

### SUPINE (Active Voice)

**Past**

- *rēctus, -a, -um, having been ruled, ruled*

¹ The corresponding imperative forms for the four verbs dicō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō are dic, dūc, fac, and fer.
### Latin Grammar

#### 35. Fourth Conjugation. Ī-Verbs. *Audīō*

**Principal Parts**
- *audīō*, *audīre*, *audīvī*, *audītus*

**Pres. Stem** *audī-*  
**Perf. Stem** *audīv-*  
**Part. Stem** *audīt-*

---

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I hear, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I am heard, etc.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiō</em></td>
<td><em>audiōmus</em></td>
<td><em>audiōmur</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audīs</em></td>
<td><em>audītis</em></td>
<td><em>audiōris, -re</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audit</em></td>
<td><em>audiunt</em></td>
<td><em>audiōtur</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Descriptive</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I was hearing, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I was heard, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiēbam</em></td>
<td><em>audiēbāmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiēbās</em></td>
<td><em>audiēbātis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiēbat</em></td>
<td><em>audiēbant</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I shall hear, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I shall be heard, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiām</em></td>
<td><em>audiēmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiēs</em></td>
<td><em>audiētis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiet</em></td>
<td><em>audient</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I have heard, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I have been heard, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiūvī</em></td>
<td><em>audiūvīmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiūvistī</em></td>
<td><em>audiūvīsistis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiūvit</em></td>
<td><em>audiūvērunt, -re</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I had heard, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I had been heard, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiūveram</em></td>
<td><em>audiūverāmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiūverās</em></td>
<td><em>audiūverātis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiūverat</em></td>
<td><em>audiūverant</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I shall have heard, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I shall have been heard, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiūverō</em></td>
<td><em>audiūverīmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiūverīs</em></td>
<td><em>audiūverītis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>audiūverit</em></td>
<td><em>audiūverīnt</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audiamus</td>
<td>audiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiās</td>
<td>audiātis</td>
<td>audiāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiat</td>
<td>audiant</td>
<td>audiātur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīrem</td>
<td>audīrēmus</td>
<td>audīrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīrēs</td>
<td>audīrētis</td>
<td>audīrēris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīret</td>
<td>audīrent</td>
<td>audīrētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīverim</td>
<td>audīverīmus</td>
<td>audīverītur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīveris</td>
<td>audīverītis</td>
<td>audīverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverit</td>
<td>audīverint</td>
<td>audīverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīvissem</td>
<td>audīvissēmus</td>
<td>audīvit, essēmus, essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvissēs</td>
<td>audīvissētis</td>
<td>audīvissent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvissēt</td>
<td>audīvissent</td>
<td>audīvissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audi, hear thou</td>
<td>audire, be thou heard</td>
<td>audimīni, be ye heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīte, hear ye</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditō, thou shalt hear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditō, he shall hear</td>
<td>auditor, thou shalt be heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditōte, ye shall hear</td>
<td>auditor, he shall be heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiuntō, they shall hear</td>
<td>audium, they shall be heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. audiēre, to hear</td>
<td>audiri, to be heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. audīvisse, to have heard</td>
<td>audiērī, to be about to hear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. audiūtūs, -a, -um esse, to be</td>
<td>audiūtum iri, to be about to be heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. audiēns, -entis, hearing</td>
<td>audiēndus, -a, -um, to be heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. audītūrus, -a, -um, about to hear</td>
<td>audītus, -a, -um, having been heard, heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Supine (Active Voice)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>audiēndi, of hearing</td>
<td>audiēnum, to hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>audiēndō, for hearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>audiēndum, hearing</td>
<td>audiēnatum, to hear in the hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>audiēndō, by hearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>audiēndō, by hearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IŌ. CAPIO

Principal Parts *capio, capere, cēpi, captus*

Pres. Stem *cape-*  Perf. Stem *cēp-*  Part. Stem *capi-

### ACTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capio</td>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>ca’pior</td>
<td>ca’pimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>ca’peris, -re</td>
<td>ca’mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>ca’pitur</td>
<td>capiun’tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PAST DESCRIPTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>capiē’bar</td>
<td>capiēbā’mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbā’ris, -re</td>
<td>capiēbā’mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>capiēbā’tur</td>
<td>capiēbant’tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FUTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>ca’piar</td>
<td>capiē’mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>ca’pieris, -re</td>
<td>capiē’mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capient</td>
<td>capiētum</td>
<td>ca’pierit</td>
<td>capiēn’tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpi, cēpisti, cēpit, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sum, es, est, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperam, cēperas, cēperat, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>eram, erās, erat, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FUTURE PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>erō, eris, erit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.</td>
<td>capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.</td>
<td>caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sim, sis, sit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>essem, essēs, esset, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pers.</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>caper</th>
<th>capite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

FUTURE

2d Pers. capitō capitōte capitor
capiuntō capiuntor

3d Pers. capitō capitōte capitor
capiuntō capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere capī
Perf. cēpisse captus, -a, -um esse
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um esse captum īrī

PARTICIPLES

Pres. capiēns, -ientis
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um
Past captūrus, -a, -um

GERUND

Gen. capiēndī
captū

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. captum
captū

DEPONENT VERBS

Principal Parts

I. hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, urge
II. vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear
III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
IV. partior, partīri, partitus sum, share, divide

Note. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -iō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capīō.

INDICATIVE

Pres. hortor vereor sequor partior
hortāris, -re verēris, -re sequeris, -re partīris, -re
hortātur verētus sequitur partitur
hortāmur verēmur sequimur partīmur
hortāmini verēmini sequiminī partīminī
hortantur verentur sequuntur partiuntur
P. D. hortābar verēbar sequēbar partiēbar
Fut. hortābor verēbor sequar partiar
Perf. hortātus sum veritus sum secūtus sum partitus sum
P. P. hortātus eram veritus eram secūtus eram partitus eram
F. P. hortātus ērō veritus ērō secūtus ērō partitus ērō
### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Aorist</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>horter</td>
<td>verear</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>partiar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>hortäer</td>
<td>verërer</td>
<td>sequerer</td>
<td>partirër</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortätus sim</td>
<td>veritus sim</td>
<td>secütus sim</td>
<td>partitüs sim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>hortätus essem</td>
<td>veritus essem</td>
<td>secütus essem</td>
<td>partitüs essem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Aorist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>hortäre</td>
<td>verëre</td>
<td>sequere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>hortatór</td>
<td>verëtor</td>
<td>sequitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Aorist</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>hortäri</td>
<td>verëri</td>
<td>sequi</td>
<td>partirë</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortätus esse</td>
<td>veritus esse</td>
<td>secütus esse</td>
<td>partitüs esse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>*hortätürus esse</td>
<td>*veritürus esse</td>
<td>*secütürus esse</td>
<td>*partitürus esse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Aorist</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>*hortäns</td>
<td>*verëns</td>
<td>*sequëns</td>
<td>*partiëns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>*hortätürus</td>
<td>*veritürus</td>
<td>*secütürus</td>
<td>*partitürus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>hortätus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>secütus</td>
<td>partitüs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>hortandus</td>
<td>verendus</td>
<td>sequendus</td>
<td>partiendus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Gerund

*hortändi, etc.  *verendí, etc.  *sequendí, etc.  *partiendi, etc.

### Supine

*hortätum, -tū  *veritum, -tū  *secütum, -tū  *partitum, -tū

### 38. I. Active Periphrastic Conjugation:

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amatürus sum</td>
<td>I am about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Descr.</td>
<td>amatürus eram</td>
<td>I was about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amatürus erō</td>
<td>I shall be about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amatürus fui</td>
<td>I have been, was, about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perf.</td>
<td>amatürus fueram</td>
<td>I had been about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>amatürus fuerō</td>
<td>I shall have been about to love</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amatürus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>amatürus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amatürus fuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perf.</td>
<td>amatürus fuissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

INFINITIVE

Pres.  amātūrus esse, to be about to love
Perf.  amātūrus fuisse, to have been about to love

II. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation:

INDICATIVE

Pres.  amandus sum, I am to be, must be, loved
Past Descr.  amandus eram, I was to be, had to be, loved
Fut.  amandus erō, I shall have to be loved
Perf.  amandus fueram, I had had to be loved
Past Perf.  amandus fuerō, I shall have had to be loved

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.  amandus sim
Past  amandus essem
Perf.  amandus fuerim
Past Perf.  amandus fuissem

INFINITIVE

Pres.  amandus esse, to have to be loved
Perf.  amandus fuisse, to have had to be loved

IRREGULAR VERBS

39.  sum, am, be

Principal Parts  sum, esse, fui, futūrus

Pres. Stem  es-  Perf. Stem  fu-  Part. Stem  fut-

Indicative

Present

Singular

sum, I am  sumus, we are
es, thou art  estis, you are
est, he (she, it) is  sunt, they are

Past Descriptive

eram, I was  erāmus, we were
eras, thou wast  erātis, you were
erat, he was  erant, they were
**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>éro, I shall be</td>
<td>erimus, we shall be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eris, thou wilt be</td>
<td>critis, you will be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erit, he will be</td>
<td>erunt, they will be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuí, I have been, was</td>
<td>fuimus, we have been, were</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisti, thou hast been, wast</td>
<td>fuistis, you have been, were</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuit, he has been, was</td>
<td>fuērunt, they have been, were</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fueram, I had been</td>
<td>fuerāmus, we had been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueras, thou hadst been</td>
<td>fuerātis, you had been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerat, he had been</td>
<td>fuerant, they had been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerō, I shall have been</td>
<td>fuerimus, we shall have been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris, thou wilt have been</td>
<td>fueritis, you will have been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit, he will have been</td>
<td>fuerint, they will have been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>simus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sis</td>
<td>sitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>fuerāmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fuerātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers. Sing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers. Plur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

- Pres. esse, to be
- Perf. fuisse, to have been
- Fut. futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore, to be about to be

**Participle**

- futūrus, -a, -um, about to be
FORMS

40.  
possum, be able, can

Principal Parts possum, posse, potuī, ——

Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>possum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>poteram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>poterō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>potuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>potueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>potuerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>possim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>possīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>possīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>possem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>potuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>potuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitive

Pres. posse

Participle

Pres. potēns, gen. -entis, (adjective) powerful

41.  prōsum, benefit

Principal Parts prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus

Pres. Stem prōdes-  Perf. Stem prōfu-  Part. Stem prōfut-

Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>prōsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prōdes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prōdest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>prōderam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>prōderō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>prōfuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>prōfueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>prōfuerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>prōsim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prōsīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prōsīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prodessē'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>prōfuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>prōfuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative

Pres. 2d Pers. prōdes, prōdeste  Fut. 2d Pers. prōdestō, prōdestōte

Infinitive

Pres. prōdesse  Perf. prōfuisse  Fut. prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse

Future Participle prōfutūrus, -a, -um
42. **Principal Parts**

- **volō, velle, volui, — be willing, will, wish**
- **nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — be unwilling, will not**
- **mālō, mālle, mālui, — be more willing, prefer**

Nōlō and mālō are compounds of volō. Nōlō is for ne (not) + volō, and mālō for mā (from magis, more) + volō. The second person vis is from a different root.

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volt</td>
<td>nōn volt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.D.</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>nōlēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>volam, volēs, etc.</td>
<td>nōlam, nōlēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>volui</td>
<td>nōlui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.P.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>velim</td>
<td>nōlim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velīs</td>
<td>nōlīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velīt</td>
<td>nōlīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velī’mus</td>
<td>nōlī’mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velī’tis</td>
<td>nōlī’tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velint</td>
<td>nōlīnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>vellem</td>
<td>nōllem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>nōluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.P.</td>
<td>voluissem</td>
<td>nōluissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>nōlī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>nōlītō, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>velle</th>
<th>nólle</th>
<th>mälle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluisse</td>
<td>nóluisse</td>
<td>mäluisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participle

| Pres. | volēns, -entis | nōlēns, -entis |

### 43.

ferō, bear, carry, endure

#### Principal Parts

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferō</th>
<th>ferimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers</td>
<td>fertis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. D.</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram, ferēs, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tuli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>feram, ferās, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>ferrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>tulissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. 2d Pers.</th>
<th>fer</th>
<th>ferre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut. 2d Pers.</td>
<td>fertō</td>
<td>fertor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers.</td>
<td>fertō</td>
<td>feruntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferre</th>
<th>ferimīnī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulisse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferri</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferēns, -entis</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Ger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td></td>
<td>Past</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
44. eō, go

Principal Parts eō, ire, iī (īvī), itum (n. perf. part.)
Pres. Stem i- Perf. stem i- or iv- Part. Stem it-

Indicative Subjunctive Imperative

Pres. eō īmus eam 2d Pers. ī īte
īs ītis
īt ēunt
Past ībam īrem 3d Pers. ītō ītōte
Fut. ībō
Perf. iī (īvī) ierim (īverim)
P.P. ieram (īveram) īssem (īvissem)
F. P. ierō (īverō)

Infinitive Participles

Pres. īre Pres. iēns, gen. euntis
Perf. īsse (īvisse) Fut. ītūrus, -a, -um
Fut. itūrus, -a, -um esse Ger. eundum

Gerund Supine

Gen. eundī Acc. eundum Acc. itum
Dat. eundō Abl. eundō Abl. ītū

a. The verb eō is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as ītur, itum est, etc.
b. In the perfect system the forms with v are very rare.

45. fiō, passive of fació; be made, become, happen

Principal Parts fiō, fieri, factus sum

Indicative Subjunctive Imperative

Pres. fiō fiam 2d Pers. ē fite
īs fiam
īt fierem
Past fiēbam
Fut. fiam, ēs, etc.
FORMS

INDICATIVE

Perf. factus, -a, -um sum
P. P. factus, -a, -um eram
F. P. factus, -a, -um erō

INFINITIVE

Pres. fierī
Perf. factus, -a, -um esse
Fut. factum īrī

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf. factus, -a, -um sim
P. P. factus, -a, -um essem
F. P. factus, -a, -um erō

PARTICIPLES

Past factus, -a, -um
Ger. faciendus, -a, -um

46. I. DEFECTIVE VERBS

INDICATIVE

Perf. coepī, began
P. P. coeperam
F. P. coeperō

Meminī, remember
Memineram
Meminerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf. coeperim
P. P. coepissem

Meminerim
Meminissem

IMPERATIVE

Singular
Mementō

PLURAL
Mementōte

INFINITIVE

Perf. coepisse
Fut. coeptūrus esse

Meminisse
Ödisse

Participle
Ösus
Ösūrus
Ösūrus esse

II. IMPERSONAL VERBS

INDICATIVE

Pres. licet, is permitted
Past licēbat
Fut. licēbit
Perf. licuit (licitum est)
P. P. licuerat (licitum erat)
F. P. licuerit (licitum erit)

SUBJUNCTIVE

Liceat
Licēret
Licuerit (licitum sit)
Licuisset (licitum esset)

INFINITIVE

Licēre, licuisset, licitūrum esse
B. SYNTAX

SENTENCES

47. A sentence is a group of words expressing a complete thought.

Kinds of Sentences. Sentences are declarative, interrogative, or imperative:

a. A declarative sentence is one that makes a statement:
   Caesar venit, Caesar is coming

b. An interrogative sentence is one that asks a question:
   venitne Caesar? is Caesar coming?

c. An imperative sentence is one that expresses a command:
   veni, Caesar, come, Caesar

48. Parts of Sentences. Every sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate:

I. Subject. The subject of a sentence is a noun, or some expression used as a noun, about which something is said:

   Caesar respondit, Caesar made answer; responditne Caesar? did Caesar make answer?

   In both of these sentences Caesar is the subject.

   a. In Latin the subject is often not expressed by a separate word, but is contained in the termination of the verb:
      scribit, he writes; scribunt, they write; scribimus, we write

   b. The subject may be some word or group of words used as a noun:
      haec perficere est facile, to accomplish these things is easy; accidit ut plēna lūna esset, it happened that the moon was full
II. Predicate. The predicate is that part of the sentence which says something about the subject:

lūna est plēna, the moon is full

a. The predicate may be a verb, or it may consist of a noun, pronoun, or adjective combined with some form of the verb sum or its equivalent, and describing or defining the subject:

Pisō erat cōnsul, Piso was consul; tū es ILLE, you are he; oppidum erat magnum, the town was large

b. The verb sum, combined with a noun, pronoun, or adjective as above, is called the copula, that is, the connective. When an intransitive or passive verb is used in the same way, it is called a copulative verb:

Diviciācus appellātur amīcus, Diviciacus is called friend

49. Transitive Verb. A transitive verb has or requires a direct object to complete its sense:

imperātōrem videō, I see the general

50. Intransitive Verb. An intransitive verb does not admit of a direct object to complete its sense:

imperātor venit, the general is coming

51. Phrase. A phrase is a group of connected words not containing a subject and predicate. A phrase is often used as an adjective or an adverb:

vir erat magnae virtūtis, he was a man of great courage; omnibus precibus ōrābant, they implored with all (manner of) entreaties

In these sentences magnae virtūtis and omnibus precibus are respectively adjective and adverbial phrases.

52. Direct Object. The person or thing directly affected by the action of a verb is called the direct object:

Caesar eum incūsat, Cæsar upbraids him
Helvētii aciem ĭnstrūxérunt, the Helvetii drew up a line of battle
53. **Indirect Object.** The person toward whom or the thing toward which an action or feeling is directed, is called the indirect object:

\[ \text{agros Haeduís dat, he gives fields to the Hædui} \]

54. **Appositive.** A noun or pronoun used to describe or explain another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, without the use of a verb, is called an appositive:

\[ \text{Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, vēnit, Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, came} \]

**Note.** A noun or pronoun used as above is said to be in apposition with the word it describes or explains, and agrees with it in case.

55. **Forms of Sentences.** In their form sentences are simple, compound, or complex:

a. **A simple** sentence is a sentence containing but one subject and one predicate:

\[ \text{Caesar venit, Cæsar comes} \]

b. **A compound** sentence consists of two or more independent sentences:

\[ \text{Caesar vēnit et hostēs fūgērunt, Caesar came, and the enemy fled} \]

c. **A complex** sentence consists of at least one independent sentence and one or more dependent sentences:

\[ \text{cum Cæsar vēnisset, hostēs fūgērunt, when Cæsar had come, the enemy fled} \]

56. **Clause.** A clause is a group of words that forms part of a sentence and that contains a subject and a predicate.

In the last two Latin sentences above, each group of words, **Caesar vēnит, hostēs fūgērunt, cum Cæsar vēnisset**, is a clause.

a. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be subordinate, and the clause modified is called the main clause:

\[ \text{cum Cæsar vēnisset, hostēs fūgērunt, when Cæsar had come, the enemy fled; here cum Cæsar vēnisset is the subordinate clause and hostēs fūgērunt is the main clause} \]
If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be coördinate. They are usually connected by a coördinating conjunction (§ 151. a):

*Caesar vēnit et hostēs fūgērunt*, *Caesar came and the enemy fled*; here both clauses are coördinate

**57. Modifiers.** A subject or a predicate may be modified by a word, a phrase, or a clause:

*miles fortis acriter pugnat*, *the brave soldier fights fiercely*; the words *fortis* and *acriter* modify the subject and predicate respectively

*imperātor bonō animō in urbem vēnit*, *a general of great courage has come into the city*; the phrases *bonō animō* and *in urbem* modify the subject and predicate respectively

*imperātor quem nōmināvī pontem aedificāvit ut flūmen trānsīret*, *the general whom I have named built a bridge that he might cross the river*; the clauses *quem nōmināvī* and *ut flūmen trānsīret* modify the subject and predicate respectively

**AGREEMENT**

**NOUNS**

**58. Predicate or Appositive.** A noun used as predicate or appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains or describes:

*Ariovistus erat rēx*, *Ariovistus was king*

*Labiēnum, lēgātum, mīsit*, *he sent Labienus, the lieutenant*

**ADJECTIVES**

**59. General Rule.** Adjectives and words used as adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case:

*iter est longum*, *the journey is long*

*mōns altissimus impendēbat*, *a very high mountain overhung*

*Gallia est dīvisa*, *Gaul is divided*
60. Predicate Adjective. When an adjective forms a part of the predicate with the verb sum or its equivalent (§ 48. II. a), it is called a predicate adjective:

Suëbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium, the tribe of the Suebi is by far the greatest and most warlike of all the Germans

61. Attributive Adjective. When an adjective immediately describes a noun without the use of a copulative verb, it is called an attributive adjective:

prīma legiō in castra vēnit, the first legion came into camp

Agreement with Two or More Nouns

62. Number. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns connected by et, -que, or atque (ac), a predicate adjective is in the plural number, and an attributive adjective agrees in number with the nearest noun.

dominus et servus sunt dissimilēs, master and slave are unlike
bonus rēx et rēgīna, the good king and queen

63. Gender. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns of different genders, a predicate adjective is usually masculine if the nouns denote living beings, neuter if they denote things without life; and an attributive adjective agrees with the nearest noun:

pater et māter sunt cārī, father and mother are dear
gladius et scūtum sunt magna, the sword and shield are large
cārus pater et māter
pater et māter cāra } the dear father and mother

Note. If the nouns denote both persons and things, a predicate adjective is usually neuter plural, but may follow the gender of the persons and be either masculine or feminine:

rēx et libera cīvitās sunt inimīca, a king and a free state are incompatible
rēx et classis sunt tūtī, the king and the fleet are safe
64. Pronouns used as nouns (substantively) have the construction of nouns; used as adjectives they agree with their nouns in the same way as adjectives ($§$ 59):

\[ hī sunt extrā prōvinciam primī, \text{these are the first beyond the province} \]
\[ hoc proelium factum est, \text{this battle was fought} \]

\textit{a.} Note, however, that a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but that its case depends on its construction in the clause in which it is used:

\[ lēgātī qui convocātī erant convēnērunt, \text{the envoys who had been summoned assembled} \]
\[ lēgātī quōs convocāverat convēnērunt, \text{the envoys whom he had summoned assembled} \]

\textbf{Note.} When the relative clause contains a predicate noun, the relative pronoun agrees with this noun rather than with an antecedent of different gender and number:

\[ Rhenus, quod est flūmen Gallicum, \text{the Rhine, which is a Gallic stream} \]

65. \textbf{General Rule.} Finite verbs agree with their subjects in person and number:

\[ Orgetorix dēligitur, \text{Orgetorix is chosen} \]
\[ Helvētīi oppida incendunt, \text{the Helvetii burn their towns} \]

\textbf{Note.} A finite verb is one having person and number.

\textit{a.} A verb is usually singular if it has for its subject a collective noun, — that is, a noun singular in form but referring to more than one person or thing, — but it may be plural if individuals are thought of:

\[ senātus haec intellegit, \text{the senate knows this} \]
\[ magna multitūdō vēnērunt, \text{a great multitude came} \]

66. \textbf{Impersonal Verbs.} When a verb is used impersonally, that is, without a personal subject, it is put in the third person singular, and a perfect participle or gerundive ends in \textit{-um}:

\[ pugnātur, \text{fighting is carried on}; pugnātum est, \text{fighting was carried on} \]
67. Agreement with Two or More Subjects. With two or more subjects connected by et, -que, or atque (ac) the verb may agree with the nearest or be plural:

summa alacritas et cupiditas bellii gerendi innata est, very great eagerness and desire for waging war were inspired

oppidum et vicus incenduntur, the town and village are burned

68. With two or more subjects forming a single idea the verb may be singular:

Matrona et Sequana dividit etc., the Marne and Seine divide etc.,
B. G. I. 1

69. With two or more singular subjects connected by conjunctions meaning or or nor the verb is in the singular number:

neque imperator neque legatus erat timidus, neither the general nor the lieutenant was afraid

CASES OF NOUNS

NOMINATIVE

70. The nominative case is used as the subject of a finite verb or as the predicate after a copulative verb:

Caesar respondit, Caesar replies
Labienus erat legatus Labienus was a lieutenant

71. The nominative case is used as the subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218):

cotidiē Caesar frumentum flagitare, Caesar daily demanded grain, 
B. G. I. 16

GENITIVE

Genitive with Nouns

72. General Rule. The genitive is used to limit or define another noun not meaning the same person or thing.

This general rule includes all the varieties of the genitive with nouns mentioned below.
73. Possessive Genitive. A noun may be modified by a genitive denoting the possessor or owner:

inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogium, between the territories of the Helvetii and the Allobroges, B. G. I. 6

a. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate:

duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, Ariovistus had two wives, B. G. I. 53

74. Possessive pronominal adjectives are used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns:

nōn oportet mé ā populō Rōmānō in meō (instead of meī) iūre impedīrī, it is not proper that I should be hindered in my rights by the Roman people, B. G. I. 36

75. Subjective and Objective Genitive. A noun that suggests action or feeling may be modified by a genitive. The context will generally tell whether the genitive is the subject or the object of the action or feeling denoted by the noun:

a. timor militum tantus erat ut fugerent, the fear of the soldiers was so great that they fled

Here the phrase timor militum means that the soldiers fear; hence militum, as the subject of the feeling expressed by timor, is a subjective genitive.

Cf. patrum nostrōrum memoriā, within the memory of our fathers, B. G. II. 4

b. timor militum hostēs dēterruit, the (their) fear of the soldiers kept the enemy back

Here the phrase timor militum means that the soldiers are feared; hence militum, as the object of the feeling expressed by timor, is an objective genitive.

Cf. prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī, for the ancient wrongs of (inflicted by) the Helvetii upon the Roman people, B. G. I. 30

In this sentence Helvētiōrum is a subjective genitive, populī Rōmānī is an objective genitive.
76. Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part of an object or group are followed by a genitive denoting the whole object or group:

\[ \text{tres partēs cōpiārum trādūxērunt, they led across three quarters (parts) of their forces} \]

\(a\). The partitive genitive may be used not only with nouns, but also with neuter singular adjectives and pronouns used substantively (§§ 127, 128):

\[ \text{quantum habeat in sē bonī cōnstantia, how much advantage (of good) firmness has, B. G. I. 40} \]
\[ \text{ nisi quid erit auxīlī, unless there shall be some (of) aid, B. G. I. 31} \]
\[ \text{satis esse causae arbitrābātur, he thought there was sufficient reason (enough of reason), B. G. I. 19} \]

**Exception.** Cardinal numerals (except mīlia) and the indefinite pronoun quidam usually take the ablative with \(ē (ex)\) instead of the partitive genitive:

\[ \text{ūnus ex eīs, one of those; quidam ex militibus, one of the soldiers} \]

77. Genitive of Description or Quality. The genitive of a noun is used to denote quality or kind. Such a genitive is regularly accompanied by an adjective (cf. Ablative of Description, § 116. \(a\)):

\[ \text{vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtīs, a man of (both) great discretion and courage, B. G. III. 5} \]

\(a\). Genitive of Description as Predicate. The descriptive genitive is often used as the predicate of a sentence:

\[ \text{est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, for this is a Gallic custom, B. G. IV. 5} \]
\[ \text{flūminis erat altītūdō pedum circiter trium, the depth of the river was about three feet, B. G. II. 18} \]

\(b\). The descriptive genitive is often used with numerals to denote measure (Genitive of Measure):

\[ \text{fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrūm, he extended a ditch of about four hundred paces, B. G. II. 8} \]
78. Genitive of Value. The adjectives tanti, quanti, pluris, and minoris are used substantively in the predicate to denote indefinite value:

\[ \text{tanti eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, he pointed out that his good will was of so great value in his sight (apud sē); B. G. I. 20} \]

79. Genitive of Material. The genitive may denote the substance, or material, of which anything consists:

\[ \text{aciem instruxit legiōnum quattuor, he drew up a line of battle of four legions, B. G. I. 24} \]

Genitive with Adjectives

80. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites, also participles in -ns used as adjectives, are followed by the genitive:

\[ \text{hominēs barbarī et nostrae consuetūdinis imperīti, men uncivilized and unacquainted with our customs, B. G. IV. 22} \]

\[ \text{reī militāris perissimus, thoroughly skilled in military practice, B. G. I. 21} \]

\[ \text{vir amāns reī públicae, a man fond of the republic} \]

Genitive with Verbs

81. The genitive is used with the following verbs:

a. Verbs of Memory. With reminiscor, remember, and obliviscor, forget:

\[ \text{quod si veteris contumēliae obliviscī velim, but if I should be willing to forget the old affront, B. G. I. 14} \]

\[ \text{reminiscere veteris incommunicī populi Rōmānī, remember the former misfortune of the Roman people, B. G. I. 13} \]

b. Verbs of Feeling. With paenitet, repent, and some others. These take the accusative of the person with the genitive of the thing:

\[ \text{cōnsilīorum eōs paenitet, they repent of their plans (lit. it repents them of their plans), cf. B. G. IV. 5} \]
c. With the verb interest, it concerns:

docet quantō opere reī publicae intersit, he shows how greatly it concerns the common welfare, B. G. II. 5

d. Sometimes with the verb potior, get possession of, which, however, commonly takes the ablative (§ 107. a):

totius Galliae potiri, to get possession of the whole of Gaul, B. G. I. 3

DATIVE

82. Dative of Indirect Object. The dative is the case of the indirect object, and denotes that to which or for which anything is or is done. It is used not only with intransitive verbs, but also with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object:

eī filiam suam dat, he gives (to) him his daughter, B. G. I. 3

83. Dative with Special Verbs. The dative of the indirect object is used with many intransitive verbs meaning to favor, please, help, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, threaten, injure, envy, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare; also with temperō meaning to refrain:

civitāti persuāsit, he persuaded the state, B. G. I. 2

prīma aciēs victīs resistit, the first line resists the vanquished, cf. B. G. I. 25

Note. Most of these verbs are transitive in English, take a direct object in the objective case, and are usually translated as if transitive. But in Latin the real idea is to give a command to, to grant pardon to, to be obedient to, etc., and the dative of the indirect object follows as a natural consequence.

a. In the passive voice these verbs are used impersonally (§ 66), and the dative follows as with the active voice:

mihi quidem persuādētur, I am indeed persuaded (lit. it is persuaded to me), B. G. I. 40

84. Dative with Compounds. The dative of the indirect object is found after many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum:
Iccius, qui tum oppidō praerat, Iccius, who was then in command of the town, B.G. II. 6

Note. Some of these verbs are transitive and some intransitive, the former taking both a direct and an indirect object:

pars civitātis calamitātem populō intulerat, part of the state had brought disaster on the people, B.G. I. 12

a. The dative of the indirect object is used also with several compounds of bene and satis:

si Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, if you will make amends to the Allobroges, B.G. I. 14

85. Dative of Reference. The dative is used to denote the person or thing for whose benefit, or to whose injury, the action is performed:

omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnēbant, all sought safety for themselves in flight, cf. B.G. II. 11

tōtius bellī imperium sibi postulant, they demand for themselves the command of the entire war, B.G. II. 4

86. Dative of Separation. Some verbs signifying to take away from, particularly compounds of ab, dē, and ex, take the dative:

scūtō militi dētrāctō, the shield being snatched from a soldier, B.G. II. 25

Rōmānī Haeduīs libertātem ēripient, the Romans will take away liberty from the Hāduī, cf. B.G. I. 17

Note. This dative differs from the ablative of separation (§ 101) in the fact that there is almost always an idea of advantage or disadvantage to the person concerned. It is thus closely connected with the dative of reference.

87. Dative of Apparent Agent. The dative is sometimes used to denote agency; regularly with the passive periphrastic conjugation (§ 222. II):

Sēquaniōs omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendi, all tortures must be endured by the Sequani, B.G. I. 32

omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls, B.G. I. 31
88. Dative of Possession. The dative is used as a predicate with the verb sum to denote possession:

in mūrō cōnsistentī potestās erat nūlli, no one was able to keep his footing on the wall (lit. the possibility was to no one), B. G. II. 6

nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercātōrībus, traders have no access to them (lit. no access to them is to the traders), B. G. II. 15

Notice that the idea of motion (to them) is expressed by the accusative with ad, while the idea of possession (to the traders) is expressed by the dative.

89. Dative of Purpose or End. The dative is used to denote purpose or end, often with another dative denoting the person benefited or injured (§ 85):

pollicitus est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram, he promised that he would look out for that matter (lit. that matter should be for a care to himself), B. G. I. 33

novissimīs praesidīō erant, they were (for) a protection to the rear, B. G. I. 25

90. Dative with Adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives or adverbs denoting nearness, likeness, fitness, service, and their opposites:

finitimī Belgīs erant, they were adjacent to the Belgæ, B. G. II. 2
castrīs idōnēum locum dēlēgit, he chose a place suitable for the camp, B. G. I. 49

proximī Galliae sunt, they are nearest to Gaul, cf. B. G. II. 3

ACCUSATIVE

91. Direct Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative:

lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt, they sent envoys in regard to peace, B. G. IV. 27

92. Subject of Infinitive. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative:

nostroōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, he found that our men were not inferior, B. G. II. 8

Note. The subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218) is regularly in the nominative (§ 71).
93. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Secondary Object. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching may be followed by two accusatives — one (the direct object) of the person and the other (the secondary object) of the thing:

Caesar Haeduōs frumentum flagitāre, Caesar demanded grain of the Hādui, B.G. I.16

Note. This construction is found with ĕrō, poscō, rogō, flāgitō, doceō, and a few other verbs.

a. With the passive of rogō and of verbs of teaching and a few others the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained:

Active: agrōs Gallōs rogāvit, he asked the Gauls for territory
Passive: Gallī agrōs rogātī sunt, the Gauls were asked for territory

94. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, etc. often take a second accusative referring to the same person or thing as the direct object. This second object is called the adjunct accusative:

eum vergobretum appellant Haeduī, the Hādui call him vergobretus, cf. B.G. I.16
Ariovistum amīcum appellant, they call Ariovistus friend

Note. In the passive the direct object becomes the subject nominative, and the adjunct accusative becomes the predicate nominative:

Ariovistus amīcus appellātur, Ariovistus is called friend

95. Accusative with Compounds. Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take, in addition to the direct object, a secondary object depending on the preposition:

trēs partēs cōpiārum Helvetīi id flūmen trāduxerant, the Helvetīi had led three fourths of their forces across that river, cf. B.G. I.12

Note. In the passive these verbs retain the secondary object:

Belgae Rhēnum trāductī sunt, the Belgae were led across the Rhine, cf. B.G. II.4

96. Accusative of Duration and Extent. The accusative denotes duration of time and extent of space:
haec magnam partem aestātis faciebant, they continued to do this during a great part of the summer, B.G. III. 12
finēs in longitudinem mīlia passuum CCXL patēbant, the territories extended in length two hundred and forty miles, cf. B.G. I. 2

97. Accusative of Place Whither. Place whither is regularly expressed by the accusative with the preposition ad or in; but with names of towns and the word domus, home, the preposition is omitted:

in Italiam profectus est, he set out for Italy, B.G. II. 35
Rōmam ad senātum vēnī, I came to Rome to the senate
Bibracte ire contendit, he hastened (to go) to Bibracte, B.G. I. 23
domum suam quisque revertitur, each returns to his home, cf. B.G. II. 10

Note. Ad is used with names of towns after verbs of motion when the meaning is to the neighborhood of instead of to:

ad Genāvam pervēnīt, he came to (the vicinity of) Geneva, B.G. I. 7

98. Accusative of Kindred Meaning. An intransitive verb may be used with the accusative of a noun, or of a neuter pronoun or adjective of indefinite meaning, which has or suggests the same meaning as the verb:

id eis persuāsit, he persuaded them to this course (lit. he persuaded this (course) to them), B.G. I. 2

In this sentence id, the object of persuāsit, represents the persuasion itself, and so repeats the idea of the verb.

99. Adverbial Accusative. The accusative is often used with the force of an adverb:

nihil saxa timēbant, they did not fear the rocks at all, cf. B.G. III. 13
maximam partem lacte vivunt, they live for the most part on milk, B.G., IV. 1

In these sentences nihil and partem are used adverbially.
SYNTAX — NOUNS

VOCATIVE

100. The word denoting the person called or addressed is put in the vocative case. This has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns in -us of the second declension, which have the vocative in -e:

ibi erunt Helvētiī ubi eōs tū, Caesar, esse volueris, the Helvētiī will be (in the place) where you, Caesar, shall have wished them to be, B.G. I. 13
et tū quoque, Brūtē! and thou too, Brūtus!

ABLATIVE

101. Ablative of Separation. The ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex, is used to denote separation:

hostem ā pugnā prohibēbant, they kept the enemy from battle, cf. B.G. IV. 34
proelīō supersedēre statuit, he decided to hold aloof from battle, B.G. II. 8

a. When the place from which is the name of a town or the word domus, home, the ablative is used without a preposition:

erant itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent, there were two routes by which they could go out from home, B.G. I. 6

Note. When the idea is not directly out of or from a town, but from the neighborhood of it, the preposition ab is used:

ab Ocelō in finēs Vocontiorum pervēnit, he came from (the vicinity of) Ocelum into the territories of the Vocontii, B.G. I. 10

102. Ablative of Origin. The ablative is used, with or without ab or ex, to denote the origin from which anything is derived:

initium ortum est ab Ambiorīgē, the beginning was made by (lit. arose from) Ambiorix, B.G. V. 25
Pisō amplissimō genere nātus est, Piso was born of most distinguished family, cf. B.G. IV. 12
103. Ablative of Material. The ablative is used with *ex* or *de* to denote the *material* of which anything consists:

nāvēs factae sunt *ex* rōbore, the ships were made of oak, cf. B. G. III. 13

104. Ablative of Agent. The *agent* or *doer* of an act is expressed after passive verbs by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*:

*ab* non nūllīs *Galīs* sollicitābantur, *they were incited by some* (of the) Gauls, cf. B. G. II. 1

Note. When the agent is considered as a *means to an end*, the accusative with *per* is used:

*per* trēs potentiēs populōs Galliae potīrī posse spērant, *through three powerful nations they hope to be able to get possession of Gaul*, cf. B. G. I. 3

105. Ablative of Comparison. The comparative degree without *quam* is regularly followed by the ablative:

celerius omnium opinione vēnit, *he came more quickly than any one had expected* (lit. than the expectation of all), cf. B. G. II. 3

Note 1. The comparative may, however, be followed by *quam*, and the two things compared are then put in the same case:

*iūstitia est* melior *quam* laus, *justice is better than praise*

Note 2. After the comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius*, without *quam*, a word of measure or number is often used in the case it would have if there were no comparative:

*aditus in* lātitudinem nōn *amplius pedum* CC relinquēbātur, *an approach of not more than two hundred feet in width was left* (lit. an approach of two hundred feet — not more), B. G. II. 29

In this sentence *pedum* is the genitive of measure (§ 77. b), the construction it would have if *amplius* were not used.

106. Ablative of Means. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action:

equitātum suō sūmpτā alit, *he maintains the cavalry at* (by means of) *his own expense*, cf. B. G. I. 18

*a*. The ablative of means is used to denote the *way by which*:

eōdem itinere contendidt, *he hastened by the same route*, B. G. I. 21
107. Ablative with Special Words. The ablative is used:
   a. With the verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor, and their compounds:

   Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus est, Caesar employed the same guides, cf. B.G. II. 7
   castrīs nostrī potītī sunt, our men got possession of the camp, B.G. I. 26
   commodīs fruuntur, they enjoy advantages, cf. B.G. III. 22

   Note. Potior may take the genitive (§ 81. d).

   b. With the verbs fidō, cōnfidō, nītor, and the verbal adjective frētus:

   ēīs Crassus nōn multum cōnfidēbat, Crassus placed little reliance in these, cf. B.G. III. 25
   Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriōs frētī sunt, the Sotiates relied on their former victories, cf. B.G. III. 21

   c. With opus est and ūsus est, there is need:

      opus factō est, there is need of action, cf. B.G. I. 42

   Note. Opus may be used as a predicate with the thing needed as subject nominative. The person needing is in the dative:

      sī quid mihi opus est, if I need anything

108. Ablative of Value or Price. With verbs of buying and selling the price is expressed by the ablative:

      parvō pretiō redēmpta, bought in at a low price, B.G. I. 18

   Note. For the genitive of value see § 78.

109. Ablative of Cause. The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express cause:

      Dumnorīx grātiā plurimum poterat, Dumnorix had great power because of his influence, B.G. I. 9

   Note. The ablatives causā and grātiā, for the sake, regularly follow a noun in the genitive:

      huius potentiae causā, for the sake of this power, B.G. I. 18

110. Ablative of Manner. The manner of an action is expressed by the ablative, either with an adjective modifier or with cum, sometimes with both:
nūdō corpore pugnant, they fight with body unprotected, cf. B.G. I. 25
mognō cum strepitu ēgressī sunt, they went forth with great din, cf. B.G. II. 11

111. Ablative of Accordance. The ablative may express that in accordance with which anything is, or is done, often with ex or dē:

īnstitūtō suō Caesar cōpiās suās ēdūxit, Caesar led out his forces according to his custom, B.G. I. 50

112. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. The circumstance or situation under which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative:

eam rem imperiō nostrō cósequī nōn poterant, they could not accomplish that under our sway, cf. B.G. II. 1

113. Ablative of Accompaniment. The ablative is used to denote accompaniment, regularly with cum:

intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcerim, I know with how great danger I did that, B.G. I. 17
cum puerīs mulieribusque, with children and women, B.G. II. 28

Note. With some military expressions cum may be omitted; the noun is then regularly modified by an adjective:

Caesar subsequebatur omnibus cōpiās, Caesar followed with all his forces, B.G. II. 19

a. Verbs of contention and the like require cum:

cum Germānīs contendunt, they fight with the Germans, B.G. I. 1

114. Ablative of Measure of Difference. With words that express or imply comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference:

alterum iter erat multitō facilius, the other route was much easier (lit. easier by much), cf. B.G. I. 6
ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, about two miles away they were awaiting the arrival of the Romans (lit. off (ā) by two miles), B.G. V. 32. The preposition ā is here used as an adverb
115. Ablative of Respect. The ablative denotes *in what respect* something is true:

*linguā inter sē differunt*, they differ from one another in language,
B. G. I. 1

*infirmiōrēs animō*, dispirited (lit. weaker in respect to courage),
B. G. III. 24

116. Ablative of Description or Quality. The ablative with an adjective modifier is used to denote quality or kind:

*hominēs inimīcō animō*, men of unfriendly disposition, B. G. I. 7

*a*. Either the genitive (§ 77) or ablative may be used in description, but in general:

1. Statements of *measure, number, time, and space* are in the genitive.

2. Physical qualities are in the ablative.

*mūrum pedum sēdecim perdūcit*, he extended a wall (of) sixteen feet,
B. G. I. 8

*Germanī ingenti magnitūdine corporum sunt*, the Germans are of great size of body, cf. B. G. I. 39

*b*. The ablative of description, like the genitive of description, may be used as the predicate of a sentence; cf. *magnitūdine* in the last example.

117. Ablative Absolute. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a participle expressed or understood in agreement may be used absolutely, that is, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.

While grammatically independent, the ablative absolute has a logical relation to the rest of the sentence. This relation is best expressed in translation by changing the ablative absolute into a clause introduced by *if, when, since, though*, etc.

The ablative absolute may express the following relations:

*a*. Condition:

*a quibus nōs dēfendere, trādītīs armīs, nōn poterimus*, from these we cannot defend ourselves if we surrender our arms (lit. our arms having been surrendered), B. G. II. 31
b. Time:

initā aestival Q. Pedium misit, in the beginning of summer (lit. summer having been begun) he sent Quintus Pedius, B.G. II. 2

c. Cause:

Caesarem certiorem faciunt sēsē, depopulātīs agrīs, nēn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre, they inform Cæsar that, since their fields have been laid waste, they cannot easily ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns (lit. their fields having been laid waste), B.G. I. 11

d. Concession:

turribus excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, even though towers had been erected, nevertheless the height of the sterns of the barbarian ships rose above them (lit. towers having been erected), B.G. III. 14

e. Circumstance:

ea omnia, inscientibus ipsis, fēcerat, he had done all those things without their knowledge (lit. they being unaware), cf. B.G. I. 19

f. Means:

nāvibus iunctīs, cōnātī sunt, they tried by means of joining boats (lit. boats having been joined), cf. B.G. I. 8

118. Special Constructions of the Ablative Absolute. A noun (or pronoun) with an adjective, or a noun (or pronoun) with a noun, may form an ablative absolute construction without an accompanying participle. This occurs when the sense demands the present participle of sum, which is lacking in Latin:

Sēquanīs invitīs, īre nēn poterant, if the Sequani should be unwilling, they could not go (lit. the Sequani (being) unwilling), B.G. I. 9

ea omnia, mē invitō, fēcistī, you have done all those things against my will (lit. I (being) unwilling), cf. B.G. I. 19

is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōnsulibus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit, he made a conspiracy in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso (lit. Messala and Piso (being) consuls), B.G. I. 2
119. Ablative of Time. The time at which or within which is expressed by the ablative:

*eō tempore prīncipātum* in cīvitātē obtinēbat, at that time he held the chief position in the state, B.G. I. 3

*paučīs annīs omnēs ex Galliāe fīnibus pellentur*, within a few years all will be driven from the territories of Gaul, B.G. I. 31

**Note.** Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative instead of by the accusative (§ 96):

*eā tōtā nocte continenter iērunt*, they marched uninterruptedly during that entire night, B.G. I. 26

120. Ablative of Place Where. Place where is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition in. Names of towns omit the preposition:

*in Germānōrūm fīnibus bellum gerunt*, they wage war in the territories of the Germans, cf. B.G. I. 1

*proelium Philippiī factum est*, the battle was fought at Philippi

a. The so-called *locative case* is used instead of the ablative of place in the singular of the names of towns of the first and second declensions; also *domī, at home*. The locative case ends in *-ae* in the first declension, and in *-i* in the second, being just like the genitive singular:

*conciliō Gallōrum Samarōbrīvae peractō, after a council of the Gauls had been brought to an end at Samarobrīva*, B.G. V. 24

*Caesar Avarīcī complūrēs diēs commorātūs, Caesar after tarrying several days at Avaricum*, B.G. VII. 32

*domī nihil erat, there was nothing at home*, B.G. I. 28

b. The preposition is regularly omitted with the ablatives *locō, locīs, parte, partibus*, when they are modified by an adjective or a genitive:

*alienō locō proelium committunt*, they join battle in an unfavorable place, B.G. I. 15

**Note 1.** The *way by which* is put in the ablative case without a preposition:

*frūmentum flūmine Ararī subvexerat*, he had brought grain up the river Saōne, cf. B.G. I. 16

**Note 2.** For expressions denoting the *place from which* see § 101. a.
ADJECTIVES

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

121. Adjectives have in general the same distinctions of meaning for the *positive, comparative, and superlative* degrees as in English:

*altus, high; altior, higher; altissimus, highest*

122. The comparative of an adjective sometimes denotes merely a high degree of the quality:

*sì quid erat dūrius, if there was any uncommonly hard (task),
  B.G. I. 48*

123. The superlative of an adjective sometimes denotes simply a very high degree of the quality:

*mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung, B. G. I. 6*

124. The superlative of an adjective with *quam* preceding denotes the highest degree possible of the quality:

*quam maximum numerum coemēbant, they purchased the largest num-
  ber possible, B.G. I. 3*

SPECIAL USES OF ADJECTIVES

125. The adjectives *medius, imus, summus,* and *reliquus* may denote a part of the object described:

*in colle mediō aciem īnstruīxit, he drew up a line of battle in the
  middle of the hill, B.G. I. 24*

*summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur, the top of the mountain was held
  by Labienus, cf. B.G. I. 22*

126. An adjective in regular agreement with a noun sometimes has the meaning of an adverb:

*animadvertit Caesar Sēquanōs trīstēs terram intuērī, Caesar noticed
  that the Sequani sadly kept their eyes upon the ground, B.G. I. 32*

127. Adjectives are often used *substantively,* that is, like nouns:

*nostri magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt, our (men) slew a large
  number of them, B.G. II. 10*
SYNTAX — PRONOUNS  

PRONOUNS

128. Pronouns in general may be used either as substantives or as adjectives, and the rules for nouns and adjectives apply to them accordingly. In their substantive use they are properly called pronouns. In their adjective use they should be called pronominal adjectives.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

129. Nominative Use. The nominative forms of the personal pronouns, ego, tū, nōs, and vōs, are not used except for emphasis.

\[ \text{ego certē meum officium praestiterō, I, at least, will have done my duty. B.G. IV. 25} \]

130. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. There are no regular personal pronouns of the third person, their place being supplied by a demonstrative, generally is (§ 135):

\[ \text{lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdīderunt, they sent envoys to Caesar and surrendered to him, B.G. II. 28} \]

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

131. The possessive pronominal adjectives, meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus, agree in gender, number, and case with the word they modify, not with the word denoting the possessor:

\[ \text{puella librōs meōs habet, the girl has my books} \]

Here the possessive, meōs, agrees with librōs, the things possessed, although this is plural masculine accusative, while the possessor, puella, is singular feminine nominative.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

132. Direct Reflexives. The reflexive pronoun, suī, sībi, sē, and its possessive adjective, suus, -a, -um, regularly refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand:

\[ \text{sē suaque dēdīderunt, they surrendered themselves and their property, B.G. II. 15} \]
133. Indirect Reflexives. In a subordinate clause the reflexive and its possessive adjective often refer back to the subject of the main clause. They are then called indirect reflexives:

 difficulté Galli uti sē certōrem faciant, he directs the Gauls to inform him, cf. B.G. II. 2

Note. The reflexive, sūi, sībi, sē, refers to the third person only. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives, thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudō mē, I praise myself</td>
<td>laudāmus nōs, we praise ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudās tē, you praise yourself</td>
<td>laudātis vōs, you praise yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudat sē, he praises himself</td>
<td>laudant sē, they praise themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

134. Hic and Ille. Hic refers to something near; ille to something remote. Their most common meaning is conveyed by the words this and that:

mea haec est Gallia, sīcut illa vestra, this (part of) Gaul is mine, just as that (part) is yours, cf. B.G. I. 44

a. When hic and ille are used together, hic generally refers to the latter of two objects, and ille to the former:

hī rōrūs in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent, the latter (just mentioned) again in their turn are in arms the year after, the former (mentioned previously) remain at home, B.G. IV. 1

135. Is. Is as a demonstrative pronoun may mean either this or that.

Is is often used as a personal pronoun of the third person (he, she, it, her, him, them):

ei filiam dat, he gives (to) him his daughter, B.G. I. 3
THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

136. The intensive pronoun, *ipse*, standing either alone or in agreement with another word, expresses emphasis or contrast. Its use must be carefully distinguished from that of the reflexive, particularly as we use the word *self* in translating both. The following examples illustrate the difference:

\[ \text{sē laudat, he praises himself; ipse puerum laudat, he himself praises the boy} \]

\( a. \) *Ipse* is sometimes used in place of the indirect reflexive (§ 133):

\[ \text{si quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, (he said) if he needed anything from Cæsar (lit. if any need was to himself), B.G. I. 34} \]

\( b. \) *Ipse* is often used in the genitive case with a possessive pronoun to strengthen the possessive idea:

\[ \text{sua ipsōrum lingvā ētuntur, they employ their own language} \]
\[ \text{suum ipsīus exercitum habet, he has his own army} \]

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

137. General Rule. Relative pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but their case depends on their construction in the clause in which they are found:

\[ \text{Sabinus, cum eis cōpiās quās ā Cæsare accēperat, Sabinus, with those forces which he had received from Cæsar, B.G. III. 17} \]

138. Agreement with a Predicate Noun or Appositive. A relative pronoun regularly agrees with a predicate noun or appositive in its own clause, rather than with its antecedent:

\[ \text{Vesontiō, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani, B.G. I. 38} \]

139. Relative Clause preceding. A relative clause when emphatic precedes the clause containing the antecedent:

\[ \text{quōrum per finēs ierant, his imperāvit, he ordered these through whose territories they had gone, B.G. I. 28} \]
140. Antecedent in the Relative Clause. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is sometimes placed in the relative clause:

quam fecerat classem iubet convenire, he ordered the fleet which he had built up to assemble (lit. what fleet he had etc.), B. G. IV. 21

141. Repetition of the Antecedent. The antecedent is sometimes repeated with the relative:

erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exire possent, there were two ways by which (ways) they could go out from home, B. G. I. 6

142. Omission of the Antecedent. The antecedent may be omitted if it is a pronoun or an indefinite word:

qui cognōscerent mīsit, he sent (men) to reconnoiter, B. G. I. 21

143. Relative beginning a New Sentence. A relative pronoun, referring to an antecedent in the preceding sentence, often stands at the beginning of a new sentence. In such cases the relative is best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun:

qui cum eum in itinere convēnissent etc., when these had met him on the way etc., B. G. I. 27

nostri non eādem alacritāte ūtēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās removēri iussit, our men did not exert themselves with the same eagerness. When Cæsar noticed this, he ordered the ships of war to be removed, B. G. IV. 24, 25

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

144. The indefinite pronouns and adjectives are used to indicate that some person or thing is meant without designating which one; some of the most common and their uses are:

a. Quis, some one, any one, some, any, is the least exact of the indefinites, and stands generally after sī, nisi, nē, or num; quīdam, a certain one, a certain, is the most definite:

sī quis dīcit, if anybody says

verētur nē quis veniat, he fears that some one may come

quīdam ex mīlitibus dīxit, a certain one of the soldiers said, B. G. I. 42
b. Aliquis, some one, some, is more definite than quis:
   *aliquis dicit, some one may say*

c. Quisquam, any one, and the indefinite adjective ullus, any, are used commonly in negative sentences, and in sentences implying a negative:
   *cūr quisquam iūdicāret? why should any one judge? B.G. I. 40*
   *neque ūlla necessitāte continēbantur, nor were they restrained by any necessity, B.G. II. 11*

d. Alius, another, and alter, the other (of two), when used in pairs have the following meanings:
   *alius . . . alius, one . . . another*
   *alli . . . aliī, some . . . others*
   *alterī . . . alterī, the one party . . . the other*

1. Alius used twice in different cases in the same clause expresses just half the meaning conveyed:
   *alius aliā ex nāvi sē adgregābat, they gathered, (one from one ship,)*
   *another from another ship, B.G. IV. 26*
   *alī aliam in partem ferēbantur, they rushed, (some in one direction,)*
   *others in another direction, B.G. II. 24*

145. Adverbs in the comparative degree, like adjectives (§§ 122, 123), may indicate merely a high degree of what they express without denoting real comparison. The superlative also may express a very high degree, instead of the highest:
   *sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit, he realized that he was being put off too long, B.G. I. 16*
   *plūrimum domī poterat, he was very powerful at home, cf. B.G. I. 20*

NEGATIVE ADVERBS

146. The usual negative adverb is nōn; this is regular with the indicative mood.

a. Nōn combined with another negative word, as nullus, makes an indefinite affirmative: *nōn nūlli, some*
147. Ne is used with the subjunctive denoting negative purpose, will, or desire; this includes commands in indirect discourse:

\( \text{ad haec cōnstitit ne tempus dīmitteret, he took his stand by these that he might not lose time, B.G. II. 21} \)

\( \text{quā rē ne committeret, (he told him) that he should therefore not bring it to pass, B.G. I. 13} \)

**PREPOSITIONS**

148. Prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative cases.

149. **Prepositions with the Accusative.** The prepositions used with the accusative are \( \text{ad, adversus, ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, in, īnfrā, inter, intrā, īūxtā, ob, penes, per, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, sub, super, suprā, trāns, ultrā, versus.} \)

**Note.** The adjectives \( \text{propior, proximus,} \) and the adverbs \( \text{propius, proximē,} \) sometimes govern the accusative like prepositions:

\( \text{proxi̇mē Rhēnum, next to the Rhine; propius tumulum, nearer the mound} \)

150. **Prepositions with the Ablative.** The prepositions used with the ablative are \( \text{ā (ab, abs), cōram, cum, dē, ē (ex), in, prae, prō, sine, sub, tenus.} \)

a. Cum is attached to the ablative of the personal, reflexive, interrogative, and relative pronouns as an enclitic:

\( \text{nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit, no one has striven with me without his destruction, B.G. I. 36} \)
\( \text{hunc sēcum habēre in primīs cōnstituerat, him especially he had decided to keep with him, B.G. V. 6} \)
\( \text{proxi̇mī sunt Germānīs, quibuscum continentēr bellum gerunt, they are nearest to the Germans, with whom they continually wage war, B.G. I. 1} \)

**Note.** In and sub govern both cases. With the accusative they denote motion toward a place; with the ablative rest in a place:

\( \text{exercitum sub iugum mittit, he sends the army under the yoke} \)
\( \text{in oppidō manet, he remains in the town} \)
CONJUNCTIONS

151. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, and clauses of the same rank, or main clauses with subordinate clauses.

a. Coördinating Conjunctions. Coördinating conjunctions (connecting expressions of equal rank) are such words as et, atque, ac, -que, enim, sed, autem, etc.

b. Subordinating Conjunctions. Subordinating conjunctions (connecting dependent clauses with the clauses upon which they depend) are such words as cum, antequam, quod, si, etsi, quamvis, etc.

VERBS

152. Terms. The terms transitive, intransitive, impersonal, voice (active and passive), mood, tense, etc. are used in general as in English.

TENSES AND MOODS

Tenses of the Indicative

153. Present Tense. The present tense represents an action or state as now taking place or existing:

hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, the Belgae are the bravest of all these, B.G. I. 1

a. Historical Present. The present is sometimes used instead of a past tense to describe a past action more vividly:

ad Galbam accurrunt atque docent etc., they rush up to Galba and point out etc., B.G. III. 5

Note. The historical present may be translated by either a present or a past tense.

154. Past Descriptive Tense. The past descriptive tense is used:

a. To denote an action going on in past time:

Helvētīi agrōs populābantur, the Helvetii were devastating the fields, B.G. I. 11

1 The past descriptive is often called the imperfect.
b. In description:
mons altissimus *impendēbat*, *a very high mountain overhung*, B.G. I. 6

c. To denote an action as attempted, as customary, or as begun:
nostrōs *prohibēbant*, *they tried to keep back our men*, B.G. V. 9
se in proxima oppida *recipiēbant*, *they (regularly) retreated to the nearest town*, B.G. III. 12
*suspicābātur*, *he was beginning to suspect*, B.G. IV. 31

Note. In narration the forward steps of the action are in the perfect tense, descriptive passages in the past descriptive.

155. Future Tense. The future tense denotes an act or state that will take place in the future:

*vōbīscum pācem faciam*, *I will make peace with you*, B.G. I. 14

156. Perfect Tense. The perfect tense has two uses. It may represent:
a. An action as now completed (present perfect). It is then translated with the English auxiliary have:

*utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus*, *as I have shown above*, B.G. II. 1

b. An action or state as a fact in past time (past absolute):

*eō exercitum dūxit*, *he led his army thither*, B.G. III. 28

Note. The past participle with *habeō* has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the continued effect of the action of the verb:

*vectīgālia redēmpta habet*, *he has bought up the revenues*, B.G. I. 18

157. Past Perfect Tense. The past perfect tense represents an action as completed in past time:

*Helvētīi iam suās cōpiās trādīxerant*, *the Helvetii had already led their troops across*, B.G. I. 11

158. Future Perfect Tense. The future perfect tense represents the action as completed in the future:

*ubi cōnstitueris*, *where you shall have determined*, B.G. I. 13

1 The past perfect is often called the pluperfect.
TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

In Independent Clauses

159. When the subjunctive is used independently, its tense values are as follows:

a. The present and perfect subjunctive refer to future time:

- *eāmus* (§ 172. a), let us go
- *né despexeris* (§ 172. c), do not despise

Note. Exhortations, wishes, commands, etc., from their very nature, refer to the future. *Eāmus* and *dēspexeris* above imply that the acts are not yet performed.

b. The past\(^1\) subjunctive generally refers to present time, but sometimes to past time:

- *utinam scriberet* (§ 172. e. 2), O that he were writing (now). This implies that the act is not now going on.
- *quid facerem?* (§ 172. d), what was I to do?
- *tum viderēs* (§ 172. f), then you might have seen

c. The past perfect\(^1\) subjunctive refers to past time:

- *utinam scripsisset* (§ 172. e. 3), O that he had written (then). This implies that the act was not then performed

In Dependent Clauses

160. In dependent clauses the tenses of the subjunctive are determined by the tenses of the main verb, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

161. Sequence of Tenses. The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are classified as primary and secondary. The primary tenses are those referring to present or future time; the secondary tenses are those referring to past time.

\(^1\) The past subjunctive is often called the imperfect, and the past perfect the pluperfect.
The following table represents this division, the primary tenses being marked (1) and the secondary tenses (2):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Present</td>
<td>(1) Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Past descriptive</td>
<td>(2) Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) Future</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Perfect (past absolute, § 156. b)</td>
<td>(1) Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Past perfect</td>
<td>(2) Past perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) Future perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I. The present and past subjunctive denote incomplete action (that is, present or future with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I ask</em></td>
<td><em>quid dicit</em> (1) what he says</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I asked</em></td>
<td><em>quid diceret</em> (2) what he said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I shall ask</em></td>
<td><em>quid dixerit</em> (1) what he said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I had asked</em></td>
<td><em>quid dixisset</em> (2) what he had said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I shall have asked</em></td>
<td><em>quid dixeret</em> (1) what he said</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. The perfect and past perfect subjunctive denote completed action (that is, past with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I ask</em></td>
<td><em>quid dixeret</em> (1) what he said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I asked</em></td>
<td><em>quid dixisset</em> (2) what he had said</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From this use of tenses follows the rule:

162. **Primary tenses in the indicative are followed by primary tenses in the subjunctive, and secondary by secondary.**
163. Exceptions. Occasional exceptions to sequence occur, especially in long passages:

\( a. \) Sometimes a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive:

\[
\text{respondit si obsidēs dentur sēsē pācem esse factūrum, he replied that he would make peace if hostages should be given, B.G. I. 14}
\]

\( b. \) The perfect indicative, when past absolute (§ 156. \( b \)), is regularly a secondary tense; but when used as a present perfect (§ 156. \( a \)) it may be followed by the primary sequence:

\[
\text{ita didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus, we have been so trained that we strive more by courage, B.G. I. 13}
\]

\( c. \) A perfect subjunctive, particularly in clauses of result (§ 179), may follow a secondary tense:

\[
\text{temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ut tempus défuerit, so short was the time that there was no opportunity, B.G. II. 21}
\]

164. Historical Present. The historical present (§ 153. \( a \)) allows either primary or secondary sequence:

\[
\text{diem dicunt quā die conveniant, they appoint a day on which (day) they shall assemble, B.G. I. 6}
\]

\[
\text{esse spem docent, si extrēmum auxilium experīrentur, they showed that there was hope, if they should try a last resource, B.G. III. 5}
\]

165. Historical Infinitive. The historical infinitive (§ 218) is regularly followed by a secondary tense:

\[
\text{interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pollicitī, flāgitāre, meanwhile Caesar demanded of the Hāduī every day the grain which they had promised, B.G. I. 16}
\]

**Tenses of the Infinitive**

166. \( a. \) Not in Indirect Discourse. Except in indirect discourse (§ 203) only the present and perfect infinitives are used; the present represents the action of the verb as in progress with no distinct reference to time, the perfect as completed.

\[
\text{bellum gerere dēbet, he ought to be waging war}
\]

\[
\text{pudet mē hoc fēcisse, I am ashamed to have done this}
\]
b. In Indirect Discourse. In indirect discourse the tenses of the infinitive denote a time that is present, past, or future with reference to the time denoted by the verb of saying etc. by which the indirect discourse is introduced. Thus:

1. The present infinitive expresses the same time as that of the verb of saying:

   dicit esse spem, he says that there is hope
   dicēbat esse spem, he said that there was hope
   dicet esse spem, he will say that there is hope

2. The perfect infinitive expresses time before that of the verb of saying:

   dicit fuisse spem, he says that there was hope
   dicēbat fuisse spem, he said that there had been hope
   dicet fuisse spem, he will say that there was hope

3. The future infinitive expresses time later than that of the verb of saying:

   dicit futūram esse spem, he says that there will be hope
   dicēbat futūram esse spem, he said that there would be hope
   dicet futūram esse spem, he will say that there will be hope

Tenses of the Participle

167. The tenses of the participle, like those of the infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 166. b), express a time present, past, or future with reference to the verb with which it is used:

   haec flēns ā Caesare petiit, weeping he asked this from Cæsar, B.G. I. 20
   dē his rēbus certior factus, trānseuntēs adgressus est, when he had been informed of these matters, he attacked them as they were crossing (lit. having been informed, he attacked (them) crossing)
MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

THE INDICATIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

168. The indicative mood is used to state a real or an assumed fact or to ask a question.

169. Statement of Facts. Any form of the indicative may be used to state a real or an assumed fact:

- est aliud iter, there is another road
- Ariovistus fuit rex, Ariovistus was king
- Caesar veniet, Caesar will come

170. Questions. A question may be asked, as in English, by the use of an interrogative pronoun or adverb:

- quis hoc fecit? who did this?
- ubi est puer? where is the boy?

a. Questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no" have no introductory interrogative in English, but in Latin are regularly introduced by the interrogative particles -ne, nōnne, or num.

1. If information only is sought, and no particular answer suggested, the enclitic -ne is added to the first word:

- scribitne epistulam? is he writing the letter?

2. Nōnne expects an affirmative answer:

- nōnne epistulam scribit? he is writing the letter, is he not? or, is he not writing the letter?

3. Num expects a negative answer:

- num epistulam scribit? he is not writing the letter, is he?

b. A double, or alternative, question asks which of two supposed cases is true.

1. The first member of a double question is generally introduced by utrum or -ne (neither of which is to be translated); the second member by an, or:

- utrum scribet, an veniet? will he write, or come?
- scribetne, an veniet? will he write, or come?
Note. Frequently the first member has no introductory word:

scribet, an veniet? will he write, or come?

2. If the second member means simply or not, annōn is used in direct questions, necne in indirect questions (§ 201):

scribitne annōn? is he writing or not?
quaeō scribatne necne, I ask whether he is writing or not
dēclārābant utrum ex ūsū esset necne, they announced whether it was advantageous or not, cf. B.G. I. 50

171. Rhetorical Questions. A rhetorical question is one that is asked simply for effect, and seeks no information:

tālēsne iniūriās perferre possum? can I endure such injuries?

The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences

172. The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express:

a. Exhortation, in the first person plural, present tense; the negative is nē:

nē hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus, let us not kill these robbers, cf. B.G. VII. 36

b. Command, in the third person, present tense:

obsidēs reddat, let him return the hostages, B.G. I. 35

c. Negative Command, or Prohibition, with the negative nē:

nē dēspexeris or nē dēspiciās, do not despise

Note 1. Negative command is generally expressed, however, by nōli, nōlite, with the present infinitive. See § 173. note.

Note 2. The uses under a, b, and c are often called volitive (from volō, will) subjunctives, since they express an act of the will.

d. Deliberation, in questions implying doubt, perplexity, or indignation:

quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsistam? what plan of battle shall I adopt? cf. B.G. III. 14

cūr dēspērētis? why should you despair? B.G. I. 40

Note. Such questions are usually rhetorical (§ 171) in character.
e. Wish (Optative Subjunctive), often with utinam. The negative is nē. The three forms of wishes and their expression in Latin are as follows:

1. A future wish regarded as possible of fulfillment; present (less frequently perfect) subjunctive, with or without utinam:

\[
\begin{align*}
(\text{utinam}) & \text{ scribat} \\
(\text{utinam}) & \text{ scripsisset}
\end{align*}
\]

\( \text{may he write} \)

2. A wish unfulfilled in present time; past subjunctive with utinam:

\( \text{utinam scriberet, would (or I wish) that he were writing} \)

3. A wish unfulfilled in past time; past perfect subjunctive with utinam:

\( \text{utinam scripsisset, would (or I wish) that he had written} \)

f. Possibility (Potential Subjunctive), to express what may be or might be. The negative is nōn:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{aliquis dīcat, some one may say} \\
tum viderēs, then you might have seen
\end{align*}
\]

Note. The subjunctive denoting possibility is often used as the conclusion of an expressed or implied condition:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{laudētur (si hoc faciat), he would be praised (if he should do this)} \\
\text{laudārētur (si hoc faceret), he would be praised (if he were doing this)} \\
\text{laudātus esset (si hoc fēcisset), he would have been praised (if he had done this)}
\end{align*}
\]

The Imperative

173. The imperative is used to express a command or entreaty:

"dēsītē," inquit, "commīlitōnēs," "leap down, fellow soldiers," he said, B. G. IV. 25

Note. A negative command, or prohibition, is regularly expressed by nōli, nōlite, with the infinitive (§ 172. e, note 1):

\( \text{nōli committere, do not bring it to pass, cf. B. G. I. 13} \)
MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

Clauses of Purpose

174. Clauses denoting the purpose of an action are usually introduced by ut, that (in order that), affirmative; and nē, that not, lest, negative; and stand in the subjunctive mood:

nōn nūllī ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent remanēbant, some remained that they might avoid the suspicion of fear, B.G. I. 39
nē graviōrī bellō occurreret ad exercitum proficīscitur, he set out for the army that he might not meet with too serious a war, B.G. IV. 6

175. Relative Clauses of Purpose. A purpose clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

lēgātōs mittunt quī dicerent, they sent envoys to say (lit. who should say), B.G. I. 7

176. Relative Purpose Clauses containing a Comparative. Purpose clauses containing a comparative are regularly introduced by quō, which is equivalent to ut eō:

manipulōs laxāre iussit quō facilius gladiīs utī possent, he gave orders to open the ranks that they might be able to use their swords more easily, B.G. II. 25

Note. For substantive clauses of purpose see (§ 183). Purpose may be expressed also by the gerund (§§ 223, 225), the gerundive (§§ 224, 225), or the supine (§ 226. a).

Clauses of Description or Characteristic

177. A relative clause that describes an antecedent by telling what kind of person or thing it is, is called a clause of description or characteristic, and takes the subjunctive:

domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, there was nothing at home whereby they could allay hunger, B.G. I. 28
a. Relative clauses of description are especially common after such expressions as est qui, sunt qui, unus est qui, solus est qui:

erant omnino itinera duo quibus itineribus domo exire possent, there were in all two ways by which they could go out from home, B.G. I. 6

unus sum qui adduci non potuerim, I am the only one who could not be influenced, B.G. I. 3

178. A relative clause that simply tells what person or thing the antecedent is, instead of what kind it is, or one that only adds a fact without which the antecedent clause would still be complete, takes the indicative:

ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, negat se posse etc., when the day which he had decided upon with the envoys came, he said that he could not etc., B.G. I. 8

Quam constituerat tells what day, not what kind of day.

auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt, they summoned reinforcements from Britain, which is situated opposite to those regions, B.G. III. 9

The antecedent clause makes complete sense without the quae clause.

For relative clauses of description denoting cause see § 190.

Clauses of Result

179. Clauses that express the result of some act or state mentioned in the main clause are introduced by ut, so that, and take the subjunctive mood. The negative in clauses of result is non:

mons impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent, a mountain towered above, so that a very few (men) could easily keep (them) back, B.G. I. 6

collis nascetur silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspicui posset, a hill rose, wooded, so that a view within could not easily be gained, B.G. II. 18
Note. A result clause may often be recognized by the presence in the main clause of some word meaning so, so great, such, etc., like ita, sic, tantus, tālis, etc.:

*ita Helvētīi institūtī sunt utī obsidēs accipere cōnsuērīnt*, the Helvētīi have been so trained that they are accustomed to take hostages, B.G. I. 14

180. Relative Clauses of Result. A clause of result may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vivere, no one is so old that he does not think (lit. who does not think) that he can live for a year

Note. Relative clauses of purpose or result may often be tested by noting whether ut with a personal or demonstrative pronoun can be substituted for the relative. In the last sentence ut is might have been used instead of quī.

For substantive clauses of result see § 187.

**Substantive, or Noun, Clauses**

181. A substantive clause is one that is used like a noun, that is, as the subject or object of a verb, or as an appositive or predicate.

182. *Quod* Clauses of Fact. Substantive clauses introduced by *quod*, that, take the indicative to state a fact:

*quod glōriāmini, eōdem pertinet*, (the fact) that you boast, amounts to the same thing, B.G. I. 14

The *quod* clause is the subject of *pertinet*.

*hōc est miserior fortūna, quod nē in occultō quidem querī audent*, their lot is the more pitiful in this, that they do not dare to complain even in secret, B.G. I. 32

The *quod* clause is in apposition with *hōc*.

*a. Quod* at the beginning of a sentence often has the meaning as to the fact that:

*quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es* etc., as to the fact that you attacked one canton unexpectedly etc., B.G. I. 13

183. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Substantive clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive are used after verbs of commanding, persuading,
requesting, urging, wishing, and similar verbs whose action is directed toward the future:

his utī conquīrērent imperāvit, he ordered these to hunt (them) up (lit. that they should hunt (them) up), B.G. I. 28

persuādet Castīcō ut rēgnum occupāret, he persuades Caticus to seize the supreme power (lit. that he should seize), B.G. I. 3

In these sentences the ut clause is used as object.

dat negotium Senonibus ut ea cognōscant, he employs the Senones to find this out (lit. he gives employment to the Senones etc.), B.G. II. 2

Here the ut clause is in apposition with negotium.

erat ei praeceptum nē proelium committeret, it had been enjoined on him that he should not engage in battle, B.G. I. 22

Here the nē clause is the subject of erat praeceptum.

Note. Cōnor, iubeo, patior, volō, nōlo, 2nd mālo take the infinitive:

nāvēs longās paulum removērī iussit, he ordered the ships of war to be withdrawn a little, B.G. IV. 25

184. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing. After verbs of fearing substantive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by nē, rendered that, lest, or by ut, rendered that not:

verēbantur nē ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur, they feared that our army would be led against them, cf. B.G. II. 1

verēbantur ut exercitus noster ad eōs addūcerētur, they feared that our army would not be led against them

185. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Hindering and Opposing. Verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like, are followed by substantive clauses with the subjunctive, introduced by nē, quīn, or quō minus. Nē is used when the main verb is affirmative, quīn when it is negatived, quō minus in either case:

dēterrēre potes nē maiōr multitūdō trādūcātur, you are able to prevent a larger number from being brought over, B.G. I. 31

Germanī retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla conicerent, the Germans could not be prevented from hurling their weapons, B.G. I. 47

neque recūsābunt quō minus sub Germanōrum imperiō sint, nor will they refuse to be under the sway of the Germans, cf. B.G. I. 31
a. Some of these verbs also allow the infinitive:

nostros nāvibus ēgredit prohibēbant, they kept our men from going forth from the ships, B.G. IV. 24

186. Substantive Clauses after nōn dubitō, etc. Negatived expressions of doubt (nōn dubitō, I do not doubt; nōn dubium est, there is no doubt) are followed by quīn (that) and the subjunctive:

nōn dubitō quīn supplicium sūmat, I do not doubt that he will exact punishment, B.G. I. 31
nōn est dubium quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint, there is no doubt that the Helvetii are the most powerful (tribe) of all Gaul, B.G. I. 3

187. Substantive Clauses of Result. I. Substantive clauses of result with ut and the subjunctive are used as the subject or object of verbs of accomplishing, effecting, etc., especially faciō, efficiō, perficiō, etc. They may be used also as appositives:

obsīdēs utī inter sē dent perficit, he brings it about that they give hostages to one another, B.G. I. 9 (object)
factum est utī Germānī mercēde arcesserentur, it was brought about that the Germans were invited for pay, B.G. I. 31 (subject)
hanī grātīam refert, ut gravētur, he makes this return, (namely) that he objects, B.G. I. 35 (appositive)

II. Substantive clauses of result with ut and the subjunctive are used as the subject of certain impersonal verbs, such as it happens, it remains, it is added, etc., as fit, accidit, accēdit, etc.:

accidit ut esset lūna plēna, it happened that there was a full moon, B.G. IV. 29

Note 1. Substantive clauses with ut, substantive clauses with quod (§ 182), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative (§§ 216, 217) are constructions so nearly equivalent that any one of the three may at times be used with relatively little difference in meaning.

Note 2. Indirect questions (§ 201), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative after verbs of saying etc. (§ 203), are also substantive clauses.


SYNTAX — VERBS

CAUSAL CLAUSES

188. Causal Clauses introduced by quod, etc. Causal clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, or quandō, because, take:

a. The indicative when the reason given is that of the speaker or writer:

fortissimī sunt Belgae propterēa quod longissimē absunt, the Belgae are the bravest because they are farthest away, B.G. I. 1

Here Cæsar gives his own reason why the Belgae are the bravest.

b. The subjunctive when the reason given is not that of the speaker or writer, but is simply alleged as the reason of some one else:

Haedūi (veniēbant) questum quod Harūdēs finēs populārentur, the Hædui came to complain because (they said) the Harudes were devastationg their fields, B.G. I. 37

Here Cæsar gives, not his own reason, but the reason alleged by the Hædui.

189. Causal Clauses introduced by cum. Causal clauses introduced by cum, since or because, take the subjunctive:

his cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt, since they could not persuade these of their own accord, they sent envoys, B.G. I. 9

praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepērit queritur, he complains especially because influenced by their entreaties he has undertaken the war, B.G. I. 16

190. Relative Clauses of Cause. Cause may be denoted by a relative clause with the subjunctive:

magnam Cæsar iniūriam facit qui vectīgālia détēriōra faciat, Cæsar does a great wrong in making (lit. who makes, i.e. because he is making) the revenues lower, B.G. I. 36

Note. In this use the relative is equivalent to cum is etc. It is often preceded by ut, utpote, or quippe. Cf. B.G. IV. 23, ut quae . . . habērent.
Concessive Clauses

191. Concessive Clauses with the Indicative. Concessive clauses with the indicative are introduced by quamquam, etsi, tametsi, although:

quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt hūmāniōrēs, although they are of the same race, they are more civilized, B. G. IV. 3
nam etsī vidēbat, tamen nōn putābat etc., for although he saw, nevertheless he did not think etc., B. G. I. 46

Note. Quamquam often introduces a principal clause to mark a transition to a new subject of discussion. It is then translated and yet.

192. Concessive Clauses with the Subjunctive. Concessive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by cum, ut, quamvis, although:

cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs dabuntur, pācem faciam, although these things are so, nevertheless, if hostages shall be given, I will make peace, B. G. I. 14
ac iam ut omnia contrā opinīōnem acciderent, tamen perspiciēbant etc., and although now all things should fall out contrary to their expectation, nevertheless they were well aware etc., B. G. III. 9

Note. Cum is used in temporal clauses (when, § 194) and in causal clauses (since, § 189) as well as in concessive clauses (although). When tamen (nevertheless) occurs in the main clause, the cum clause is concessive; if praesertim (especially) precedes, the cum clause is probably causal.

Temporal Clauses

193. Temporal Clauses introduced by postquam, ut, ubi, etc. Temporal clauses introduced by postquam, after, ut, ubi, when, cum primum, simul, simul atque (ac), as soon as, take the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present:

postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās ad sē venire vidīt, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, after he saw that all the forces of the Belgae were coming toward him, he hastened to lead his army across, B. G. II. 5
Caesar ubi suōs urgērī vidīt, prōcessit, when Caesar saw that his men were hard pressed, he advanced, B. G. II. 25
Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Temporal clauses introduced by *cum*, *when*, and referring to the present or future, take the indicative; but referring to the past they have two uses:

*a. Definitive*: to define or fix the time at which the action of the main verb occurred. The mood is indicative:

*cum* Caesar in Galliam *vēnit*, alterius factōnīs prīncipēs erant Haedui, when Caesar came into Gaul, the Hædui were at the head of one faction, B.G. VI. 12

*b. Descriptive*: to describe the situation or circumstances under which the action of the main verb took place. The mood is subjunctive (past or past perfect):

*cum* ab his quaereret, sic reperiebat, when he made inquiries from these, he gained the following information, B.G. II. 4

*cum* dē imprōvisō *vēnisset*, Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt, when he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent envoys, B.G. II. 3

In the sentence (§ 194. a) *cum* Caesar in Galliam *vēnit*, alterius factōnīs prīncipēs erant Haedui, the time of the Hæduan supremacy is merely dated, or fixed, by the *cum* clause, and is true independently of Cæsar’s coming. They were at the head of one faction whether he came or not.

In the sentence (§ 194. b) *cum* dē imprōvisō *vēnisset*, Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt, the fact Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt, the Remi sent envoys, is not true independently of his coming. They sent them under the circumstances occasioned by his coming. They would not have sent them if he had not come.

Note. Temporal clauses of description with *cum* correspond closely with relative clauses of description (§ 177).

**195. Cum Clauses denoting Time and Cause.** Sometimes the idea of *time* is combined with that of *cause*. In such cases *cum* with the subjunctive is always used:

Helvētīī, *cum* id intellegērēnt, lēgātōs misērunt, the Helvetii sent envoys when (since) they learned that, cf. B.G. I. 13

Note. This use corresponds with the relative clause of cause (§ 190).

**196. Cum meaning whenever.** *Cum*, whenever, denoting a repeated action, is generally followed by the indicative:
ad eōs sē, cum ūsus est, recipiunt, they retreat to these whenever it is necessary, cf. B. G. IV. 2

cum fūnēs adductī erant, praerumpēbantur, whenever the ropes were drawn tight, they were broken off, B. G. III. 14

197. Temporal Clauses introduced by antequam or priusquam. Temporal clauses introduced by antequam or priusquam, before, have the following uses:

a. When they denote an actual fact they take the indicative:

neque prius fugere dēstiterunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervenerunt, nor did they cease to flee, before they reached the river Rhine, B. G. I. 53

b. When they denote something anticipated, but not sure, they take the subjunctive:

priorquam quicquam cōnarētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocāri iubet, before undertaking anything, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned to him, B. G. I. 19

198. Temporal Clauses introduced by dum, dō nec, or quoad. I. Dum, meaning while, takes the indicative in the historical present (§ 153. a), even though the time is past:

dum haec geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est, while this was going on, word was brought to Caesar, B. G. I. 46

II. Dum, dō nec, and quoad, meaning as long as, take the indicative:

quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit, he resisted bravely as long as he was able, B. G. IV. 12

III. Dum, dō nec, and quoad, meaning until, have two uses:

a. The indicative, to denote an actual fact:

neque finem sequendi fēcērunt quoad praeceptīs hostēs ēgerunt, nor did they cease pursuing until they routed the enemy, B. G. V. 17

b. The subjunctive, to denote something anticipated:

dum nāvēs convenīrent exspectāvit, he waited until the ships should arrive, B. G. IV. 23
Conditional Sentences

199. Definition. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence containing an independent clause and a subordinate clause introduced by sī, if; or nisi, si nōn, unless, if not. The subordinate clause is called the condition (or protasis) and the main clause the conclusion (or apodosis).

Conditional clauses are divided as to time into the following three classes:

I. Present Conditions:
   a. Non-Committal Conditions (that is, those in which nothing is implied as to the truth or falsity of the case supposed); these take the present indicative:

   sī hoc facit, laudātur, if he is doing this, he is praised

   b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past (imperfect) subjunctive:

   sī hoc faceret, laudārētur, if he were doing this (but he is not), he would be praised (at the present time)

II. Future Conditions:
   a. More Probable Conditions; these take the future or future perfect indicative:

   sī hoc faciet, laudābitur, if he does (shall do) this, he will be praised
   sī hoc fēcerit, laudābitur, if he shall have done this, he will be praised

   b. Less Probable Conditions; these take the present or perfect subjunctive:

   sī hoc faciat (fēcerit), laudētur, if he should do this, he would be praised

III. Past Conditions:
   a. Non-Committal Conditions; these take the past descriptive (imperfect) or perfect indicative:

   sī hoc faciebat, laudābātur, if he was doing this, he was praised
   sī hoc fēcit, laudātus est, if he did this, he was praised
b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past perfect (plus-perfect) subjunctive:

\[ \text{si hoc fēcisset, laudātus esset, if he had done this (but he did not), he would have been praised} \]

Note. The conditional clause, not the conclusion, determines the class to which a conditional sentence belongs. Although both parts are usually in the same mood and tense, yet the conclusion may be in any form of the verb that the sense requires; for example:

\[ \text{si hoc facit, eum laudāte, if he is doing this, praise him} \]

Because of the form of the conditional clause this conditional sentence must be classed as present non-committal.

200. Clauses of Comparison with velut, velut sī. A conditional clause of comparison introduced by velut, velut sī, as if, takes the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for sequence of tenses (§ 162):

\[ \text{absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent, they stand in fear of the cruelty of Ariovistus in his absence (absentis) just as (they would) if he were (should be) present, B.G. I. 32} \]

Note. Such a condition has the future less probable form in the Latin, though in English it has the form of a condition contrary to fact. The sentence above, thrown back into past time, reads velut sī adesset, horrebant.

**INDIRECT QUESTIONS**

201. Indirect questions are substantive interrogative clauses used, generally as object, after verbs of inquiring, asking, knowing, telling, etc. The verb in indirect questions is in the subjunctive.

\[ \text{quae in eō reprehendat ostendit, he points out what he censures in him, B.G. I. 20} \]

\[ \text{intellegō quantō id cum periculō fecerim, I know with how great danger I did that, B.G. I. 17} \]

Note. The same interrogative words that introduce direct questions (§ 170) are used with indirect; but questions answered by “yes” or “no” are introduced without distinction by num or -ne, translated whether.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

202. A direct quotation is a statement made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer. Such a statement is said to be in the direct discourse:

his Caesar respondit, "Minus mihi dubitatiōnis datur," to these Caesar answered, "I entertain less (of) doubt," B.G. I. 14
"dēsilite," inquit, "commilitōnēs," "leap down, comrades," he said, B.G. IV. 25

203. An indirect quotation is a reported statement, not made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer, but adapted to the form of the sentence used by the person quoting them. Such a statement is said to be in indirect discourse, and is used after verbs of saying and thinking:

his Caesar respondit sibi minus dubitatiōnis dari, to these Caesar answered that he entertained less (of) doubt, B.G. I. 14

a. Sometimes the verb of saying is not expressed, but is understood from the context:

eōs incūsāvit: Ariovistum populi Rōmānī amīcitiam adpetīsse, he upbraided them (saying) that Ariovistus had sought to gain the friendship of the Roman people, B.G. I. 40

b. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause merely to imply that the quotation is indirect. This is called implied indirect discourse (§ 208 and b):

Caesar frūmentum quod essent pollicitā flāgitāre, Caesar demanded the grain which (as he said) they had promised, B.G. I. 16

Independent Sentences in Indirect Discourse

204. Declarative Sentences. In declarative sentences the six tenses of the indicative, on becoming indirect, pass into the three corresponding tenses of the infinitive with subject accusative, as shown by the following table:
a. The subject accusative (§ 92) of the infinitive is regularly expressed in indirect discourse, even if it was not used in the direct. Pronouns of the first and second person are changed to those of the third (if the verb of saying is in the third person), the reflexive forms (§ 132) being used to refer to the subject of the verb of saying:

**Direct:** (ego) trānsīi nōn meā sponte, *I did not cross of* *my own free will*

**Indirect:** Arioŭistus respondit trānsīsse sēsē nōn suā sponte, *Arioŭistus replied that he had not crossed of* *his own free will*, B.G. I. 44

### 205. Imperative Sentences.

An imperative in the direct discourse is changed in the indirect to the subjunctive; the present being used after a primary tense, the past after a secondary tense:

respondīt sī quīd vellent, reverterentur, *he answered that if they wanted anything, they should return*, B.G. I. 7

This sentence in the direct form would be

sī quīd vultis, revertīmini, *if you want anything, return*

### 206. Prohibitions.

In a prohibition having nōli, nōlite, and the infinitive in the direct discourse (§ 173. note), the infinitive is changed to the present or past subjunctive with nē in the indirect according to the sequence of tenses, and nōli disappears:

nōli committere, *do not bring it to pass*, B.G. I. 13

This prohibition when changed to indirect discourse becomes

nē committeret, (Divico said) *that he should not bring it to pass*
207. Questions. I. Real Questions (§170) on becoming indirect change their verbs from the indicative to the subjunctive, the tenses conforming to the rule for the sequence of tenses:

**Direct:** cur in meás possessionēs venis? why do you come into my possessions? B.G. I. 44

**Indirect:** Ariovistus respondit . . . cur in suás possessionēs venīret, Ariovistus answered (asking) why he came into his possessions

II. a. Rhetorical Questions (§171) that have the indicative in the direct discourse, change the indicative to the infinitive in the indirect:

**Direct:** num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dépōnere possum? can I put aside the recollection of the recent wrongs? B.G. I. 14

**Indirect:** Caesar respondit . . . num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dépōnere posse, Caesar answered (asking) whether he could put aside the recollection etc.

b. Rhetorical Questions that have the deliberative subjunctive (§172. d) in the direct, retain the subjunctive in the indirect; the tense follows the rule for the sequence of tenses:

**Direct:** cur de vestrā virtūte despērētis? why should you be diffident of your own courage? B.G. I. 40

**Indirect:** (quaesīvit) cur de suā virtūte despērērent, (he inquired) why they should be diffident of their own courage

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

208. General Rule; Mood. Verbs in the subordinate clauses of complex sentences are changed to or remain in the subjunctive:

**Direct:** hī sunt idem Germānī qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerunt, these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army, B.G. I. 40

**Indirect:** (Caesar dicit) hos esse eōsdem Germānōs qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint, (Caesar says) that these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army

a. If the statement made in the subordinate clause is true independently of the words of the speaker or writer, the indicative mood may be retained:
certior factus est, ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū
dissessisse, he was informed that all had departed by night from
that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls,
B.G. III. 2

b. Implied Indirect Discourse. The subjunctive may be used
in a subordinate clause merely to imply that the quotation is indirect.
This is called implied indirect discourse (§ 203. b):

Caesar frumentum quod essent pollicitī flāgitāre, Cæsar demanded the
grain which (as he said) they had promised, B.G. I. 16

209. Tense. The tense of verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect
discourse is determined by the tense of the verb of saying, according
to the rule for the sequence of tenses; for example, dicit, he says, will
be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive; dixit, he said, by
the past or past perfect subjunctive:

Direct: id quod in Nerviis fēcī, faciam, I will do that which I diā
in (the case of) the Nervii, B.G. II. 32

Indirect: dicit sē id quod in Nerviis fēcerit, factūrum esse, he says
that he will do that which he did in (the case of) the Nervii
dixit sē id quod in Nerviis fēcisset, factūrum esse, he said that he
would do that which he had done in (the case of) the Nervii

Direct: verēmur angustiās itineris quae intercēdunt, we fear the
difficulties of the way which intervene, cf. B.G. I. 39

Indirect: dicunt sē verērī angustiās itineris quae intercēdant, they
say that they fear the difficulties of the way which intervene
dixērunt sē verērī angustiās itineris quae intercēderent, they said that
they feared the difficulties of the way which intervened

Note. As a rule the same verb stem will be used in the subjunctive as
was used in the indicative; for example, a present or future indicative will
become a present or past subjunctive; a perfect or future perfect indicative
will become a perfect or past perfect subjunctive.

Exception: Sometimes for the sake of vividness a primary tense
is used in the subjunctive after a secondary tense of a verb of saying:

respondit ita Helvētiōs institūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare,
cōsuērint, he replied that the Helvetii had been so trained that they
were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them), B.G. I. 14
Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse

210. All conditional sentences with verbs in the indicative (§ 199. I. a, II. a, III. a) are treated in indirect discourse as ordinary complex sentences, the verb in the main clause (conclusion) being changed to the infinitive, and the verb in the subordinate clause (condition) to the subjunctive:

Direct: hostēs si bellum gerunt, vincunt, if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering

Indirect: dicit hostēs, si bellum gerant, vincere, he says that if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering

211. In future less probable conditions (§ 199. II. b) the verb in the conclusion (which, of course, is the main verb) is changed to the future infinitive; the verb in the condition, being in a subordinate clause, remains in the subjunctive, though the tense may have to be changed to accord with the rule for the sequence of tenses:

Direct: hostēs si bellum gerant, vincant, if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

Indirect: dicit hostēs, si bellum gerant, victūros esse, he says that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer
dīxit hostēs, si bellum gererent, victūros esse, he said that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

212. In future conditions, either more or less probable (§ 199. II. a, b), a passive verb in the conclusion of the direct discourse is expressed by fore (futūrum esse) ut with the present subjunctive after a primary tense, past subjunctive after a secondary tense:

Direct: sī bellum gerent, vincentur, if they shall wage war, they will be conquered (more probable)
sī bellum gerant, vincentur, if they should wage war, they would be conquered (less probable)

Indirect (both more probable and less probable): dicit sī bellum gerant fore ut vincentur, he says that if they shall (should) wage war, they will (would) be conquered
dīxit sī bellum gererent fore ut vincerentur, he said that if they should wage war, they would be conquered
213. In conditions contrary to fact (§ 199. I. b, III. b) the verb in the condition (past or past perfect subjunctive) remains unchanged. The verb in the conclusion (past or past perfect subjunctive) undergoes the following changes:

a. If it is in the active voice, it is changed to the proper form of the future participle in -urus with fuisse:

Direct: hostēs sī bellum gerent, vincerent, if the enemy were waging war (now), they would be conquering
Indirect: dicit (or dixit) hostēs, sī bellum gerent, victūros fuisse, he says (or said) that if the enemy were waging war, they would be conquering

Direct: hostēs sī bellum gessissent, vincissent, if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered
Indirect: dicit (or dixit) hostēs, sī bellum gessissent, victūros fuisse, he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered

b. If the verb in the conclusion is in the passive voice, the form futūrum fuisse ut is used, followed by the past subjunctive of the verb to be changed:

Direct: hostēs sī bellum gessissent, victī essent, if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered
Indirect: dicit (or dixit) futūrum fuisse ut hostēs, sī bellum gessissent, vincerentur, he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered.

Subjunctive by Attraction

214. A subordinate verb that would regularly be in the indicative is sometimes attracted to the subjunctive by another subjunctive (or equivalent infinitive), on which it depends:

monuit, ut maritimae rēs postulārent, omnēs rēs administrārentur, he directed that all things should be executed as naval tactics demanded, B.G. IV. 23

dat negotium Senonibus utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant, he employs the Senones to find out those things which are going on among them, B.G. II. 2
The Infinitive

215. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it has tense and voice, and may be transitive or intransitive, but expresses neither person nor number. As a noun it has certain case constructions.

216. The Infinitive as Subject. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as subject:
   a. With esse:
      *perfacile est cōnāta perficere, it is easy to accomplish the undertakings*, B.G. I. 3
   b. With impersonal verbs:
      *nōn oportet mē impedīrī, it is not proper that I should be hindered*, B.G. I. 36

217. The Infinitive as Object. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as object:
   a. With subject accusative; after verbs of *wishing, ordering, permitting, allowing*, and the like:
      *liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit, he ordered the children to be brought to him (as) hostages*, B.G. II. 5
   b. With subject accusative; after verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, and the like. This is the regular construction of principal clauses in indirect discourse (§§ 203, 204):
      *Caesar certior ōbat omnēs Belgās coniūrāre, Caesar was informed that all the Belgae were conspiring*, B.G. II. 1
   c. Without subject accusative; to complete the predicate of verbs meaning *to be able, be accustomed, decide, begin, dare, try*, and the like, which require another action of the same subject. Such verbs are called verbs of incomplete predication, and the accompanying infinitive is called the *complementary infinitive*:
      *cōpiās parāre coepērunt, they began to prepare forces*, B.G. III. 23
      *constituērunt ea comparāre, they decided to prepare those things*, B.G. I. 3
218. **Historical Infinitive.** In vivid narration the infinitive with subject *nominative* may be used for the past descriptive indicative:

*Caesar* Haeduōs frūmentum *flāgitāre*, *Čeasar* demanded grain of the *Hāedui*, B.G. I. 16

**Participles**

219. Participles are verbal adjectives; as adjectives they agree with nouns in gender, number, and case; as verbs they have tense and voice, and may take an object. For tense distinctions see § 167.

220. The present and past participles are often used predicatively where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be employed:

a. **Time:**

> patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā *vexātā*, within the memory of our fathers, when all Gaul was ravaged (lit. all Gaul having been ravaged), B.G. II. 4

b. **Cause:**

> quibus rēbus *Caesar* vehementer *commōtus* mātūrandum sībi exīsti-*māvit*, because he was greatly disturbed by these facts, *Čeasar* thought that he ought to hasten, B.G. I. 37

c. **Condition:**

> damnātum pœnām *sequī* oportēbat, punishment was to follow, if he was condemned (lit. having been condemned), B.G. I. 4

d. **Concession:**

> beneficiō *adfectus* hanc grātiam *refert*, though he has been treated with kindness, he makes this return (lit. having been treated), cf. B.G. I. 35

e. **Simple Relative Clause:**

> submōtīs *restitērunt*, they resisted those who had been routed, cf. B.G. I. 25

221. **Participles used as Nouns.** The present and past participles are often used as nouns:

> opiniōnem *pugnantium* praebēbant, they gave the impression of (men) fighting, cf. B.G. III. 25
222. The Periphrastic Conjugations. I. The future participle in -urus is used with the verb sum to form what is called the active periphrastic conjugation. This denotes future, or intended, action:

praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, except what they were going to carry with them, B.G. I. 5

II. The future passive participle, or gerundive in -ndus (§ 224), is used with the verb sum to form what is called the passive periphrastic conjugation. This is used to denote what must be, or ought to be, done.

The word representing the person upon whom the duty or obligation rests is put in the dative of apparent agent (§ 87):

omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī, all (kinds of) cruelties have to be endured, cf. B.G. I. 32

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda, Caesar had to do all things at one time (lit. all things had to be done by Caesar etc.), B.G. II. 20

Note. Intransitive verbs in the passive periphrastic conjugation are regularly used impersonally:

concēdendum esse nōn putābat, he did not think that he ought to comply (lit. that it ought to be complied)

Gerund

223. The gerund is an active verbal noun with stem like that of the gerundive. It is found only in the neuter gender, and in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular of the second declension. It is governed in general as a noun, and may have the modifiers of a verb:

a. Genitive:

hominēs bellandi cupidī, men eager for warfare (lit. desirous of warring), B.G. I. 2

b. Dative; the dative of the gerund is rare except with a few adjectives.

c. Accusative; the accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions and does not take an object:

Caesar respondit diem sē ad delīberandum sūmptūrum (esse), Caesar answered that he would take time for deliberating, B.G. I. 7
d. Ablative:

reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar, *Caesar found on inquiry* (lit. *in inquiring*), B.G. I. 18

Note. The gerund with a direct object is found as a rule only in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

Gerundive

224. The gerundive (ending in *-ndus*) is a passive verbal adjective, declined like an adjective of the first and second declensions. It is used as follows:

a. The gerundive as a predicate adjective in the *passive periphrastic conjugation* (§ 222. II) denotes what must be, or ought to be, done.

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant *agenda*, *Caesar had to do all things at one time* (lit. *all things had to be done by Caesar etc.*), B.G. II. 20

b. The gerundive is generally used instead of the gerund with a direct object (§ 223, note). The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have:

praedae *faciendae facultās* dabātur, *an opportunity for securing* (lit. *of securing*) plunder was afforded, cf. B.G. IV. 34

The equivalent gerund construction would be *praedam faciendi facultās*, with *praedam* as object of the gerund *faciendi*. The translation in both constructions is the same.

ab *his fit initium retinendī Sili*, *these take the initiative in detaining Silius*, B.G. III. 8

in *petendā pāce culpam* in multitūdinem contulērunt, *in seeking peace they attributed the fault to the multitude*, B.G. IV. 27

ad eās rēs cōnfiendiās, *for accomplishing these measures*, B.G. I. 3

c. With the personal and reflexive forms *meī, tuī, suī, nostri, vestri*, a form in *-ndi* is commonly used without change in gender or number:

neque suī conligendi hostibus facultātem relinquent, *neither do they leave to the enemy an opportunity of recovering themselves*, B.G. III. 6

As suī is plural, we might here expect *conligendōrum* to agree with it.
d. The gerundive may be used as an attributive adjective. In this use it often expresses purpose after verbs like *cūrō*, *to care for*, *see to*, etc.:

*pontem faciendum cūrat*, *he causes a bridge to be built* (lit. *he sees to a bridge to be built*), B.G. I. 13

*Gerund and Gerundive expressing Purpose*

225. Both gerund and gerundive are used to express purpose:
a. In the accusative with *ad*:

*respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum (esse)*, *he replied that he would take time to deliberate*, B.G. I. 7

*ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur*, *Orgetorix is chosen to accomplish these measures*, B.G. I. 3

b. In the genitive with *causā* or *grātiā*:

*venīsne speculandī causā?* *do you come for the sake of spying?*  
*cf. B.G. I. 47*

*īd nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā faciō*, *I am not doing that for the sake of attacking Gaul*, B.G. I. 44

*Supine*

226. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, found only in the accusative (-um) and ablative (-ū):

a. The supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose:

*vēnī auxilium postulātum*, *I came to ask aid*, B.G. I. 31

b. The supine in -ū is used with adjectives like an ablative of respect (§ 115):

*optimum factū esse dūxērunt*, *they considered it the best thing to do* (lit. *best with respect to doing*), B.G. IV. 30

*Note*. The supine in -um may take an object; the supine in -ū never does:

*lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium*, *they send envoys to ask aid*, B.G. I. 11.
THE ROMAN CALENDAR

227. Dates were reckoned by the Romans as follows:

a. By the Roman calendar, as reformed by Julius and Augustus Caesar, the year had 365 days, divided into months as at present, February having 29 days every fourth year.

b. The names of the months, used as adjectives, were as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ianuarius, -a, -um</td>
<td>Māius, -a, -um</td>
<td>September, -bris, -bre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Februarius, -a, -um</td>
<td>Iūnius, -a, -um</td>
<td>October, -bris, -bre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mārtius, -a, -um</td>
<td>Quīntīlis, -e</td>
<td>November, -bris, -bre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aprilis, -e</td>
<td>Sextīlis, -e</td>
<td>December, -bris, -bre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. The seventh month (Quintilis) was later called Iūlius in honor of Julius Caesar, and the eighth (Sextilis), Augustus, in honor of that emperor.

c. The year was formerly regarded as beginning with March, which made July the fifth (quintilis) month, August the sixth (sextilis), September the seventh (septembris), etc.

d. Dates were reckoned from three points in the month, namely, the Calēnds (Kalendae, -ārum), the first day of the month; the Nones (Nōnae, -ārum), the fifth day; and the Ides (Īdūs, Īduum), the thirteenth.

However, in March, May, July, and October the Nones fell on the seventh day, and the Ides on the fifteenth.

Kalendarēs Nōnae Īdūs Kalendarēs

| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 1 |

e. An event occurring at any one of these points was said to occur on the Calends, on the Nones, on the Ides, and the date was expressed by the simple ablative of time. The noun denoting the date was modified by the adjective representing the month in question:

Kalendēs Februāriīs, on the first of February
Nōnis Aprilībus, on the fifth of April
Nōnis Octōbris, on the seventh of October
Īdibus Ianuāriīs, on the thirteenth of January
Īdibus Mārtīis, on the fifteenth of March
f. From the Calends, Nones, and Ides the dates in the month were reckoned *backwards*. The date immediately preceding any one of them was expressed by the word *pridie*, used as a preposition followed by the accusatives *Kalendas*, *Nōnas*, *Īdūs*, modified by the adjective form of the word denoting the month:

- *pridie Kalendas Februāriās*, *the thirty-first of January*
- *pridie Nōnas Iānuāriās*, *the fourth of January*
- *pridie Īdūs Mārtiās*, *the fourteenth of March*
- *pridie Īdūs Septembrēs*, *the twelfth of September*

g. The dates intervening between any two points were counted as so many days before the second point. The Romans, however, in reckoning a series, counted both extremes; for example, the eleventh day of April was counted as the third day before the Ides (that is, the thirteenth), the tenth of April as the fourth day before the Ides.

h. In expressing dates the phrase *ante diem* (translated *the day before*) was used with the accusatives *Kalendas*, *Nōnas*, *Īdūs*, the word *diem* being modified by the proper ordinal numeral:

- *ante diem tertium Kalendas Octōbrēs*, *the third day before the Calends of October (September 29)*
- *ante diem quārtum Kalendas Octōbrēs*, *the fourth day before the Calends of October (September 28)*
- *ante diem sextum Īdūs Mārtiās*, *the sixth day before the Ides of March (March 10)*
- *ante diem quintum Nōnas Māiās*, *the fifth day before the Nones of May (May 3)*

*Note.* These expressions were generally abbreviated as follows:


i. To find the equivalent in English for a date given in Latin, observe the following rule:

If the given Latin date is counted from the Calends, add *two* to the number of days in the preceding month and subtract the given date; if from the Nones or the Ides, add *one* to the day on which they fall, and from the number thus obtained subtract the given date.
j. The whole expression denoting a date was sometimes treated as a single substantive governed by a preposition; compare the following:

in a. d. V. Kal. Nov., to the fifth day before the Calends of November (October 28)
opus contulit in ante diem III. Íd. Oct., he postponed the work to the 13th of October

Note. Before Julius Cæsar reformed the calendar (46 B.C.), the Roman year consisted of 355 days. All the months had 29 days except March, May, July, and October, which had 31 days, and February, which had 28. As this calendar year was too short for the solar year, a month of varying length (mēnsis intercalāris) was inserted after February 23 every other year.

228. The Roman year was designated either by the names of the consuls (as, M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, B.G. I. 2) or by the number of the year reckoned from the founding of the city (ab urbe conditā abbreviated to A. U. C.). The founding of the city is assigned to the year 753 B.C. In order, therefore, to find the year of the Christian era corresponding to a given Roman date A.U.C., the number of the Roman year must be subtracted from 754, 1 being added to 753 to allow for the Roman custom of including both extremes when reckoning the difference between two numbers. For example, Caesar was killed in 710 A.U.C., or 44 (754-710) B.C.
LATIN COMPOSITION

LESSON I

1. Order of Words. In English the words of a sentence stand in a more or less fixed order. Emphasis is indicated *when speaking* by stress of voice, and in a *written* sentence by the use of italics or by underscoring the emphatic words. In Latin, on the other hand, emphasis and the relative importance of words are shown by their position in the sentence.

2. The most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the middle.

3. As the most important word in the sentence is normally the *subject*, and the second in importance is normally the *verb*, the tendency is to place these respectively *first* and *last*. Their respective modifiers stand next these according to their relative emphasis. This may be represented as follows:

```
Strong                       Weak                       Strong
Subject followed by its modifiers        Modifiers followed by Verb
```

4. For convenience this is called the *normal order*. Departure from the normal order is frequent, however, from the fact that in Latin, just as in English, other words or groups of words may be regarded as of more importance than the subject or the verb. This importance may be indicated:
a. By placing words to be emphasized first, more rarely last:

Gallōs Garumna flūmen dīvidit, the Gauls are separated by the Garonne river (lit. the Gauls the Garonne river separates)
magna dis immortālibus habenda est grātia, great gratitude is due the immortal gods

b. By reversing the normal order, especially of nouns with attributive adjectives (§ 61) and nouns with modifying genitives. The normal position of demonstrative pronouns, cardinal numerals, and adjectives of quantity and place (for example, ulterior, citerior, inferior, etc.) is before the nouns they modify; the normal position of other adjectives, ordinal numerals, possessives, indefinites, and genitives is after their nouns:

- ille imperātor, that general (normal order)
- imperātor ille, that famous general (normal order reversed)
- mors frātris tui, the death of your brother (normal order)
- tui frātris mors, your brother's death (normal order reversed)

c. The appositive (§ 54) normally follows its noun; when emphatic it precedes:

- Caesar imperātor, Caesar, the general
- imperātor Caesar, the general, Caesar

d. The subject may stand last, or the verb first, to indicate unusual emphasis:

- dēlectat mē ēratiō, the speech delights me

e. The copula sum (§ 48. II. b) ordinarily stands last, or between the subject and predicate; but when it emphasizes existence (there was, there is, etc.), it stands first, or at any rate before the subject:

- erat nūllum aliud iter, there was no other way

EXERCISE

5. Translate the following sentences, so arranging the words as to show the importance of those italicized:

1. Orgetorix, who was the richest of the Helvetii, made a conspiracy.
2. The Helvetii were hemmed in on all sides.
3. The Helvetii excel
the rest of the Gauls. 4. There is a river, the Rhone by name, which separates our province. 5. The territories of the Belgae are farthest away. 6. They keep the Germans away from their territories by almost daily battles. 7. Many of the Helvetii were noble, but Orgetorix excelled the rest. 8. A very high mountain hems them in on one side. 9. Orgetorix persuaded certain ones of the Helvetii who were desirous of power. 10. The Sequani are nearest to the province, the Belgae are farthest away.

Note. A superior figure standing after a word (for example, so) refers to that word only; placed before a word (for example, so), it refers to two or more following words.

1 Followed by the dative, § 84. 2 reliqui, agreeing with its noun in gender, number, and case, means the rest of. 3 Ablative of respect, § 115. 4 Ablative of means, § 106. 5 unā ex parte. 6 Dative, § 83. 7 Ablative with ex, § 76. Exc.

LESSON II

6. General Rules for Agreement.


b. Agreement of Relatives, § 64. a.

c. Agreement of Appositives, § 58.

d. Agreement of Verbs, § 65.

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xli-xlili)

Note. From now on the Exercises are divided into two parts. The sentences in the first part are sufficiently easy to be used for oral work, if desired, and illustrate how the text may be used as a basis for similar sentences. By changing case and number, mood, tense, voice, person, and the like, the teacher may extend the practice at will. For example, "Pelias was the brother of Αeson, who held the kingdom in Thessaly"; "The kingdom in Thessaly had been held by Αeson, the brother of Pelias."

1. Αeson, the brother of Pelias, held the kingdom in Thessaly. 2. The brother whom Pelias had driven out was named Αeson. 3. The friends who went to Delphi consulted the oracle. 4. Jason was the man whom the oracle pointed out. 5. The golden fleece which he
left there was intrusted to the king. 6. The task which he had undertaken was most difficult. 7. The brothers do not wish to set out alone. 8. The messengers whom the king had sent out returned the next day. 9. The ship that he built was wider than ours. 10. A great number of men had gathered from all the regions of Greece.

II. There was once a king in Thessaly who was called Æson. When he had held the kingdom (for) a few years, he was driven out by Pelias, his brother. Jason, the son of Æson, would have been put to death, if he had not been snatched out of danger by the friends of his father. After a few years Jason was sent to get possession of the fleece.

1 cum. 2 § 96. 3 § 199. III. b. 4 pater. 5 Latin, that he might get possession of, § 174.

LESSON III

7. Predicate and Attributive Adjectives defined, §§ 60, 61.
8. Agreement of Adjectives with Two or More Nouns, §§ 62, 63 and note.

EXAMPLES

multi pueri et puellae or pueri et puellae multae, many boys and girls
bonus puer et puella, the good boy and girl
pueri et puellae erant boni, the boys and girls were good
rex et regina capti sunt, the king and queen were captured
virtus et studium militum erant magna, the valor and zeal of the soldiers were great
naeves captivique restitutæ sunt or naves captivique restituta sunt, the ships and the captives were restored

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlv, xlv)

I. 1. Hercules and Orpheus were most famous. 2. Jason and his ship will be famous. 3. He was driven back to the same part of the island from which he had set out. 4. The night was dark, and the danger was great. 5. The nymph attempted to persuade the boy. 6. Hercules and the nymph followed the boy. 7. The Argonauts and
the Harpies were unfriendly. 8. These birds were sent by Jupiter. 9. The birds had been named Harpies. 10. The Argonauts and Phineus rejoiced greatly.

II. 2 Of all the companions whom Jason had chosen I think that Hercules and Orpheus were the most famous. But there were many others whose names were noted. They set sail with the applause of all.

1 unde. 2 Partitive genitive with most famous, § 76.

LESSON IV

9. Special Rules for the Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. a. note.

EXAMPLES

puerī et puellae quī erant boni, the boys and girls who were good
rēx et rēgīna quī captī sunt, the king and queen who were captured
virtūs et studium mīlitum, quae erant magnā, the valor and zeal of the soldiers, which were great
nāvēs captīvique quae restitūta sunt, the ships and the captives which were restored
Corinthus, quod erat clārum oppidum, Corinth, which was a famous city

Note. When the antecedents represent both persons and things, the relative pronoun (like the predicate adjective, cf. § 63 and note) may be masculine:

nāvēs captīvique quī restitūti sunt

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlvi, xlvii)

I. 1. The messengers whom the king had sent came to the ship. 2. The messenger who came to the ship called Jason to the palace. 3. The rewards that he promised were great. 4. There was a huge rock that had been placed by Jupiter. 5. The rocks that had been placed there were large. 6. This is the large rock that Jupiter had placed there. 7. These are the doves that he sent forth. 8. You will come to the Phasis, which is a river in the territory of the Colchi.
II. When the Argonauts had come to the river Phasis, which is in the territory of the Colchi, Jason demanded of 1 the king 2 that he should hand over the fleece. But the king replied, "I will hand the fleece over if you accomplish 3 two most difficult tasks." Jason replied, "I am ready 4 to undergo all dangers."

1 ab. 2 ut, § 183. 3 Latin, shall have accomplished, § 199. II. a. 4 ad with gerundive, § 224. b.

LESSON V

10. Agreement of Verbs, §§ 65 and a, 67, 68, 69.

EXAMPLES

nuntius mittitur, a messenger is sent
nuntii mittuntur, messengers are sent
cōnsul et légātus veniunt, the consul and the envoy are coming
neque cōnsul neque légātus venit, neither the consul nor the envoy is coming
senātus haec intellegit, the senate knows this
senātus haec intellegunt, the senate know this

Note. When subjects are of different persons the verb is in the first person rather than in the second or the third, and in the second rather than in the third:

ego et tū scribimus, you and I are writing
ego et Mārcus scribimus, Marcus and I are writing
tū et Mārcus audiēbātis, you and Marcus heard

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlviii, xlix)

I. 1. Jason and his companions had betaken themselves to the appointed place. 2. Jason with his companions betakes himself to the king. 3. The bulls were inclosed in a huge stable. 4. Medea and her brother had escaped at midnight. 5. Medea will escape with her brother by night. 6. The woman and the boy went to the ship. 7. Neither the woman nor the boy will go to the king. 8. Medea and I went to the ship. 9. You and your brother will be left at the ship. 10. You and I were hurrying into the forest.
II. Jason accomplished with 1 the greatest difficulty the two tasks that had been proposed by the king. Medea, the daughter of the king, who had given aid to Jason, was now in great danger. She went to the place where the Argonauts were and 2 begged them not to forsake her. 3

1 cum, § 110. 2 obsecro nē, § 183. 3 sē, § 133.

LESSON VI


a. The Present Indicative, § 153.
b. The Past Descriptive Indicative, § 154. a, b, c.
c. The Future Indicative, § 155.
d. The Perfect Indicative, § 156. a, b.
e. The Past Perfect Indicative, § 157.
f. The Future Perfect Indicative, § 158.

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages l, li)

I. 1. The tree was being guarded by a dragon. 2. Jason and Medea had approached the tree. 3. The dragon that had been guarding the tree was overcome by sleep. 4. The Argonauts await in vain the return of their leader. 5. A light was seen among the trees. 6. Jason and Medea are received with great joy. 7. It will not be safe to remain in this place. 8. The king of the Colchians pursues the Argonauts. 9. Jason, with the Argonauts, will soon arrive at a river. 10. Jason will return with Medea to Pelias.

II. Jason and Medea went to the tree where the dragon was guarding the golden fleece. The Argonauts, who were waiting in vain at the ship, began to despair of their safety; for 1 they did not doubt that 2 this task was (one) 3 of the greatest danger.

1 enim (does not stand first in its clause). 2 quin, § 186. 3 § 77. a.
LESSON VII

12. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and a.
13. The Infinitive in Indirect Discourse, § 217. b.

EXAMPLES

Direct Discourse

Rōmānī pācem faciunt (fēcērunt, facient), the Romans are making (made, will make) peace
pācem facio (feci, faciam), I am making (made, shall make) peace
occāsiō nōn omittenda est, the opportunity ought not to be neglected

Indirect Discourse

dīcō Rōmānōs pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrōs esse), I say that the Romans are making (made, will make) peace
dīcō mē pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrum esse), I say that I am making (made, shall make) peace
dīcō occāsiōnem nōn omittendam esse, I say that the opportunity ought not to be neglected
dīxit Rōmānōs pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrōs esse), he said that the Romans were making (had made, would make) peace
dīxit sē pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrum esse), he said that he was making (had made, should make) peace
dīxit occāsiōnem nōn omittendam esse, he said that the opportunity ought not to be neglected

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages lii–liv)

I. 1. They handed over the kingdom to Pelias. 2. They said that they had handed over the kingdom to Pelias. 3. His last day is at hand. 4. We saw that his last day was at hand. 5. We shall do this. 6. I said that we should do this. 7. They said that he would do this. 8. He says that they will do this. 9. They see that their father is an old man. 10. We did not think that he would send Medea away. 11. They had hoped that they should receive the kingdom. 12. Medea does not think that this opportunity ought to be neglected.
II. When Jason returned to Thessaly with the golden fleece, Pelias did not wish to hand over the kingdom to him. Medea, Jason’s wife, who had hoped that she should be queen, persuaded the daughters of the king to kill their father. But when the citizens learned that Pelias had perished, they drove Jason and Medea out of the kingdom.

1. in, § 97. 2. rēgina. 3. Dative, § 83. 4. ut, § 183.

LESSON VIII

15. Clauses of Pure Purpose,* § 174.
16. Relative Clauses of Purpose, §§ 175, 176.

EXAMPLES

explōrātōrēs praemittit ut (or quī) locum dēligant, he sends forward scouts to choose a place
explōrātōrēs praemisit ut (or quī) locum dēligerent, he sent forward scouts to choose a place
pontem facit quō facilius trānseat, he builds a bridge that (by which) he may cross the more easily

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 1–3)

I. 1. We do not doubt that¹ the Romans are most powerful. 2. We did not doubt that the Romans were most powerful. 3. He does not doubt that the Romans had been most powerful. 4. I did not doubt that the Romans were most powerful. 5. Roman envoys came to the king² to learn of his plans. 6. Soldiers will be sent³ to take the city by storm. 7. Hannibal set out for Spain² that he might get an army together and take Saguntum by storm. 8. He set out⁴ from Carthage immediately⁵ that he might the earlier lead his forces across into Italy.

* The terms “pure purpose” and “pure result” are used to distinguish adverbial clauses of purpose or result from relative or substantive clauses of this character.
9. He sent lieutenants to collect an army. 10. He built roads that he might the more easily lead his army into Italy.

II. Hannibal, the most famous commander of the Carthaginians, collected an army that he might conquer the Romans; but he was weakened by the envy of his (fellow) citizens. When Hamilcar, his father, was setting out for Spain, he bade his son swear that he would never be on terms of friendship with the Romans. Hannibal gave his father this oath and kept (it).

1 quin, § 186. 2 Express by an ut clause, § 174. An infinitive often expresses purpose in English, but it must not be so used in Latin. 3 Use a relative clause of purpose. 4 § 101. a. 5 quō mātūrius, lit. by which the earlier, § 176. 6 Cf. note 5. 7 iubeō, with infinitive, § 217. a. 8 § 217. b. 9 in amicitiā.

LESSON IX

17. Relative Clauses of Description (Characteristic), § 177 and a.
18. Clauses of Pure Result, § 179 and note.

EXAMPLES

a. Relative Clauses of Description:

miles qui fugiat est timidus, a soldier who runs away is cowardly
nēmō fuit militum quīn (= quī non) volnerāretur, there was not one of the soldiers who was not (lit. but was) wounded

In these sentences the clauses qui fugiat and quīn volnerāretur describe, or tell what kind of soldier it is, and hence take the subjunctive. Compare these sentences with the following:

ille miles, qui fugit, est timidus, that soldier, who is running away, is cowardly

Here the clause qui fugit does not describe the soldier, but simply states a fact about him, and the fact is expressed by the indicative (§ 178).

Notice also the following forms of descriptive clauses:

sunt qui malēdīcant, there are some who slander
nēmō est qui hoc nōn crēdat, there is no one who does not believe this
b. Clauses of Pure Result:

Affirmative clauses of purpose and result are alike in form; but negative clauses of purpose are introduced by ne (§ 174), negative clauses of result by ut non:

iter fecit ut oppidum caperet, he marched to take the town (purpose)
iter tam celeriter fecit ut oppidum caperet, he marched so quickly that he took the town (result)
fugit ne interficeretur, he fled that he might not be killed (negative purpose)
tam celeriter fugit ut non caperetur, he fled so swiftly that he was not captured (negative result)

c. Relative Clauses of Result:

nemo est tam timidus qui fugiat, no one is so cowardly that he (lit. who) runs away
nemo est tam fortis quin (= qui non) rei novitati perturbetur, no one is so brave as not to be (lit. but that he is) disturbed by the unexpected occurrence

These sentences are equivalent to nemo est tam timidus ut fugiat and nemo est tam fortis ut non perturbetur. The word tam in the antecedent clause shows that the relative clause expresses result rather than description, but the two constructions are closely related. (See § 179. note.)

EXERCISE
(Nepos, chapters 4–6)

I. 1. This disease of the eyes was so severe that he did not afterwards use his right eye. 2. He is so afflicted by this infirmity that he is carried in a sedan. 3. This battle was fought so quickly that they immediately set out for Rome. 4. He inspires so great terror in the Romans that they do not dare to go outside the rampart. 5. So great was Hannibal that nobody desired to oppose him in line of battle. 6. The consuls who oppose him in line of battle are brave. 7. Brave is the soldier who now desires to carry on war. 8. There are many soldiers who are most brave. 9. This commander is so brave that he desires to oppose Hannibal in line of battle. 10. The resources of his country were so exhausted that he desired to settle the war.
II. When Hannibal had defeated Scipio, he crossed the mountains that he might arrive quickly in Etruria and Apulia. It would be tedious to recount all his battles; but so long as he was in Italy, he defeated all the commanders who opposed him in line of battle. If he had set out for Rome, he would have taken the city by storm.

1 adeō. 2 Omit. 3 sic. 4 tam. 5 pello. 6 Latin, into. 7 longum est enumerare. 8 quam diū.

LESSON X


21. Substantive Clauses introduced by quod, ut, and nē, §§ 182, 183 and note.

EXAMPLES

accessit quod exercitum habuerat, there was added the fact that he had had an army
hortor ut veniat, I urge him to come (lit. that he come)
imperat nē eant, he commands them not to go
Galli Rōmānōs expellere cōnātī sunt, the Gauls tried to drive out the Romans

Note 1. Among the common verbs that regularly take the subjunctive in a substantive clause of purpose are the following:

hortor, cohortor, urge, exhort
imperō, order, command
moneō, advise

ōrō, petō, rogō, ask
persuādeō, persuade
postulō, demand

Note 2. The following verbs take the infinitive:
cōnor, attempt
iubeō, command

patior, allow
vetō, forbid

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 7–10)

I. 1. They ask that the captives be returned. 2. They commanded him to return the hostages. 3. They had demanded that the hostages should be returned. 4. I advise that the money be put back in the treasury. 5. They will persuade him to set out with these armies. 6. He was ordered to conduct the ships to Asia. 7. He urges them
to guard this temple. 8. There was added the fact that they had attempted to carry on war. 9. He urged them not to carry on war. 10. They ordered him not to guard the temple. 11. There is added the fact that they are guarding this temple.

II. After the Carthaginian ambassadors had thanked the Romans because they had made peace with them, they asked that their captives should be returned. The Romans did not send back the captives because Hannibal was still with the army. Hannibal was called back; but when he had returned home, he was made king.

1 iubeō. 2 Not accusative, § 83. 3 in, § 97. 4 quod, § 188. a, b. 5 etiam nunc. 6 apud.

LESSON XI

22. Substantive Clauses (continued), § 181.
23. Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187. I, II.
24. Substantive Clauses introduced by quin or quō minus, §§ 185, 186.

EXAMPLES

efficit, he brings it about
fit, it happens
acciidit, it happens
additur, it is added

eōs impedīvit quō minus (nē) flūmen trānsīrent, he hindered them from crossing the river
eōs nōn impedīvit quin flūmen trānsiirent, he did not hinder them from crossing the river
nōn dubitō quin Helvētii exeant, I do not doubt that the Helvetii are going forth

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 11–13)

1. Nobody doubts that he is writing something about peace. 2. We did not doubt that he would seek safety by flight. 3. It happened that the envoys were not at Rome. 4. He will bring it about that hostages will be given. 5. He hindered them from sending envoys to Carthage. 6. They cannot hinder us from sending our envoy to
Rome. 7. I do not doubt that the Romans will surround his house with a large army. 8. Hannibal could not be hindered from taking poison. 9. Nobody doubts that Hannibal was a most brave man. 10. It is added that he devoted some time to literature.

II. The Romans sent ambassadors to Prusias, king of Bithynia, to ask that Hannibal should be surrendered. Prusias replied, "Seize him yourselves if you can; I do not doubt that you will easily find the place where he is." But Hannibal took poison, because he did not wish to lose his life at another's will.

LESSON XII

25. Causal Clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, or quando, § 188. a, b.


EXAMPLES

queritur quod dēstitūtus est he is complaining because he has been abandoned
queritur quod dēstitūtus sit

Observe that these two sentences are translated in exactly the same way; but the Latin makes it clear that in the first the speaker is giving his own reason (in a causal clause of fact, which takes the indicative), and that in the second he is giving the reason alleged by the person who is complaining.

cum mōns intercēderet, prōcēdere nōn poterant, since a mountain intervened, they were not able to proceed

cum hostēs fūgissent, castra mōvērunt, since the enemy had fled, they moved the camp

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 1-3)

I. 1. The Belgians were brave because they were farthest away from the province. 2. The Helvetians were brave because (they said) they fought with the Germans. 3. They chose Orgetorix because he was the noblest of all. 4. They chose Dumnorix because (they said)
he held the leadership in the state. 5. The Helvetians had been greatly grieved because they thought their boundaries were narrow.

6. They will persuade Dumnorix because he is the brother of Diviciacus. 7. They had been influenced by Orgetorix because his authority was very great.

The Helvetians, because they were the most powerful people of Gaul, decided to go out from their territory. Many carts and beasts of burden were purchased. Orgetorix, the noblest of the Helvetians, persuaded Casticus, the Sequanian, to seize the sovereignty in his own state; and he also persuaded Dumnorix, the Hæduan, to attempt the same thing. There was no doubt that they hoped they should gain possession of all Gaul.

1 Not the simple ablative, § 104. 2 dē. 3 itemque. 4 idem.

LESSON XIII

27. Temporal Clauses introduced by postquam, ut, ubi, etc., § 193.

28. Temporal Clauses introduced by cum.
   a. The indicative in definitive clauses in past narrative, § 194. a.
   b. The subjunctive in circumstantial clauses in past narrative, § 194. b.

29. Temporal Clauses introduced by antequam or priusquam, § 197. a, b.

30. Temporal Clauses introduced by dum, dōnec, or quoad. § 198. III. a, b.

EXAMPLES

postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit, after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages

multōs amicōs habuit eō tempore cum ex urbe profectus est, he had many friends at the time when he set out from the city

hostēs eōs adgressī sunt cum inermēs essent, the enemy attacked them (at a time) when they were defenseless

incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervēnērunt, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy arrived
incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervenirent, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy should arrive

The clause priusquam . . . pervenērunt in the fourth sentence shows by the indicative that the enemy did in fact arrive; in the fifth sentence nothing shows certainly whether the enemy arrived or not. It is only known that the towns were burned in anticipation of their possible arrival. The same difference between fact and anticipation is shown by the mood in the following sentences:

imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervenērunt, the general remained in the city until the legions arrived
imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervenirent, the general remained in the city until the legions should arrive
imperātor in urbe manēbit dum legiōnēs perveniant, the general will remain in the city until the legions arrive

EXERCISE
(Cāesar, Book I, chapters 4–7)

I. 1. When they were attempting to collect men from the fields, Orgetorix died. 2. They burned all their towns and villages before they went out of their territory. 3. They will burn their towns and villages before they go from home. 4. After these things were announced to Cāesar, he hurried into Gaul. 5. He will arrive at Geneva before the envoys are sent to him. 6. He waited until the soldiers assembled. 7. They did not wait until the soldiers should assemble. 8. He will not wait until the soldiers assemble. 9. They say that he will not wait until the soldiers assemble.

II. The Helvetians, in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius, were attempting to march through our province. They sent to Cāesar ambassadors, the noblest of the state, to say that they had no other way, and to ask that it be permitted them to do this. Cāesar did not think that the request should be granted, but he said that he should take time to think about (it).

1 Present subjunctive, §§ 197. 6, 162. 2 § 101. a. 3 § 228. 4 Not infinitive. 5 concedendum esse, § 66. 6 diem. 7 ad dēliberandum.
LESSON XIV

31. Direct Questions, §§ 168, 170 and a. 1, 2, 3; b. 1, 2.

32. Indirect Questions, § 201 and note. For examples, see grammar.

EXERCISE
(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 8–10)

I. 1. Which legion does Cæsar have with him? 2. I ask which legion Cæsar has with him. 3. I asked which legion Cæsar had with him. 4. Does this lake flow into the river Rhone? 5. He will ask whether this lake flows into the river Rhone. 6. Will not the ambassadors return to him? 7. He was not a friend to the Helvetians, was he? 8. Did they permit the Helvetians to go through their territory or not? 9. Will he enlist the legions which are in Italy? 10. They asked whether he would enlist the legions.

II. When 1 the ambassadors returned to Cæsar, he said that he could not give them a way through the province. The Helvetians, having attempted by night to break through, were driven back by the Roman soldiers. But the Sequanians, 2 through the intercession of Dumnorix the Hæduan, permitted the Helvetians to go through their territory. (When this had been announced to Cæsar, he set out immediately for 3 Italy that he might lead his legions out of winter quarters and hasten into Gaul.)

1 ubi. 2 Latin, Dumnorix being intercessor, § 118. 3 in, § 97.

LESSON XV

33. Conditional Sentences.

a. Present Conditions: Non-Committal (Simple) and Contrary to Fact (Unfulfilled), § 199. I. a, b.

b. Future Conditions: More Probable (More Vivid Future) and Less Probable (Less Vivid Future), § 199. II. a, b.

c. Past Conditions: Non-Committal (Simple) and Contrary to Fact (Unfulfilled), § 199. III. a, b. 4 NONCE (L)
EXAMPLES

\[
\begin{align*}
s_i hoc facit, & \text{ fortis est, if he is doing this, he is brave} \\
& \text{a. Present} \\
s_i hoc faceret, & \text{ fortis esset, if he were doing this, he would be brave} \\
s_i hoc faciet, & \text{ fortis erit, if he does (shall do) this, he will be brave} \\
s_i hoc faciat & \text{ (fecerit), fortis sit, if he should do this, he would be brave} \\
& \text{b. Future} \\
s_i hoc faciebat, & \text{ fortis erat, if he was doing this, he was brave} \\
s_i hoc fecit, & \text{ fortis fuit, if he did this, he was brave} \\
s_i hoc fecisset, & \text{ fortis fuisset, if he had done this, he would have been brave} \\
& \text{c. Past} \\
\end{align*}
\]

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 11, 12)

I. 1. If the Hæduans cannot defend themselves, they will send ambassadors to Cæsar. 2. If they had not been able to defend themselves, they would have sent ambassadors to Cæsar. 3. If the fields should be laid waste, we could not ward off from the towns the violence of the enemy. 4. If the Gauls have boats, they are able to cross the river. 5. If he had not set out in the third watch, they would have crossed the Rhone. 6. If he attacked them, they concealed themselves in the neighboring forests. 7. If they had concealed themselves in the forests, would he have been able to attack them? 8. If the Helvetians should set out in the third watch, would they be able to defend themselves?

II. The Helvetians led their forces into the territory of the Hæduans. The Hæduans, who had always deserved well of the Roman people, asked Cæsar to send aid. They said that their fields had been laid waste and that their towns had been taken by storm. Cæsar attacked the Tigurini, who had not crossed the river Arar, and slew a large part of them.

1 de. 2 Latin, into. 3 Not infinitive (see Lesson X).
LESSON XVI

34. Concessive Clauses introduced by quamquam, § 191.
35. Concessive Clauses introduced by cum, § 192 and note.

EXAMPLES

quamquam flūmen est altum, tamen trānsire possumus, although (the fact is that) the river is deep, nevertheless we can cross
iter nōn āvertit, cum hostēs sequerentur, he did not turn aside, although the enemy were following
cum urgērentur, tamen nōn fūgērunt, although they were hard pressed, nevertheless they did not flee

Note. Observe that cum may mean when (temporal), since (causal), and although (concessive). When it is temporal, the mood used may be indicative or subjunctive (§ 194); but when it is causal or concessive, cum is always followed by the subjunctive. Its concessive use is often indicated by the presence of tamen, nevertheless, in the main clause.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 23-25)

I. 1. Although it is not necessary to distribute grain to the army, he hastens to go to Bibracte. 2. Although this thing was announced to the enemy, they did not engage in battle. 3. The Helvetians began to pursue our men that they might shut them off from the grain supply. 4. They pursued the Roman soldiers because they thought they were terrified. 5. Although this (these things) is so, nevertheless he sends the cavalry to sustain the attack of the enemy. 6. He engaged in battle although he had not encouraged his men. 7. Although the mountains were about a mile distant, they began to retreat thither.

II. On the next day Cæsar hastened to Bibracte, the richest town of the Hædui, which was not more than eighteen miles distant. The Helvetians, because they thought that the Romans were terrified, began to harass them from the rear. Cæsar withdrew his forces to the nearest hill, and in the middle of the hill formed a line of battle.
The horses had been removed, that the danger of all might be made equal; the soldiers hurled their javelins and broke through the phalanx of the enemy.

1 Omit. 2 cum ea ita sint. 3 Not infinitive (see Lesson VIII). 4 cum. 6 in, § 97.

LESSON XVII

36. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and a.

37. Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse, § 204.

a. Simple Sentences, § 204.
b. Complex Sentences, §§ 208, 209 and note.

38. Commands in Indirect Discourse, §§ 205, 206.

39. Interrogative Sentences (Questions) in Indirect Discourse, § 207. I.

EXAMPLES

(1) SIMPLE SENTENCES

The tense of the infinitive in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb as it would have been used in the direct discourse, and not by the tense of the verb of saying. The rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162) does not affect the infinitive.

DIRECT: Rōmānī fortiter pugnant, the Romans fight bravely

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{DIRECT:} & \quad \begin{cases} 
\text{dicit} \\
\text{dicēbat} \\
\text{dicet} \\
\text{dixit} \\
\text{dixerat} \\
\text{dixerit} 
\end{cases} \\
\text{INDIRECT:} & \quad \begin{cases} 
\text{Rōmānōs fortiter pugnāre, he says, said, will say, etc., that the Romans fight (fought, if the verb of saying refers to past time) bravely} 
\end{cases}
\end{align*}
\]

(2) COMPLEX SENTENCES

When translating complex sentences into indirect discourse, treat the main clause as a simple sentence, considering first what the form would be in the direct discourse. For the subordinate clauses, put the
verbs in the subjunctive if they are not already in that mood, observing the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162). It is the tense of the verb of saying, dicit, dixit, etc., which determines the sequence.

**Direct Discourse**

Rōmāni, qui in oppidō sunt, fortiter pugnant (pugnāvērunt, pugnābunt), *the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*

**Indirect Discourse**

dicit Rōmānōs, qui in oppidō sint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he says that the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*
dixit Rōmānōs, qui in oppidō essent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he said that the Romans, who were in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely*

**Direct Discourse**

Rōmāni, qui in oppidō fuērunt, fortiter pugnant (pugnāvērunt, pugnābunt), *the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*

**Indirect Discourse**

dicit Rōmānōs, qui in oppidō fuerint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he says that the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*
dixit Rōmānōs, qui in oppidō fuissent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he said that the Romans, who had been in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely*

**Direct Discourse**

cum bellum civitās īnfert, magistrātūs dēliguntur, *whenever a state makes war, magistrates are chosen*

**Indirect Discourse**

dicit cum bellum civitās inferat, magistrātūs dēligī, *he says that whenever a state makes war, magistrates are chosen*
dixit cum bellum civitās inferret, magistrātūs dēligī, *he said that whenever a state made war, magistrates were chosen*
(3) Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Discourse</th>
<th>Indirect Discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hostēs vince, conquer the enemy</td>
<td>dicit (dixit) hostēs vincat (vinceret), he directs (directed) him to conquer the enemy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(4) Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Discourse</th>
<th>Indirect Discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cur nōn exit? why does he not go forth?</td>
<td>(dicit, dixit) cur nōn exeat (exiret), (he says, said) why does (did) he not go forth?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 26–29)

I. (1) 1 The battle was fought sharply. 2. He said that the battle was fought so sharply that nobody could see an enemy 2 in retreat. 3. He says that they are aiding the Helvetians with grain. 4. The Helvetians say that he will send ambassadors to ask 3 for peace. 5. Send ambassadors to him to ask for peace. 6. He told 4 them to send ambassadors to ask for peace. 7. Six 5 thousand men hasten to the Rhine that they may not surrender their arms. 8. We said the hostages and arms were surrendered that we might not be regarded in the light 6 of enemies. 9. Since they cannot march through the province, they will return to their own territory. 10. He said that since they could not march through the province, they would return to their own territory. 11. Before they set out, they burned their towns. Why did they do this? 12. He said that before they had set out, they had burned their towns. Why had they done this?

II. Cæsar says that the battle was fought long and sharply; that the Romans took possession of the enemy’s camp; that the daughter and one of the sons of Orgetorix were captured; and that when the Helvetians had come to him to ask 3 for peace, he told 4 them to surrender the slaves who had deserted to them.

1 Latin, it was fought, § 66. 2 aversus. 3 Not infinitive. 4 dicō. 5 Latin, thousands of men. 6 numerus.
LESSON XVIII

(Before beginning this lesson review Lesson XV)


b. Less Probable (Less Vivid) Future Conditions in Indirect Discourse, §§ 211, 212.
c. Conditions Contrary to Fact in Indirect Discourse, § 213. a, b.

For all these cases, study carefully the examples in the grammar.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 50–54)

Change each of the following sentences into indirect discourse, first after dicit, and then after dixit:

I. 1. If Cæsar should lead his forces out of camp, he would draw up a line of battle. 2. If he led his army back into camp, Ariovistus sent soldiers to storm the camp. 3. The Germans will not conquer if they fight (shall fight) before the new moon. 4. If he had wished to use the soldiers for show, he would have stationed them before the camp. 5. If he approaches (shall have approached) to the camp of the enemy, they will lead out their forces. 6. If he were (now) approaching to the camp of the enemy, their forces would be led out. 7. If the signal had been given, the enemy would have sent the third line. 8. If he had given the signal, the third line would have been sent by the enemy. 9. If he pursues (shall have pursued) the Ubii, he will slay a great number of them.

II. All the enemy turned their backs and did not cease to flee until they reached the river Rhine; among these was Ariovistus, who, having found a little boat, escaped by (means of) it. He had two daughters; of whom one was slain, the other was captured.

1 ex. 2 profugiō. 3 Dative, § 88. 4 alter.
LESSON XIX

41. The Infinitive as Subject, § 216. a, b.

42. The Infinitive as Object, § 217. a, b.

43. The Complementary Infinitive, § 217. c.

EXAMPLES

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Infinitive as Subject} & : & \begin{cases} 
fas est, \text{ it is right} \\
turpe est, \text{ it is disgraceful} \\
necesse est, \text{ it is necessary} \\
opus est, \text{ it is necessary} \\
licet, \text{ it is permitted} \\
apertum est, \text{ it is plain} \\
mirum est, \text{ it is wonderful} \\
vērum est, \text{ it is true} \\
fāma est, \text{ it is rumored}
\end{cases} \\
\text{Infinitive as Object} & : & \begin{cases} 
\text{ire, to go, or eum} \\
\text{ire, (for) him} \\
\text{eto, to go} \\
\text{agrōs vāstāri, that} \\
\text{the fields are} \\
\text{laid waste}
\end{cases} \\
\text{Complementary Infinitive} & : & \begin{cases} 
dēbeō, \text{ I ought} \\
possum, \text{ I can (am able)} \\
soleō, \text{ I am accustomed}
\end{cases}
\end{align*}
\]

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 1–4)

I. 1. It is not necessary for all the Belgians to conspire against the Roman people. 2. They were unwilling for the Germans to dwell longer in Gaul. 3. Cæsar is able to enlist two new legions. 4. Cæsar said that he was able to send Labienus to lead these legions into Gaul. 5. They said that the Remi were ready both to give hostages and to do (his) commands. 6. We cannot prevent the Suessiones from making common cause with them. 7. The Belgians were able to prevent the Germans from entering into their territory. 8. It is true that Galba is now king.
II. The Remi were able to send ambassadors to Cæsar to say ¹ that they had neither made common cause with the other Gauls nor conspired against the Roman people, and were ready to assist with grain and other supplies⁷; that all the other Gauls were in arms; and that not even the Suessiones could be prevented from making common cause with them.

¹ Not infinitive.  ² dēterreō.  ³ quīn.  ⁴ cōnsentiō.  ⁵ prohibeō.  ⁶ Infinitive.  ⁷ rēs.

LESSON XX

44. The Participle, § 219.

a. Tenses, § 167.

b. Adjective and Predicate Uses, §§ 220. a–e, 221.

c. The Ablative Absolute, §§ 117, 118.

45. Certain tenses and uses of the English participle are wanting in Latin, as is seen in the following comparison:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. cōgēns</td>
<td>collecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>having collected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. coāctūrus</td>
<td>about to collect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hence, in such a sentence as they killed him (as he was) collecting the ships, the present participle, collecting, since it exists also in Latin, cōgēns, may be translated literally, (eum) cōgentem nāvēs occidērunt.

But, in the absence of the present passive participle, we cannot translate literally the ships (while) being collected were seized, but must express the idea in some other way, as, for example, by a clause, while they were being collected, dum cōguntur.

Similarly, we cannot translate literally, by means of a past active participle, the Romans, having collected their ships, set sail; but must express the idea by a clause, cum nāvēs coēgissent, when they had collected their ships, or by an ablative absolute, nāvibus coāctis, their ships having been collected, or by some other form of statement.
46. The place of the missing participles in Latin is most frequently supplied by the ablative absolute, but it is to be noted that this construction can be used only when its substantive refers to a person or thing not elsewhere mentioned in the same sentence. For example, do not translate *Caesar, having captured the town, burned it* by *Caesar, oppidō captō, id incendit*, where *id* and *oppidō* refer to the same thing, but rather by *Caesar oppidum captum incendit*.

But in *Caesar, having captured the town, burned the temple*, the ablative absolute may be used; as, *Caesar, oppidō captō, templum incendit*.

47. In translating English sentences into Latin, clauses of *time, cause, condition, concession*, etc. are often best rendered by a participial construction; see § 220. a–e.

**EXERCISE**

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 5–8)

Before beginning the translation of the following sentences study carefully all the examples in the grammar, § 220. a–e. In translating use a participle wherever possible.

I. 1. Cæsar encourages the Remi, and orders that the children be brought to him as hostages. 2. When he had given these commands, he dismissed them from him. 3. After he saw that the Belgians had been collected into one place and were coming against him, he hastened to pitch camp. 4. Having stationed a guard there, he left Sabinus with six legions. 5. When they have thrown a multitude of men about all the walls, they will approach the gates. 6. After burning all their villages, they hastened against Cæsar's camp. 7. When they have laid waste the fields, they will pitch camp. 8. They left two legions in camp and drew up the other legions in line of battle.

II. 2 If the place in front of the camp is suitable for drawing up a line of battle, Cæsar will establish a fort on each side of the hill, so that the enemy may not surround his (men) by fighting on the flanks. If he should station the legions in line of battle in front of the camp, the enemy would lead their forces out of camp and draw (them) up.

1 Use a participle. 2 Not a clause. 3 Latin, collected. 4 totus.
LESSON XXI


49. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, § 224. a.

50. The Dative of the Apparent (Implied) Agent, § 87.


52. The passive periphrastic conjugation denotes what must be, or what ought to be, and is always passive. Therefore, if this construction is used, sentences not already passive must first be cast in the passive form; for example, to translate Caesar must give the signal, we must recast the sentence to the signal must be given by Caesar, Caesari signum dandum est.

53. Since the passive of an intransitive verb is always impersonal (§ 66), the passive periphrastic of such a verb must be used impersonally; hence the gerundive of an intransitive is always neuter singular in form. The case that the verb governs in the active is retained in the passive; for example, they cannot be persuaded is rendered by eis persuādēri nōn potest (lit. it cannot be persuaded to them); they must be persuaded is rendered by eis persuādendum est (lit. it must be persuaded to them).

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 9–12)

I. 1. He persuades them to hasten\(^1\) to the river. 2. They\(^2\) could not be persuaded to hasten\(^1\) to the river. 3. We\(^2\) must take the fort by storm. 4. We must carry this war on sharply. 5. They understand that they must take the town by storm and cross the river. 6. They ought to be persuaded to gather from all sides. 7. If they had been persuaded to delay, they could have brought aid to their (men). 8. He ought to defend the camp and lead out his soldiers.

II. The enemy waited for a long time (to see) if Cæsar would cross the swamp; but after he led his (men) back into camp, they hastened to the river to destroy\(^3\) the bridge. Since they could neither
take the city by storm nor cross the river, they decided that it was best not to wait longer, and hastened to return home. When Cæsar had learned this (thing), he pursued them many miles and slew a great number of them in their flight.

1 Not infinitive (see Lesson X). 2 Dative. 3 Not infinitive (see Lesson VIII). 4 Ablative absolute. 5 multitūdō. 6 Participle.

LESSON XXII

54. The Gerundive (continued), § 224. b.
55. The Gerund, § 223. a–d and note.

a. The Gerundive and the Gerund expressing Purpose, § 225. a, b.

Note. In the genitive and the ablative without a preposition the gerund may take a direct object, as, cupidus epistulam scribendi, desirous of writing a letter. In other cases the gerundive construction is preferred, and may be used even here, as, cupidus epistulae scribendae. The translation is exactly the same as for the gerund.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 13–18)

I. 1. Cæsar came for the sake of receiving hostages. 2. They said that they had come for the sake of seeking peace. 3. They say they are prepared to endure all indignities and insults. 4. They did not send ambassadors to accept terms of peace. 5. You have come to us for the sake of plundering. 6. They were prepared to neglect this plan. 7. They did not think they were prepared to neglect these plans.

II. If Cæsar had marched across the river, he would have attacked all the Nervii and their neighbors, whom they had persuaded to await the coming of the Romans. The Belgae thought that there would not be any trouble in attacking the Romans under their packs. "If you," they say, "attack (shall attack) the first legion while the others are a great distance away, the other legions will not dare to make a stand."

1 parātus. 2 Gerundive. 3 quicquam negoti, § 76. a. 4 Infinitive. 5 inquiunt.
LESSON XXIII

56. Relative Pronouns, § 137.

57. Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 134 and a, 135.
   a. Hic, iste, and ille point out a person or thing definitely in place or time. Their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:

Speaker  hic  iste  ille
            this (near)  that (remote)  that (more remote)

The pronoun is is used of persons or things either far or near and makes no definite reference to place or time. As a substantive it is commonly used as a pronoun of the third person (he, she, it).

58. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives, § 144. a–d.

59. Reflexive Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 132, 133 and note.
   a. The Intensive Pronoun ipse, § 136.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book III, chapters 13–16)

I. 1. He says that they made their own ships after this fashion. 
   2. The ships which they used were made to endure any violence whatsoever. 3. They cannot be harmed. 4. If he had waited for the fleet, they could have been harmed. 5. Brutus, who had been in command of the fleet, adopted this plan of battle. 6. Cæsar sent soldiers to take these ships by storm. 7. When this war is finished, the Veneti will surrender themselves and all their (possessions) to Cæsar. 8. If Cæsar had taken the town by storm, the Veneti would have surrendered themselves and all their (possessions).

II. When Cæsar had taken several towns by storm, and had not been able to harm the enemy, he determined to wait for the fleet that had been assigned to Brutus. When this assembled, at first it was not clear to Brutus what plan of battle he should adopt, for he knew that
the enemy's ships were furnished with every kind of arms, and that his own soldiers excelled in valor alone. But he did not doubt that the Romans would take the ships by storm.

1 quīvīs. 2 Impersonal passive (see Lesson XXI). 3 Relative clause of purpose. 4 Ablative absolute. 5 qui. 6 conficiō. 7 unus. 8 quin with the subjunctive, § 186.

LESSON XXIV

60. Expressions of Time.

a. Time When or Within Which, § 119.

b. Time How Long or During Which, § 96.

c. Time Before or After an Event, § 114.

To denote the time before or time after an event the Latin uses the word ante or post, either as an adverb with the ablative of measure of difference (§ 114) or as a preposition governing the accusative:

decem ante dīēbus (lit. before by ten days) or ante decem dīēs, ten days before

decem post dīēbus (lit. afterward by ten days) or post decem dīēs, ten days after

Note. As prepositions, ante and post either precede the numeral or stand between it and its noun; as adverbs, they either precede or follow the noun.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 20–22)

I. 1. A few months after, 1 when he had subdued many tribes of Gauls, he hastened to set out for Britain. 2. A few days before, he had ordered the fleet to assemble. 3. This was the fleet which he had used in the preceding summer. 4. He waited ten days 2 for the fleet to assemble. 5. In a few days ambassadors will come to him to promise hostages. 6. On the tenth day messengers returned to Cæsar 5 to report 4 the things they had observed. 7. Cæsar will delay there a few days 2 until the ambassadors come to him. 8. After a few days the ships will come to the same port.
II. Before Cæsar set out for Britain, he sent ahead Volusenus and Commius, whom he thought to be suitable for this business. Volusenus did not trust himself to the barbarians, and returned in five days. Commius, who was faithful to Cæsar, and whose influence in these regions was great, urged the states to submit to the protection of the Roman people, and said that Cæsar’s legions would quickly come there.

1 Ablative absolute. 2 dum with the subjunctive, § 198. III. b. 3 Relative clause of purpose. 4 quae. 5 fidem sequor (see Lesson X).

LESSON XXV

61. Expressions of Place.

a. Place from Which, § 101. a.
b. Place Whither, § 97.
c. Place toward Which, § 97. note.
d. Place at or in Which, § 120.
e. The Locative Case, § 120. a.

NOTE. Apply as a general principle the rule that the relations of place are expressed by prepositions with their proper cases, but that names of towns and domus omit the preposition.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 23–26)

I. 1. In the third watch the cavalry will advance to the farther port and embark. 2. When he had touched Britain and seen the forces of the enemy on all the hills, he thought that he ought to wait for the other ships. 3. He says that when the signal had been given, they moved forward from that place about seven miles. 4. The soldiers thought that they ought to leap down from the ship and fight with the enemy. 5. If they had advanced a little into the water, they could have thrown their javelins. 6. Cæsar says that at this place the men-of-war were of great service to the Romans. 7. He said that they should leap down out of the ships unless they wished to betray the eagle to the enemy.
II. When Cæsar had noticed that his (soldiers) could not follow the standards, and that the enemy on the exposed flank were hurling (their) weapons, he commanded that reënforcements be sent to those who were hard pressed. The Romans now put the enemy to flight; and if they had had cavalry, they could have pursued them farther.

1 Dative. 2 Gerundive. 3 Ablative absolute. 4 § 66 (Lesson XXI). 5 hoc locō, § 120. b. 6 § 89. 7 § 205 (Lesson XVII). 8 ab. 9 Present participle. 10 Dative, § 88.

LESSON XXVI


a. The Possessive Genitive, § 73.
b. The Genitive of Material, § 79.
c. The Genitive of Description, § 77.
d. The Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole), § 76 and a.
e. The Subjective Genitive, § 75. a.
f. The Objective Genitive, § 75. b.

Note. With cardinal numbers and quidam the ablative with ē or ex is used instead of the partitive genitive:

quattuor ex Helvētiis, four of the Helvetii

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 27–32)

I. 1. A large part of the hostages whom Cæsar ordered they give immediately. 2. If this storm had arisen suddenly, 1 not one of the ships could have held the course. 3. He said that many ships had been 2 driven out (of their course) to the lower part of the island. 4. Cæsar ordered the ships of the cavalry to set sail from 3 the upper harbor. 5. The storm was so great that no opportunity of aiding was given to our (men). 6. The chiefs of Britain know that cavalry and ships are lacking to the Romans, and think they can cut them off from grain. 7. If the Romans should be conquered by them, nobody would afterwards cross to Britain for the sake of waging war. 8. A part of the soldiers were on guard before the gates of the camp.
II. After this battle had been fought, 4 ambassadors came to Caesar to seek peace, and said that 5 he ought to pardon them because of (their) ignorance. Caesar did not doubt that they had waged war without cause, but he pardoned them and ordered hostages, all of whom 6 they gave in a few days.

1 nullus. 2 deicio. 3 Latin, out of. 4 facio. 5 Latin, it ought to be pardoned to them (Lesson XXI). 6 Not a partitive genitive.

LESSON XXVII

63. The Dative.

a. The Dative as Indirect Object, § 82.

b. The Dative with Special Verbs, § 83 and note.

c. The Dative with Compounds, § 84.

Note 1. The so-called special verbs that govern the dative do so because they have a special meaning requiring an indirect object; for example, the exact meaning of imperat militibus is *he gives a command to the soldiers*; of persuadet amicis, *he offers persuasion to his friends.*

These verbs often take a direct object along with the dative, usually a neuter pronoun or an object clause; for example, amicis persuadet ut exeant, *he persuades (to) his friends to go forth.* Here the clause ut exeant is the direct object and amicis the indirect object of persuadet.

Note 2. Likewise verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, etc. do not take the dative because of the preposition, but rather because their meaning requires an indirect object.

Many verbs compounded with these prepositions are transitive and take the accusative. Just what verbs are used with the dative must be learned by observing the usage of the best writers as recorded in the Latin dictionary. Some compound verbs take the accusative (direct object) along with the dative (indirect); for example, Caesar Gallis bellum infert, *Caesar makes war on the Gauls.*

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 33–38)

I. 1. Cæsar will bring aid to our (men) 1 if they are alarmed by these things. 2. The barbarians had sent messengers into all parts to declare to their (men) the small number of the Roman soldiers. 3. He points out that the opportunity is given to them of freeing themselves.
4. You see how great an opportunity ² for taking booty is given to you. 5. He ³ demands of the barbarians a large number of hostages. 6. They persuaded Cæsar to double ⁴ the number of hostages that he had demanded of them. 7. They had been made subject to the power of the Roman people. 8. They think that he ought not to be made subject to the power of the Roman people.

II. The barbarians, having thought the opportunity was given to them for taking booty and for freeing themselves forever ⁵ from the fear of the Roman people, sent messengers in all directions to collect infantry and cavalry. Although they came to Cæsar's camp with a great multitude of men, he stationed the legions in line in front of the camp; for he did not doubt that the enemy would not be able to endure the attack of the Roman soldiers.


LESSON XXVIII

64. The Dative (continued).

a. The Dative of Possession (Possessor), § 88.

b. The Dative of Purpose or End ("Double Dative"), § 89.

c. The Dative of Reference, § 85.

d. The Dative with Adjectives, § 90.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book V, chapters 40-43)

I. 1. Cicero had in mind to send a letter to Cæsar. 2. The towers will be a great defense ² for the camp. ³ 3. They thought that the camp would be a great defense for themselves. 4. The towers were next to the camp. 5. The Nervii ² had no ground for ³ friendship with Cicero. 6. The Nervii say that they have ground for friendship with Cæsar. 7. He says that the Germans ⁴ who are next to the Rhine have in mind to cross this river. 8. If they hope for ⁵ any safety for themselves ² from the Nervii, they are mistaken. 9. These
days were the most severe for the Roman soldiers. He does not doubt that these days were severe for all the soldiers.

II. If all Gaul had been in arms, the Germans would not have crossed the Rhine to storm the winter quarters of Cæsar and the others. The Nervii, who said that they were well-disposed to Cicero and the Romans, urged them to depart from winter quarters and set out into whatsoever parts they wished. But when Cicero had replied that he could not accept terms from an enemy in arms, and had advised them to send ambassadors to Cæsar, they began to encircle the winter quarters with a rampart and a ditch.

1 Cf. mihi in animō est, I have in mind, § 88. 2 Dative. 4 § 208. 5 quicquam praesidi. 6 bonō animō, § 116. 7 in. 8 See Lesson X. 9 Latin, armed.

LESSON XXIX

65. The Accusative.

a. The Accusative as Direct Object, § 91.
b. The Accusative of Duration and Extent, § 96.
c. The Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive, §§ 92, 217. a, b.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book V, chapters 44, 48, 49, 52)

I. 1. When Cæsar had learned in how great danger Cicero was, he persuaded one of the Gauls to carry a letter to him. 2. If this letter had been intercepted by the Gauls, they would have been able to learn Cæsar’s plans. 3. Did Cicero ask for a Gaul to take a letter to Cæsar? 4. If Cæsar knows that Cicero has been freed from the siege, he will send scouts to learn by what route he can cross the river most advantageously. 5. Does he think that he ought to relax his speed? 6. From all these things he is able to judge with what valor Cicero defended himself from the enemy. 7. Will he praise Cicero and the legion or not? 8. Does he think that the legions of Cicero should be praised by him?

II. In this legion there were two soldiers who were very brave, one of whom was called Pullo, the other Vorenus. While a sharp
fight is going on at the fortifications, Pullo says, “Vorenus, what opportunity\(^{11}\) do you wait for\(^{12}\) to prove your valor?” and immediately advances outside the fortifications and with a javelin pierces one of the enemy \(^{13}\) who runs forward. When the enemy had hurled their weapons on\(^{14}\) him \(^{15}\) and given (him) no opportunity of advancing, Vorenus \(^{16}\) ran to aid him.

\(^{1}\) quidam. \(^{2}\) Relative clause of purpose. \(^{3}\) Ablative, § 101. \(^{4}\) explôrō. \(^{5}\) Dative (see Lesson XXI). \(^{6}\) dē celeritātē. \(^{7}\) ex. \(^{8}\) quantus. \(^{9}\) § 177. \(^{a}\) acriter pugnātur, § 66. \(^{11}\) locus. \(^{12}\) Latin, of proving. \(^{13}\) Participle. \(^{14}\) in. \(^{15}\) neque. \(^{16}\) illī succurrō.

**LESSON XXX**

**66. The Ablative.**

*a.* The Ablative of Separation, § 101.

*b.* The Ablative of Origin, § 102.

*c.* The Ablative of Cause, § 109.

*d.* The Ablative of Accordance, § 111.

**Note.** The ablative of separation regularly takes a preposition if the ablative denotes persons.

**EXERCISE**

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 9–12)

I. 1. Cæsar\(^{1}\) ought to cross the Rhine for\(^{2}\) two reasons. 2. If reinforcements had been sent out of the state, the Ubii would not have sent ambassadors to him for the sake\(^{3}\) of clearing themselves. 3. He urged them\(^{4}\) to collect all their (possessions) from the fields into the towns, that the innocent might not\(^{5}\) pay the penalty for the guilty. 4. We do not doubt that this forest protects them from the wrongdoings and incursions of the enemy. 5. If they had not been driven (to it) by necessity, they would not have gone to Rome for the sake of seeking aid. 6. By the coming of Cæsar a change (in the state) of affairs\(^{6}\) \(^{7}\) was made, and the hostages were given back to the Hæduans. 7. Did the Sequani lose the leadership by the coming of the Romans? 8. Did the Remi do this for the sake of obtaining the second place of dignity?
II. In Gaul there were two factions, the chiefs of which had the highest authority. When Cæsar came into Gaul, he learned that the Hædui were the chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of the other. The latter had attached the Germans and Ariovistus to themselves, and having killed all the nobility of the Hædui, had compelled them to swear publicly that they would enter into no plan against the Sequani. But Cæsar compelled the Sequani to give back the hostages to the Hædui, and made other great changes of affairs.

1 Dative, § 87. 2 dē. 3 § 224. c. 4 See Lesson X. 5 poenas pendō. 6 rēs. 7 Ablative absolute. 8 nihil cōnsili, § 76.

LESSON XXXI

67. The Ablative (continued).

a. The Ablative of Manner, § 110.

b. The Ablative of Agent, § 104.

c. The Ablative of Means, § 106.

d. The Ablative with útor, fruor, etc., § 107. a.

e. The Ablative with opus est, § 107. c.

Note 1. The ablative of means is used without a preposition, while the ablative of agent requires ā or ab:

Galli virtūte Rōmānōrum superābantur, the Gauls were overcome by the valor of the Romans

Galli ā Rōmānis superābantur, the Gauls were overcome by the Romans

Note 2. The ablative of manner is rare without cum or an attributive adjective.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 13-17)

I. 1. There are those 1 who are oppressed by debt, tributes, (and) the wrongdoing of the more powerful. 2. Some went to the Druids of their own accord; others were sent by their parents and relatives. 3. If they had thought it was right to intrust these things to letters, they would not have wished to use Greek letters. 4. They think that those 2 who trust in letters 3 pay less attention to memory. 5. The
life of man must be paid for the life of man. 6. They sacrifice men because (they say) they think that for the life of man the life of man must be paid. 7. Images of a huge size are filled with living men and set on fire. 8. We do not doubt that these images were filled with living men and set on fire.

II. In all Gaul the Druids were the most powerful. They were accustomed to attend to matters of religion, and were exempt from war. Caesar says that they decided all controversies, and that if anybody did not abide by their decree, they prohibited (him) from (taking part in) the sacrifices. Over all these Druids one presided, who had the greatest authority among them.

1 § 177. 2 § 208. 3 minus studeō. 4 reddō. 5 § 188. 6 intersum, § 84. 7 rēs divinae. 8 absum ab. 9 cōnstituō dē. 10 quis. 11 interdicō with ablative.

LESSON XXXII

68. The Ablative (continued).

b. The Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference, § 114.
c. The Ablative of Respect (Specification), § 115.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 18–23)

I. 1. These states differ from one another in language, customs, (and) laws. 2. In this (respect) the Gauls differ from the others. 3. They will establish peace and friendship with (their) neighbors. 4. If anybody has heard anything from the neighbors, he informs the magistrates. 5. After a year the magistrates compel the Germans to go elsewhere. 6. If a state should carry on war with (its) neighbors, magistrates would be chosen to take charge of this war. 7. After a few years they will build (houses) to avoid the cold and heat. 8. Their neighbors had been driven out of the fields many years before.

II. Cæsar said that the Germans differed much from the Gauls; that they neither had Druids to take charge of matters of religion,
nor did they pay heed to sacrifices; that their gods were the Sun and Vulcan and the Moon, by whose resources they were visibly aided; and that their whole life consisted in hunting and the pursuits of warfare.

1 inter sé. 2 ab. 3 confirmō. 4 Latin, shares (it) with. 5 transeō. 6 Not infinitive. 7 Gerundive. 8 Plural. 9 res divīnae. 10 studeō.

LESSON XXXIII

69. The Roman Calendar, §§ 227. a–i, 228.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 1–5)

I. 1. He said that they would set out for Gaul on the third of October. 2 When they had prepared everything, they appointed a day on which to assemble at Cenabum. This day was the twenty-eighth of March. 3 If this report had been carried to all the states of Gaul, great forces would have been collected on the tenth of August. 4 They say that he demanded hostages of all these states on the thirteenth of April. 5 Having collected a large army, he will set out for the Hædui on the seventeenth of April. 6 On the sixteenth of March envoys had been sent to ask for a reënforcement. 7 Even if they set out on the fourteenth of July, they will cross the river many days later. 8 After Cæsar’s death Augustus became emperor. He was born on the twenty-third of September in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius.

II. The Gauls did not doubt that Cæsar would be detained in Italy and not be able to return to the army; and so they entered into plans for war. They thought that it would be easy to cut Cæsar off from the army, because (they said) the legions were in winter quarters and could not go out without a commander. Vercingetorix, a young man of the greatest power, tried to persuade all the Gauls to take up arms for the sake of general freedom.

1 Ablative absolute (cf. p. 15, ll. 10–12). 2 § 175. 3 Dative. 4 more. 5 princeps fiō. 6 § 228. 7 de. 8 Not infinitive.
LESSON XXXIV

70. EXERCISE

(Caesar, Book VII, chapters 6–10, 63, 64)

I. 1. Caesar did not summon the legions into the province because (he said) they could engage in battle on the march. 2. While these things were being prepared, Caesar’s forces gathered together in (into) the territory of the Helvetians. 3. Caesar waited in these places a few days until the forces which he had ordered to assemble should come to him. 4. Brutus, whom he had put in command of these soldiers, he urged not to be away long from camp. 5. When he had come into the territory of the Lingones, he wished to collect the other legions into one place before the Arverni should be informed of his coming. 6. If he had not set out for the Boii, he would have sent envoys to them to inform (them) of his coming, and to urge (them) to sustain with great courage the attack of the enemy. 7. When Vercingetorix had ordered hostages of the other states, the cavalry urged him not to tempt fortune, and persuaded him to try to cut off the Romans from foragings.

II. The Arverni thought that they were protected by the mountain, because at this time of year the paths had never lain open. But Caesar crossed the mountain so quickly that he arrived at their territory before they knew he had set out for Gaul. In their alarm they quickly gathered about Vercingetorix and begged him not to permit them to be plundered by the Romans.

1 § 198. I. 2 Not infinitive. 3 Dative. 4 pābūlātiō. 5 Participle.

LESSON XXXV

71. EXERCISE

(Caesar, Book VII, chapters 65–71)

I. 1. The enemy were superior in infantry of light armor and in cavalry, and Caesar knew that they were guarding their territory with great care. 2. When the forces of the enemy were gathering together,
Caesar marched into the territory of the Sequani, 1 that he might the more easily bring aid to the province. 3. You yourselves ought 2 not to doubt that nobody will dare to advance. 4. Caesar knew that the knights of the enemy could not be prevented 8 from advancing, and he ordered his own cavalry to go against them. 5. If he should have these soldiers in front of the camp, they would be a terror 4 to the enemy. 6. 5 When these things had been reported, Caesar ordered the army 6 to halt, that the baggage might be taken back inside the legions. 7. Meanwhile pickets ought to be placed by Caesar 7 in these redoubts, that no sally may suddenly be made.

II. Unless Vercingetorix had wished to march immediately to Alesia, he would not have withdrawn the forces which were stationed before the camp. Caesar, having left two legions as a guard to the baggage, followed the enemy so quickly that on the second day he pitched 8 camp at Alesia. He set about investing 9 the town because he thought that it could not be reduced 10 except 11 by siege. The circuit of the Roman fortification measured 12 eleven miles. Vercingetorix, having received into the town all the forces which he had stationed before the town, prepared to await reinforcements.

1 § 176. 2 dēbeō. 3 § 185. 4 § 89. 5 Ablative absolute. 6 agmen. 7 Dative. 8 faciō. 9 circumvāllāre. 10 expugnō. 11 nisi. 12 teneō.

LESSON XXXVI

72. MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE

(Caesar, Book I, chapters 1-7)

Caesar says that the Belgians inhabited one part of Gaul, the Aquitanians another, (and) the Gauls the third; that of all these the Belgians, who were farthest away from the Roman province and carried on war with the Germans, were the bravest; (and) that the Helvetians surpassed the other Gauls in valor because they either repelled the Germans from their own territory or carried on war in the territory of the Germans.1

The Helvetians, 2 who were fond of making war, were persuaded to go out of their territory. But since they wished to march through
the province, Cæsar, \(^3\) having collected a large army in Italy, hastened to set out for Gaul.

Ambassadors were sent to Cæsar by the Helvetians to ask him to permit \(^4\) them to march through the province. But Cæsar, who was waiting until his soldiers should assemble, replied to them thus: "I shall take time \(^5\) \(^6\) to think about (it); if you wish anything, return on \(^7\) the thirteenth of April.\(^8\)"

\(^1\) Use a pronoun, and cf. note on p. lxiv, l. 11. \(^2\) Dative. \(^3\) See Lesson XX. \(^4\) See Lesson X. \(^5\) diem. \(^6\) ad dēliberandum. \(^7\) ad. \(^8\) § 227.
The words prescribed by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years in Latin are given below

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

1. ab, ä
2. abdō
3. accēdō

4. accidō
5. accipiō

6. ācer
7. acīes

8. acūtus
9. ad
10. adeō (adv.)
11. adjiciō
12. adjedior

13. adhibeō
14. adigō
15. aditus
16. administrō
17. admitterō
18. admodum
19. adorior
20. adsum
21. adulescēns
22. adversus (adj.)

23. aedificium
24. aeger
25. aegree
26. æquō

27. aequus
28. aequus

29. aestās
30. aestus
31. aetās
32. ager
33. agger

34. agmen
35. agō
36. alacer
37. aliēnus

38. aliquis
39. aliter
40. alius
41. alō
42. alter

43. altus
44. amicus
45. āmittō

46. amplius
47. amplus
48. an
49. ancora
50. angustiae
51. angustus
52. animadvertō

53. animus
54. annus
55. ante
56. anteā

57. antiquus
58. aperīō
59. appellō, -āre
60. appropinquō
61. apud
62. aqua
63. aquila
64. arbitrīor
65. arbor
66. arcessō
67. arma
68. at
69. atque, aē

70. attingō
71. auctor
72. auctorītās

73. audāx
74. audeō
75. audīō
76. augeō
77. aut
ENGLISH WORD LIST

(See page 447)

The words prescribed by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years in Latin are given below

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

1. away from, by
2. put away, hide
3. go to, approach, be added
4. befall, happen
5. take to, receive, accept
6. sharp, keen, eager
7. edge, line of battle
8. sharp
9. to, toward, near
10. up to this, so
11. do to, affect
12. step up, approach, attack
13. have on hand, supply
14. drive to, haul, move
15. approach
16. govern, manage
17. let go, admit
18. very, very much
19. rise against, attack
20. be near, be present
21. youth, young man
22. (turned toward) facing, opposite
23. building
24. sick
25. with difficulty
26. make equal

27. level, equal, kindly
28. copper, bronze, money
29. summer
30. heat, tide
31. age, time of life
32. field, country
33. mound, rampart, causeway
34. marching column
35. drive, do, plead
36. eager, cheerful
37. belonging to another, strange, unfavorable
38. some, any
39. otherwise
40. another
41. nourish
42. the other (of two), second
43. high, deep
44. friendly
45. send away, let go, lose
46. more
47. large, splendid
48. or (in a question)
49. anchor
50. narrowness, defile, pass

51. narrow
52. turn the mind to, observe
53. spirit, courage, mind
54. year
55. before
56. before that, previously
57. ancient, old-time
58. open
59. name, call
60. approach
61. near, in the presence of, among
62. water
63. eagle
64. consider, think
65. tree
66. summon, invite
67. arms, implements
68. but
69. and also, and
70. touch upon, attain
71. originator, founder
72. authority, influence
73. bold, daring
74. dare
75. hear
76. make grow, increase
77. or
| 78. autem | 116. cīvitās | 148. conloquium |
| 79. auxilium | | 149. cōnor |
| 80. barbarus | 117. clam | 150. conquīrō |
| 81. bellum | 118. clāmō | 151. cōnscribō |
| 82. bene | 119. classis | 152. cōnsentiō |
| 83. beneficium | 120. claudō | 153. cōnsequor |
| 84. bīduum | 121. cliēns | 154. cōnsīdō |
| 85. bīnī | 122. coepī | 155. cōnsilium |
| 86. bis | 123. cōgitō | 156. cōnsistō |
| 87. bonus | 124. cognōscō | 157. cōspiciō |
| 88. brevis | 125. cōgō | 158. cōspicor |
| 89. cadō | 126. cohors | 159. cōnstat |
| 90. caedēs | 127. colligō, -ere | 160. cōnstituō |
| 91. caedō | 128. collis | 161. cōnsuēscō |
| 92. calamitās | 129. commeātus | 162. cōnsuētūdō |
| 93. campus | 130. commemorō | 163. cōnsul |
| 94. capiō | 131. committō | 164. cōnsulō |
| 95. captīvus | 132. commodus | 165. cōnsūmō |
| 96. caput | 133. communícō | 166. contemnō |
| 97. castellum | 134. communís | 167. contendō |
| 98. castra | 135. comperīō | 168. contineō |
| 99. cāsus | 136. complūrēs | 169. continuus |
| 100. causā | 137. concēdō | 170. contrā |
| 101. cēdō | 138. concilium | 171. contrōversia |
| 102. celer | 139. condiciō | 172. contumēlia |
| 103. cēnseō | 140. cōnfertus | 173. cōpia |
| 104. centum | 141. cōnfestim | 174. cornū |
| 105. centuriō | 142. cōnficiō | 175. corpus |
| 106. cernō | 143. cōnfidō | 176. cotīdiē |
| 107. certus | 144. cōnfirmō | 177. crēber |
| 108. cēterī | 145. cōnflīgō | |
78. moreover, but
79. aid, assistance
80. foreign, rude
81. war
82. well
83. kind deed, service
84. two days
85. two each
86. twice
87. good
88. short, brief
89. fall
90. slaughter
91. fell, cut, kill
92. disaster
93. plain, field
94. take, seize
95. captive, prisoner
96. head
97. fort, redoubt
98. camp
99. fall, chance, accident
100. by reason of, for the sake of
101. move, go away, yield
102. swift
103. assess, propose, estimate, vote
104. hundred
105. centurion
106. distinguish
107. sure, certain
108. the others, the rest
109. food
110. about
111. around
112. put around, surround
113. hem in, surround
114. this side of, hither
115. citizen
116. citizenship, community, state
117. secretly
118. shout, cry
119. fleet
120. close, shut
121. dependent, retainer, vassal
122. have begun
123. think, reflect
124. learn; perf. know
125. drive together, gather, compel
126. cohort, troop
127. gather, collect
128. hill
129. supplies
130. mention
131. send together, in trust, join
132. suitable, convenient
133. share, communicate
134. common, general
135. find out, ascertain
136. several, very many
137. go with, withdraw, yield
138. calling together, meeting
139. agreement, terms, condition
140. crowded together, dense
141. promptly
142. accomplish, complete
143. trust
144. strengthen, assert
145. strike together, fight
146. conspire, plot
147. place together, establish
148. conference
149. try, attempt
150. seek together, collect
151. write together, enroll
152. think together, agree
153. follow up, overtake, attain
154. settle, take position
155. plan, counsel
156. take position, halt, stop
157. behold
158. behold
159. it is agreed, is evident
160. put together, establish, decide
161. become accustomed
162. custom, habit
163. consul
164. plan, consult, deliberate
165. use up
166. despise
167. struggle, hasten
168. hold together, bound
169. unbroken
170. against, opposite
171. dispute, quarrel
172. insult
173. supply, abundance; plur. forces
174. horn, wing (of an army)
175. body
176. every day, daily
177. thick, close, frequent
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word List</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>178. crēdō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179. cruciātus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180. cum (prep.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181. cum (conj.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182. cupidus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183. cupīō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184. cūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185. cūra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186. cūrō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187. currō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188. cursus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189. cūstōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190. dē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191. dēbeō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192. decem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193. dēcernō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194. dēcertō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. decimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196. déclīvis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197. dédō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198. défendō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199. déférō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200. défessus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201. déficiō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202. deinde</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203. délēō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204. délīgō, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205. démōnstrō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206. dēserō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207. désiderō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208. dēsistō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209. déspērō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210. dēspiciō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211. dēsum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212. dētrīmentum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213. deus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. dexter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215. dicō, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>216. diēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217. differō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218. difficilis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>219. dignus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220. dīligēns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221. dīmīcō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>222. dīrigō (dērigō)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223. dīripō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>224. disciplina</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225. dispergō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>226. diū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>227. diversus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>228. dividō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229. dō (and compounds in -dēre)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230. doceō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>231. doleō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232. domus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>233. dubitō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234. dúcō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235. dum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>236. duo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>237. dūrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>238. dux</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239. ēditus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240. eīferō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>241. efficiō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>242. ego</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243. ēgregius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>244. emō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245. enim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246. eō, īre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247. eō (adv.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248. eōdem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>249. eques</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250. equitātus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251. equus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252. et</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253. etiam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>254. etsī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255. ex, ē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256. examīnō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257. excipiō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>258. exercēō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259. exercitātiō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260. exercitus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261. exigūs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>262. existimō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263. exitus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>264. expediō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>265. experior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266. explōrātor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>267. explōrō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>268. expōnō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. expugnō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270. exspectō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>271. exstruō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>272. extrā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>273. extrēmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>274. facilis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>275. faciō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>276. factō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277. facultās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>278. fallō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279. fāma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>280. famēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>281. familia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>282. familiāris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>283. ferē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>284. ferō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>285. ferrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>286. fērus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
178. give trust, believe, trust
179. torture
180. with
181. when, since, although
182. desirous
183. desire, wish
184. why
185. care, anxiety
186. care for, provide
187. run
188. running, course
189. guardian, watchman
190. down from, concerning
191. owe, ought
192. ten
193. decide, decree
194. fight a decisive battle
195. tenth
196. sloping down
197. give over, devote, surrender
198. ward off, defend
199. carry away, report
200. tired out
201. fail, revolt from
202. thereupon, next
203. destroy
204. pick, choose, love
205. point out
206. give up, abandon
207. desire, long for
208. desist
209. give up hope
210. look down upon, despise
211. be lacking
212. loss
213. god
214. right (of direction)
215. say, speak
216. day
217. be different, differ, postpone
218. difficult
219. worthy, deserving
220. careful
221. fight
222. direct, guide
223. tear apart
224. training, discipline
225. scatter
226. a long time
227. turned away, different
228. separate, divide
229. give
230. teach, inform
231. grieve
232. home, house
233. hesitate, doubt
234. lead
235. while, as long as, provided, until
236. two
237. hard, harsh
238. leader
239. elevated, high
240. bear out, lift up
241. work out, accomplish, bring about
242. I
243. outstanding, distinguished
244. buy, take
245. for, indeed
246. go
247. thither, to that place
248. to the same place
249. horseman, knight; plur. cavalry
250. body of horsemen, cavalry
251. horse
252. and
253. also, even
254. and if, although
255. out of
256. kill
257. take out, succeed to
258. train
259. training
260. trained body, army
261. limited, little
262. think, believe
263. outcome, end
264. extricate
265. try out, test
266. scout
267. reconnoiter
268. put forth, set forth
269. take by storm
270. look out for, wait for
271. pile up, build
272. outside of, beyond
273. outermost, last
274. easy
275. do, make
276. party, faction
277. power of doing, ability, chance
278. deceive
279. reputation, rumor
280. hunger, starvation
281. household
282. belonging to the household, intimate
283. almost, about, generally
284. bring, bear, carry
285. iron
286. wild, fierce
287. *fidēs*
288. *fidūcia*
289. *fīgō*
290. *fīlius*
291. *fīniō*
292. *finis*
293. *fīnitimus*
294. *fiō*
295. *fīrmus*
296. *fleō*
297. *fūmen*
298. *fluō*
299. *fōrma*
300. *fors*
301. *fortis*
302. *fortūna*
303. *fossa*
304. *frangō*
305. *frāter*
306. *frōns, frontis*
307. *frūmentum*
308. *frūstrā*
309. *fuja*
310. *fugiō*
311. *fundō, -ere*
312. *gēns*
313. *genus*
314. *gerō*
315. *gladius*
316. *glōria*
317. *grātia*
318. *grātus*
319. *gravis*
320. *-grediōr*
321. *habeō*
322. *hīberna*
323. *hic (pron.)*
324. *hiemō*
325. *hiems*
326. *homō*
327. *honor*
328. *hōra*
329. *hortor*
330. *hostis*
331. *hūc*
332. *humilis*
333. *iaciō*
334. *iam*
335. *ibi*
336. *Īdem*
337. *idōneus*
338. *ignis*
339. *ignōrō*
340. *ille*
341. *impedīmentum*
342. *impediō*
343. *imperium*
344. *imperō*
345. *impetrō*
346. *impetus*
347. *in*
348. *incendō*
349. *incidō*
350. *incipiō*
351. *incitō*
352. *incolō*
353. *incolus*
354. *inde*
355. *indīcō, -ere*
356. *ineō*
357. *inermis*
358. *inīferior, inīnīmus, Imus*
359. *inimīcus*
360. *inīquus*
361. *initium*
362. *iniūria*
363. *inopia*
364. *inquam*
365. *īnsidiae*
366. *īnsigne*
367. *īnstituō*
368. *īnstō*
369. *īnstruō*
370. *insula*
371. *integer*
372. *intellegō*
373. *inter*
374. *interclūdō*
375. *intereā*
376. *interēo*
377. *interest*
378. *interrīcio*
379. *interim*
380. *interior*
381. *intermittō*
382. *intervāllum*
383. *intrā*
384. *inveniō*
385. *ivītus*
386. *ipse*
387. *is*
388. *iste*
389. *ita*
390. *item*
391. *iter*
392. *iubeō*
393. *īūdicō*
394. *iugum*
395. *iungō*
396. *iūrō*
397. *iūs*
398. *iūs iūrandum*
399. *iūstus*
400. *iuvō*
401. *labor, -oris*
402. *laborō*
403. *laccelō*
404. *lapīs*
405. *lātus, -a, -um*
406. *lātus, -eris*
287. trust, pledge, reliability
288. confidence
289. fasten
290. son
291. limit, bound, end
292. end, boundary; plur. territory
293. neighboring
294. be made, happen, become
295. strong
296. weep
297. river
298. flow
299. shape, beauty
300. chance
301. brave
302. chance, fortune
303. ditch
304. break
305. brother
306. forehead, front
307. grain
308. in vain
309. flight
310. flee
311. pour out
312. family, clan, tribe
313. origin, kind, race
314. carry on
315. sword
316. renown, glory
317. favor, influence, gratitude
318. pleasing, grateful
319. heavy, serious
320. step, go
321. have, hold
322. winter quarters
323. this
324. spend the winter
325. winter
326. man, human being
327. honor, glory, office
328. hour
329. urge, advise
330. enemy
331. hither
332. low, lowly
333. hurl, throw
334. now, already
335. there
336. the same
337. suitable
338. fire
339. be unacquainted with
340. that
341. hindrance; plur. baggage
342. hinder
343. command, power
344. command, impose
345. obtain (a request)
346. attack, charge, rush
347. in, into
348. set on fire
349. befall, happen
350. begin
351. urge on, arouse
352. dwell in
353. unharmed
354. thence
355. proclaim, appoint
356. go into, undertake
357. unarmed
358. lower; lowest, last
359. unfriendly
360. uneven, unfair
361. beginning
362. wrong
363. want, lack
364. quoth, say
365. ambush, treachery
366. badge, device
367. set up, establish
368. stand on, press on, be at hand
369. arrange, marshal
370. island
371. whole
372. understand
373. between, among
374. shut off, cut off
375. meanwhile
376. perish
377. it concerns
378. kill
379. meanwhile
380. inner
381. interrupt, stop
382. space between walls, interval
383. inside, within
384. come upon, find
385. against one's will
386. self, very
387. this, that, he
388. that one (of yours)
389. thus, so
390. likewise
391. road, march
392. order, command
393. judge, decide
394. yoke, ridge
395. join
396. make oath, swear
397. right, law
398. oath
399. just, fair
400. aid, please
401. tool
402. toil, suffer
403. challenge, harass
404. stone
405. wide
406. side
407. laudō 408. laus 409. légātiō 410. légātus 411. légīō 412. lēnis 413. levis 414. lēx 415. liber, -a, -um 416. liberī 417. liberō 418. licet 419. littera


463. moveō 464. mulier 465. multus 466. mūniō 467. mūnus 468. mūrus 469. mūtō 470. nam 471. namque 472. nanciscor 473. nāscor 474. nātiō 475. nātūra 476. nāvīgo 477. nāvis 478. -ne

479. nē (conj.) 480. necesse 481. necō 482. neglegō 483. negō 484. negōtium 485. nēmō 486. neque, nec 487. neuter 488. nēve, neu 489. nihil 490. nisi

491. nōbilis 492. noceō 493. noctū 494. nōlō 495. nōmen 496. nōn 497. nōndum 498. nōnus 499. nōscō 500. noster 501. novem 502. novus 503. nox 504. nūdō 505. nūlus 506. num

507. numerus 508. numquam 509. nunc 510. nūntiō 511. nūntius 512. ob

513. obiciō 514. obses 515. obsideō 516. obtineō 517. occāsiō 518. occāsus 519. occidō 520. occultō 521. occultus
| 407. praise      | 447. soldier | 485. nobody          |
| 408. praise, glory | 448. thousand | 486. and not, nor, neither |
| 409. mission, embassy | 449. lessen | 487. neither (of two) |
| 410. envoy, deputy | 450. marvel at | 488. and that not |
| 411. legion       | 451. marvelous, astonishing | 489. nothing |
| 412. gentle, kind  | 452. wretched | 490. if not, unless, except |
| 413. light, fickle | 453. send | 491. well-known |
| 414. law          | 454. only, just now | 492. harm |
| 415. free         | 455. measure, manner | 493. at night |
| 416. (freeborn)children | 456. warn, advise | 494. be unwilling |
| 417. set free     | 457. mountain | 495. name |
| 418. it is permitted | 458. delay | 496. not |
| 419. letter (of the alphabet); plur. a letter, letters | 459. delay, tarry | 497. not yet |
| 420. coast, shore, beach | 460. death | 498. ninth |
| 421. place        | 461. manner, habit | 499. learn, recognize |
| 422. long         | 462. commotion, turmoil, uprising | 500. our, ours |
| 423. talk         | 463. move | 501. nine |
| 424. light        | 464. woman | 502. new |
| 425. more greatly, more | 465. much; plur. many | 503. night |
| 426. office, official | 466. do a task, build, fortify | 504. make bare, empty |
| 427. great        | 467. task, duty, service, offering | 505. none, no |
| 428. prefer       | 468. (town) wall | 506. (a question particle) |
| 429. bad          | 469. change | 507. number |
| 430. hand over, commission | 470. for | 508. never |
| 431. stay, remain | 471. for indeed, for | 509. now |
| 432. hand, band, troop | 472. obtain | 510. give news, announce |
| 433. sea          | 473. be born | 511. news, message, messenger |
| 434. mother       | 474. race, people | 512. against, on account of |
| 435. timber       | 475. nature, character | 513. throw against |
| 436. ripe, early  | 476. sail | 514. hostage |
| 437. middle, average | 477. ship | 515. set against, besiege |
| 438. middle       | 478. (interrogative particle) | 516. hold fast, obtain |
| 439. memory       | 479. lest, that not | 517. opportunity |
| 440. mind         | 480. necessary | 518. falling, setting |
| 441. month        | 481. kill | 519. fall, set |
| 442. trader       | 482. overlook, neglect | 520. hide |
| 443. earn, deserve | 483. deny, refuse | 521. hidden, secret |
522. seize
523. run against, meet
524. eighth
525. eight
526. eye
527. bring against, offer
528. duty
529. altogether, at all
530. all, whole; sing.
531. suitable for burden, transport (ship)
532. burden
533. work, effort
534. belief, view
535. it behooves, ought
536. town
537. at the right time, suitable
538. crush, overwhelm
539. attack, assault
540. aid, resources
541. work
542. speech
543. order, rank
544. rise
545. pray, plead
546. hold out, show
547. forage
548. fodder
549. make peace, subdue
550. almost
551. swamp, marsh
552. equal
553. spare
554. obey
555. make ready, prepare
556. part
557. small
558. pace, step
559. lie open, extend
560. father
561. suffer, allow
562. a few, few
563. little by little
564. for a little while
565. (for) a little
566. peace
567. money
568. cattle
569. foot soldier
570. strike, beat, drive
571. hang, suspend, pay
572. through
573. go through, perish
574. accomplish
575. treachery
576. trial, danger
577. experienced, skilled
578. allow
579. unbroken, lasting
580. look through, understand
581. persuade, convince
582. extend, belong to
583. throw into confusion
584. foot
585. seek, attack, ask
586. spear
587. please
588. plain
589. common people
590. fill
591. the greater part, majority
592. for the greater part, generally
593. penalty, punishment
594. promise
595. put, place
596. bridge
597. lay waste, ravage
598. people, nation
599. gate
600. carry
601. harbor
602. demand, claim
603. be able, can
604. after, behind
605. after that, afterwards
606. after
607. next, later
608. (later than) after
609. next, later
610. demand
611. able, powerful
612. power
613. get power over, gain possession of
614. hold in front, afford, furnish
615. advise, give directions
616. prey, booty
617. assert
618. captain, commander
619. put at the head of
620. send ahead
621. reward
622. present, in person
623. particularly
624. garrison, protection
625. stand before, excel, guarantee
626. be ahead, be in charge of
627. along past, beside
628. besides this, moreover
629. seize
630. press
631. prayer
632. on the day before
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>primus</td>
<td>quorer</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>repente</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principatus</td>
<td>quiicumque</td>
<td>repentinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prior</td>
<td>quidam</td>
<td>reperiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pristinus</td>
<td>quidem</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prieszquam</td>
<td>quiēs</td>
<td>res</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privatus</td>
<td>quiētus</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō</td>
<td>quīn</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>probō</td>
<td>quīnque</td>
<td>repente</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procul</td>
<td>quīntus</td>
<td>repente</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōdō</td>
<td>quis (interrog. and indef.)</td>
<td>repente</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proelium</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quīntus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profectiō</td>
<td>quoniam</td>
<td>quantum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōficiō</td>
<td>quoque</td>
<td>quartus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profisciscor</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quattuor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibēō</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>-que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōcīō</td>
<td>quaēm</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōnuṇtiō</td>
<td>quōque</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prope</td>
<td>rapō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propinquus</td>
<td>rapiō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propter</td>
<td>ratiō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proptereā</td>
<td>ratio</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōtinus</td>
<td>recēns</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōvincia</td>
<td>recuperō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prūdēns</td>
<td>recūsō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publicus</td>
<td>reddō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puer</td>
<td>redeō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pugna</td>
<td>regidō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putō</td>
<td>reficiō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quā</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>regium</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>religiō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>reliquō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>reliquis</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quārtus</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-que</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>remus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Latin Word List
ENGLISH WORD LIST

633. first  
634. leading man, chief  
635. leadership  
636. preceding, former  
637. former, of old  
638. (sooner than) before, until  
639. apart, private  
640. in front of, in behalf of  
641. prove, approve  
642. afar  
643. put forth, betray  
644. battle  
645. departure  
646. accomplish, gain  
647. set forth, start  
648. keep away  
649. hurl (forward)  
650. declare  
651. near, near by  
652. near by, kinsman  
653. near, on account of  
654. on account of this, therefore  
655. at once  
656. province  
657. foreseeing, discreet, wise  
658. belonging to the people, public  
659. boy  
660. fight  
661. think  
662. by what way, where  
663. seek, ask  
664. quaestor  
665. how, as, than  
666. how great, as great  
667. fourth  
668. four  
669. and  
670. complain  
671. who, which, that  
672. whoever  
673. a certain one, someone  
674. certainly, at least  
675. rest, quiet  
676. at rest, peaceful  
677. indeed, (but) that (with negative expressions of doubt)  
678. five  
679. fifth  
680. who, any  
681. any one at all  
682. each one  
683. whither  
684. because  
685. inasmuch as, since  
686. also, too  
687. seize  
688. reckoning, plan, reason  
689. fresh, new  
690. regain, get back  
691. object, refuse  
692. give back, return  
693. go back, return  
694. drive back, reduce  
695. make over, repair  
696. boundary line, district  
697. kingdom, royal power  
698. direct, rule  
699. scruple, religion  
700. leave behind  
701. left behind, remaining, rest of  
702. send back, let go, relax  
703. oar  
704. suddenly  
705. sudden  
706. gain back, discover, find  
707. thing  
708. answer  
709. place back, restore  
710. turn back, return  
711. king  
712. bank, shore  
713. ask, ask for  
714. talk, gossip  
715. break  
716. (turned back) again  
717. often  
718. arrow  
719. health, safety  
720. enough  
721. rock  
722. climb  
723. know  
724. write  
725. shield  
726. following, second, favorable  
727. but  
728. always  
729. body of elders, senate  
730. feeling, opinion  
731. feel, think, judge  
732. seven  
733. seventh  
734. follow  
735. slavery  
736. keep, save  
737. slave  
738. six  
739. sixth  
740. if  
741. thus, so  
742. just as
| 743. | significō | 778. | suī | 814. | totidem |
| 744. | signum |
| 745. | silentium |
| 746. | silva |
| 747. | similis |
| 748. | simul |
| 749. | simulō |
| 750. | sine |
| 751. | singulī |
| 752. | sinister |
| 753. | sīve, seu |
| 754. | socius |
| 755. | sōl |
| 756. | sollicitō |
| 757. | sōlum (adv.) |
| 758. | sōlus |
| 759. | spatium |
| 760. | speciēs |
| 761. | spectō |
| 762. | spērō |
| 763. | spēs |
| 764. | -spiciō |
| 765. | sponte |
| 766. | statim |
| 767. | statiō |
| 768. | statuō |
| 769. | stīpendium |
| 770. | stō |
| 771. | studeō |
| 772. | sub |
| 773. | subitō |
| 774. | sublevō |
| 775. | subsequor |
| 776. | subsidium |
| 777. | succēdō |
| 778. | sum |
| 780. | summa |
| 781. | sūmō |
| 782. | superior, summus |
| 783. | superō |
| 784. | supersedum |
| 785. | supplicium |
| 786. | supra |
| 787. | suspiciō |
| 788. | suspicor |
| 789. | sustineō |
| 790. | suus |
| 791. | tam |
| 792. | tamen |
| 793. | tangō |
| 794. | taurus |
| 795. | tardō |
| 796. | tardus |
| 797. | tegō |
| 798. | tēlum |
| 799. | temerē |
| 800. | tempestās |
| 801. | temptō |
| 802. | tempus |
| 803. | tendō |
| 804. | teneō |
| 805. | terest |
| 806. | terra |
| 807. | terreō |
| 808. | tertius |
| 809. | testis |
| 810. | timeō |
| 811. | tollō |
| 812. | tormentum |
| 813. | tot |
| 814. | totidem |
| 815. | tōtus |
| 816. | trabs |
| 817. | trādō |
| 818. | trahō |
| 819. | trāns |
| 820. | trēs |
| 821. | tribūnus |
| 822. | tribuō |
| 823. | trūduum |
| 824. | tū |
| 825. | tuor |
| 826. | tum |
| 827. | tumultus |
| 828. | tumulus |
| 829. | turpis |
| 830. | turris |
| 831. | tūtus |
| 832. | tuus |
| 833. | ubi |
| 834. | ullus |
| 835. | ulterior, ultimus |
| 836. | ultrō |
| 837. | umquam |
| 838. | ānā |
| 839. | unde |
| 840. | undique |
| 841. | univērsum |
| 842. | ānus |
| 843. | urbs |
| 844. | usque |
| 845. | usus |
| 846. | ut, utī |
| 847. | uter |
| 848. | uterque |
| 849. | útilis |
| 850. | útor |
| 851. | uxor |
743. announce 744. sign, signal, standard 745. silence 746. forest 747. like, resembling 748. together, at the same time 749. pretend 750. without 751. one at a time 752. left (of direction) 753. or if, whether 754. ally 755. sun 756. stir up, tempt 757. only 758. alone, only 759. space 760. appearance 761. look at 762. hope 763. hope 764. look 765. free will 766. at once, immediately 767. outpost, picket 768. set up, fix, determine 769. payment, tax, campaign 770. stand 771. be eager, desire 772. under, close to 773. suddenly 774. assist 775. follow closely 776. reserve, reinforcement, assistance 777. approach, come next 778. (of) himself, herself, itself, themselves 779. be 780. highest sum, total 781. take 782. higher, highest 783. overcome, surpass, defeat 784. be over, remain, survive 785. punishment 786. above, beyond 787. take up, undertake 788. suspect 789. uphold, resist 790. his, her, its, their (own) 791. thus, so 792. however, nevertheless 793. touch 794. so great 795. make slow, check 796. slow 797. cover, conceal 798. missile, weapon 799. rashly 800. period of time, weather, storm 801. try, attempt 802. time 803. stretch 804. hold 805. back, rear 806. earth, land 807. frighten 808. third 809. witness 810. be afraid, fear 811. lift, remove 812. military engine 813. so many 814. just as many 815. whole 816. beam 817. hand over, intrust, surrender 818. drag, draw 819. across 820. three 821. tribune 822. assign, grant 823. three days 824. thou, you 825. gaze at, protect 826. at that time 827. uproar, rebellion 828. small hill, mound 829. base, disgraceful 830. tower 831. protected, safe 832. thy, thine, your, yours 833. where, when 834. any 835. farther, farthest 836. beyond, unasked, voluntarily 837. ever 838. together 839. whence 840. from (on) all sides 841. all together 842. one 843. city 844. up to 845. use, advantage, experience 846. in order that, so that 847. which of two 848. each of two, both 849. useful 850. use, employ 851. wife
The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first two years, and not found in the College Entrance Examination Board list, are given below.

**FIRST AND SECOND YEARS**

1. absum  
2. adduco  
3. adeo (v.)  
4. adicio  
5. admiror  
6. adventus  
7. adverto  
8. afero  
9. agricola  
10. altitudo  
11. amicitia  
12. amo  
13. antecedo  
14. apertus  
15. armo  
16. audacter  
17. aut . . . aut  
18. carrus  
19. celeritas  
20. circumvenio  
21. clamor  
22. colloquor  
23. commendo  
24. commoror  
25. commoveo  
26. comparo  
27. compellō, -ere  
28. compleō  
29. comprehendo  
30. concidō  
31. confero  
32. congregdor  
33. conicio  
34. coniungō  
35. conspectus  
36. constō  
37. convenio  
38. convertō  
39. cotidiānus  
40. cum . . . tum  
41. cupiditas  
42. deditio  
43. deducō  
44. defensor  
45. dens  
46. depōnō  
47. difficultas  
48. digitus  
49. dignitas  
50. dimittō  
51. discēdō
The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first two years, and not found in the College Entrance Examination Board list are given below

**FIRST AND SECOND YEARS**

1. be away, be absent
2. lead to, influence
3. go to, visit
4. add to
5. wonder at
6. approach, arrival
7. turn to, proceed against
8. bring to
9. farmer
10. height
11. friendship
12. love
13. go before, surpass
14. open
15. arm, equip
16. boldly
17. either ... or
18. wagon, cart
19. swiftness, speed
20. come around, surround, cut off
21. outcry, shout
22. talk together, confer
23. intrust
24. remain
25. move thoroughly, alarm
26. make ready, buy, compare
27. drive together, collect, force
28. fill up
29. seize, grasp, understand
30. kill
31. bring together, collect, transport
32. step together, meet
33. hurl, throw
34. join together, unite
35. view, sight
36. stand with, agree
37. come together, assemble
38. turn around, change
39. daily
40. both ... and, not only ... but also
41. desire, longing
42. surrender
43. lead away, launch
44. defender
45. tooth
46. put down, put aside
47. difficulty
48. finger, toe
49. worth, rank
50. send away, dispatch
51. go away
52. distribuō
53. dominus
54. ēdō
55. effugiō
56. ēnūntiō
57. equester
58. ēripiō
59. ēruptiō
60. et...et
61. ēventus
62. excēdō
63. facile
64. factum
65. fēmina
66. fidēlis
67. fīlia
68. frūmentārius
69. funditor
70. grātīs
71. grātulātiō
72. hīc
73. hūmānitās
74. iam prīdem
75. ignōtus
76. impellō
77. imperātum
78. impōnō
79. indūcō
80. īnferō
81. Ínfrā
82. Ínsequor
83. Ínstitūtum
84. intercēdō
85. interroga
86. itaque
87. lātitūdō
88. legō
89. liber
90. libertās
91. lingua
92. lūdō
93. lūna
94. magister
95. magnitūdō
96. magnopere
97. maiōrēs
98. maleficiūm
99. mandātum
100. maritimūs
101. mēnsa
102. mētior
103. militāris
104. multitūdō
105. mūnitiō
106. nauta
107. necessārius
108. neque...neque
109. nē...quidem
110. nōbilitās
111. nocturnus
112. nōn modo...sed etiam
113. nōnnullus
114. nōtus
115. obsidiō
116. oppidānus
117. oppugnātiō
118. pāgus
119. partim
120. parum
121. patria
122. paulō
123. pedester
124. perdūcō
125. perferō
126. perfugīō
127. permaneō
128. permoveō
129. perseverō
130. perterreō
131. perveniō
132. poēta
133. possideō
134. potius
135. prīmō
136. prīmum
137. prōcēdō
138. prōdūcō
139. prōgregior
140. prōpōnō
141. prósequor
142. puella
143. pugnō
144. pulvis
145. quod sī
146. quōminus
147. recipiō
148. referō
149. règina
150. removeō
151. renūntiō
152. rēs frūmentāria
153. rēs militāris
154. rēs pública
155. resistō
156. respōnsum
157. revertō
158. sagittārius
52. distribute 92. play 127. stay through, abide
53. master 93. moon 128. move strongly, excite
54. put out, put forth 94. master, teacher, 129. follow through, pursue
55. escape 95. greatness, size 130. frighten thoroughly
56. disclose, announce 96. greatly 131. come through, arrive
57. of a horseman, equestrian 97. ancestors 132. poet
58. snatch out, free 98. evil deed 133. possess, acquire
59. breaking out, sally 99. commission 134. rather, preferably
60. both . . . and 100. of the sea, maritime 135. at first
61. outcome, result 101. table, dish 136. first
62. go out, withdraw 102. measure out, distribute 137. go forward, advance
63. easily 103. of a soldier 138. lead forward, protract
64. deed 104. large number, crowd 139. step forward, proceed
65. woman 105. fortification 140. set forth, propose
66. faithful 106. sailor 141. follow on, pursue, escort
67. daughter 107. necessary 142. girl
68. belonging to grain 108. neither . . . nor 143. fight
69. slinger 109. not even 144. dust
70. for nothing 110. rank, nobility 145. but if, and if
71. congratulation 111. nightly 146. (that less,) lest
72. here, at this point 112. not only . . . but also 147. take back, receive
73. kindliness, culture 113. some 148. bring back, report
74. long ago 114. known 149. queen
75. unknown 115. siege 150. move back, withdraw
76. drive on, urge on 116. of the town, townsman 151. announce, proclaim
77. command 117. assault 152. grain supply
78. put on 118. district, clan 153. warfare
79. lead on, influence 119. partly 154. commonwealth
80. bring in, bring against 120. (too) little 155. take a stand, resist
81. below 121. one’s country 156. answer
82. follow on, pursue 122. (by) a little 157. turn back, return
83. custom 123. of a foot soldier, on foot 158. archer
84. go between, forbid, veto 124. lead through, construct
85. ask (a question) 125. bear through, endure, announce
86. and thus, therefore 126. flee to, desert
87. width 88. pick, choose, read 89. book
90. freedom 91. tongue, language
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>159.</td>
<td>satisfaciō</td>
<td>160.</td>
<td>si quis</td>
<td>161.</td>
<td>singulāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162.</td>
<td>solvō</td>
<td>163.</td>
<td>soror</td>
<td>164.</td>
<td>studium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165.</td>
<td>subdūcō</td>
<td>166.</td>
<td>submittō</td>
<td>167.</td>
<td>superus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>168.</td>
<td>supportō</td>
<td>169.</td>
<td>suspiciō (noun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>170.</td>
<td>terror</td>
<td>171.</td>
<td>timidus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>172.</td>
<td>timor</td>
<td>173.</td>
<td>toga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>174.</td>
<td>transeō</td>
<td>175.</td>
<td>tuba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>176.</td>
<td>ultrā</td>
<td>177.</td>
<td>vehementer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>178.</td>
<td>verbum</td>
<td>179.</td>
<td>vērō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>180.</td>
<td>vetustus</td>
<td>181.</td>
<td>vicīnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>182.</td>
<td>victor</td>
<td>183.</td>
<td>victōria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>184.</td>
<td>villa</td>
<td>185.</td>
<td>vinculum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>186.</td>
<td>vulnerō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>159.</td>
<td>do enough, do one's duty, apologize</td>
<td>166.</td>
<td>send under, send to assist, yield</td>
<td>176.</td>
<td>beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160.</td>
<td>if any, whoever</td>
<td>167.</td>
<td>upper</td>
<td>177.</td>
<td>strongly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161.</td>
<td>one by one, extraordinary</td>
<td>168.</td>
<td>carry up</td>
<td>178.</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162.</td>
<td>untie, release, perform, pay</td>
<td>169.</td>
<td>suspicion</td>
<td>179.</td>
<td>in truth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163.</td>
<td>sister</td>
<td>170.</td>
<td>fright, panic</td>
<td>180.</td>
<td>old, ancient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164.</td>
<td>eagerness</td>
<td>171.</td>
<td>fearful, cowardly</td>
<td>181.</td>
<td>neighboring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165.</td>
<td>lead under, lead up to, draw up, beach</td>
<td>172.</td>
<td>fear</td>
<td>182.</td>
<td>conqueror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>173.</td>
<td>toga</td>
<td>183.</td>
<td>victory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>174.</td>
<td>go across, cross</td>
<td>184.</td>
<td>farmhouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>175.</td>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td>185.</td>
<td>bond, fetter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>186.</td>
<td>wound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
WORD FORMATION

Note. Pages 469-472 contain the requirements and suggestions of the revised (1928) New York State Syllabus in Ancient Languages for the first two years.

Attention should be called to the many phonetic changes in both consonants and vowels that appear in Latin compounds. For example, accipiō = ad + capiō, afficiō = ad + faciō, occiōdō = ob + caedō (or cadō if the vowel i is short), prōfectus = prō + factus, cōgō = co(n) + agō, surgō = sub + regō, sustineō = sub + teneō, libellus = liber + lus, scriptor = scrib + tor, actiō = ag + tiō, collocō = con + locō, etc.

The unassimilated forms of some of these words are often found; for example, conlocō, adficiō. Careful study of such changes should be made, that the pupil may detect easily words which otherwise would seem unfamiliar.

FIRST HALF YEAR

a. Prefixes: ā (ab, abs), ad, con (= cum) (prepositional and adverbial force), dē, ex (ē), in (both prepositional and negative uses).

These prefixes are to be studied for two purposes: first, to show how the meaning of the simple Latin verb is modified by the addition of the prefix; secondly, to define more exactly the meaning of English derivatives. For example, in the first half year:

dūcō, lead + ab = abdūcō, lead away
+ ad = addūcō, lead to
+ con = condūcō, lead together
+ dē = dēdūcō, lead down
+ ē = ēdūcō, lead out
+ in = indūcō, lead into

English Derivatives: adduce, conduce, deduce, educe, induce, conduct, deduct, induct, conducive, deduction, etc. The pupil should be warned that some of these prefixes have merely an intensive force.
b. Suffixes. The meaning of the following suffixes, and their effect on the stems with which they are combined, should be carefully studied:

(1) Nouns from adjectives:

-ΤΑΣ, -(Τ)ΙΑ, -ΤΥΔΟ (forming abstract nouns denoting condition or quality). The most common equivalent English suffixes include -ship, -(t)y, -ness, -tude.

(2) Adjectives from nouns:

-ΑΝUS, -ΙCUS, -ΙUS (forming adjectives denoting pertaining to). The most common equivalent English suffixes include -an, -ic, -y.

c. English derivatives. Since a very large number of English words have come directly or indirectly from Latin, special attention should be given to the derivation of such words. The following list, from which the teacher may make her selection, will be suggestive as a basis for this study. From each of these verbs the pupil should be required to make a list of all the more important English derivatives. The pupil may find a notebook helpful.

servō, locō, vocō, pugnō, videō, moveō, dūcō, mittō, teneō, portō, cēdō, putō, parō, nūntiō, spectō, habeō, moneō, agō, scribō, cognōscō.

Many of these words have interesting histories. These may well be entered in the pupil's notebook.

SECOND HALF YEAR

Note. In the second half year both prefixes and simple verbs already studied are to be reviewed, the new prefixes are to be compounded with the old verbs, and the old prefixes with the new verbs.

a. Prefixes: circum, in (negative use), inter, per, prae, prō, sub.

For suggestions regarding the proper procedure in the study of this list, see the outline of work for the first half year.

b. Suffixes. The meaning of the following suffixes, and their effect on the stems with which they are combined, should be carefully studied:

Nouns from verbs:

-OR, -ΤΙΟ, -ΤUS (-SUS) (fourth declension). These form nouns denoting action or the result of an action. The most common equivalent English suffixes include -or, -(t)ion, -ing, -cy.
c. English derivatives. The same procedure should be followed as suggested under this heading in the first half year's work, with the following verbs as a basis:

(1) pōnō, venīō, pellō, müniō, trahō, dīcō, sūmō, faciō, capiō, audiō, dō, doceō, premō, legō, claudō, vincō, navigō, sentiō, audeō, laudō.

(2) With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and the meaning of words like the following, and compare with the Latin originals: fraternity, capital, regalia, infinitive, gentle, fort, omnibus, ambition, faction, science, insulation, temperance, governor, integer, sinecure, jovial, profound, doubt, manual, gladiolus.

These may well be entered in the pupil's notebook.

THIRD HALF YEAR

Note. For suggestions regarding the proper procedure in the study of these lists, see the outlines for the first and second half years.

a. Prefixes: ante, dis, ob, re (red), trāns, sē (sēd).

Review the prefixes and simple verbs already studied in the first and second half years.

b. Suffixes.

Nouns from verbs:

(1) -tor (-sor), denoting agent or doer.
(2) -ium, denoting action or the result of an action.

Adjectives from nouns:

-alis, -ilis, -āris, -ārius, denoting pertaining to. The most common equivalent English suffixes include -al, -il(e), -ar(y).

c. English derivatives. For suggestions regarding this work, see the outlines for the first and second half years. Use the following words as a basis:

(1) òrō, valeō, nāscor, tangō, quaeðī, regō, currō, solvō, vereor, útor, mandō, arbitror, loquor, accēdō, potior, tribuō, (ad)iungō, sequor, dēspiciō, vertō.

(2) alibi, alias, item, ensign, conjugal, responsible, patient, accident, nihilist, libretto, faculty, bounty, volume, lapidary, oriole, rapture, cordial, agent.
FOURTH HALF YEAR

Note. The same procedure should be followed here as in the preceding half year, including a thorough review of all the work previously prescribed.

a. Suffixes.

(1) Nouns from verbs:

-īō, -tūra, denoting action in progress or the result of an action. Common equivalent English suffixes include -ion, -ture.

-men, -mentum, denoting the means of an action or the act itself. Common equivalent English suffixes include -ing, -ment.

(2) Nouns from adjectives or nouns:

-ia, denoting condition or quality. Common equivalent English suffixes include -y.

(3) Adjectives from verbs:

-ilis, -bilis, denoting capability, usually passive.

-āx, denoting tendency, usually faulty.

-idus, denoting quality.

Common equivalent English suffixes include -ile, -ble, -acious, -id, respectively.

b. English derivatives. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of words like the following, and compare them with the Latin originals: prohibition, confectionery, ditto, congress, orient, tent, album, mayor, minister, adieu, exit, superior, speculator, minimum, circumvent, salary, index, abductor, graduation.
ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

KEY TO DIACRITICAL MARKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>supplied English sounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ŋ as in fâte</td>
<td>e as in mète</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ŋ as in senâte</td>
<td>e as in évênt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ŋ as in fât</td>
<td>e as in mét</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ŋ as in ârm</td>
<td>e as in hêr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ŋ as in all</td>
<td>a as in ice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ŋ as in what</td>
<td>i as in ìt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e as in ñase</td>
<td>u as in ñûse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e as in ñuhat</td>
<td>u as in ñûntë</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a as in âsk</td>
<td>ā as in ice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a as in ñhat</td>
<td>i as in ìt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c as in ñell</td>
<td>ç as in ñîty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñ as in ñeal</td>
<td>eh as in school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g as in go</td>
<td>ĝ as in cage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n as in ink</td>
<td>qu as in quit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñ as in quit</td>
<td>ĝ as in his</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All other unmarked consonants have their usual English sounds. Silent letters are italicized. Primary accents are heavy, secondary accents light.
Pronunciation of Proper Names

Au'lús
Au rē'li ús
Au rūn'cū lē'ius
Aulsi
A vār'lĭ cūm
Āx'ŏ nā

Bāč'ē nīs
Bāc'ū lūs
Baē'bi ús
Bāl vēn'tī ús
Bās'ti lūs
Bāt'ā vi
Bēl'gaē
Bēl'gi ūm
Bēl lövt'a ċī
Bī brāc'tē
Bī'brāx
Bī'brō ċī
Bī'bū lūs
Bī ġēr'ri ō'nēś
Bī-thē'ni
Bī-thēn'tī ā
Bī'tū ri'gēs
Bīl'thō
Bōd'ū ōg nā'tūs
Bō'ia
Bō'iī
(y)
Brāt'ū sān'tī ūm
Brī tān'ni
Brī tān'tī ā
Bron dīs'ī ūm
Brū'tūs

Cā'liūs
Cā'lā īs
Cāl'tē ū
Cām'ū lŏg'ē nūs
Cān'naē
Cān'tā būri
Cān'tī ūm
Cās'si
Cās'sī ūs
Cās'sī vēl lāu'nūs
Cās'tī ċūs
Cās'tōr
Cāt'ā mān'tā loē'dēś
Cāt'ū ri'gēs
Cāt'ū vōl'cūs
Cēlt'aē
Cēl tīl'lūs
Cēn'ā bēn'sēś
Cēn'tā būm
Cēn'ī māg'nī
Cēn tē'ni ús
Cē the'gūs
Cē'u'trō nēg
Cē vēn'nā
Cévennes (sā vēn')
Che'rūscī
Čig'ē rō
Či lič'i ā
Čim bē'trī ūs
Čim'brī
Čim Ģē'tō rīx
Čīs āl'pīne
Čī'tā
Člās tīd'i ūm
Člāu'dī ūs
Člev'tō pā'trā

Clō'dī ūs
Cōc'ō sā'tēg
Cōl'ehī
Cōl'ehiīs
Cōm'iūl ús
Cōn cōn'nē tō dūm'nūs
Cōn drū'sī
Cōn sīd'i ūs
Cōn vic'tō lit'ā ĭlīs
Cōr'inth
Cō'rī ó sōl'i tēg
Cōr nēl'iū ūs
Cōt'rūs
Cōttō
Cō'tū ātūs
Cō'tūs
Crā'scūs
Crā'stī nūs
Crē'ōn
Crēte
Čy'prūs
Čyz'ī ċūs

Dā'ci
Dā nū'vi ús
Dēl'phi
Dī'ā bīn'tēg
Dī ā'nā
Dī'ōs cō'rī dēg
Dīvī'ī cī ā'cūs
Dīvī'ī cō
Dō mū'tī ús
Dōn'ūd tāu'rūs
Dū'bīs
Dūm'nō rīx
Dū'rūs
Dyr rā'ēhi ūm

Éb'u rō'nēg
Éb'u rō vī'čēs
Éllís
Él’ú s’a’tëg
Éph’hë sús
Ép’ó ré’dó rix
È ríd’a nús
È súv’l i
È truy’l i à
È’umé nég

Fá’bí ús
Flá’c’cús
Flám’i ni’núús
Flà múnt’l ús
Fré géll’laë
Froyde
Fúff ús
Fú’rí ús

Gáb’tá lì
Gá bín’l ús
Gá’lús
(y)
Gál’bá
Gál’l i
Gál’l i à
Gál’l ús
Gá rüm’ná
Gá rüm’ní
Gá’tëg
Gaul
Gé’l düm’ní
Gém’i nús
Gé ná’vá
Gér gò’v’i à
Gér má’n’i à
Glau’cë
Gnòi’eús
Gó b’nán nít’t’l ò
(sh)
Gôr gòb’l ná
Gôr tyn’l i
Grá’chús

Grá i’ög’té lì
(y)
Hádrú mé’t’tüm
Há’d’ú i
Hân’nú bál
Hà rú’désh
Hâ’s’dru’ bál
Hé’é
Hâl vë’t’l i
(sh)
Hêl’vi’ì
Hër’cú lës
Hí bér’ní à
Hír’rûs
Hír’ti ús
(ò) (sh)
Hí’l pâ’nl i
Hîl’é

Hël’vë’tí i
Hël’vë’tí i
Hër’cú lës
Hí bér’ní à
Hír’rûs
Hír’ti ús
(ò) (sh)
Hí l’é

Jà’sôn
Làb’é ò
Là bë’rí ús
Là’bí è’núús
Là rí’sà
Là’tí úm
(sh)
Là tób’rí gî
Lè mân’núús

Lè’m’ô vi’c’ëg
Lëntû ël’sú
Lè ônt’l dâs
Lë pònt’l i
(sh)
Lënt’çì
Lëx ôlv’ì
Li’gér
Lïg’û rëg
Lïng’ô nëg
Lïs’cûs
Lit’á vic’cús
Loire (lwâr)
Lù cá’nl
Lù cål’nl ús
Lù c’ti’l ús
(sh)
Lúc té’rí ús
Lù gót’ô rix
Lù tè’tú à
(sh)
Mâç’ë dò’nì à
Mâg’ë tób’rì gâ
Mâ’gô
Màn dú’bî l
Màn’dù brà’c’i ús
(sh)
Màn’lì ús
Màr çél’lûs
Màr’cô màn’lì
Màr’cûs
Mà’rì ús
Mâr’s
Màt’rò ná
Màx’t’l mûs
Mé dè’á
Më’ è’l mû t’l’ çî
Mé’dì
Mé nál’pi’l
Mër cû’r’l ús
Mës sâ’l’â
PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

Me'ti ò sè'dùm
(sh)
Mè'tù ús
(sh)
Mi nèr'tvá
Mi nùc'í ûz
(sh)
Mò'nà
Mò'f'i ni
Mò'sá
Mỳ's'l á
(sh)
Mỳ'tl lè'né

Nàm mè'lùs
(y)
Nàm'nè tèz
Nàm'tù a'tèz
Nàr'bò
Nàs'tù á
(sh)
Ném'tè tèz
Nèr'ví i
Nèt'ì òb'rò ã'ùz
(sh)
Nò ré'lá
(y)
Nò'ví ò dú'núm

Ô'ç'lùm
Ô'çtò dú'rùs
Ô rè'gètò ríx
Ô'rí cùm
Ô'rípheùs
Ô sì's'mì

Pà rè's'tí
(sh)
Pàr'thí
Pòu'lùs
Pè'tèi ús
Pèl'ì ûz
Pè lùs'í úm
(sh)
Pèr'gà múm
Pèître sîl'dí ús

Phâ'rùs
Phâ'sís
Phî'neùs
Phríx'úś
Píct'tò nèz
Pî'só
Pó lý'ví ús
Pôlý'phè'mùs
Pôm pè'iùs
(y)
Pôm'peý
Praè'cò ni'nùz
Prô çil'úś
Pru'sí ãs
(sh)
Pù á'nù l
P tô'è maë'úś
P tô'è mä'ís
Pûblí ûs
Pûle'he'r
Pûl'îô

Quin'tùs
Rà'vrà çí
Rèdt'ò nèz
Ré'mí
Ré'mùs
Rhê'nuś
Rhô'dà nùs
Rhô'ðèg
Rhô'dòs
Rûffúz
Ru tël'ni

Sà bì'nùs
Sà'bis
Sà gûn'túm
Sàl'my' dè's'sùs
Sàm'à rò brière
Sàm'tò nèz
Sàm'tò nì
Scîp'tô

Scri bô'nù ús
Sè dú'nù
Sè dú'sl ì
(sh)
Sèg'ni
Sèg'tò nàx
Sè gûn'tì a'çí
(sh)
Sè gù'sí a'vì
(sh)
Sèm prô'nú ús
Sèn'tò nèz
Sèp tû'mí ús
Séq'úà nà
Séq'úà nì
Sè ràpì ôn
Sèr tò'rì ús
Sèr vîl'í ús
Sèr'vî ús
Sèx'tì ús
Sìb'ú sà'tèg
Sì lè'nùs
Sí'lù ús
Sòs'tí lùs
Sò'tí a'tèg
(sh)
Spînthêër
Suè'blí
(w)
Suè's'sì ô'nùz
(w)
Sà gâm'bri
Sûl'là
Sûl pîc'tì ús
(sh)
Sým'plégl'â dèg
Sûr'ì à

Tàm'tè sís
Tàm'phí lûs
Tàr bêl'li
Tà rên'tùm
Tàr'û sà'tèg
Tàs gê'tì ús
(sh)
PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Proper Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tāx'i māg'ū lūs</td>
<td>Taxi mag'ūlus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēc tōś'ā ĝēs</td>
<td>Tec tōś'ā ĝēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēnc'tē rī</td>
<td>Tēnc'tē rī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēr'rā sīd'ī ūs</td>
<td>Tēr'rā sīd'ī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teū'tō nēg</td>
<td>Teū'tō nēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thames (tēmz)</td>
<td>Thames (tēmz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thér mōpl'y laē</td>
<td>Thér mōpl'y laē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thē'seūs</td>
<td>Thē'seūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thēs sālī ā</td>
<td>Thēs sālī ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thē'ssā lūy</td>
<td>Thē'ssā lūy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrāx</td>
<td>Thrāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti bētrī ās</td>
<td>Ti bētrī ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tig'ū rit'nī</td>
<td>Tig'ū rit'nī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti tū'ri ūs</td>
<td>Ti tū'ri ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tītūs</td>
<td>Tītūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tō lōtsā</td>
<td>Tō lōtsā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tōl'ō sāl'tēs̱</td>
<td>Tōl'ō sāl'tēs̱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trāl'lēs̱</td>
<td>Trāl'lēs̱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trāns'rēh nā'nī</td>
<td>Trāns'rēh nā'nī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trās'tī mē'nūs</td>
<td>Trās'tī mē'nūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trēbī ā</td>
<td>Trēbī ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trēbī ūs</td>
<td>Trēbī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trē bō'nī ūs</td>
<td>Trē bō'nī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trēv'tē rī</td>
<td>Trēv'tē rī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trī ātrī ūs</td>
<td>Trī ātrī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trībō čēg</td>
<td>Trībō čēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trīn'ō vān'tēg</td>
<td>Trīn'ō vān'tēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tū līn'gi</td>
<td>Tū līn'gi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tūlūs</td>
<td>Tūlūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tūl'ūs</td>
<td>Tūl'ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tū'rō nī</td>
<td>Tū'rō nī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ür'ū lī</td>
<td>Ür'ū lī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ü sīp'ē tēg</td>
<td>Ü sīp'ē tēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Üx ēl'ō dū'nūm</td>
<td>Üx ēl'ō dū'nūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vāc'ā lūs</td>
<td>Vāc'ā lūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vā lōtrī ūs</td>
<td>Vā lōtrī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vān ĝī'ō nēg</td>
<td>Vān ĝī'ō nēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vā tīn'ī ūs</td>
<td>Vā tīn'ī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē lātnī ūs</td>
<td>Vē lātnī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē'li ō cās'sēg</td>
<td>Vē'li ō cās'sēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl lāu'nō dū'nūm</td>
<td>Vēl lāu'nō dū'nūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē nēl'tī</td>
<td>Vē nēl'tī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēntē tī</td>
<td>Vēntē tī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē nēttī ā</td>
<td>(sh) Vē nēttī ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē nū'slī ā</td>
<td>(sh) Vē nū'slī ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'ā gri</td>
<td>Vēr'ā gri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr bīg'tē nūs</td>
<td>Vēr bīg'tē nūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'čīn ĝēt'ō rīx</td>
<td>Vēr'čīn ĝēt'ō rīx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'tī cō</td>
<td>Vēr'tī cō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'ū cloēttī ūs</td>
<td>(sh) Vēr'ū cloēttī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē sōn'tī ō</td>
<td>(sh) Vē sōn'tī ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vī ēn'nā</td>
<td>Vī ēn'nā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vingeanne (vān zhān')</td>
<td>Vingeanne (vān zhān')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vīr'i dō mā'trūs</td>
<td>Vīr'i dō mā'trūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vī rūd'ō vīx</td>
<td>Vī rūd'ō vīx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vīr'ō mān'dū ī</td>
<td>Vīr'ō mān'dū ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vō cāltēs̱</td>
<td>Vō cāltēs̱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōc'tī ō</td>
<td>(sh) Vōc'tī ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vō cōntī ī</td>
<td>(sh) Vō cōntī ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōl'çaē</td>
<td>Vōl'çaē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōl cātnūs</td>
<td>Vōl cātnūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōl'sō</td>
<td>Vōl'sō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōl'ū sētnūs</td>
<td>Vōl'ū sētnūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vō rētnūs</td>
<td>Vō rētnūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōstē gūs</td>
<td>Vōstē gūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zē'tēs̱</td>
<td>Zē'tēs̱</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ABBREVIATIONS

abbr. = abbreviation
abs. = absolute or absolutely
act. = active
adj. = adjective
adv. = adverb or adverbial
c. = common, i.e. either masc. or fem.
cf. = confer, i.e. compare
comp. = comparative
conj. = conjunction
decl. = declined
dem. = demonstrative
dep. = deponent
distrib. = distributive
emph. = emphatic
esp. = especially
f. or fem. = feminine
fig. = figurative or figuratively
freq. = frequentative
impers. = impersonal
indecl. = indeclinable
indef. = indefinite
intens. = intensive
interrog. = interrogative
intrans. = intransitive
irr. = irregular

lit. = literal or literally
loc. = locative
m. or masc. = masculine
n. = neuter or noun
neut. = neuter
neg. = negative or negatively
num. = numeral
opp. = opposed
orig. = originally
p. = participle
pass. = passive
perf. = perfect
plur. = plural
p.p. = perfect participle
prep. = preposition
pres. = present
pron. = pronoun
reflex. = reflexive or reflexively
rel. = relative
sc. = scilicet, namely
sing. = singular
subjv. = subjunctive
superl. = superlative
trans. = transitive
v. = verb

†, a dagger denotes an assumed form.
1, 2, 3, 4, refer to the regular conjugations of verbs.
Heavy-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.
Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For numerals see Grammar, § 19. References preceded by G. are to the Grammar; those with Roman numerals are to the Composition Lesson in which the word occurs.

**abide** — assign

**alone**, sōlus, -a, -um
**although**, cum, quamquam
**always**, omni tempore
**am**, sum, *irr.*
**ambassador**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
**among**, inter, *with the acc.*; in (XVIII)
**and**, ac, atque, et, -que; and not, neque
**announce**, nuntio, 1
**anybody**, quis
**anything**, quid
**applause**, plausus, -ūs, *m.*
**appoint**, cōnstituo, 3; dīcō, 3 (XXXIII)
**approach**, v., adpropinquo ad, 1 (vi); accēdō (XVIII); succēdō, 3 (xx)
**Aquitanians**, Aquitānī, -ōrum, *m.* plur.
**Argonauts**, Argonautae, -ārum, *m.*
**arise**, coörīor, 4
**armor**, armātūra, -ac, *f.*
**arms**, arma, -ōrum, *n.* plur.
**army**, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
**arrive**, perveniō, 4
**ask** (for), petō, 3 (X); rogō, 1 (XIII); quae-rō, 3 (XIV); repetō, 3 (XXIX)
**assemble**, conveniō, 4
**assign**, attribuō, 3

**abide by**, stō, 1 (*with the abl.*)
**able** (*be*), possum, *irr.*
**about**, *adv.*, circiter
**about**, *prep.*, de, *with the abl.*
**accomplish**, perficiō, 3 (iv); conficiō, 3 (v)
**accord** (*of their own*), suā sponte
**accustomed** (*be*), consuecō, 3, *in perf. tenses*
**added** (*it is*), accēdit, 3 (x); additur, 3
**adopt**, īnsistō, 3 (XXIII)
**advance**, prōcēdō, 3 (XXIX); prōgregidior, 3 (XXV, XXXV)
**advantageously**, commodē
**advise**, moneō, 2
**afflict**, premō, 3
**after**, *adv.*, post
**after**, *conj.*, postquam
**after**, *prep.*, post, *with the acc.*
**afterwards**, *adv.*, postea
**against**, ad (xx), contrā, *with the acc.*
**aid**, v., iuvō, 1; auxilīor. 1 (XXVI)
**aid**, *n.*, auxilium, auxili, *n.*; subsidium, subsidī, *n.* (XXXV)
**alarm**, perturbō, 1 (XXVII); perturbēō, 2 (XXXIV)
**all**, omnis, omne
**almost**, fere
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**at** — *citizen*

- **at, ad**, *with the acc.*
- **attach, adiungō**, 3
- **attack, v., adgredior, 3; adorior, 4**
- **attack, n., impetus, -ūs, m.**
- **attempt, cōnor, i**
- **authority, auctūritās, -ātis, f.**
- **avoid, vītō, i**
- **await, exspectō, i**
- **away (be), absum, irr.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>back, tergum, -i, n.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, n. plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>barbarian, barbarus, -i, m.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>battle, proelium, proeli, n.; pugna, -ae, f.; in line of battle, in aciē; plan of battle, ratiō pugnae</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>beast of burden, iūmentum, -ī, n.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>because, quod, propterā quod; because of, propter, with the acc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>before, adv., ante</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>before, conj., priusquam</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>before, prep., prō, with the abl.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>beg, obsecro, 1; beg for, petō, 3</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>began, coepi, defective</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, m. plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>best, optimus, -a, -um</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>betake one’s self, sē cōnferō, irr.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>betray, prōdō, 3</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bird, volucrē, -cris, f.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boat, linter, -tris, f.; little boat, nāvicula, -ae, f.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>booty, praeda, -ae, f.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>born (be), nascor, 3; orior, 4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>both . . . and, et . . . et</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boundary, finis, -is, m.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boy, puer, -i, m.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>brave, fortis, forte</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

break through, perrumpō, 3 (XIV); perfringo, 3 (XVI)
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bring, addūcō, 3 (XX); ferō, irr. (XXI); bring about, efficiō, 3
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
built, mūniō, 4 (VIII); aedificō, i
bull, taurus, -i, m.
burn, incendō, 3 (XIII)
business, negōtium, negōtī, n.
but, at, sed
by, (agent) ā, ab
call, vocō, 1; call back, revocō, 1
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.
can, possum, irr.
captive, captūvus, -i, m.
capture, capiō, 3
care, cūra, -ae, f.
carry, ferō, irr.; dēferō, irr. (XXIX); perferō, irr. (XXXIII); carry on, gerō, 3
cart, carrus, -ī, m.
Carthage, Karthāgō, -inis, f.
cause, causa, -ae, f.
cavalry, n., equitēs, -um, m. plur.; equitātus, -ūs, m.
cease, dēsistō, 3
certain, certain one, pron., quīdam, quaedam, quoddam
change, commūtātīō, -onis, f.
charge of (take), praesum, irr.
chief, princeps, -cipis, m.
children, liberī, -ōrum, m. plur.
choose, delīgō, 3
circuit, circuitūs, -ūs, m.
citizen, cīvis, -is, c.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>city, urbs, -is, f.</td>
<td>urbs, -is, /!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear (excuse), pūrgō, 1; it is clear, constat, 1</td>
<td>purgo, i; it is clear, constat, i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colchians, Colchī, -ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>Colchī, -ōrum, m. plur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold, frīgus, -oris, n.</td>
<td>frīgus, -oris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect, cōgō, 3; cōnferō, irr. (xxx); comparō, 1 (viii)</td>
<td>cōgō, 3; cōnferō, irr. (xxx); comparō, 1 (viii)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come, veniō, 4</td>
<td>veniō, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coming, adventus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>adventus, -ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command, imperātum, -ī, n.; be in command, praesum, rr.; put in command, v., praeficio, 3</td>
<td>imperātum, -ī, n.; be in command, praesum, irr.; put in command, v., praeficio, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commander, imperātor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>imperātor, -ōris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>companion, socius, -i, m.</td>
<td>socius, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compel, cōgō, 3</td>
<td>cōgō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conceal, abdō, 3</td>
<td>abdō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conduct, dūcō, 3</td>
<td>dūcō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conquer, superō, 1</td>
<td>superō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consist, cōnstitō, 3</td>
<td>cōnstitō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.</td>
<td>coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conspire, coniūrō, 1</td>
<td>coniūrō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consul, cōnsul, -ulis, m.</td>
<td>cōnsul, -ulis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consult, cōnsulō, 3</td>
<td>cōnsulō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>controversy, contrōversia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>contrōversia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country, native land, patria, -ae, f.</td>
<td>patria, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courage, animus, -i, m. (xvi); virtūs, -ūtis, f.</td>
<td>animus, -i, m. (xvi); virtūs, -ūtis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>course, cursus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>cursus, -ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross (over), trāNSEŚiō, irr.</td>
<td>trāNSEŚiō, irr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custom, institutum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>institutum, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut off, prohibeō, 2 (xxvi, xxxiv); interclūdō, 3 (xxxiii)</td>
<td>prohibeō, 2 (xxvi, xxxiv); interclūdō, 3 (xxxiii)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daily, adj., cotidiānus, -a, -um; adv., cotidiē</td>
<td>cotidiē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danger, periculum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>periculum, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dare, audeō, 2</td>
<td>audeō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dark, obscūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>obscūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daughter, filia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>filia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day, diēs, -ēi, m.</td>
<td>diēs, -ēi, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debt, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, n.</td>
<td>aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide, cōstituō, 3</td>
<td>cōstituō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declare, praedicō, 1</td>
<td>praedicō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decree, dēcrētum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>dēcrētum, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defend, dēfendo, 3</td>
<td>dēfendo, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defense, praesidium, -ī, n.</td>
<td>praesidium, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delay, moror, 1</td>
<td>moror, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demand, postulō, 1 (iv); imperō, 1</td>
<td>postulō, 1 (iv); imperō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depart, discēdō, 3</td>
<td>discēdō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desert, perfugīō, 3</td>
<td>perfugīō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deserve well, bene mereor, 2</td>
<td>bene mereor, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desire, cupiō, 3</td>
<td>cupiō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desirous, cupidus, -a, -um</td>
<td>cupidus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>despair of, dēspērō dē, 1</td>
<td>dēspērō dē, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destroy, interscindo, 3 (xxi)</td>
<td>interscindo, 3 (xxi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detain, retineō, 2</td>
<td>retineō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>determine, statuō, 3</td>
<td>statuō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devote, tribuō, 3</td>
<td>tribuō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die, morior, 3</td>
<td>morior, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>differ, differō, 3</td>
<td>differō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult, difficilis, difficile</td>
<td>difficilis, difficile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, f.</td>
<td>difficultās, -ātis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dignity, dignitās, -ātis, f.</td>
<td>dignitās, -ātis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction, pars, partīs, f. (xxvii)</td>
<td>pars, partīs, f. (xxvii)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disease, morbus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>morbus, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dismiss, dīmittō, 3</td>
<td>dīmittō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distance, spatium, -ī, n.</td>
<td>spatium, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distant (be), absum, irr.</td>
<td>absum, irr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distribute, mētior, 4</td>
<td>mētior, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ditch, fossa, -ae, f.</td>
<td>fossa, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do, faciō, 3</td>
<td>faciō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double, v., duplicō, 1</td>
<td>duplicō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doubt, dubitō, 1; there is no doubt, nōn est dubium</td>
<td>dubitō, 1; there is no doubt, nōn est dubium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dove, columba, -ae, f.</td>
<td>columba, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dragon, dracō, -ōnis, m.</td>
<td>dracō, -ōnis, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

draw — forsake

draw up, instruo, 3
drive back, déicio, 3 (III); repellō (xiv); drive out, expellō, 3; drive to, adducō, 3
Druids, Druidēs, -um, m. plur.
dwell, versor, 1
each, uterque, utraque, utrumque (XX)
eagle, aquila, -ae, f.
easily, facile
easy, facilis, facile
either . . . or, vel . . . vel
eleven, undecim
elsewhere (to another place), aliō
embark, nāvem (nāvēs) cōnsendō, 3
circle, cingo, 3
courage, cohortor, 1
endure, perferō, irr. (XXII); ferō, irr.
enemy, hostis, -is, c.
engage in, committō, 3; engage in battle, proelium committō, 3; proelīō dīmico, I (XXXIV)
enlist, cōnscribō, 3
enter, ingredior, 3 (with intrā, XIX); enter into, ineō, irr.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, m.
envy, invidia, -ae, f.
equal (make), aequō, I
escape, évādō, 3
establish, cōnstituō, 3; instituō, 3
even if, etsī
excel, praestō, I; superō, I (XXIII)
exhaust, exhauriō, 4
exposed, apertus, -a, -um
eye, oculus, -ī, m.

faction, factō, -ōnis, f.

faithful, fidelis, -e

famous, praeclārus, -a, -um
far, longē
farther, adj., ulterior, ulterius
fashion, modus, -i, m.
father, pater, patris, m.
favorable, opportūnus, -a, -um
fear, n., timor, -ōris, m.
few, paucī, -ōrum, m. plur.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fiercely, âcriter
fifteenth, quīntus decimus, quīnti decimī
fifth, quintus, -a, -um
fight, v., pugno, I (IX, XX); proelīō contendō, 3 (XII, XVIII)
fill, compleō, 2
find, invenio, 4; nancīscor, 3 (XVIII)
first (at), primō
flank, latus, -eris, n.; on the flank, ab latere
flee, fugō, 3
fleece, vellus, -eris, n.
fleet, classis, -is, f.
flight, fuga, -ae, f.; be in flight, fugō, 3; put to flight, in fugam dō, irr.
flow (into), influō, 3
follow, sequor, 3; subsequeor, 3 (XXV)
fond, cupidus, -a, -um
for, conj., enim, nam
for, prep., ad, in, with the acc.; prō, with the abl.
forces, cópiae, -ārum, f. plur.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forever, in perpetuum
form, draw up, instruō, 3
forsake, désērō, 3
fort, castellum, -ī, n.
fortification, munitio, -onis, f.
fortune, fortuna, -onis, -onis, -onis, f.
fourth, quartus, -ae, f.
free, liberō, f.
freedom, libertas, -atis, f.
friend, amicus, -i, m.
friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.
from, a, ab, de, (out of), ex, with the abl.; after verbs of hindering etc., quo minus, or, if the verb is negated, quin
front of (in), pro, with the abl.
furnish, ornō, f.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather, gather together, convenio, 4; gather about, circumsistō, 3
Gaul (the country), Gallia, -ae, f.; a Gaul, Gallus, -i, m.
general, communis, -e
Geneva, Genava, -ae, f.
Germans, Germāni, -orum, m. plur.
get together, comparō, f.
give, dō, irr.; give back, reddō, 3
go, cō, irr.; go (out), ēgredīō, 3 (ix, xxxiii); ēxeō, irr.
god, deus, -i, m.
golden, aureus, -a, -um
grain, frumentum, -i, n.; grain supply, rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, f.
great, magnus, -a, -um; greater, maior, maius; greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um (v); how great, quantus, -a, -um; so great, tantus, -a, -um
greatly, magnopere
Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um
grieve, be grieved, dolore adscripīō, 3
ground (cause), causa, -ae, f.
guard, v., custōdiō, 4; tueor, 2 (xxxv)
guard, n., praesidium, praesidi, n.; on guard, in statio
guilty, nocēns, -entis
Hãeduans, Haeduī, -orum, m. plur.
half, dimidium, dimidi, n.
halt, cōnsistō, 3
hand over, trādüō, 3
hand (be at), adsum, irr.
happen, accidō, 3
harass, laccēō, 3
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hard pressed (be), labōró, f.
harm, nocēō, 2 (with the dat.)
Harpies, Harpyiae, -arum, f.
hasten, contendo, 3; mātūro, f. (xx)
have; habeō, 2
he, is, eius
hear, accipiō, 3 (xxxii)
heat, aestus, -ūs, m.
Helvetians, Helvētii, -orum, m. plur.
hem in, contineō, 2
her, (reflexive) suus, -a, -um; (not reflexive) eius
high, altus, -a, -um; very high, altissimus, -a, -um (i); higher, superior, superius; highest, summus, -a, -um (xxx)
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, (intensive) ipse, ipsius; (reflexive) sē
hinder, impediō, 4
his, (reflexive) suus, -a, -um; (not reflexive) eius
hold, obtineō, 2; teneō, 2 (xxvi)
home, domus, -us, f.

hope, v., spērō, 1; hope for, spērō, i
hope, n., spēs, speī, f.
horse, equus, equī, m.
hostage, obses, -idis, c.
house, domus, -us, f.

how great, how large, quantus, -a, -um
huge, ingēns, -entis; immānis, -e (xxxi)
hunting, vēnātiō, -onis, f.
hurl, conicio, 3 (xxv, xxix); mitto, 3 (xvi)
hurry, contendō, 3

I, ego, meī
if, sī; if not, sī nōn, nisi
ignorance, imprudentia, -ae, f.
image, simulācrum, -i, n.
immediately, statim; prōtinus (xxv) in, in, with the abl.
inclose, inclūdō, 3
incursion, incursiō, -onis, f.
indignity, indignitās, -ātis, f.
infantry, peditātus, -us, m.
infirmity, valētūdō, -inis, f.
influence, v., permoveō, 2
influence, n., auctorītās, -ātis, f.
inform, nūntiō, 1, with the dat.; certiōrem facio, 3, with the acc.
inhabit, incolō, 3
innocent, innocēns, -entis
inside, intrā, with the acc.
inspire, iniciō, 3
insult, contumēlia, -ae, f.
intercept, intercipiō, 3
intercessor, dēprecātor, -ōris, m.

into, in, intrā (xix), with the acc.
intrust, committō, 3; mandō, i (xxxi)

island, īnsula, -ae, f.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.

Jason, Iāsōn, -onis, m.
javelin, pīlum, -i, n.
joy, gaudium, gaudī, n.
judge, iūdicō, i
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.

keep, teneō, 2; cōnservō, i (viii);
keep away, prohibeo, 2
kill, necō, i (vii); interficiō, 3 (xxx)

kind, genus, -eris, n.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
kingdom, rēgnum, -i, n.
knight, eques, -itis, m.
know, intellegō, 3; scio, 4 (xxvii)

lack, be lacking, dēsum, irr.
lake, lacus, -us, m.
language, lingua, -ae, f.

large, magnus, -a, -um; how large, quantus, -a, -um
last, suprēmus, -a, -um
later, adv., post
latter, hic, haec, hoc (xxx)

law, lēx, lēgis, f.
lay waste, vāstō, i
lead, dūcō, 3; lead across, trādūcō, 3; lead back, redūcō, 3; lead out, edūcō, 3
leader, dux, ducis, m.
leadership, prīncipātus, -ūs, m.
leap down, dēsiliō, 4
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

learn — nobody

**Learn**, intelligō, 3 (vii); explōrō (viii); cognōscō, 3 (in perf. tenses, know)
**Leave**, relinquo, 3
**Legion**, legiō, -ōnis, f.

**Letter** (of alphabet) littera, -ae, f.; (epistle) litterae, -ārum, f. plur.; epistula, -ae, f.

**Lie open**, pateo, 2
**Lieutenant**, legatus, -i, m.
**Life**, vita, -ae, f.

**Light**, adj., levis, -e; lumen, -inis, n.

**Line of battle**, aciēs, -ēī, f.

**Literature**, litterae, -ārum, f. plur.

**Little**, adv., paulum

**Living**, vivus, -a, -um

**Long**, adj., longus, -a, -um; adv., diū

**Lose**, dimitto, 3

**Lower**, inferior, īnerius

**Magistrate**, magistrātus, -ūs, m.

**Make**, facio, 3 (passive fīō; see G. § 45)

**Man**, homō, -inis, c.; man-of-war, nāvis longa, nāvis longae, f.

**Many**, multī, -ae, -a

**March**, v., iter faciō, 3

**March**, n., iter, itineris, v.; on the march, in itinere

**Meanwhile**, interēā

**Memory**, memoria, -ae, f.

**Messenger**, nūntius, nūntī, m.

**Middle** (of), medius, -a, -um

**Midnight**, media nox

**Mile**, mille passūs; miles, milia passuum

**Mistaken** (be), errō, 1

**Money**, pecūnia, -ae, f.

**Month**, mēnsis, -is, m.

**Moon**, lūna, -ae, f.; Moon, Lūna, -ae (XXXII)

**More**, amplius (§ 105)

**Mountain**, móns, montis, m.

**Move**, moveō, 2; move forward, prōgredior, 3

**Much**, adv., multum

**Multitude**, multītūdō, -inis, f.

**Must**, express by the passive periphrastic (G. §§ 38. II, 222. II)

**Name**, v., appello, 1

**Name**, n., nōmen, -inis, n.

**Narrow**, angustus, -a, -um

**Nearest**, proximus, -a, -um

**Necessary** (it is), oportet, 2 (xvi); necesse est (xIX)

**Necessity**, necessitās, -ātis, f.

**Neglect**, omitto, 3

**Neighbor**, finitimus, -ī, m.

**Neighboring**, proximus, -a, -um

**Neither . . . nor**, neque . . . neque

**Never**, numquam

**Nevertheless**, tamen

**New**, novus, -a, -um

**Next**, posterus (II); proximus, -a, -um; next day, postrīdē eius diē\n
**Night**, nox, noctis, f.; by night, adv., noctū

**Ninth**, nōnus, -a, -um

**No** (not any), nūllus, -a, -um

**Nobility**, nōbilitās, -ātis, f.

**Noble**, nōbilis, nōbile

**Nobody**, nēmō, dat. nēminī; nūllus, nūllīus
not, nón; not even, nē . . . quidem
noticed, nótus, -a, -um
notice, animadvertō, 3
now, iam
number, numerus, -i; m.
nymp, nymphea, -ae, f.
oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandi, n.
oath, animadverto, 3
now, iam
number, numerus, -i; m.
nymp, nymphea, -ae, f.

peace, pāx, pācis, f.
perish, pereō, irr.
people, populus, -i, m.
permit, patior, 3; it is permitted,
licet, 2
persuade, persuādeō, 2(with the dat.)
phalanx, phalanx, -angis, f.
picket, statiō, -onis, f.
pierce, trāciō, 3
pitch camp, castra pōnō, 3
place, v., pōnō, 3
place, n., locus, -i, m.; plur., loca,
-ōrum, n.
plan, cōnsiliō, cōnsilium, n.; plan of
battle, ratiō pugnae
plunder, praedor, 1 (XXII); dīripiō, 3
(point out, dēmōnstrō, 1
poison, venēnum, -i, n.
port, portus, -ūs, m.
possess, get (take) possession of,
potior, 4 (with the abl.
or gen.)
power, potestās, -ātis, f.; imperium,
imperti, n. (XXVII); potentia, -ae, f.
(XXIII); royal power, rēgnum, -i, n.
powerful, potēns, -entis
praise, conlaudo, 1
preceding, superior, superius
prepare, comparō, 1 (XXXIV); parō,
1 (XXXV)
preside over, praesum, irr.
promise, prōmittō, 3; polliceor, 2(XXIV)
propose, prōpono, 3
protect, prohibeo, 2 (XXX); mūniō,
4 (XXXIV)
prove, probō, 1
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
publicly, pūblicē
purchase, coēmō, 3
pursue, însequor, 3 (vi, xvi, xviii); prōsequor, 3
pursuit, studium, studī, n.
put back, repōnō, 3; put in charge of, praeficiō, 3; put to death, interficiō; put to flight, in fugam dō, irr.
quickly, celeriter
rampart, vāllum, -ī, n.
reach, perveniō ad, 4
ready, parātus, -a, -um
rear, novissimum agmen, -inis, n.
reason, causa, -ae, /*
receive, accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3 (vi); recipiō, 3
redoubt, castellum, -ī, n.
reënforcement, subsidium, subsidi, n.; reënforcements, subsidia, -orum, n.
plur. (xxv); auxilia, -örum, n.plur. (xxx, xxxv)
regard (hold), habeō, 2
region, regiō, -onis, f.
rejoice, gaudeō, semi-dep., 2
relatives, propinquī, -örum, m. plur. (xxv); auxilia, -örum, n. plur. (xxx, xxxv)
relax, remittō, 3
remain, maneō, 2; remaneō, 2
remove, removeō, 2
repel, prohibeō, 2
reply, respondeō, 2
report, v., renūntiō, 1; nūntiō, 1 (xxxv)
report, n., fāma, -ae, f.
resources, facultātēs, -um, f. (ix); opēs, f. plur. (xxxii)
rest, rest of, reliquī, -örum, m. plur.
retreat, mē recipiō, 3
return, v., intrans., redeō, irr. (ii):
revertor, 3 (vi, xxi, xxiv, xxxvi);
trans., reddō, 3
return, n., reditus, -ūs, m.
reward, praemium, praemī, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, m.
rich, (abundant) cōpiōsus, -a, -um;
(wealthy) dives, -itis; richer, ditior, ditius; richest, ditiissimus, -a, -um
right (on the right hand), adj., dexter, -tra, -trum
right, n., iūs, iūris, n.; fās, n. (xxxi)
river, flūmen, -inis, n.
road, iter, itineris, n.
rock, rūpēs, -is, f.
Roman, adj., Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
route, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
run forward, prōcurrō, 3
sacrifice, v., immolō, 1
sacrifice, n., sacrificium, sacrificī, n.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -ūtis, f.
sail, set sail, solvō, 3, with or without navem
sake (for the), causā
sally, ēruptiō, -onis, f. (xxxv)
same, idem, eadem, idem
say, dicō, 3
scout, speculātor, -ōris, m.
second, secundus, -a, -um; (of two), alter, -era, -erum (xxxv)
seadan, lectīca, -ae, f.
see, videō, 2; conspiciō, 3 (VI, XXV)
seek, petō, 3
seize; comprehendō, 3 (XI); occupō, 1 (XII)
send, mittō, 3; submittō, 3 (XXV); send ahead, praemittō, 3; send away, dīmittō, 3; send back, remittō, 3; send out, dīmittō, 3
separate, dīvidō, 3
Sequanian, Séquanus, -ī, m.
service, īsus, -īsus, m.
set about (begin), instituō, 3; set forth, trans., prōpōnō, 3; set on fire, succendō, 3 (XXXI); set out, proficīscor, 3; set sail, solvō, 3, with or without nāvem
settle, compōnō, 3
seven, septem
seventeenth, septimus decimus, septima decima, septimum decimum
several, complūrēs, -iwm
severe, gravis, grave
share, communícō, 1
sharply, acrīter
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
show (for a), ad speciem
shut off, interclūdō, 3
side, latus, -eris, n.; pars, partis, f.; on all sides, from all sides, undique
seige, obsidīō, -onis, f.
signal, signum, -i, n.
since, cum
six, sex
size, magnitūdō, -inis, f.
slave, servus, -i, m.
slay, concidō, 3; occidō, 3 (XVIII)
sleep, somnus, -i, m.
small number, paucitās, -ātis, f.
snatch, ēripīō, 3
so, sic, ita (generally with verbs), tam (with adjectives); and so, itaque; so great, tantus, -a, -um; so that, ut
soldier, miles, -itis, m.
some, aliquī, -quae, -qua; nōn nūlli, -ae, -a; some . . . others, alīi . . . alii
something, aliquid, aliciuīus
son, filius, fillī, m.
soon, mox
sovereignty, rēgnum, -ī, n.
Spain, Hispānīa, -ae, f.
stable, stabulum, -ī, n.
stand, make a stand, cōnsistō, 3
standard, signum, -i, n.
state, civitās, -ātis, f.
station, cōnstituō, 3; pōnō, 3 (XX); conlocō, 1 (XXXV)
storm, v., oppugnō, 1
storm, n., tempestās, -ātis, f.
subdue, superō, 1
subject, make subject, subiciō, 3
suddenly, subītō
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
summer, aestās, -ātis, f.
summon, arcessō, 3
sun, sōl, sōlis, m. (XXXII)
superior, superior, superius
supply, grain supply, rēs frūmentāria, rēi frūmentāriae, f.
surpass, praecedō, 3 (with the acc.)
surrender, dēdō, 3 (XI, XXIII); trādō, 3 (XVII)
surround, circumdō, irr.; circumveniō, sustain, sustineō, 2
ENGLISH—LATIN VOCABULARY

swamp — village

swamp, palūs, -ūdis, f.
swear, iūrō, 1

take (employ), sūmō, 3 (XIII); take back, recipiō, 3; take by storm, expugnō, 1; take up, capiō, 3 (XXXIII)
task, negōtium, negōti, n.; labor, -ōris, m.
temple, templum, -ī, n.
tempt, temptō, 1
ten, decem
tenth, decimus, -a, -um
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, f.
terrify, perterreo, 2
territory, territories, finēs, -ium, m.
plur.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
than, quam
thank, gratiās agō, 3
that, conj., ut, (with comparatives) quō; that not, (purpose) nē, (result) ut nōn; quīn (§§ 185, 186; IX, XI)
that, pron., ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id
their, (reflexive) suus, -a, -um; (not reflexive) eōrum, ipsōrum
themselves, (intensive) ipsī, ipsae, ipsa; (reflexive) suī, sibi
there, ibi, (thither) eō
Thessaly, Thessalia, -ae, f.
thing, rēs, reī, f.
think, arbitror, 1; putō, 1 (XIII); existimō, 1 (XXII, XXXI)
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
thither, eō
thousand, mīlle; plur., mīlia

through, per, with the acc.
throw, coniciō, 3; throw about, circumiciō, 3 (with the dat.)
thus, sīc, ita
time, tempus, -oris, n.
to, ad, in, with the acc.
touch, attingō, 3
tower, turris, -is, f.
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
treasury, aerarium, aerāri, n.
tree, arbor, -onis, f.
tribe, nātiō, -ōnis, f.
tribute, tribūtum, -ī, n.
trust (intrust), committō, 3; confidō, 3 (with the abl., XXXI)
try, cōnor, 1, with infinitive, or pronoun representing infinitive; experior, 4, with noun, or pronoun representing noun
turn, vertō, 3
two, duo, -ae, -o

under, sub, with the acc. (motion toward) or abl. (place where)
undergo, subeo, irr.
understand, intellectō, 3
undertake, suscipiō, 3
unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um
unless, nīsi
until, dum; priusquam (XVIII)
unwilling (be), nōlō, irr.
upper, superior, superius
urge, hortor, 1
use, utor, 3

vainly, in vain, frūstrā
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
village, vīcus, -ī, m.
violence — yourselves

violence, víis, víis, f.
visibly, apertē
Vulcan, Volcānus, -ī, m.

wage war, bellum gerō, 3
wait, exspectō, 1 (vi, xiii, xxi); moror, 1 (xxi, xxiv, xxxiv); wait for, exspectō, 1
walls, moenia, -ium, n. plur.
war, bellum, -ī, n.; carry on war, bellum gerō, 3; make war, bellō, 1; make war on, bellum īnferō, irr. (with the dat.)
ward off, prohibeō, 2; (avoid) vītō, 1 (xxxii)
warfare, rēs militāris, reī militāris, f.
watch, vigilia, -ae, f.
water, aqua, -ae, f.
way, iter, itineris, n.
weaken, débilito, 1
weapon, tēlum, -i, n.
what, interrog., quid
when, cum, ubi
where, ubi
whether, num, -ne; whether ... or, -ne ... an, utrum ... an
while, dum

who, rel., quī, quae, quod; interrog., quis, quid
whoever, whosoever, quīcumque, cuiuscumque
whole, as a whole, omnis, omne
whose, cuius, quōrum
why, cūr
wide, lātus, -a, -um
wife, coniūnx, -ugis, f.
winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, n. plur.
wish, volō, irr.; not wish, nōlō, irr.
with, cum, with the abl.
withdraw, subdūcō, 3 (xvi); redūcō, 3 (xxxv)
without, sine, with the abl.
woman, mulier, -eris, f.
write, scribō, 3
wrong, wrongdoing, iniūria, -ae, f.

year, annus, -ī, m.
yet (nevertheless), tamen
you, tū, tuī
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, m.
your, tuus, -a, -um
yourselves, (intensive) vōs ipsis; (reflexive) vōs
### LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

#### A. — ac

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A., abbr. for Aulus <em>(which see)</em></td>
<td>ab, abbr. for ante</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a., abbr. for ante</td>
<td>a, see ab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab (ā, abs), prep. with abl., away from, from.</td>
<td>Ab With expressions of measure, off, away: a milibus passuum duobus, two miles off. — With different notion in English: ortum est ab, sprang from, began with; vacuum ab, destitute of; caput initium a, begins at; ab tanto spatio, so far off. — Esp. with passives, by. — Esp. also, a fronte, in front; a tergo, from or on the rear; ab infimo, at the foot; a dextro cornu, on the right wing; a re frumentaria, in respect to the grain supply. — In composition, off, away, apart, without, not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abduco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus, trans., lead away, take away</td>
<td>abiciō, -icere, -ićē, -iectus [ab-iacio], trans., throw away, throw down, throw, hurl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abiectus, p. p. of abicio</td>
<td>abīēs, -ietis, f., fir or spruce <em>(tree or wood)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abripio, -ripere, -ripūi, -reptus [ab-rapio], trans., snatch away, carry away</td>
<td>abs, see ab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisus [abs-caedo], trans., cut off, tear off, tear away</td>
<td>abscismus, p. p. of absīdo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absēns, -entis, see absum</td>
<td>absimilis, -e, adj., unlike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., intrans., stand off, stand away, withdraw; keep aloof</td>
<td>abstineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [abs-teneo], intrans., refrain: proelio (refrain from giving)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstrāctus, p. p. of abstraho</td>
<td>abstrahē, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [abs-traho], trans., drag away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstuli, see auferō</td>
<td>absēmus, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, irr., intrans., be away, be absent: suspicio (be wanting). — absēns, pres. p. as adj., absent, in one's absence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absyrtus, -i, m., brother of Medea</td>
<td>Absyrtus, -i, m., brother of Medea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., be strong in ac, see atque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Acastus — ademptus

Acastus, -i, m., son of Pelias

accedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessitus [ad-ceedo], intrans., move toward, draw near, approach; be added: huc accedebat ut, there was also this (disadvantage) that

acceptus, p.p. of accipio
accessus, p.p. of accedo

accidere, -cessi, -cessitus, -cessitus [ad-ceedo], intrans., fall to, fall on; happen, occur

acceptus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., acceptable, pleasing, welcome

acclivis, -e [ad-clivus, slope], adj., sloping, ascending

acclivitas, -atis [acclivis], f., ascent, acclivity

Acc5, -onis, m., one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans; put to death by Cæsar

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-commodo (fit)], trans., adjust. — accommodātus, -a, -um, p.p., fitted, adapted

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubuí, -cubitus, intrans., lie, recline (at table)

accūrātē, adv., carefully

accurrō, -currere, -currī, no p.p. [ad-curro], intrans., run to, ride up

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., accuse, blame, find fault with

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., sharp; capable, energetic

acerbē, adv., bitterly: ferre inopiam (suffer severely from etc.)

acerbītās, -ātis [acerbus], f., suffering

acerbus, -a, -um [acer, sharp], adj., bitter, hard to bear

ācerrimē, superl. of acriter

acervus, -i [acer, pointed], m., heap, pile

aciēs, -ēs, f., point, sharp edge, edge: oculorum (keen glance, glare). — Esp., line, line of battle, array, army

ācriter, adv., sharply; fiercely, violently, hotly: acriter pugnatum est, a fierce battle was fought, the fighting was sharp

āctus, p.p. of ago

acūmen, -inis [acuo], n., acuteness

acuō, -ure, -ūi, -ūtus [acer], trans., sharpen. — acūtus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., sharpened, sharp

ad, prep. with acc. With idea of motion toward, to, toward, against. — Of time, till, at, on: ad diēm, on the day. — With numerals, about

adāctus, p.p. of adigo

ādaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., make equal to: moles moenibus (make as high as); altitudinem muri (reach up to); cursum (keep up with)

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., covet, become attached to

addō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ad-do (put)], trans., add

adducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus, trans., lead to, draw to; induce, drive

ademptus, p.p. of adimo
adeō — admiror

adeō, -ire, -iī, -itus, irr., trans. and intrans., go to, visit; attack, approach

adeō, adv., to that point, thus far, so much

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, no p.p. [cf. eques], intrans., ride up

adfictus, p.p. of adficio

adferō,-ferre,-tuli,-lātus, irr., trans., bring to, bring; cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce

adficiō,-ficere,-fēcī,-fectus [ad-facio], trans., do to, affect. — With acc. and abl., affect with, inflict on, impose. — In passive, suffer, receive: magno dolore adfici, be greatly distressed

adfigō,-figere,-fixī,-fixus, trans., fasten to

adfigō,-figere,-finxi,-fictus, trans., make up in addition

adfinītās,-ātis [adfinis, related], f., relationship: adfinitatibus coniuncti (marriages)

adfixus, p.p. of adfigo

adflēctō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus, trans., dash against, shatter

adflēgō,-fligere,-flīxi,-flictus, trans., dash at; overthrow, damage: naves (shatter, damage)

adfore, see adsum

adgredivor, -gressus [ad-gradior, step, go], dep., trans., go toward, march against, attack

adgregō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus, trans., gather: se (gather round, flock to); se ad amicitiam (attach one’s self to)

adhaereō,-haerēre,-haesi,-haesūrus, intrans., stick (to), cling (to), get caught (in)

adhibēō,-ēre,-uī,-itus [ad-habeo], trans., call in, admit; employ, use

adhortor,-āri,-ātus, dep., trans., encourage, urge

adhuc, adv., up to this time

Adiatunnus, -ī, m., chief of the Sotiastes

adiciō,-icere,-iēci,-iectus [ad-iacio], trans., throw to, hurl: aggerem (throw up); join to, add: adiecta planitie (with the addition of)

adictus, p.p. of adicio

adigō,-igere,-ēgī,-ēctus [ad-agō], trans., drive to, drive up (of cattle etc.); drive in, drive home (of piles), move up (of towers), shoot (of weapons); force, bind (by oath)

adimō,-imere,-ēmī,-ēmpitus [ad-emō, take], trans., take away

aditis,-ūs [adeo], m., approach, access; means of approach

adiungō,-iungere,-iūnxī,-iūnctus, trans., join to, attach, add

adiūtor,-ōris [adiuvo], m., helper, assistant

adiuvō,-iuvāre,-iūvī,-iūtus, trans., assist, help, be of advantage

adlātus, p.p. of adfero

administer, -tri, m., servant: ad sacrificia (priest, celebrant)

administrō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus, trans., carry into execution, perform, manage, conduct

admīror,-āri,-ātus, dep., trans., be surprised at, wonder at
admittō — adveniō

admittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, trans., let go: admisso equo, at full speed; allow: in se facinus (commit a crime); dedecus (permit to be incurred, incur)

admodum, adv., to a degree; very, very much. — With numerals, fully, at least, not less than

admoneō, -ere, -mittere, -misī, -misus, trans., warn, urge

adolsācō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, intrans., grow up

adorior, -orlēvī, -ortus, dep., trans., attack, assail

adparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., come in sight, appear, be evident

adparārē, -pārēre, -pārui, -pāritūrus, intrans., come in sight, appear, be evident

adparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., prepare, get ready, make preparations

adpellō, -pellere, -pullī, -pulsus, trans. and intrans., land (ships), bring to land

adpetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, trans. and intrans., seek to gain, desire; approach

adpicō, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātus (-itūs), trans., lean against

adpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans., put near, set before, serve

adprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., approve of

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, no p.p., intrans., approach, come near

adlpulsus, p.p. of adpello

adquiēscō, -ere, -ēvi [quies], intrans., become quiet, rest; die

adripō, -ripere, -ripuī, -repatus [ad-rapiō], trans., snatch up, seize

adroganter, adv., with presumption, with insolence

adrogantia, -ae, f., insolence, presumption

adsciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītus, trans., attach (by formal decree)

adsiduus, -a, -um, adj., constant, continued

adsistō, -sistere, -stātūs, no p.p., intrans., stand by: in conspectu patris (appear)

adspectus, -ūs [adspicio], m., appearance

adspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, trans., look at, look on, behold

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, trans., accustom, train

adsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, trans. and intrans., accustom; become accustomed

adsum, -esse, -fūi, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be near, be present, be at hand, appear

Aduatuci, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae, living on the west bank of the Meuse

adulēscēns, -entis, adj., young. — As noun, a youth, young man. — With proper names, the younger (Jr., to distinguish a son from his father)

adulēscēntia, -ae, f., youth

adulēscēntulus, -ī, m. (often as adj.), a mere boy, very young

adveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, intrans., come to, arrive at, reach
adventus — āfuisse

adventus, -ūs [advenio], m., arrival, approach
adversārius, -a, -um, adj., opposed. — As noun, opponent, enemy
adversus, prep. with acc., see adverto
adverto, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, trans., turn towards: animum (turn the attention, notice). — adversus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., in front, opposed, opposite, unfavorable: hostibus adversus occurrebant (right against, in their front); in adversum os, right in the face; flumine (up, cf. secundum); res adversae, adversity, want of success. — adversus, prep. with acc., against
advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., fly to, fly at
aedificium, -ī [aedifico], n., building
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedes, house, facio], trans., build
Aētēs, -ae (acc. ān), m., Æetes, king of Colchis
aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., sick, disabled
aegerrimē, superl. of aegre
aegrē [aeger], adv., ill, feebly; with difficulty
Aemilius, -ī, m. 1. L. Æmilius Paulus, consul, killed at the battle of Cannæ, 216 B.C. 2. L., a Gaul, a subaltern in Caesar’s Gallic cavalry
aēneus, -a, -um [aes], adj., of copper, bronze
aequāliter, adv., evenly, uniformly
aequē [aequus], adv., equally
aequinoctium, -ī [aequus-nox], n., the time of the equinox, the equinox
aequitās, -ātis [aequus], f., fairness, justice. — Esp., aequitas animi, contentment
aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., make equal, equalize
aequus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, equal; fair, just, equitable. — Esp., aequus animus, equanimity, contentment; aequo Marte, on equal terms
āēr, āeris (acc. āera), m., air
aerāria, -ae [aes], f., mine
aerarium, -ī [aes], n., treasury
aes, aeris, n., copper (as metal for ships or as money). Hence, money. — Esp., alienum, debt (another man’s money)
Aeson, -onis, m., Æson, father of Jason
aestas, -ātis, f., summer
aestimātiō, -onis [aestimo], f., valuation
aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., value, estimate; regard
aestuārium, -ī [aestus, tide], n., estuary, marsh
aestus, -ūs, m., heat; tide
aetās, -ātis, f., age, time
Africa, -ae, f., Africa (more usually of that part of the continent near Carthage)
Āfricā, -ae, f., Africa (more usually of that part of the continent near Carthage)
Āfricus, -a, -um, adj., of Africa. — Esp., sc. ventus, the southwest wind (blowing from Africa to Italy)
āfuisse, āfutūrus, see absum
Agédincum — alius

Agédincum, -í, n., the chief town of the Senones, now Sens
ager, agrí, m., land, field, country, territory
agger, -eris [ad-gero], m. (that which is carried to a place), earth (for a wall), mound of earth, wall, rampart
agíō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., propose, discuss
agmen, -inis [ago], n., a body in motion, army, line (of troops on the march): primum (the van); novissimum (the rear); claudere (bring up the rear)
agnósco, -gnoscere, -gnovi, -gnitus [ad-(g)nosco, become acquainted with], trans., recognize
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, trans., drive: sublicas (drive down); vineas, turres, etc. (set in motion, move on, advance); act, treat, discuss, plead: conventum (hold); gratias (render, give, express); quid agit? what is one about? quid agitur? what is going on?
agricultūra, see cultura
āla, -æ, f., wing
alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., active, eager, spirited
alacrītās, -ātis [alacer], f., eagerness, readiness
ālārius, -a, -um [ala], adj. (belonging to the wings). — Masc. plur. as noun, allies, auxiliaries
albus, -a, -um, adj., white: plumbum album, tin
alcēs, -is, f., elk

Alesia, -ae, f., a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon, now Alise-St-Reine
aliās, adv., elsewhere. — Of time, at another time, on other occasions: alias . . . alias, now . . . now
aliēnēs, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [alienus], trans., make another’s, alienate, estrange
aliēnus, -a, -um [cf. alius], adj., another’s, of others, other people’s: fines (others’). Hence, strange, foreign, unfavorable, foreign to the purpose. — Superl., m. plur. as noun, perfect strangers
aliō, adv., elsewhere
aliquamdiū, adv., for some time
aliquandō, adv., at some time
aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., considerable. — Neut. as noun, a good deal, a considerable part. — aliquantō (as abl. of measure), considerably, a good deal
aliquis (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. adj. or pron., some, any; some one, any one, something, anything
aliquot, indecl. adj., several, some
aliter, adv., otherwise, differently. — aliter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than
alius, -a, -ud, adj., another, other. — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in the same clause), one . . . another (plur., some . . . others); one one (thing), another another: alius alia causa inlata,
Allobrogēs — amplus

one giving one reason, another another, or alleging different reasons

Allobrogēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic people, living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps

alō, alere, alui, altus, trans., feed, support

Alpēs, -ium, f. plur., the Alps

Alpici, -orum [Alpes], m., inhabitants of the Alps

alter, -era, -erum, adj., one (of two), the other (of two). — In plur., the other party. — Repeated, one ... the other; in plur., one party ... the other. — Also, the second (of more than two), another (the second of three): dies (the second)

alternus, -a, -um [alter], adj., alternate, alternating

altitūdō, -inis [altus], f., height, depth, thickness (of a timber)

altus, -a, -um, adj., high. — From opposite point of view, deep. — Neut. as noun, the sea, the deep

alūta, -ae, f., leather

ambactus, -ī, m., vassal

Ambarī, -orum, m. plur. of adj., a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hāedui, and are called Hāedui Ambarī

Ambiānī, -orum, m. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriva, is now called, from their name, Amiens

Ambiliātē, -ōrum, m. plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme

Ambiorīx, -īgis, m., an able prince of the Eburones

Ambivāritē, -ōrum, m. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse

ambo, -ae, -o, num. adj., both

āmentia, -ae [a-mens], f., madness, frenzy, insanity

āmentum, -ī, n., strap, thong (attached to a spear to help in hurling it)

amicī [amicus], adv., in a friendly manner

amicitia, -ae [amicus], f., friendship

amicus, -a, -um [amo, love], adj., friendly, well-disposed. — Masc. as noun, friend, ally

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, trans., send away, let go, let pass; lose, dismiss

amor, -ōris [amo, love], m., love, affection

amphora, -ae, f., two-handled jar

amplē, adv., widely, largely. — amplius, comp., farther, more, longer

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [amplus-facio], trans., increase, enlarge, extend

amplitūdō, -inis [amplus], f., size, extent, greatness: cornuum (spread)

amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, wide, great: dimissis amplioribus copiis (the greater part of); prominent, splendid, noble, distinguished. — amplius, neut. comp. as noun (cf. plus), more, a greater number: amplius obsidium
an, conj., introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather.—Often with the first member only implied, or: quid venirent, an speculandi causa ((or) was it)

Anartēs, -ium, m. plur., a people in Dacia

Ancalitēs, -um, m. plur., a nation of Britain

anceps, -cipitis, adj., double-headed; double: proelium (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways)

ancoma, -ae, f., anchor: in ancoris, at anchor

Andebrogius, -ī, m., a chief of the Remi

Andēs, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of Gaul, north of the Loire

Andī, -ōrum, the same as the Andes

angulus, -i, m., corner

angustē, adv., narrowly, in narrow quarters

angustiae, -ārum [angustus], f. plur., narrowness, defile, defiles: propter angustias (narrowness of the passage)

angustus, -a, -um, adj., narrow, confined: in angusto res est, the position is critical

anima, -ae, f., breath, life.—Plur., soul

animadverterē, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [animus-adverto], trans., turn the mind to, attend to: animadvertere in, punish; observe

animal, -ālis [anima], n., animal

animus, -ī, m., soul, mind, feelings, intellect, spirit.—Esp., constancy, courage, resolution; disposition: bono animo esse, be well-disposed; animi causa, for pleasure

annālis, -is [annus], m., record of events, chronicle

annōtinus, -a, -um, adj., last year’s

annus, -ī, m., year

annuus, -a, -um, adj., yearly: magistratus creatur (annually)

ānser, -eris, m., goose

ante, adv., before (of place or time), in front: paucis ante diebus, a few days before.—Prep. with acc., before (of place or time).—In dates, ante diem (a. d.) quintum, on the fifth day before

anteā, adv., before, previously, once

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, trans. and intrans., go forward, advance, surpass (in size etc.)

antecellō, -cellere, trans. and intrans., excel, surpass

antecursor, -ōris, m., courier

anteferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., place in advance, prefer

antemna, -ae, f., yard (for sails), spar

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, trans., think of more importance

antequam, conj., before

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, trans., put before, prefer

Antiochus, -ī, m., king of Syria, 224–187 B.C.

antiquitus, adv., from ancient times, from early times, long ago

antiquus, -a, -um, adj., old, ancient
anxius — ärīdus

**anxius**, -a, -um, adj., troubled, anxious

**Apennīnus**, -i, m., Apennines, a mountain range in Italy

aperīō, -perīre, -perui, -pertus, trans., uncover, open. — *aperitus*, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., open, exposed, unprotected: *latus* (the right side, not covered by the shield); *impetus maris* (unbroken)

apertē, adv., openly

**Apollō**, -inis, m., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana; god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and leader of the Muses. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity

appāreō, see *adpareo*

apparō, see *adparo*

1. appellō, see *adpetto*
2. appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., call, name, address

appetō, see *adpeto*

appōnō, see *adpono*

**Apr., abbr. for Aprilis**

**Aprilis**, -e, adj., of April

aptus, -a, -um, adj., suited, adapted

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, with, before; in one’s house (company, possession)

**Āpūlia**, -ae, f., a country of southeastern Italy

**aqua**, -ae, f., water

aquātiō, -onis [aqua], f., getting water

**aquilla**, -ae, f., eagle. — *Esp.*, the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff

Aquilēia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul

aquilifer, -erī [aquila-fero], m., standard bearer

**Aquitānia**, -ae, f., Gascony, the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean

**Aquitānus**, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the people of Aquitania, the Aquitani or Gascons

āra, -ae, f., altar

**Arar**, -aris, m., the Saône, a river of Gaul flowing into the Rhone

arbiter, -trī, m., witness, arbitrator

**arbitrium**, -ī [arbiter, judge], n., judgment, will, opinion

**arbitror**, -āri, -ātus [arbiter, judge], dep., trans., think, suppose

**arbor**, -oris, f., tree

accessō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, trans., summon, invite, send for

ārdēō, ārdère, ārsī, ārsūrus, intrans., be hot, be on fire; be excited

arduus, -a, -um, adj., high, steep, difficult

Arecomici, -orum, m. plur., a branch of the Volcæ

**argentum**, -i, n., silver; silverware

argilla, -ae, f., clay

**Argō, Argūs** (acc. Argō; no dat. or abl.), f., Argo, Jason’s ship

**Argonautae**, -arum, m. plur., Argonauts

**Argus**, -ī, m., builder of the Argo

āridus, -a, -um, adj., dry. — *Neut. as noun*, dry land
arieș, -ietis, m., ram; battering-ram (a long timber, armed at the end with metal, for demolishing walls); buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge)

Ariovistus, -î, m., a chief of the Germans

arma, -örum, n. plur., arms, equipment: armis ius exsequi, to maintain authority by force of arms

armāmenta, -örum [armo], n. plur., implements. — Esp., tackle, rigging

armātūra, -ae [armo], f., equipment: levis armaturae Numidae (light-armed)

armō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., equip, arm; rouse, incite. — Pass., arm (one’s self). — armātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., armed, in arms, equipped. — Masc. plur. as noun, armed men

arō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., plow

Arpīnēius, -î, m., a Roman gentile name

ars, artis, f., skill, art. — Plur., the useful arts

artē, adv., closely, tightly

articulus, -î [artus, joint], m., joint

artificium, -î [artifex, artist], n., a trade (opp. to ars, a higher art)

artus, -a, -um, adj., close: silva (thick)

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., of the Arverni (a tribe in southeastern Gaul). — Masc. plur., the Arverni

arieș — auctus

arieș, auctus, -i, m., arc [arceo, shut in], f., stronghold, fortress, citadel

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus [ad-scando, climb], trans. and intrans., climb up, climb, ascend: navem (embark)

ascensus, -ūs, m., ascent, going up; means of ascent

Asia, -ae, f., Asia, Asia Minor

aspiciō, see adspicio

at, conj., but, but yet, at least

Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur., Athens, a city in Greece

atque (ac), conj., and, and especially: simul atque, as soon as

Atrebās, -ātis, adj., Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul). — Plur., the Atrebates

Ātrius, -î, m., a Roman gentile name

attexō, -texere, -texui, -textus, trans., weave on, make on (by weaving)

Atticus, -î, m., T. Pomponius Atticus, a great friend of Cicero’s; he resided chiefly at Athens

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [ad-tango], trans., touch at, touch upon, touch, border on

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, trans., allot to, assign

attuli, see adfero

auctor, -ōris [auego], m., voucher, authority: auctore hoste, on the authority of the enemy

auctōritās, -ātis [auctor], f., influence, prestige

auctus, -a, -um, p.p. of auego. — Comp., auctior, richer, greater
audacia — Balventius

**Latin-English Vocabulary**

**audacia** — [audax, bold], *f.*, daring, boldness

**audacter** — [audax, bold], *adv.*, with daring, boldly, fearlessly; audacissime, with the greatest daring

**audéo, audère, ausus, semi-dep., trans.,** dare, venture. — *ausus, -a, -um, p.p. in pres. sense, daring*

**auda-cissime, with the greatest daring**

**audeō, audere, ausus, semi-dep., trans.,** dare, venture. — *ausus, -a, -um, p.p. in pres. sense, daring*

**audio, -ire, -ivi, -itus, trans.,** hear, hear of. — *audiens, -entis, pres. p. as adj., obedient (with dicto)*

**auditio, -onis [audio], f.,** hearing, hearsay, report

**auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablatus [ab-fero], trans.,** take away, remove

**aufugio, -fugere, -fugi [ab-fugio], intrans.,** flee away, run away

**augeō, augere, auxi, auctus, trans.,** increase, magnify, add to (a thing). — *Pass., increase*

**Aulercus,-a,-um, adj.,** of the Aulerci (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul). — *Masc. plur., the Aulerci*

**Aulus, -i, m.,** a Roman praenomen

**Aurelius, -i, m.,** C. Aurelius Cotta, a Roman consul

**aureus, -a, -um [aurum], adj.,** golden

**auriga, -ae, m.,** charioteer, driver

**auris, -is, f.,** ear

**aurum, -i, n.,** gold

**Aurunculēus, -i, m.,** a Roman gentile name

**Auscī, -ōrum, m. plur. of adj.,** a tribe of Aquitania

**ausus, -a, -um, p.p. of audeo**

**aut, conj.,** or. — *Repeated, either . . . or*

**autem, conj.,** but (*the weakest degree of opposition, cf. sed*), on the other hand, now, moreover, furthermore

**auxiliāris, -e [auxilium], adj.,** auxiliary. — *Masc. plur. as noun, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops*

**auxiliōr, -āri, -ātus [auxilium], dep., intrans.,** give assistance

**auxilium, -i, n.,** assistance, aid, relief. — *Plur., auxiliaries; reënforcements*

**Avaricum, -i, n.,** a town of the Bituriges in central Gaul

**avāritia, -ae [avarus, greedy], f.,** covetousness, greed, avarice

**āvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus, carry off, take away**

**āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, trans.,** turn aside, turn away. — *āversus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., turned away; in the rear*

**avis, -is, f.,** bird

**avus, -i, m.,** grandfather

**Axona, -ae, f.,** a river of Belgic Gaul, now the Aisne

**Bācenis, -is, f., with salsa, a forest in Germany**

**Baculus, -i, m.,** P. Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar’s army

**Baebius, -i, m.,** a Roman gentile name

**Baleāris, -e, adj.,** Balearic (belonging to the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean)

**bātēus, -i, m.,** belt

**Balventius, -i, m.,** T. Balventius, a centurion in Cæsar’s army
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (not Greek or Roman), uncivilized.—Masc. plur., barbarians, savages
Batavi, -orum, m. plur., the Batavi or Batavians, a nation living about the mouths of the Rhine
Belgae, -arum, m. plur., the Belgæ or Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul
Belgium, -i, n., the country of the Belgæ
bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., warlike
bellicosus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., of war, in war
bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [bellum], intrans., fight, make war
Bellobacī, -orum, m. plur., a Belgic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise
bellum, -ī, n., war: bellum gerere, wage war
bene [bonus], adv., well
beneficium, -i [bene-facio], n., well-doing, service, favor, often rendered by English plur.
benevolentia, -ae [bene-volo], f., good will, kindness
Bibracte, -is, n., the chief town of the Hœdui
Bibrax, Bibractis, f., a town of the Remi
Bibroci, -orum, m. plur., a tribe of southeastern Britain
biduum, -ī [bis-dies], n., two days' time, two days
biennium, -ī [bis-annus], n., two years' time
Bigerriōnēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of the Pyrenees
bīni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., two each, two sets of, two (of things in pairs or sets), two at a time
bipartītō, adv., in two divisions
bipedālis, -e [bis-pes], adj., two-foot (two feet long, wide, etc.)
bis, num. adv., twice
Bithynia, -ae, a country in northwestern Asia Minor
Bithynus, -a, -um, adj., Bithynian.—Masc. as noun, Bithynian
Biturīgēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul
Blithō, -onis, m., Sulpicius Blitho, a writer of Roman history
Boduōgnātus, -ī, m., a leader of the Nervii
Bōia, -ae, f., a town of the Boii
Bōii, -orum, m. plur., a Celtic tribe
bonitās, -ātis [bonus], f., goodness: agrorum (fertility)
bonus, -a, -um, adj., good: bono animo esse, to be well-disposed.—Neut. as noun, good, advantage; plur., goods, property
bōs, bovis, c., bull, cow, ox.—Plur., cattle
bracchium, -ī, n., arm
Bratuspantium, -ī, n., a fortified town of the Bellovaci
brevis, -e, adj., short (of space or time): brevi, in a short space
brevitās, -ātis [brevis], f., shortness, short stature: brevitas temporis, want of time
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Britanni</td>
<td>capillus</td>
<td>the Britons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britannia</td>
<td>-ae, f.</td>
<td>Britain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bruma</td>
<td>-ae, f.</td>
<td>the winter solstice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brūtus</td>
<td>-ī, m.</td>
<td>a family name at Rome. — Esp., D. Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britanni, -ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>the Britons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britanni, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Britain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brūtus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>a family name at Rome. — Esp., D. Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caerōsī, -ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>a tribe of Belgic Gaul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caeruleus</td>
<td>-a, -um [caelum, sky], adj.</td>
<td>dark blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C, for centum, hundred</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C, abbr. for Gaius</td>
<td>Caius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caburus, -i, m.</td>
<td>C. Valerius Caburus, a Gaul, made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cadāver, -eris [cf. cado], n.</td>
<td>corpse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrus, intrans., fall, be killed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cādūceus, -i, m.</td>
<td>a herald's staff, the token of a peaceful embassy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadūrcus, -a, -um, adj.</td>
<td>of the Cadurci. — Masc. plur.</td>
<td>the Cadurci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caecus, -a, -um, adj.</td>
<td>blind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedēs, -is [caedo], f.</td>
<td>murder, massacre, slaughter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedo, caedere, cecidi, caesus, trans., cut, slay, kill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caelestis, -e, adj.</td>
<td>heavenly. — Masc. plur.</td>
<td>the gods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caemānī, -ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>a tribe of Belgic Gaul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caerimōnia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>sacred rite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedes, -is</td>
<td>[caedo], f.</td>
<td>murder, massacre, slaughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C, for centum, hundred</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C, abbr. for Gaius</td>
<td>Caius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cadāver, -eris [cf. cado], n.</td>
<td>corpse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrus, intrans., fall, be killed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cādūceus, -i, m.</td>
<td>a herald's staff, the token of a peaceful embassy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadūrcus, -a, -um, adj.</td>
<td>of the Cadurci. — Masc. plur.</td>
<td>the Cadurci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caecus, -a, -um, adj.</td>
<td>blind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedēs, -is [caedo], f.</td>
<td>murder, massacre, slaughter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedo, caedere, cecidi, caesus, trans., cut, slay, kill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caelestis, -e, adj.</td>
<td>heavenly. — Masc. plur.</td>
<td>the gods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caemānī, -ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>a tribe of Belgic Gaul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caerimōnia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>sacred rite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar, -aris, m.</td>
<td>a family name in the gens Iulia. — Esp.: 1. C. Julius Cæsar, the conqueror of Gaul and author of the &quot;Commentaries.&quot; — 2. L. Julius Cæsar, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caespes, -itis, m.</td>
<td>sod</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caesus, -a, -um, p.p. of caedo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calaïs (nom. only), m.</td>
<td>one of the Argonauts, son of the north wind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calamitās, -ātis, f.</td>
<td>disaster, defeat, misfortune</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calceus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>shoe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caleti, -ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>a tribe of northern Gaul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callidus, -a, -um, adj.</td>
<td>shrewd, cunning, skillful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calumnitās, -ātis, f.</td>
<td>disaster, defeat, misfortune</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calceus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>shoe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caleti, -ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>a tribe of northern Gaul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callidus, -a, -um, adj.</td>
<td>shrewd, cunning, skillful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>campus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>plain, open field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannēnsis, -e, adj.</td>
<td>of Canne, a town in Apulia, where the Romans suffered their worst defeat, in 216 B.C.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantaber, -bra, -brum, adj.</td>
<td>of the Cantabri (a warlike people in the north of Spain). — Masc. plur.</td>
<td>the Cantabri or Cantabrians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantium, -ī, m.</td>
<td>Kent (the southeast corner of Britain)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., sing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capillus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>the hair</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, trans., take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize: locum (select); portum (arrive at, make); fugam (take to flight)
capra, -ae, f., goat
captivus, -a, -um [capiō], adj., captive.—Masc. as noun, captive, prisoner
captus, -a, -um, p. p. of capio
captus, -ūs [capiō], m., capacity, nature, idea
Capua, -ae, f., the chief city of Campania
caput, -itis, n., head; person; mouth (of a river); life: poenam captitis (of death); captitis periculo (of life)
careō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, intrans., be without, go without
carina, -ae, f., keel
carmen, -inis, n., song, incantation
Carnutēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic people
carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat
carpō, -pere, -psi, -ptus, trans., pluck; find fault with
carrus, -i, m., cart
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious, valuable
Carvilius, -ī, m., a king of part of Kent
casa, -ae, f., cottage, hut
cāseus, -ī, m., cheese
Cassi, -ōrum, m. plur., a British tribe
Cassiānus, -a, -um, adj., of Cassius: bellum (the war in 107 B.C., in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigurini, near the Lake of Geneva, and killed)
Cassius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., L. Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B.C. (see Cassianus)
Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., a British chief
castellum, -ī [castrum], n., fortress, fort, outwork, redoubt
Caticus, -ī, m., a chief of the Sequani
Castor, -ōris, m., twin brother of Pollux
castrum, -ī, n., fortress.—Plur., camp: castra ponere, pitch camp; castra movere, break camp, move
cāsus, -ūs [cado], m., accident, chance (good or bad): casu, by accident, by chance
Catamantāloēdēs, -is, m., a chief of the Sequani
Catēna, -ae, f., chain (for prisoners), cable: in catenas coniecit (into prison)
Caturīgēs, -um, m. plur., a people in Roman Gaul
Catuvolcus, -ī, m., a chief of the Eburones
cauda, -ae, f., tail
causa, -ae, f., reason, excuse, grounds, motive (for an act): satis causae, sufficient reason. Abl. after a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of. Also, case (in law): causam dicere, plead one's cause, stand trial, be tried
cautē [cautos], adv., cautiously
cautos, p. p. of caveo
Cavarillus, -i, m., a prince of the Haedui
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, trans. and intrans., be on one’s guard: obsidibus cavere, give hostages as security
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, intrans., give way, retreat, retire
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick, fast
celeritās, -ātis [celer], f., swiftness, activity, speed
celeriter, adv., quickly, speedily
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., conceal, hide.—Pass., pass unnoticed
Celtae, -arum, m. plur., a race in Gaul and Britain.—More particularly, the Celts occupying the interior of Gaul
Celtillus, -i, m., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix
cēna, -ae, f., dinner
Cēnabum, -i, n., the chief city of the Carnutes, north of central Gaul
cēnāculum, -i [ceno], n., dining-room
Cēnimagni, -ōrum, m. plur., a British tribe
cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., dine
cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnus, trans., reckon, estimate; think, advise, decree (of the senate), determine
cēnus, -ūs [censeo], m., numbering, count, census
centaurus, -i, m., centaur, a fabulous creature, half man, half horse
Centenius, -i, m., C. Centenius, a Roman commander defeated by Hannibal
centum (C), indecl. num. adj., hundred
centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion (an officer commanding a century, originally a hundred men)
cernō, cernere, cēvī, crētus, trans., distinguish, see
certāmen, -inis [certo, contend], n., struggle, contest, rivalry
certē, adv., certainly, surely, at least
certus, -a, -um (for crētus), p.p. of cerno as adj., determined, fixed, certain: certiorem facere, inform, order; dies certa, appointed day
cervus, -i, m., stag (cēterus,) -a, -um, adj. the rest of. —Usually plur., the rest, the remaining, the others
Cethēgus, -i, m., P. Cornelius Cethegus, consul in 181 B.C.
Ceutrones, -um, m. plur., a tribe in the Alps
Cevenna, -ae, f., a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley, now the Cévennes
Chērusci, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Germans
cibārius, -a, -um [cibus], adj., pertaining to food.—Neut. plur. as noun, provisions: molita (ground corn)
cibus, -i, m., food
Cicerō, -onis, m., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum.—Esp., Q. Tullius Cicero, brother of Marcus the orator, in Cæsar’s service in Gaul as legatus
Cimberius, -ī, m., a prince of the Suebi

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered by Marius and Catulus, 101 B.C.

Cingetorix, -īgis, m., a British prince in Kent

Cingō, cingere, cīnxi, cīnctus, trans., surround, encircle; man (occupy in a circuit, of walls)

Circinus, -ī [cf. circum], m., a pair of compasses

Circiter, adv. and prep. with acc., about, near, not far from

Circitus, -ūs [circumeo], m., circuit, circuitous route, circumference: in circuitu, all around

Circum, adv. and prep. with acc., about, around

Circumcidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [circum-caedo], cut around, cut

Circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [circum-claudo], trans., inclose, encircle

Circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datus, irr., trans., put around: murus circumdatus (encircling, thrown around); surround, encircle

Circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc-tus, trans., lead around; draw around

Circumeō, -ēre, -ēi, -itus, irr., intrans., go around. — As trans., visit, make a tour of

Circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, trans., pour around. — Pass. or reflex., crowd around, surround

Circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [circum-iacio], trans., throw around

Circumitus, p.p. of circumeo

Circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, trans., send around

Circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, trans., throw fortifications around (said of defenders), fortify

Circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī (-stitī), no p.p., trans., stand around, surround, hem in, beset

Circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, trans., look about for, examine

Circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., draw an intrenchment around (said of besiegers)

Circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, trans., surround; impose upon, defraud

Cis, prep. with acc., on this side, this side of

Cita,-ae, m., C. Fufius Cita, a Roman knight

Citātus, -a, -um, p.p. of cito

citer, -tra, -trum, adj. Usually citerior (comp.), nearer, hither (as adj.): provincia, Gallia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps)

Citharoedus, -ī, m., harpist, minstrel

Citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., urge on, hurry. — Citātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., in haste: citatus fertur, runs very rapidly

Citō, adv., quickly: citissimē, very rapidly
citrā, adv., and prep. with acc., this side, within

citrō, adv., to this side: utro citroque, back and forth
civis, -is, c., citizen
civitās, -ātīs [civis], f., citizenship, the citizens (as a body), a state (body of citizens; res publica, state as a thing in itself); in Cāsar tribe, conventionally translated state (cf. tribus, part of a state)

clam, adv., and prep. with abl, secretly; unknown to

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [clamo, cry out], trans., keep crying out

clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, outcry

clandelīnisus, -a, -um, adj., secret

clārus, -a, -um, adj., famous; loud, distinct

classiārius, -a, -um [classis], adj., of the navy.—Masc. plur. as noun, marines, naval forces

classis, -is, f., fleet

Clastidium, -ī, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul

Claudius, -ī, M. Claudius Marcellus, consul in 196 B.C.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, trans., close, shut, hem in, fasten:

claudere agmen, close the line of march, bring up the rear

clāvus, -ī, m., nail, spike

clementia, -ae [clemens, kind], f., kindness, gentleness, mercy

cliēns, -entis, c., dependent, vassal, retainer

clientēla, -ae [cliens], f., vassalage:

magnae clientelae, many vassals;

Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt
(surrendered themselves as vassals to etc.)

Clōdius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., P. Clodius Pulcher, tribune, bitter enemy of Cicero the orator. He was killed in a fray by Milo (January, 52 B.C.)

Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus

cocervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-acerveus], trans., heap together, heap on top (of others)

cōactus, -a, -um, p.p. of cogo

coarō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., press together

Cocosātēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aquitania

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [com-emō], trans., buy up

cōēō, -ire, -iī, no p.p., irr., intrans., come together, unite, meet

coeptūs, -a, -um, p.p. used (in same sense as the active) with pass. infinitives

cōercoē, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus [com-arceo, shut up], trans., confine, keep in check

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-agito], trans., consider, think over

cognātiō, -onis, f., connection by birth, family, clan

cognitus, -a, -um, p.p. of cognoscō

cognoscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [com-(g)noscō, learn], trans., learn, find out, investigate, inquire into.

—in perf. tenses, know
cōgo — commoror

cōgo, cōgere, coēgi, coāctus [com-ago], trans., bring together, collect, assemble, get together. Hence, force, compel, oblige: coactus, by compulsion

cohors, -hortis, f., body of troops, cohort (the tenth part of a legion)

cohortātiō, -onis [cohortor], f., an encouraging, encouragement

cohortor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans., encourage, cheer up

Colchi, -ōrum, m. plur., inhabitants of Colchis

Colchis, -idis (acc.-ida), f., a country east of the Black Sea

collis, -is, m., hill

colō, colere, colui, cultus, trans., cultivate; inhabit; worship (divinities): colendi causa, for purposes of cultivation

color, -ōris, m., color

columba, -ae, f., pigeon, dove

com- (con-, co-), adv. in composition, with, together, up. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [com-uro, burn], trans., burn up, consume

comes, -itis, c., companion

comitium, -i, n., a part of the Roman Forum. — Plur.; assembly of the Roman people, election: proximis comitiis, at the last election

commeātus, -ūs [commeo], m., trip; supplies (of an army), provisions

commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (in a narrative)

commandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commando, commit], trans., intrust, commend, surrender

commeō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., go back and forth. — With ad, visit, resort to

commīlitō, -onis [com-miles], m., fellow soldier

comminus [com-manus], adv., hand to hand, in close combat

committō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, trans., join: proelium (engage in, begin the engagement). — Also, trust, intrust: se barbaris committere (put one's self in the hands of etc.). — Also, commit, commit the fault of letting, admit, allow (to happen)

Commius, -ī, m., a leader of the Atrebates

commodē, adv., conveniently, fitly, readily: satis commodo, to much advantage; non satis commodo, not very easily

commodus, -a, -um, adj., suitable, fitting, convenient, advantageous. — Neut. as noun, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: commodo rei publicae, without prejudice to the public interest

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēci, -facēreus [com-mono-facio], trans., remind

commoror, -āri, -ātus, dep., intrans., delay
**COMMUNE, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, trans., move, stir, agitate; disturb, alarm**

**commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [communīs], trans., share, allow to participate in, put into a common stock, communicate: consilium communicat cum A., he acquaints A. with his plan**

**commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, trans., strongly fortify**

**commūnis, -ē, adj., common, general, in common: res (the common interest)**

**commūtātiō, -ōnīs, f., change**

**commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., change, exchange: studium belli agri cultūrā (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture)**

1. **comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together**
2. **comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., compare**

**compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, trans., drive together, drive in, force, drive**

**comperiō, -perfere, -perfī, -pertus, trans., find out, ascertain, discover. — compertus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., certain**

**complector, -plectī, -plexus, dep., trans., embrace, include, inclose**

**compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, trans., fill up, fill; cover, man (of walls)**

**complūrēs, -plūra, adj., plur., very many, a great many**

**componō, -pōnerē, -posui, -positus, trans., put together, settle: bellum (bring to an end)**

**comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring together, collect**

**comprehendo, -hendere, -hendī, -hēn-sus, trans., seize, catch, arrest, capture**

**comprobō, -probāre, -probāvī, -probātus, trans., assent to, ratify, sanction**

**compulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of compello con-, see com-**

**cōnātum, -ī [conor], n., attempt, undertaking**

**cōnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of conor**

**cōnātus, -ūs [conor], m., attempt, effort**

**concīdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, trans. and intrans., yield, allow, grant, permit, give permission for, make a concession**

**concīdō, -cidere, -cidī, no p.p. [com-cado], intrans., fall down, fall**

**concīdō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisus [com-caedo], trans., cut to pieces, cut down (kill), cut up (land by estuaries)**

**conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring together; win over, gain, obtain**

**concilium, -ī, n., meeting; assembly, council, conference**

**concisus, -a, -um, p.p. of concido**

**concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., arouse, stir up: risum (provoke)**

**conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., cry out, shout: ad arma (call)**
concludo, -clüdere, -clüși, -clüsus [com-claudo], trans., shut up, inclose: mare conclusum (inclosed, inland)

Conconnetodumnus, -i, m., a leader of the Carnutes

concurȓo, -currere, -curȓi, -cursūrus, intrans., run together, rush up, unite: concursum est, there was a rushing together

concursus, -ūs, m., a running together, a dashing together (collision); onset, conflict

condemn̑o, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-damno], trans., condemn, find guilty

condiciō, -onis, f., terms, condition, terms of agreement

condōn̑o, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., give up, pardon

Condrūsi, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire

cōnferciō, -fercīre, -fersī, -fertus, trans., crowd together.— cōnfertus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., close, crowded, dense

cōnfere, -tulī, -lātus, irr., trans., bring together, get together, collect; charge; hold (a conversation): facta (compare).— With reflexive, betake one’s self, remove, take refuge

cōnfertus, -a, -um, p.p. of confercio

cōnfestim, adv., in haste, immediately, at once

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [com-facio], trans., accomplish, complete, finish, end, perform, dispatch; dress (of skins); exhaust, wear out

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, semi-dep., intrans., trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on.— cōnfisus, -a, -um, p.p. in act. sense, trusting in

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, trans., fasten together, fasten

cōnfirmātiō, -onis [confirmo], f., assurance, affirmation

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., strengthen, establish (pacem), assure, confirm, reassure, encourage

cōnisus, -a, -um, p.p. of confido

cōnfiteor, -fitēri, -fessus [com-fateor, confess], dep., trans., confess, acknowledge, admit

cōnfixus, -a, -um, p.p. of configo

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrans., be on fire, burn

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -flectus, trans. and intrans., dash together, dash against, contend, fight

cōnfluēns, -entis, m., meeting of two rivers, confluence

congrādiōr, -grēdi, -gressus [com-gradiōr, step], dep., intrans., come together. — In peace, unite with. — Esp. in war, engage, fight

congressus, -a, -um, p.p. of congrādiōr

congressus, -ūs [congrādiōr], m., engagement, encounter
**LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**

**coniciō — consequor**

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [coniacio], trans., throw together, hurl, cast: se concicere, throw one’s self, rush. — Less exactly (esp. in a military sense), throw (into prison), put (to flight), place, station (cf. military throw troops into etc.), force. — Fig., put together (of ideas) coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniciō

coniunctim [coniungo], adv., in common

coniungō, -iungere, -iunxi, -iectus, trans., unite, connect, fasten together

coniünx,-iugis [coniungo], c., husband, wife

coniüriātiō, -onis, f., conspiracy, confederacy

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., take an oath (together); conspire, plot

conlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conferō

conlaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., praise (in set terms)

conlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of conligō

conlēga, -ae, m., colleague

conligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bind together, fasten together

conligō,-ligere,-lēgī,-lēctus [com-lego, gather], trans., gather together, collect, acquire. — With reflexive, collect one’s self, recover

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., place, set, station.—Esp. (with or without nuptum), give in marriage

conloquium, -i [conloquor], n., conference, interview

conloquor, -loqui, -locūtus, dep., intrans., confer, hold an interview

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans. and intrans., attempt, try, endeavor

conquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītus [com-quaero], trans., search for, seek for, hunt up

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [com-sanguis], adj., akin (by blood). — As noun, kinsman

cōnscondō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus [com-scando, climb], trans., climb, climb upon: navem (naves, in naves) (go on board)

cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītus, [com-scisco, decree], trans., resolve: ipse sibi mortem (commit suicide)

cōnscius, -a, -um [com-scio], adj., aware: sibi conscious, conscious

cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scripsitus, trans., enroll, levy, enlist: epistulam (compose, write): patres conscripti, senators

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus [freq. of consequor], dep., trans., overtake, follow up

cōnsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of consequor

cōnsensus,-ūs, m., agreement, consent

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, intrans., agree, conspire, make common cause

consequor, -sequi, -secūtus, dep., trans., overtake; obtain, secure, attain, succeed in
cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., save, preserve, spare, guard: odiōm (cherish)
cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., reflect on, consider

Cōnsidius, -ī, m., a Roman name
cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessūrus, intrans., sit down; take a position, halt, encamp, settle

cōnsilium, -ī, n., deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium). — Esp., wise counsel, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, design, purpose. — Phrases: ipsorum esse consilium (a matter for them to decide); consilium capere, resolve; quasi consili sit res, as if it were a matter for consultation; commune consilium, concerted action; publicum consilium, action of the state, official action

cōnsimilis, -e, adj., very like, just like

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., intrans., take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (of troops). — In perf. tenses, have a position, stand. Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay. — With in, occupy, rest on; depend on, consist of

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans., console, cheer. — cōnsōlātus, -a, -um, p. p. as pres., consoling
cōnspectus, -ūs, m., sight. — in conspectu, in one's presence
cōspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicor
cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [com-specio, look at], trans., catch sight of, see
cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus [conspicio], dep., trans., catch sight of, see
cōspirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., conspire, league together
cōstanter, adv., steadily, firmly, consistently
cōstantia, -ae [constans, firm], f., firmness, constancy, courage
cōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, trans., strew over
cōstipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., press together, crowd
cōstiti, see consisto
cōstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stītūtus [com-statuo], trans. and intrans., set up, raise, put together, make up; establish, station, arrange, draw up; determine, appoint, agree upon
cōstō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrus, intrans., agree; be established, appear, be evident (esp., constat, it appears); cost
cōsuescō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, intrans., become accustomed. — In perf. tenses, be accustomed, be wont. — cōsuescētus, -a, -um, p. p., accustomed, wont, used
cōsuetūdō, -inis, f., habit, custom, manners, practice: itineris (usual order of march)
cōnsul — contrahō

cōnsul, -ulis, m., consul (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome): M. Messala et M. Pison consuli-
bus, in the consulship of etc. (the usual Roman method of giving a date)
cōnsulāris, -e [consul], adj., consular.
— Masc. as noun, ex-consul
cōnsulātus, -ūs [consul], m., consulship
cōnsulō, -sulere, -sului, -sultus, trans. and intrans., deliberate, consult.
— With dat., take counsel for, look out for. — sortibus consultum (est), lots were drawn to decide
cōnsultō, adv., purposely, designedly
cōnsultum, -i [consulo], n., decision, decree. — Esp., senatus consultum, an order of the senate
cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmp-
tus, trans., waste, destroy, spend, exhaust
cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrēc-
tūrus, intrans., rise, rise up. — Esp. of a session, break up
contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., board up, plank (floor with planks)
contāgiō, -ōnis [com-tango], f., contact
contemptiō, -ōnis [contempo], despise],
f., contempt, scorn
contemptus, -ūs [contempo], despise],
m., contempt, scorn: contemptui est, is a matter of ridicule
contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentūrus, intrans., strive, try, endeavor; press on, hasten; fight, contend, wage war

contentiō, -ōnis [contendo], f., struggle, efforts. — Esp., contest, fighting, dispute
contentus, -a, -um, p.p. of contendo
and contineo
contexō, -texere, -texui, -textus, trans., interweave, weave together
contigisse, see contingo
continēns, -entis, see contineo
continenter, adv., continually, incessantly
contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [conteneo], trans., hold together; restrain, hold in check, hem in. — Pass. or with reflex., keep within, remain. — continēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., continual, continuous.
— As noun, the continent. — contentus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., satisfied
contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [com-tango], trans. and intrans., touch, reach, join. — With dat., happen
continuātiō, -ōnis [continuo, unite], f., continuation: continuatio imbrum, incessant rains
continuus, -a, -um [contineo], adj., continuous, successive: dies (successive)
contīō, -ōnis, f., assembly, meeting; address, harangue
contrā, adv., and prep. with acc., opposite, contrary to, against: contra atque, contrary to what etc.
contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, trans., draw together, gather together, contract, make smaller
contrārius, -a, -um [contra], adj.,
opposite, contrary: ex contrario,
on the contrary; in contrariam
partem, in the opposite direction
contròversia, -ae, f., dispute, quarrel.
—Plur., grounds of quarrel
contuli, see cónferō
contumélia, -ae, f., outrage, insult,
reproach, affront.—Fig., violence
(of waves)
convallis, -is, f., valley (inclosed on
all sides)
conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus,
trans. and intrans., come to-
gether, meet, assemble; agree
upon.—With acc., meet, come
to.—Also, of things, be agreed
on, be fitting, be necessary: con-
venit, imper. s, it is agreed
conventus, -ūs [convenio], m., as-
ssembly
convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus,
trans., turn about, turn, change:
signa (change front, wheel); con-
versa signa bipartito intulerunt,
wheeled and charged the enemy
in two directions; conversa signa
in hostes inferre, face about and
charge the enemy
Convictolitavis, -is, m., a young
Hāeduan nobleman
convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus,
trans., prove, make good (a
charge etc.): avaritia ei convicta
est, he has been found guilty of
avarice
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, trans., call
together, summon, call
coörior, -orīrī, -ortus, dep., intrans.,
arise, spring up, break out (of a
war)
cōpia, -ae, f., abundance, plenty;
supply.—Plur., resources, sup-
plies, forces
cōpiōsus, -a, -um [cōpia], adj., well
supplied, wealthy
cōpula, -ae, f., grappling hook
cor, cordis, n., heart: cordi esse, be
dear
cōram, adv. and prep. with abl.,
face to face, present, in person,
in the presence of
Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth, a city in
Greece
Coriosolitēs, -um, m. plur., a people
of Aremoric Gaul
corium, -ī, n., hide, skin
Cornēlius, -ī, m., L. Cornelius, con-
sul in 193 B.C.
cornū, -ūs, n., horn.—Fig., wing
(of an army)
corōna, -ae, f., garland, wreath,
crown: sub corōna, at auction
(the garland being the symbol of
a captive for sale at auction)
corpus, -oris, n., the body, the per-
son.—Also, a body (dead)
corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus,
trans., destroy, ruin, corrupt, bribe
cortex, -icis, m. (also f.), bark
Cōrus, -ī, m., northwest wind
cōtēs, -is, f., rock, reef
cotidiānus, -a, -um [cotidiē], adj.,
daily
cotidiē, adv., daily, every day
Cotta, -ae, m., a Roman family name. — Esp., L. Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar, slain by the Gauls

Cotuatus, -i, m., a chief of the Carnutes

Cotus, -i, m., a young Hæduan nobleman

Crassitudo, -inis [crassus, thick], f., thickness

Crassus, -i, m., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. M. Licinius Crassus, consul with Pompey, 55 B.c.; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. P. Crassus (called adulescens, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. M. Crassus, another son of the triumvir, questor, 54 B.c., in Cæsar’s army

Crates, -is, f., wickerwork, fascine (a bundle of sticks used to strengthen earthworks in fortification)

Creatus, -a, -um, p.p. of creo

Crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., thick, close, numerous, frequent

Credō, credere, crédidī, créditus, trans. and intrans., trust, intrust, believe, suppose

Cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., burn, consume: igni cremari, be burned to death

Credo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., create. — Esp., elect, choose, appoint

Creōn, -ontis, m., a king of Corinth

Crēs, Crētis, m., a Cretan. — As adj., Cretan

Crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, intrans., grow, increase, swell (of a river), increase in influence (of a man), grow powerful

Crēta, -ae, f., Crete, a large island southeast of Greece

Crētēnsis, -e [Creta], adj., Cretan. — Masc. as noun, Cretan

Crēvissent, see cresco

Cruciātus, -ūs [crucio, torture, from crux, cross], m., torture

Crūdēlis, -e, adj., cruel

Crūdēlitās, -ātis [crudelis, cruel], f., cruelty

Crūdēliter, adv., cruelly, with cruelty

Crūs, crūris, n., leg

Cubile, -is [cubo, lie down], n., resting place, bed, lair

Culmen, -inis, n., height, top, summit, roof

Culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame, guilt

Cultūra, -ae, f., cultivation: agriculturna, agriculture

Cultus, -ūs [colo], m., cultivation; civilization, manner of life

Cum, prep. with abl., with
cum, conj., usually with subjv., when, whenever, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although:
cum . . . tum, while . . . so also, not only . . . but also; cum primum, as soon as

Cumulus, -i, m., pile, heap

Cunctātiō, -onis [cunctor], f., hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight
cunctor — decem

cunctor, -āri, -ātus, dep., intrans., hesitate: non cunctari quin, have no hesitation in etc.
cūncτus, -a, -um [conunctus], adj., all, all together
cuneātim [cuneus, wedge], adv., in the shape of a wedge
cuniculus, -i, m., burrow; mine
cupidē [cupidus], adv., eagerly, zealously, earnestly
cupiditās, -ātis [cupidus], f., desire, eagerness, greed
cupidus, -a, -um [cupio], adj., eager, desirous, fond of, ambitious (for)
cupiō, -ere, -īvi, -ītus, trans. and intrans., be eager (for), be anxious, desire (stronger than volo).
— With dat., wish well to, be zealous for
cūr, adv., why (interrog. and rel.)
cūra, -ae, f., care, anxiety, attention
cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., take care, provide for.— With gerundive, cause (to be done), have (done)
currō, currere, cucurri, cursus, intrans., run
currus, -ūs, m., chariot (cf. essedum)
cursus, -ūs [curro], m., running, speed, a run, a course (space or direction run): cursum adaequatam, keep up with; currus incitato or magno, at full speed

custōdia, -ae [custos], f., custody, guard (state of being guarded).— Plur. (concretely), guards, keepers
custōdiō, -ire, -īvi, -ītus [custos], trans., guard
custōs, -ōdis, c., guard, watchman, keeper, spy
Cyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., Cyrenæan.
— Masc. as noun, Cyrenæan
Cyzicus, -i, f., a city in Asia Minor

D [half of CI, thousand], Roman numeral for five hundred
D., abbr. for Decimus
d., abbr. for diem
Dācus, -a, -um, adj., Dacian.— Masc. plur., the Dacians, a people living north of the lower Danube
damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., find guilty, condemn
Dānuvius, -i, m., the Danube, flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea
datus, -a, -um, p.p. of do
dē, prep. with abl., from, down from, off from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason.— Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris.— Also, about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for.— In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia.— In composition, away, off, down, through
debeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus [de-habeo], trans., owe, be bound, ought, must.— Pass., be due, be owing
debilitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., weaken, cripple
decēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intrans., retire, withdraw, withdraw from.— Esp. (from life), die
decem, indecl. num. adj., ten
dēceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of decipio
dēcerno, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, trans. and intrans., decide, determine, decree, order; decide by battle, fight out, fight
dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., contend (so as to close the contest), decide the issue, carry on war, fight (a general engagement)
dēcessus, -ūs, m., withdrawal, departure: aestus (ebb, fall)
dēcidō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p. [decado], intrans., fall (from a horse)
decimus, -a, -um [decem], adj., tenth Decimus, -ī [decimus], m., a Roman praenomen
dēcipō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [decapio], trans., beguile, deceive
dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., make plain, declare, show
dēclīvis, -ē [declivus, slope], adj., sloping down, inclined. — Neut. plur. as noun, slopes
dēcrētum, -ī, n., decree, decision
dēcrētus, -a, -um, p. p. of decerno
decumānus, -a, -um [decimus], adj., belonging to the tenth: porta (the rear gate of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted)
decuriō, -ōnis, m., commander (of a decuria of cavalry, a small squadron)
dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursūrus, intrans., run down, run away, hurry off
dēdecus, -ōris, n., disgrace, dishonor
dēditīcius, -a, -um [dedo], adj., surrendered. — Plur. as noun, prisoners (taken by surrender)
dēditiō, -ōnis [dedo], f., surrender
dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of dedo
dēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, trans., give over, surrender, give up, devote. — In pass. or with reflex., surrender one’s self, submit
dēdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., lead down, lead off, lead away, take away (of men); conduct: re in controversiam deducta (coming to etc.). — Esp., launch (of ships); marry (of women)
dēfatigātiō, -ōnis [defatigo], f., exhaustion
dēfatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., wear out, exhaust
dēfectiō, -ōnis [deficio], f., falling away, revolt
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fensus, trans., ward off, defend one’s self against; defend, protect
dēfensiō, -ōnis [defendo], f., defense
dēfensor, -ōris [defendo], m., defender; means of defense, defense
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, irr., trans., carry down, carry away, carry, take, bring, land (of ships). — Pass., be borne down or on, drift (of ships), turn aside. — Fig., report, lay before; offer, confer
dēfessus, -a, -um, p. p. of defetiscor
defetiscor, -fetisci, -fessus, dep., intrans., crack open. — defessus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., exhausted
déficiō — démō

déficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [de-facio], trans. and intrans., fail, revolt, abandon (with ab): animo (despond)
défigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, trans., drive down, plant, set, fasten
défixus, -a, -um, p. p. of défigo
défluō, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxūrus, in-trans., flow apart, divide (of a river)
défore, see desum
déförmis, -e [de-forma], adj., uncomely, unshapely, ugly
défugīō, -fugere, -fügī, no p. p., trans. and intrans., fly from, avoid, run away
déiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [de-iacio], trans., cast down, cast, drive out, dislodge, kill (pass., fall), deprive: ea spe deiecti, disappointed in this hope
deiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deicio
deiectus, -ūs [deicio], m., declivity, slope
déinceps, adv., in succession
déinde, adv., then, next
délabor, -lābī, -lapsus, intrans., slip down, descend, fall
déléatus, -a, -um, p. p. of défero
délectō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., delight. — Pass., take delight, delight
delectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo (-ligere)
delectus, -ūs [deligo, pick out], m., levy, conscription
deleo, -ère, -ēvi, -ētus, trans., blot out, wipe out; annihilate, destroy
délētus, -a, -um, p. p. of déleó
déliberō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., discuss, consult, deliberate
délictum, -i [delinquō, fail], n., offense
déligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo (-āre)
délīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-lio, bind], trans., tie down, moor, tie
délīgō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [de-lego, choose], trans., choose out, select. — délēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., chosen, picked
délītēscō, -lītēscere, -lītui, no p. p., intrans., hide away, hide
Delphī, -ŏrum, m. plur., a town in Greece, famous for the oracle of Apollo
démentia, -ae [demens, crazy], f., madness, folly
démessus, -a, -um, p. p. of demeto
démētō, -metere, -messūi, -messus, trans., reap, cut down
démigrō, -äre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., move away, emigrate
démīnuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, trans., diminish, lessen, detract
démittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, trans., send down, let down, let fall. — In pass. or with reflex., let one's self down, descend. — Fig., despond (se animo), be discouraged: animos (lose courage). —demissus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., bowed, low
démō, démere, démpsi, démptus [de-mo, take], trans., take down, take off, remove
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.</td>
<td>point out, show, state, speak of, make known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans.</td>
<td>delay, retard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēmum, adv.,</td>
<td>at last, at length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., refuse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., ten each, ten (on each side, or in sets of ten)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēnique, adv., at last; finally: multō</td>
<td>denique die, not till late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēns, dentis, m., tooth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēnus, -a, -um, adj., thick, crowded, dense</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēnūntiā, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.</td>
<td>declare, warn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, trans.</td>
<td>drive off, drive away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēperdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, trans.</td>
<td>lose, be deprived of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēpereō, -perire, -periī, -peritūrus, irr., intrans.,</td>
<td>be lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēpōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, trans.</td>
<td>lay down, lay aside, place, deposit; give up, lose, abandon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans.</td>
<td>ravage, lay waste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.</td>
<td>carry off, carry away, remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no p. p., trans.</td>
<td>demand, call for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of depono</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēprecātor, -ōris, m., mediator: eo deprecator, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans.</td>
<td>by his mediation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans.,</td>
<td>fight it out, fight decisively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēpulsus, -ā, -um, p. p. of depello</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dērēctē, adv., straight: ad perpendicularum (perpendicularly)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of derigo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [de-rego], trans., straighten out.</td>
<td>— dē-rēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., straight, perpendicular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [de-rapiō], trans., snatch away, tear away, pull down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., take away, withdraw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēn-sūrus [de-scando, climb]. intrans., descend, come down, have recourse to, adopt (with ad)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, trans.,</td>
<td>cut off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēserō, -serere, -serui, -sertus, trans., abandon, forsake. — dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., deserted, solitary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsērtrō, -ōris, m., deserter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., feel the want of, desire, miss, find missing, lose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsīdia, -ae [deses, idle], f., idleness, sloth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., mark out, indicate, mean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsiliō, -silēre, -silui, -sultūrus [de-salio, leap], intrans., leap down, leap off, jump out, jump over-board</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
désistō — dicio

désistō, -sisterē, -stītī, -stītūrus, in-
trans., cease, stop, desist from,
abandon
déspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio
déspectus, -ūs [despicio], m., a view
down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet despectūs (sheer
precipices)
despērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans.,
cease to hope, despair.—despērā-
tus, -a, -um, as pass., despaired of. — Also as adj., desperate
despiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus
[de-specio, look], trans. and in-
trans., look down, look down on;
despise
despollō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
strip, deprive
destīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
fasten, make fast, make firm
destītī, see desisto
destituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stītūtus
[de-statuo], trans., set down, aban-
don, desert
destrīctus, -a, -um, p. p. of destringō
destrīngō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strīc-
tus, trans., draw, unsheathe
dēsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, irr.,
intrans., be wanting, fail : equites
Romanis desunt, the Romans lack
horsemen, the Romans are with-
out horsemen
dēsuper, adv., from above
dēterior, -iōs, adj., inferior, worse :
deteriora vectigalia facere (im-
pair)
dēt erreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -terrītus,
trans., frighten off, deter, prevent
dētineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [de-
teneo], trans., delay, stop
dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of detrahō
dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus,
trans., drag off, draw off, snatch
(away), take away, take off, with-
draw
dētrectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
avoid, shun
dētrimentum, -ī [detero, rub off], n.,
loss, injury; defeat, disaster
dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-turbo,
disturb], trans., drive off (in con-
fusion)
deus, -ī (nom. plur. dei or dī, dat.
or abl. plur. deī or diūs), m., a
god
dēvehō,-vehere,-vesī,-vectus,trans.,
carry away, bring along
dēveniō, -veniō, -vēnī, -ventūrus,
intrans., come (to a place, with-
out having planned to come there),
get to
dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus,
trans., conquer completely, over-
come
dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of devoveo
dēvoeō,-vovere,-vōvī,-vōtus,trans.,
vow. — dēvōtus, -ī, m., p. p. as
noun, a sworn follower
dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right (on
the right hand). — dextra, -ae
(sc. manus), f., the right hand
Diablintēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe
in northwestern Gaul
Diāna, -ae, f., goddess of the moon
and of hunting, sister of Apollo
diciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, sway
dicō — dirimo

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., adjudge, assign: se in clientelam (bind); se in servitutem (surrender)
dicō, dīcere, dīxi, dictus, trans. and intrans., say, speak, name; appoint, fix; ius (administer); sententiam (give)
dictator, -ōris [dīco], m., dictator
dictiō, -ōnis [dīco], f., a speaking, a pleading: causae (pleading one’s cause, trial)
dictum, -ī [n. p. p. of dīco], n., statement, command: dicto audiens esse alīcui, be obedient, obey
dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [dis-duco], trans., draw apart, separate, divide
dīēs, -ēī, m. (rarely f. in some uses), day: in diēs, from day to day; diem ex die ducere, put off a thing day after day; ad diem, on the day
differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus [dis-sero], irr., trans. and intrans., carry in different directions, scatter; postpone, defer; differ
diā'cilsis, -e [dis-facilis], adj., not easy, difficult: iter (hard to pass over)
diā'cultās, -ātis [diā'cultis], f., difficulty, trouble
diā'culter [diā'cultis], adv., with difficulty
diiddō, -fidere, -fīsus sum [dis-fido], semi-dep., intrans., distrust
diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [dis-fundo], trans., spread out
digitus, -ī, m., finger: pollex (thumb); finger’s breadth
dignitās, -ātis [dignus], f., worth, dignity, prestige, rank
dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy
diūdīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-iūdico], trans. and intrans., decide, determine
dīlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of dīligo
dīlēctus, -ūs [dīligo], m., selection, levy
diligenter, adv., carefully, with care, with exactness: parum diligenter, too carelessly
diligentia, -ae [diligens, careful], f., care, pains, diligence
dīlīgō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus [dis-lego, choose], trans., love, be fond of
dīlūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxī, intrans., grow light, dawn
dīmēn'sus, -a, -um, p. p. of dīmetior
dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēn'sus [dis-metior], dep., trans., measure out (esp. of a camp). — dīmēn'sus, -a, -um, measured
dīmico, -āre, -āvī, -ātūr'us [dis-mico, move to and fro], intrans., fight; risk an engagement
dimidius, -a, -um [dis-mēdius], adj., half. — Neut. as noun, a half
dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [dis-mitte], trans., send away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon; dispatch, disband, dismiss
dīreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of dīripio
dirimo, -imere, -ēmī, -emptus [dis-emo, take], trans., break up (a conference)
διριπιο — distō

diripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [dis-rapio, seize], trans., plunder, pillage, ravage
dis-, di- (dir-, dif-), adv. in compounds, apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-

Dis, Ditis, m., Pluto (the god of the underworld, and so of death)
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intrans., withdraw, depart, retire, leave (with ab), go away: ab officio (fail in one’s duty); spes hostibus (forsake, fail)
discussus, -ūs, m., departure, withdrawal
disciplīna, -ae [disco], f., instruction, a course of instruction
disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [dis-claudio], trans., keep apart, separate, divide
discō, discere, didicī, no p.p., trans. and intrans., learn
discrimen, -inis, n., crisis, risk, peril, danger
discussus, -a, -um, p.p. of discutio
discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [dis-quatio, shake], shake apart, drive away, clear away, remove
disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [dis-iacio], trans., disperse, ruin, destroy, tear off (yards). — disiectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., scattered, broken, in disorder
disiectus, -a, -um, p.p. of disicio
dispālātus, -a, -um, adj., wandering, straggling
dispār, -paris, adj., unequal, ill-matched
dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -persus [dis-spargo, scatter], trans., scatter, disperse

dispersus, -a, -um, p.p. of dispergo
dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans., station (variously), array (at several posts)
dispositus, -a, -um, p.p. of dispono
disputātiō, -onis [disputo], f., discussion, dispute
disputō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., discuss, investigate
dissēnsiō, -onis [dissentio], f., disagreement, dissension
dissentiō, -sentīere, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, intrans., disagree (ab, with)
dissideō, -sidēre, -sēdī [dis-sedeo], intrans., sit apart; disagree, have a quarrel (with ab)
dissimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dis-simulo, make like], trans. and intrans., conceal, disguise; dissemble
dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., scatter, disperse: dissipati, straggling troops
dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsus [dis-suadeo, advise], trans., advise to the contrary
distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [disteneo], trans., keep apart, cut off (in military sense), isolate
distō, -stāre [dis-sto], intrans., stand apart, be distant: quantum iunctura distabat, as far as the distance between etc.
distrāhō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag asunder, separate
distribuō, -ure, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.*, assign, distribute, divide
distringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus [dis-stringo], *trans.*, engage, occupy
distuliī, *see differō*
ditissimus, -a, -um, *superl.* of dives
diū, *adv.*, for some time, long: tam diu, so long; quam diu, as long as; diutius, any longer, rather long, too long; diutissimē, for the longest time
diurnus, -a, -um [dies], *adj.*, of the day, daily: nocturnis diurnisque itineribus (by night and day)
diūtinus, -a, -um [diu], *adj.*, long continued
diūtius, diūtissimē, *comp.* and *superl.* of diu
diūturnītās, -ātis [diuturnus], *f.*, length of time, long continuance
diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long-continued, long (*in time*)
diversus, *p.p.* of divertō
divertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [dis-vertō], *intrans.*, separate. — diversus, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, separate, distant, diverse, different
dīves, -itis, *adj.*, rich
Divicō, -ōnis, *m.*, a leader of the Helvetii
dividō, -videre, -visī, -visus, *trans.*, divide, separate. — divisus, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, divided: Gallia divisā est
dīvinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the gods, divine: res divīnae, matters of religion, religion
divisus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of dividō
do, dare, dēdī, datus, *irr.*, *trans.*, give, concede, assign, grant: eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, I have the less hesitation; se vento (run before the wind); hostes in fugam (put to flight); negotium uti (employ one to *etc.*, engage one to *etc.*); verba (deceive, outwit)
doceō, docère, dociū, doctus, *trans.*, teach, show, inform
doctor, -ōris [doceo], *m.*, teacher
documentum, -ī [doceo], *n.*, warning, example
doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, *in-trans.*, feel pain, suffer; be pained, grieve
dolor, -ōris [doleo], *m.*, pain, distress, indignation: magno dolore ferre, be very indignant; magno esse dolori, be a great annoyance or sorrow; almost concrete, grievance
dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, tricks, stratagem
domesticus, -a, -um [domus], *adj.*, one’s own, at home, private, personal: bellum (internal)
domicilium, -ī [domus], *n.*, house, dwelling place, home
dominor, -āri, -ātus [dominus], dep., intrans., rule, be master
dominus, -ī, m., master, owner
domus, -ī (-ūs), f., house, home: domī, at home; domum, home, to one's home
Donnōtaurus, -ī, m., a Gallic name.
—Esp., C. Valerius Donnotaurus, a chief of the Helvii, son of C. Valerius Caburus, and brother of C. Valerius Procillus. The first two names of these persons are Roman, taken from the name of their patron
dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [donum, gift], trans., present, give: civitate aliquem donare, give a person the rights of citizenship
dōnum, -ī, n., gift
dormiō, -ire, -ivi, intrans., sleep
dōs, dōtis [do], f., marriage gift, dowry
dracō, -onis, m., dragon, serpent
Druidēs, -um, m. plur., the Druids, the priests of the ancient Gallic religion
Dubis, -īs, m., the Doubs, a river of eastern Gaul, flowing from the Jura Mountains
dubitātiō, -onis [dubito], f., doubt, hesitation: eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, I feel the less doubt or hesitation
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [dubius], trans., doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful; hesitate
dubium, -ī, n., doubt: sine dubio, undoubtedly
dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful: est dubium, there is doubt
ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., two hundred
dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, dūctus, trans., lead, draw, bring, take, spin out; beguile along, keep waiting; consider. — With or without in matrimonium, marry (of the man)
dum, conj., while, so long as; till, until
Dumnorix, -īgis, m., an anti-Roman leader of the Hāedui, brother of Diviciacus
duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., plur., two
duodecim, indecl. num. adj., twelve
duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj., twelfth
duodēviginti [duo de viginti], indecl. num. adj., eighteen
duplex, -plicis, adj., twofold, double:
cicies (in two divisions)
duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [duplex], trans., double
dūritia, -ae [durus], f., hardness, hardship
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, severe, difficult: si quid erat durius (any severe contest)
Dūrus, -ī, m., a Roman family name.
—Esp., Q. Laberius Durus, a military tribune in Cæsar’s army, killed in Britain
dux, ducis [duco], c., leader, guide, commander
ē, shortened form of ex, prep. with abl.
eā, adv., that way, in that direction
Eburōnēs — elephantus

Eburōnēs, -um, m. plur., a Belgian tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine

Eburowīcēs, -um, m. plur., in full Aulerci Eburowices, a Gallic tribe south of the Seine not far from the coast

ēdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus, trans., proclaim, announce, appoint

ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, no p.p. [ex-disco], trans., learn by heart, commit to memory

ēditus, -a, -um, p.p. of edo

ēdō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditus [ex-do (put)], trans., put forth, utter: exempla cruciatusque (make an example by inflicting severe torture).

ēditus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., elevated, raised, high

ēdoceō, -docere, -docuī, -doctus [ex-doceo], trans., explain, inform, instruct

ēdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [ex-duco], trans., lead out, draw (a sword)

ēfēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-femina], trans., enervate, weaken: animos (enfeebles)

ēferō, efferre, extuli, ēlātus [ex-fero], irr., trans., carry out, bring out, carry away; spread abroad, make known; puff up, elate

ēfervēscō, -fervēscere, -ferbuī [ex-fervesco], intrans., boil up, boil over

ēficō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex-facio], trans., make, enable, cause, produce: ut praebērunt (make them afford); ut sint laboris (make capable of); ut posset (make possible); classem (get together, construct)

effodīō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [ex-fodīō], trans., dig out, gouge out

effossus, -a, -um, p.p. of effodīō

effugīō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugītūrus [ex-fugīō], trans., escape, fly from

egēns, -entis, see egeo

egēō, egēre, egūi, no p.p., intrans., need, be in want of, lack. — egēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., needy, destitute

egestās, -ātis [egens], f., poverty, destitution

ego, meī, pron., 1st person, I, me. — Plur., nōs, we, us

ēgressor, -gradīō, -gressus [ex-gradīō, step], dep., intrans., go out, come forth, march out, move beyond:

nave, e navi (land, disembark);

in terram egressor, go ashore

ēgregiē [egregius], adv., remarkably, finely, extremely well

ēgregius, -a, -um [ex-grex, herd], adj., remarkable, eminent, notable, superior, excellent

ēgressus, -a, -um, p.p. of egressor

ēcīō, -icere, -īcī, -iectus [ex-iaciō], trans., cast out, drive out. — With reflex., rush out, rush

 eiusmodī, as adj. phrase, of this kind, of such a kind, such

ēlātus, -a, -um, p.p. of efferro

ēlectus, -a, -um, p.p. of eligō

elephantus, -ī, m., elephant
eligo, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus [ex-lego], choose, trans., pick out, select. —
elēctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., picked (troops)
Elusātēs, -ium, m. plur., a people of Aquitania
ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus [ex-migro], depart, intrans., remove (permanently), emigrate
ēminus [ex-manus], adv., at a distance, at long range
ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ex-mitto], trans., let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl. — Pass., or with reflex., rush out
emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus, trans., buy, purchase
ēnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus [ex-nascor], dep., intrans., spring out, grow out
ēnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of enascor
ēnim, conj., for, but, now, for in fact: neque enim, for that matter even . . . not (but neque enim . . . neque is simply for neither . . . nor)
ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-numero], trans., count out, enumerate, relate
ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-nuntio], trans., report, disclose, reveal
eō, īre, īī, ītūrus, irr., intrans., go, pass, march, advance, proceed
eō, n. abl., see is
eō [old dat. of is], adv., thither, there, to that place
eōdem, adv., to the same place, in the same place
ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj., saddled, caparisoned: equites (riding on saddles)
ephippium, -ī, n., horsecloth (with cushions), saddle (less complete than ours)
epistula, -ae, f., letter
Eporōdorix, -īgis, m.: 1. A nobleman of the Hāeduī (vii, chap. 63).
— 2. Perhaps a different Hāeduī chief (vii, chap. 67)
eques, -ītis [equus], m., horseman, rider. — Plur., cavalry. — Esp. (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, who were next in rank to the senate). So also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class)
equester, -tris, -tre [eques], adj., of knights, of cavalry
equitātus, -ūs [eques], m., cavalry
equus, -ī, m., horse
ērēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of erigo
ēreptus, -a, -um, p.p. of eripio
ergā, prep. with acc., toward
Ēridanus, -ī, m., a river
ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [ex-rego], trans., set up straight, raise up, arouse, encourage. — ērēctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., high, upright
ēripīō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [ex-rapio], trans., snatch away, deprive, take from, rescue: se eripere ne, save one’s self from doing a thing
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., wander, stray; be mistaken
error — excidō

error, -öris [erro], error, mistake, delusion
erumpō, -rumpere, -rüpi, -ruptus [ex-rumpo], trans. and intrans., cause to burst out; burst out, make a sally
eruptīō, -onis [erumpō], f., a breaking out, sortie, rush
essedārius, -ī [essedum], m., chariot fighter
essedum, -ī, n., chariot (of Gaulish pattern; used in war especially by the Britons)
Esuvīi, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe in northwestern Gaul
et, conj., and: et . . . et, both . . . and
etiam, adv., also, even, even now, yet: quin etiam, nay more
etiamtum [etiam-tum], adv., even then
Etrūria, -ae, f., a country of western Italy
etsī, conj., even if, although, though
Eumenēs, -is, m., king of Pergamum (in Asia Minor), 197–159 B.C.
ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus [ex-vado, go], intrans., go forth, escape
ēvello, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus [ex-vello, pluck], trans., pull out, pluck out
ēvenīō, -venire, -věnī, -ventūrus [ex-venio], intrans., come out, turn out, happen
ēventus, -ūs [evenio], m., result, issue, fate, success
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-voco], trans., call out, call forth, summon.—ēvocātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj. and noun, reënlisted veteran
ēvolō, -äre, -āvī, -ātūrus [ex-volo, fly], intrans., fly out, rush out
ex (ē), prep. with abl., out of, from; in consequence of, according to: una ex parte, on one side; ex itinere, on the march (starting from it); ex vinculis, in chains (doing something from them); so, ex equis, on horseback.—In composition, out, from, off, completely, up, after, un-
exāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of exigō
exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-agito, freq. of ago, drive], trans., harass, persecute
exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [examen, tongue of a balance], trans., weigh
exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-animus], trans., deprive of breath, kill.—exanimātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., out of breath, exhausted
exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārī, -ārsus, intrans., be inflamed, be provoked, rage
exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, trans., hear distinctly
excedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intrans., go out, withdraw, retire
excello, -cellere, -cellui, -celsus, trans. and intrans., surpass, excel
excidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ex-caedo], trans., cut out, cut off, break down (gates)
**exciō — expiō**

**exciō, -cīre, -cīvī, -cītus, trans.** call out, summon

**excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ex-capio], trans.** take up, receive; follow, come after; **vada** (meet, be exposed to, of ships)

**excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.** rouse, stimulate; raise (towers), kindle (fire)

**excito, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.** rouse, stimulate; raise (towers), kindle (fire)

**excludo, -cludere, -clusi, -clusus [ex-claudo], trans.** shut out, cut off

**excogito, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.** think out, invent

**excubitor, -ōris [excubo], m.** sentinel

**excubō, -cubāre, -cubui, -cubitūrus, intrans.** lie outside; stand guard

**excursio, -onis [ex-curro, run], f.** sally, sortie, rush

**excrucio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.** torture, torment

**excusō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.** excuse, exculpate

**exemplum, -ī, n.** precedent, example

**exeo, -ire, -ii, -itūrus, irr., intrans.** go forth, go out, emigrate

**exercēo, -ercère, -ercui, -ercitus [ex-arceo, drive off], trans.** train, practice, exercise; rouse, exasperate; enforce (a law)

**exercitātiō, -onis [exerceo], f.** practice, exercise

**exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exerceo], trans.** train, practice. — **exercitātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.** trained

**exercitus, -ūs [exerceo], m.** army

**exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausi, -haustus, trans.** drain off; carry off (earth); wear out, exhaust

**exigo, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [ex-ago], trans.** pass, finish: **aestas exacta erat** (was ended)

**exiguē [exiguus], adv.,** scantily, meagerly, barely

**exiguitās, -ātis [exiguus], f.** scantiness, meagerness

**exiguus, -a, -um, adj.,** narrow, scanty, small, meager

**eximius, -a, -um [ex-emo, take], adj.** exceptional, remarkable; very high (opinio)

**existimātiō, -onis [existimo], f.** estimate, opinion

**existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-aestimo], trans. and intrans.** estimate, believe, think, suppose, judge, deem, imagine

**exitus, -ūs [cf. exeo], m.** outlet, exit; end, last part; result, turn (of fortune), outcome

**expediō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus [ex-pes], trans.** set free, free, extricate; arrange, station (of troops). — **expeditus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.** quick, active, light-armed (of troops), in light marching order

**expeditiō, -onis [expedio], f.** expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached)

**expellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, trans.** drive out; dispel

**experior, -periri, -pertus, dep., trans.** experience, try: **fortunam** (risk, try)

**expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.** expiate: **incommodum** (wipe out, make good, retrieve)
expleō — faber

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, trans.,
fill out, fill up, complete
explicō, -plicāre, -plicāvī (-plicui),
-plicātus (-plicitus), trans.,
explain, describe, state
explōrātor, -ōris, m., scout
explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
investigate, search, examine.— ex-
plōrātus, -a, -um, p.p., assured,
certain: explorata victoria, being
assured of victory; habereomnia
explorata, know certainly
expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,
trans., place out, set forth: exer-
citum (disembark, also draw up,
array)
exportō, -āre, -avi, -ātus, trans.,
carry out, carry away
exposco, -poscere, -poscī, no p.p.,
trans., demand
exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus
[ex-premo], trans., force out; raise
up
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
take (by storm), capture
expulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of expello
exquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisitus
[ex-quaero], trans., search out, ask
for
exquisītus, -a, -um, p.p. of exquiros
exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep.,
trans., follow out, follow up:
ius (enforce, execute)
exitītō, -silire, -silui [ex-salio], in-
trans., leap out
exsistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stītūrūs, in-
trans., stand out, rise up, come
out: malacia (ensue)
exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.
and intrans., look out for, wait
to see, expect, anticipate; wait
exstīnctus, -a, -um, p.p. of exting-
guo
exstīnguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnc-
tus, trans., extinguish, destroy
exsto, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrus, in-
trans., stand out
exstrīctus, -a, -um, p.p. of exstruō
exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus,
trans., heap up, build up
exsul, -ulis, m., exile
exter, -era, -erum, adj., outer, out-
side.— extrēmus, -a, -um, superl.,
farthest, extreme, last: extremi,
as noun, the rear; ad extremum,
till the last, at last
extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, no
p.p., trans. and intrans., fear
greatly, dread
extrā, adv., and prep. with acc.,
outside, out of
extrāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of extraho
extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus,
trans., drag out, draw out
extrēmus, see exter
extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus,
trans., shut out (by dikes)
exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, trans., strip
off: armis exutis, deprived of
arms
exūrō, -ūre, -ussī, -ūstus, trans.,
burn up
faber, -brī [facio] (m. of faber, skill-
ful), mechanic, engineer (in an
army)
Fabius — felicitas

Fabius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name.

facilis, -e [facio], adj., easy, convenient. — facile, n. as adv., easily, conveniently

facinus, -oris [facio], n., deed; misdeed, crime

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, trans. and intrans., make, do, act. — Used in a great variety of senses as in English: coniurationem (form); sementes (do planting); iter (march, travel, proceed). — So in pass., happen, result, occur: non sine causa fit, it is not without reason; fit ut, the result is that. — factum, -ī, n. of p.p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, act, thing done, etc. — fīō, fierī, as pass. in all senses

factīō, -onis [facio], f., party, faction

factum, -ī, see facio

facultās, -ātis [facilis], f., ease, facility; chance, opportunity; means, resources, supply

fāgus, -ī, f., beech (tree or wood)

Falernus, -a, -um, adj., Falernian (of the Falernus ager in Campania)

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, trans. and intrans., deceive: spes aliquidem (disappoint). — falsus, -a, -um, p.p., deceived; false, unfounded

falx, falcis, f., sickle, pruning hook.
— Also, hook (of similar form for demolishing walls)

fāma, -ae, f., speech, common talk, reputation; rumor, story

famēs, -is (abl. famē, fīth decl.), f., hunger, starvation: famēm tolerare, keep from starving, appease hunger

familia, -ae, f., collection of attendants, household; kin, kin and their dependents

familiāris, -e [familia], adj., of the household: res (estate, property).
— Esp. as noun, friend

fās, n., indecl., right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (permitted, allowed)

fastigētē, adv., sloping

fastigium, -ī [fastigo], n., elevation, slope, descent

fastīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring to a point. — Esp., fastīgātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., inclined, sloping

fātum, -ī [for, speak], n., fate, lot, destiny

faucēs, -ium, f. plur., throat, jaws

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, intrans., favor, be favorable to

fāx, facis, f., torch, firebrand, fire

fefellisse, see fallo

fēlicitās, -ātis [felix, lucky], f., good fortune, good luck
félíciter — Flamininus

félíciter [félix, lucky], adv., luckily, successfully

fémína, -ae, f., woman

femur, -inis or -oris, n., thigh

férax, -ācis [ferō], adj., fertile

férē, adv., almost, about; usually, for the most part.—With negatives, hardly

fērō, ferre, tuli, latus, irr. trans. and intrans., bear, carry, endure, tolerate: magno dolore ferre, be much pained, take it very hard; moleste (graviter) ferre, be annoyed at, take amiss, be indignant at.—Also, assert, declare, say

ferramentum, -ī [ferrum], n., tool (of iron), implement

ferrāria, -ae [ferrum], f., iron mine

ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum], adj., of iron, iron (made of iron)

ferrum, -ī, n., iron, steel, sword

fertilis, -e [ferō], adj., fertile, fruitful

fertilitās, -ātis [fertilis], f., fertility, productiveness

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, ferocious

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [ferveo-facio], trans., heat, heat red-hot

ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī, no p. p., intrans., glow, be hot, be red-hot

fibula, -ae [figo, fasten], f., clasp, buckle

fīctilis, -e [fingo], adj., made of clay, earthen

fīctus, -a, -um, p. p. of fingo

fidēlis, -e [fides], adj., faithful

fidēs, -ei, f., promise, pledge: fidem facere, give assurance.—Also, good faith, fidelity, pledge, promise; belief; Caesaris fidem sequi (come under, surrender one’s self to); in fidem se permettere (venire), place themselves under the protection of etc.

fidūcia, -ae [fidus, trusty], f., confidence, reliance

figūra, -ae, f., shape, form

filia, -ae, f., daughter

filius, -i, m., son

fīngō, fingere, finxī, fictus, trans., mold; invent, contrive.—fictus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj.; n. plur. as noun, fictions

finīō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus [finis], trans., set bounds to, limit, measure

finis, -is, m., limit, end: quem ad finem, as far as.—Plur., territories, country

fīnítimus, -a, -um [finis], adj., neighboring, adjacent.—Masc. plur. as noun, neighbors

fiō, pass. of facio

fīrmīter [firmus], adv., steadily, firmly

fīrmītūdō, -inis [firmus], f., solidity, strength (of resistance)

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, firm, steady

fistūca, -ae, f., pile driver

Flaccus, -ī, m., a Roman family name

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., demand earnestly

Flamininus, -ī, m., T. Quinctius Flamininus, Roman envoy sent
Flaminius — frumentarius

to demand the surrender of Hannibal

Flaminius, -ī, m., C. Flaminius
Nepos, consul, commander in the battle of Lake Trasimenus

flamma, -ae, f., flame, fire

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, trans., bend, turn

flectus, -ūs [fleō], m., weeping, lamentation

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, intrans., blow

flōrens, -entis [pres. p. of floreo, bloom], adj., blooming.—Fig., flourishing, prosperous, influential

fluctus, -ūs [fluo], m., wave

flūmen, -inis [fluo], n., river

flūō, fluere, flūxi, fluxus, intrans., flow

foederātus, -a, -um [foedus], adj., allied, federated

foedus, -eris, n., treaty, league, compact

fōns, fontis, m., fountain, spring

fore, for futūrum esse; see sum

forem, for essem; see sum

foris, -is, f., door

fōrma, -ae, f., shape, form, appearance; beauty

fors, fortis, f., chance. — forte, abl. as adv., by chance, as it happened

forte, see fors

fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave, courageous

fortiter [fortis], adv., bravely, stoutly, undauntedly

fortitūdō, -inis [fortis], f., bravery, prowess

fortuitō, adv., by chance, accidentally

fortūna, -ae, f., luck, fortune, chance, fate, lot (one’s fortune), chances (belli), success (good or bad); plur., fortunes, property

forum, -ī, n., market place

fossa, -ae [fodio, dig], f., ditch, trench

fovea, -ae, f., pitfall

frāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of frango

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, trans., break, wreck; break down, crush

frāter, -tris, m., brother

frāternus, -a, -um [frater], adj., of a brother, fraternal

fraus, fraudis, f., deceit, fraud

Fregellae, -ārum, f., a town of Latium

fremitus, -ūs [fremo, roar], m., murmur, confused noise, roar

frequēns, -entis, adj., crowded, numerous, in great numbers

frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying on

frigidus, -a, -um [frigeo, be cold], adj., cold

frīgus, -oris [frigeo, be cold], n., cold.—Plur., cold seasons

frōns, frontis, f., front, brow: a fronte, in front

fructuōsus, -a, -um [fructus], adj., fruitful

fructus, -ūs, m. [fruor], crops, income, profit, returns

frumentarius, -a, -um [frumentum], adj., of grain: loca (fruitful in grain); res (grain supply, provisions)
frumentatio — Gallus

fungor, fungī, fūctus, dep., intrans., perform, discharge (abl.)
fūnis, -is, m., rope
fūnus, -eris, n., death, funeral
Furius, -ī, m., L. Furius, consul in 196 B.C.
furor, -ōris, m., madness, frenzy, fury
fūrtum, -ī [fur, thief], n., theft, a theft
fūsīlis, -e [fundo], molten, liquid, soft
fūsus, p.p. of fundo
futūrus, see sum

Gabali, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic people, dependents of the Arverni
Gabinius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
gaesum, -ī, n., javelin
Gāius, -ī, m., Caius, a Roman praenomen
Galba, -ae, m., a Gallic and Roman family name. — Esp., P. Sulpicius Galba, consul in 200 B.C.
galea, -ae, f., helmet (usually of leather)

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Rubicon, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Gauls, Gallic
gallina, -ae, f., hen

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic.
— As noun, a Gaul, the Gauls. — Also, a Roman family name
Garumna, -ae, m., a river of southwestern Gaul, now the Garonne
Garumni, -orum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees
Gatēs, -ium, m. plur., a Gallic people of Aquitania
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus, semi-dep., intrans., be delighted, rejoice
gaudium, -i [gaudeo], n., joy
gavisus, -a, -urn, /./. of gaudeo
Geminus, -ī, m., C. Servilius Geminus, consul in 217 B.C.; killed in the battle of Cannae, 216 B.C.
Genāva, -ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva
generātim [genus], adv., by tribes
gēns, gentis, f., tribe, clan, people
genus, -eris, n., race, family (stock); kind, sort, class.—Also, abstractly, kind, character, nature, method (pugnae)
Gergovia, -ae, f., a city in the land of the Arverni, in southeastern Gaul
Germānia, -ae, f., Germany, bounded by the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea
Germānicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Germans, German.—As noun, a German
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, trans., carry on, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business).—Pass., be done, go on (of operations): res gestae, exploits, operations, campaign; gesta, events
gestus, -a, -um, p.p. of gero
gignō, gignere, genuī, genus [gens], trans., bring forth, produce.—In pass., spring up, arise
gladius, -ī, m., sword
glāns, glandis, f., nut, acorn.—Also, ball, missile
Glauce, -ēs (acc., -ēn), f., daughter of Creon king of Corinth
glēba, -ae, f., clod, lump
glōria, -ae, f., fame, glory
glōrior, -āri, -ātus [gloria], dep., intrans., glory in, boast of (abl.)
Gnaeus, -ī, m., a Roman prænomen
Gobannitiō, -onis, m., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix
Gorgobina, -ae, f., a city in the territory of the Haudui
Gortyñiō, -ōrum, m., Gortynians (of Cortyna, a city in Crete)
Gracchus, -ī, m., Ti. Sempronius Gracchus, consul in 215 and 213 B.C.
Graecia, -ae, f., Greece
Graecus, -a, -um, adj., of the Greeks, Greek.—As noun, a Greek
Grāioceli, -orum, in., plur., a people of the Alps
Grāius, -a, -um, adj., Graian (referring to a section of the Alps).—Adj. or noun, Grecian
grandis, -e, adj., large, of great size
grātia, -ae, f., gratitude, good will, favor. Hence, influence, friendship.—Esp.: gratias agere, thank; gratias habere, be grateful; gratias (gratiam) referre, pay off an obligation; gratiam inire, secure
the gratitude of any one. — With gen., for the sake of, on account of
gratulatio, -onis, f., congratulation, rejoicing
gratulor, -āri, -ātus [gratus], dep., intrans., congratulate
gratus, -a, -um, adj., agreeable, pleasing, grateful
gravis, -e, adj., heavy. — Fig., serious, severe, hard: gravioris aetatis, of more advanced years; si gravius quid acciderit, if anything serious should occur; ne quid gravius statueret, that he would not pass any very severe judgment
gravitas, -ātis [gravis], f., weight. — Fig., importance, power
graviter [gravis], adv., heavily, with great weight, with force. — Fig., severely, seriously: graviter ferre, take to heart
gravō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [gravis], trans., make heavy. — Pass. as dep., be unwilling, object
gubernātor, -ōris [guberno, steer], m., pilot, helmsman
gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., taste, eat

dwell, live
hac, adv., by this route, this way, here
Hadrūmētum, -i, n., a town on the coast of Africa
Haeduus, -a, -um, adj., of the Hædui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — Masc. as noun, a Hæduan, the Hædui
haesitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [freq. of haereo, stick], intrans., get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh)
Hamilcar, -aris, m., father of Hannibal
Hannibal, -alis, m., the great Carthaginian, one of the greatest of generals
Harpýiae, -ārum, f. plur., Harpies (loathsome creatures, half women, half birds)
Harūdēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe originally from Jutland
haud, adv., not at all, not
Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj., Helvetian (see Helvetius)
Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). — Masc. plur. as noun, the Helvetii
Helvii, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province
herba, -ae, f., plant
Hercules — hūmānus

Herculēs, -is, m., mythical Greek hero, son of Jupiter
Hercynius, -a, -um, adj., Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany)
hērēditās, -ātis [heres, heir], f., inheritance
Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland
hībernus, -a, -um [hiems], adj., of winter, winter (as adj.) — Neut. plur. (sc. castra), winter quarters
hic, haec, hoc, dem. adj. and pron., this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing). — Referring to things mentioned before (but with more emphasis than is): hic pagus unus, this one canton. — hōc, n. abl., used adverbially, in this respect, on this account, by so much. — Often hic . . . ille, the one . . . the other, this (near by) . . . the other (farther off)
hīc, adv., here, in this place, there (of a place just mentioned)
ihiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [hiems], intrans., pass the winter
hiems, -emis, f., winter
hinc, adv., from here, hence
Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain
Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., Spanish
hodiē [hoc die], adv., to-day, now
homō, -inis, c., human being, man (including woman)
honestus, -a, -um [honor], adj., respected, honorable
honor (honōs), -ōris, m., honor, respect: honoris causā, out of respect. — Also, honorable position
honōrificus, -a, -um [honor-facio], adj., honorable
hōra, -ae, f., hour (of the day). — The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always one twelfth of the solar day
horreō, horrēre, horrui, no p. p., trans. and intrans., bristle; shudder at, dread
horribilis, -e [horreo], adj., terrible, dreadful
horridus, -a, -um [horreo], adj., bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful
hortor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans., encourage, urge on, address
hospes, -itis, m., host. — Also, guest, stranger. Hence, guest-friend
hospitium, -i [hospes], n., the relation of host (or of guest or of guest-friend). Hence, friendship, hospitality
hostia, -ae, f., animal for sacrifice, victim
hostis, -is, c., stranger, enemy (of the state)
hūc, adv., hither, here (in sense of hither), to this (place etc.; cf. eo, adv.): huc accedebant, to these were added
huiusmodi, see hic and modus
hūmānitās, -ātis, f., civilization, cultivation, refinement
hūmānus, -a, -um [homo], adj., civilized, cultivated, refined
Latin-English Vocabulary

**humilis** — *imitor*  

**humilis**, -e [*humus*, ground], *adj.*, low, shallow. — *Fig.*, humble, poor  

**humilitas**, -atis [*humilis*], *f.*, lowness, shallowness. — *Fig.*, humble position, insignificance  

**Hylas**, -ae, *m.*, one of the Argonauts  

**i, Roman numeral for one**  

**iacēō, -ēre, -uī, -iūrus, intrans.*, lie, lie dead. — iacentes, *pres. p. as noun*, the slain  

**iacō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *trans.*, throw, hurl, cast: aggerem (throw up)**  

**iacērē, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*freg. of iacīo*], *trans.*, toss, bandy about (of talk), discuss, boast  

**iacērā, -ae [*iacīo*], *f.*, loss, sacrifice (of men in war)**  

**iacētus, -a, -um, *p. p. of iacio**  

**iacēulum, -i [*iacīo*], *n.*, javelin**  

**iām, *adv.*, now, by this time, at last, already, at length**  

**iānua, -ae, *f.*, door**  

**Iāsōn, -onis, *m.*, leader of the Argonauts**  

**ibi, *adv.*, there**  

**iccius, -ī, *m.*, a nobleman of the Remi**  

**ictus, -ūs [*ico, strike*], *m.*, stroke**  

**Īd., abbr. for Iūdus**  

**īdem, eadem, idem [*is-dem*], *dem. adj. and pron.*, the same; the same thing (things), the same**  

**identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly, again and again**  

**īdōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted**  

**Īdūs, -uum, *f. plur.*, the Ides (a day of the month falling originally at the full moon; in Cæsar’s time, on the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and on the 13th of the other months)**  

**igitur, *adv.*, therefore, then**  

**ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. — *Plur.*, camp fires**  

**ignōminia, -ae [*in-, not, (g)nomen, name*], *f.*, disgrace**  

**ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ignarūs, ignorant*], *trans.*, not know, be ignorant of. — *Pass.*, be unobserved**  

**ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtus [*in-, not, (g)nosco, know*], *intrans.*, overlook, pardon**  

**ignōtus, -a, -um [*in-, not, (g)notus, known*], *adj.*, unknown, strange**  

**ille, -a, -ud, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that (of something remote; cf. hic); as *pronoun* (opposed to some other emphatic word), he, she, it, they: hic ... ille, this ... that, the other; the latter ... the former**  

**illic, *adv.*, there (more remote; opposed to hic, near by), in that place**  

**illō, *adv.*, thither, there (in sense of thither), that way**  

**Illyricum, -i, *n.*, Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace)**  

**imber, imbris, *m.*, rain storm, rain**  

**imitor, -āri, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, imitate, copy**
immānis — impulsus

immānis, -e, adj., monstrous, huge, enormous

immittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, trans., let in, let down (into), insert, throw (upon), send against, let loose

immolō, -are, -avi, -ātus [in-mola, meal], trans., sacrifice

immortalis, -e, adj., immortal

immunitas, -atis [immunis, free], f., freedom (from public burdens)

impedimentum, -ī [impedio], n., hindrance: esse impedimento, to hinder. — Esp. in plur., baggage, baggage train (including the beasts of burden)

impedio, -ire, -ivi, -itus [in-pes], trans., entangle, hamper, interfere with, hinder, embarrass, impede

impeleō, -pellere, -pullī, -pulsus, trans., drive on. — Fig., instigate, incite, impel

impendeo, -ere, intrans., overhang

impensus, -a, -um, adj., expensive, very high (of price)

imperātor, -ōris [impero], m., commander (in chief), general

imperātum, -ī [n. p. p. of impero], n., an order, a command

imperitus, -a, -um [in-peritus], adj., unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in

imperium, -ī [impero], n., command, control, supremacy, power (military), rule (both sing. and plur.); order, command

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., demand; order (in military sense), rule, command

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., accomplish (anything by a request), succeed in (obtaining), obtain (a request)

impetus, -ūs, m., rush, attack, violence, fury: impetum facere, charge

impius,-a,-um, adj., impious (offending divine law)

implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., implore, beseech

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans., place on, mount (men on horses), put (on board)

importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., import

impositus, -a, -um, p.p. of impono

impraesentiārum [inpraesentia rerum], adv., for the present

imprimīs or in primīs, adv., among the first, especially, particularly

improbus, -a, -um, adj., bad, wicked

imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj., unforeseen: improviso (de improviso), on a sudden, unexpectedly

imprūdēns, -entis [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., not expecting, incautious, off one’s guard

imprūdenter [imprudens], adv., unwisely, imprudently

imprūdentia, -ae [imprudens], f., ignorance, want of forethought

impugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., attack, invade, charge

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of impello
impune — incredibilis

impune [impunis, unpunished], adv., with impunity
impunitas, -atis [impunis, unpunished], f., freedom from punishment, impunity
imus, see inferus
in-, prefix, with the force of a negative; cf. English un-
in, prep. (a) With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on, into, on, within, to, against, among. — Of time, for, to, till. — Often where English has a different conception, in, on: abdere in silvas, hide in the woods; in eos exempla edere (visit on). — In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, in, according to, with, to: in eam sententiam, to this purport. — Esp.: in Caesar-rem incidit, happened to meet Cæsar; in fugam conicere, put to flight

(b) With abl., of rest, in, on, among, within. — Often, in the case of, in respect to: in eo, in his case, in regard to him. — Esp.: in ancoris, at anchor; in primis, among the first, especially

(c) In composition, as adv., in, on, toward, against
inannis, -e, adj., empty, vain, idle
incautè, adv., incautiously, carelessly
incendium, -i [incendo], n., a burning, fire
incendó, -cendere, -cendi, -census, trans., set fire to, burn. — Fig., rouse, excite

incensus, -a, -um, p.p. of incendo
inceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of incipio
incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy
incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [in-cado], intrans., fall upon, fall into; fall in with, meet, occur, happen
incidō, -cidere, -cīdē, -cēsus [in-caedo], trans., cut into
incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [in-capio], trans. and intrans., begin, undertake
incisus, -a, -um, p.p. of incidō
incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., set in motion, urge on, drive, impel, excite. — incitātus, -'a, -um, p.p., angered, spurred on: incitato equo, at full gallop; incitato cursu, at full speed. — Esp., se aestus incitare (rush in)
inclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus [in-cludo], trans., shut in, imprison
incognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown: res (that I know nothing about)
incola, -ae, c., inhabitant
incolō, -colere, -coliū, no p.p., trans. and intrans., inhabit, live, dwell
incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, unhurt, safe
incommodē, adv., inconveniently, unfortunately
incommodus, -a, -um, adj., inconvenient, unfortunate. — incommodum, -i, n. as noun, disadvantage, misfortune, defeat, disaster, loss
incredibilis, -e [in-, not, credo], adj., marvelous, extraordinary, incredible
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>increpitō</em></td>
<td>-are, -āvi, -ātus, trans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>incursīō</em></td>
<td>-onis [ incurro, run at], f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>incūsīō</em></td>
<td>-are, -āvi, -ātus, trans., upbraid, rebuke, chide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>inde</em></td>
<td>adv., from there, thence, from the place (which etc.); then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indicium</em></td>
<td>-ī, n., information; indication, sign: per indicium, through an informer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indicō</em></td>
<td>-dīcere, -dīxi, -dīctus, trans., order, proclaim, appoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indigeō</em></td>
<td>-ere, -uī, intrans., need, want, be dependent on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indignitās</em></td>
<td>-ātis [ indignus ], f., unworthiness, disgrace, outrage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indignor</em></td>
<td>-āri, -ātus [ indignus ], dep., intrans., be indignant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indignus</em></td>
<td>-a, -um, adj., unworthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indiligens</em></td>
<td>-entis, adj., negligent, careless, heedless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indiligenter</em></td>
<td>[ indiligens ], adv., carelessly, negligently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indiligentia</em></td>
<td>-ae [ indiligens ], f., carelessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indūcō</em></td>
<td>-ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., draw on. Hence, cover: scuta pellibus. — Also, lead on. Hence, induce, impel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indulgentia</em></td>
<td>-ae [ indulgeo ], f., indulgence, favor, clemency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indulgeo</em></td>
<td>-dulgère, -dulsi, no p.p., intrans., favor, treat with indulgence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>induō</em></td>
<td>-duere, -duī, -dūtus, trans., put on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>indūtiae</em></td>
<td>-ārum, f. plur., truce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Indūtiomārus</em></td>
<td>-i, m., a chief of the Treveri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ineō</em></td>
<td>-ire, -iī, -itus, irr., trans., enter on, go into, adopt, make, begin, gain, secure. — Esp.: inita aestate, at the beginning of summer; inire rationem, make a calculation, adopt a scheme; inire consilium, form a plan; inire numerum, enumerate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>inermis</em></td>
<td>-e [ in- , not, arma ], adj., unarmed, defenseless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>inermis</em></td>
<td>-e [ in- , not, arma ], adj., unarmed, defenseless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>inertiō</em></td>
<td>-entis [ in- , not, ars ], adj., cowardly, sluggish, unmanly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>infāmia</em></td>
<td>-ae [ infamis, infamous ], f., dishonor, disgrace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>infandus</em></td>
<td>-a, -um [ in-for, speak ], adj., unspeakable, awful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>infāns</em></td>
<td>-antis [ in- , not, fans, pres. p. of for, speak ], c., child, infant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>infactus</em></td>
<td>-a, -um [ in- , not, factus ], adj., not done. — Esp.: re infecta, without success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>infelīx</em></td>
<td>-īcis, adj., unfortunate, unhappy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>inferō</em></td>
<td>-ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., bring in, import, put on: bellum (make); signa (advance, make a charge); terrorem (inspire). — Fig., cause, inflict, commit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>inferus</em></td>
<td>-a, -um, adj., low: inferior pars, the lower end; ab inferiore parte, down below, of a river. — infimus (imus), -a, -um, superl., lowest, the bottom of: infimus collis, the foot of the hill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>inficiō</em></td>
<td>-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [ in-facio ], trans., stain, infect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Latin-English Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>infimus</td>
<td>unbounded, countless, endless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitus</td>
<td>adj., unbounded, countless, endless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infirmitas</td>
<td>feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infirmus</td>
<td>adj., weak, feeble: naves (unseaworthy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inflrmitas</td>
<td>feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infimus, -a, -um</td>
<td>adj., weak, feeble: naves (unseaworthy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inflexus, -a, -um</td>
<td>p.p. of inflecto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>influo</td>
<td>flow into, empty into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infra, adv., and prep. with acc.</td>
<td>below, farther down, less than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infundiO</td>
<td>-fundere, -fundi, -fusus, trans., pour in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingens, -entis</td>
<td>adj., huge, enormous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingredior</td>
<td>-gredi, -gressus [in-gradior, step], dep., trans. and intrans., march into, enter, march in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inicijo</td>
<td>-icere, -iicci, -iectus [in-iacio], trans., throw into, throw upon; place in, put on, embark; inspire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inicius, -a, -um</td>
<td>p.p. of inicio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inimicitia, -ae</td>
<td>[inimicus], f., enmity, hostility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inimicusus</td>
<td>-a, -um [in-, not, amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile. — Masc. as noun, enemy (personal or not in war)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iniquitas</td>
<td>-atis [iniquus], f., inequality; unfairness, unfavorableness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iniquus, -a, -um</td>
<td>[in-, not, aequus], adj., uneven; unjust. unfavorable, unfair. — Comp., iniquior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initium</td>
<td>-i [ineo], n., a beginning, the first of: initium capere, begin, start; initium facere transeundi, start to cross, begin crossing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initus, p.p. of ineo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iniuria, -ae</td>
<td>[in-, not, ius], f., injustice, outrage, wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iniussi, adv.,</td>
<td>without orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inlatus, p.p. of infero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inligo, -are, -avi, -atus, trans.</td>
<td>bind on, attach, fasten to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inludo, -ludere, -lusi, -lusus, trans.</td>
<td>make sport of, deceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inlüstris, -e, adj., distinguished, famous: inlustriore loco natus, of distinguished ancestry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>innascor</td>
<td>-nasci, -natus, dep., intrans., be inspired, be excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>innitor, -niti, -nixus or -nisus, dep., intrans., lean upon. — innixus, -a, -um, p.p., leaning on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>innocens, -entis</td>
<td>[in-, not, nocens, pres. p. of noceo], adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>innocentia, -ae</td>
<td>[innocens], f., blamelessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inopia, -ae [inops, needy], f., scarcity, privation, want of supplies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inopinans, -antis, adj., unsuspecting, not suspecting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquam, inquis, inquit, etc., defective, intrans., say</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inrideo, -ridère, -risi, -risus, trans. and intrans., ridicule, laugh at</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inridiculē, adv., without humor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inrumpō, -rumpere, -rupi, -ruptus, trans. and intrans., break in, break into, storm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
inruptio — intego

inruptio, -onis [inrumpo], f., attack, raid, incursion
insciens, -entis, adj., not knowing, unaware
inscientia, -ae [insciens], f., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with
inscius, -a, -um, adj., not knowing, unaware
insecutus, -a, -um, p.p. of insequeor
insequor, -sequi, -secutus, dep., trans., follow up, pursue
insero, -serere, -serui, -sertus, trans., insert, stick in
insidia, -arum [insideo, sit in], f. plur., ambush, treachery, plot: per insidiias, with deception, treacherously
insidior, -arī, -ātus [insidiae], dep., intrans., lie in wait, make treacherous attacks, plot against
insignis, -e [in-signum], adj., marked, memorable. — insignis, -is, n. as noun, signal, sign, decoration (of soldiers)
insiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultus [in-salio, leap], trans., leap on
insimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., charge, accuse
insinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-sinus, bosom], trans. and intrans., slip in. — With reflex., slip in
insistō, -sistere, -stīti, no p.p., trans. and intrans., stand on, stand, keep one's footing. — Fig., adopt (rationem pugnae)
insolenter, adv., insultingly, insolently, arrogantly
inspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., look on: inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes
instabilis, -e, adj., unsteady
instar, n., indecl., in the likeness of (with gen.)
instituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [in-statuo], trans., set up, set in order: opus (finish). — Also, provide, procure, get ready. — Also, set about, undertake, adopt (a plan etc.), begin, set on foot. — So, teach, train, habituate
institūtum, -i [n. p.p. of instituo], n., habit, practice, custom
instō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātūrus, intrans., be at hand, press on; threaten, impend, menace
instrūctus, -a, -um, p.p. of instruo
instrumentum, -i [instruo], n., furniture, equipment, tools and stores
instruō, -STRUere, -strūxi, -strūctus, trans., build, fit up, fit out, set in order, arrange, draw up (of troops)
insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj., trained
insuētus, -a, -um, adj., unaccustomed, unused
insula, -ae, f., island
insuper, adv., on the top, from above
integer, -gra, -grum [in-, not, tango, touch], adj., untouched, unwearied, fresh; as noun, fresh troops. — Esp., not entered upon (of business); re integra, before anything was done
integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, trans., cover over (turres coriis)
intellegō — interpōnō

intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [inter- lego, gather], trans., learn, know, find out, discover, understand

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, trans., stretch, strain. — Esp. of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed: animis intentis in ear, with their minds absorbed in this business

inter, prep. with acc., between, among: inter aciem, in the line. — Of time, within, for. — Often in a reciprocal sense: inter se, with (to, from, etc.) each other or one another; cohortati inter se, encouraging each other or one another; similarly, obsides inter eos dandos curavit, arranged for their exchanging hostages

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intrans., come between, go between, lie between, pass (of time): ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere, exist between them and the Hædui

interceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of intercipio

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [inter-capio], trans. interrupt, cut off

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [inter-claudo], trans., cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off)

interdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus, trans., forbid, prohibit: Gallia Romanis interdicere, exclude the Romans from Gaul

interdiū, adv., in the daytime

interdum, adv., for a time, sometimes

interēa, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime

interēō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, irr., intrans., perish, die, be killed

interficīō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [inter-facio], trans., kill, put to death

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [inter- iacio], trans., throw in (between).

interagō, -agere, -agī, -agitus, trans., come between, go between, lie between, pass (of time): spatio interiecto (intervening; i.e. at a . . . distance, after an . . . interval)

interim, adv., meanwhile

interior, -ius, adj., inner, interior, more intimate. — Masc. plur. as noun, interiores, men in the interior, men in the town

interitus, -ūs [intereō], m., destruction, death

intermittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, trans. and intrans., leave off, discontinue, stop: neque diem neque noctem (not cease day or night); spatiis intermissis, leaving intervals; nocte intermissa, a night intervening

interneciō, -onis [cf. neco], f., extermination, annihilation

interpellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., interrupt, interfere with

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans., put in between, interpose, allege: nulla suspicione belli interposita, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder
interpres — ipse

**interpres, -pretis, c., mediator, interpreter**

**interpreter, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans.**

interpret, explain

**interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.**

question, ask

**interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, trans.**

break down (of bridges), destroy

**interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus, trans.**

tear down

**intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr., intrans.**

be between, be in, be engaged in: non amplius interest, there is an interval of not more than etc. — Esp., impers., it is of importance, it concerns

**intervallum, -ī, n.**

distance apart, interval

**interveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intrans.**

come up, arrive

**interventus, -ūs [interveniō], m., intervention, help**

**intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, trans.**

weave in, weave together

**intra, prep. with acc., into, within, inside**

**intritus, -a, -um, adj.**

unw earied

**intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.**

enter, go in

**intrōducō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans.**

lead in, bring in, march in (troops)

**introeo, -tre, -ti, -itus [intro, within, eo, go], trans. and intrans.**

come in, enter

**introitus, -ūs [introeo], m., entrance, approach**

**intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, trans.**

send in

**intrōrsus [intro, within, versus, p.p. of verto], adv.**

inside, within

**intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus, dep., trans.**

look at

**intuli, see infero**

**inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj.**

unaccustomed

**inūtilis, -e, adj.**

of no use, un serviceable

**inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, trans.**

find, learn

**inventor, -ōris, m., discoverer**

**inveterāscō, -āscere, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans.**

become established, become fixed. — Perf., be an old campaigner (in)

**invictus, -a, -um, adj.**

unconquerable, invincible

**invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, intrans.**

envy

**invidia, -ae, f., hatred, envy, unpopularity**

**inviolātus, -a, -um, adj.**

inviol ate; sacred

**invisus, -a, -um, p.p. of invideo**

**invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.**

invite, request, attract

**invītus, -a, -um, adj.**

unwilling. — Often rendered as adv., against one’s will

**ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., himself etc. (as opp. to some one else; cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject), he etc. (emph.), he himself etc.: ipsi inter se (reciprocal), each other**
**Latin—English Vocabulary**

**Ira — iūstus**

**Ira, -ae, f., anger**

**Irācundus, -a, -um [irā], adj., of a violent temper**

**Is, ea, id, dem. adj. and pron., this (less emph. than hic), that (unemphatic), he, she, it:** quae pars ea etc., the part which etc.—eo, n. abl., so much; eo magis, all the more; eo gravius, so much the more severely

**Iste, ista, istud, dem. adj. and pron., that of yours, that**

**Ita, adv., so, in this way, thus, as follows: ut ... ita, as ... so, though ... yet, both ... and; ita ... ut, in proportion as, as; non ita, not so very, not very**

**Italia, -ae, f., Italy (in Cæsar’s time not including the great plain at the north of the peninsula)**

**Itaque, adv., and so, accordingly, therefore**

**Item, adv., in like manner, so also, in the same way**

**Iter, itineris [eo, go], n., road, march, journey: in itinere, on the road; iter facere, march, travel; magnis itineribus, by forced marches**

**Iterum, adv., a second time, again:** semel atque iterum, again and again

**Iuba, -ae, f., mane**

**Iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, trans., order, command, bid**

**Iūdicium, -ī [iūdēx, judge], n., judgment (judicial), trial, opinion; iūdicio, by design; often translated by court**

**Iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [iūdēx, judge], trans., decide, judge, think, consider; declare, proclaim:** nihil gravius de civitate (think nothing harsh about etc.)

**Iugum, -ī [iungō], n., yoke: sub iugum mittere was an insult inflicted on a conquered army.—Also, ridge**

**Iūmentum, -ī [iugum], n., beast of burden**

**Iunctūra, -ae [iungō], f., a joining, joint:** quantum iunctura distabat, as far as the distance apart (of two things joined)

**Iungō, iungere, iünxi, iūctus, trans., join, unite, attach together**

**Iūnior, comp. of iuvenis**

**Iūnius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name**

**Iuppiter, Iovis, m., the god of light and the heavens, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans**

**Iūra, -ae, m., a chain of mountains in Gaul, running northeast from the Rhone to the Rhine**

**Iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., swear, take an oath**

**Iūs, iūris, n., justice, right, law:** iūs iūrandum, oath

**Iussū, abl. used as adv., by order, by command**

**Iūstitia, -ae [iustus], f., justice**

**Iūstus, -a, -um, adj., just, lawful. — Also, complete, perfect, regular:** populi Romani iustissimum est imperium, the Romans are best entitled to dominion
iuvencus, -ī [iuvenis], m., young bull

iuvenis, -e, adj., young.—As noun, a young man (not over forty-five), a youth: iuniores, the younger soldiers

iuventūs, -ūtis [iuvenis], f., the youth, the young men

iuvō, iuvāie, iūvī, iūtus, trans., help, aid, assist

īuxtā, adv., and prep. with acc., next, near, close by

Kal., abbr. for Kalendae and its cases

Kalendae, -ārum, f. plur., the Calends (the first day of the Roman month)

Karthāginīensis, -e [Karthago], adj., Carthaginian. — Masc. as noun, Carthaginian

Karthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city of Phœnician colonists on the northern coast of Africa

L, Roman numeral for fifty

L., abbr. for Lucius

Labō, -onis, see Fabius

Laberius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

Labiēnus, -ī, m., a Roman family name.—Esp., T. Atius Labienus, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Pompey

labor, -ōris, m., toil, exertion; trouble, hardship

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [labor], intrans., toil, exert one’s self; be hard pressed, labor

labrum, -i, n., lip; edge, rim

lac, lactis, n., milk

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, adj., Lacedaemonian.—Masc. as noun, Lacedaemonian

lacessō, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessitus, trans., attack, harass, assail, skirmish with

lacrima, -ae, f., tear

lacus, -ūs, m., reservoir, lake

laedō, laedere, laesi, laesus, trans., wound. — Fig., break (fidem)

laetitia, -ae [laetus], f., joy, gladness

laetus, -a, -um, adj., glad

languidē, adv., feebly

languidus, -a, -um, adj., spiritless: languidior, with less spirit

languor, -ōris, m., weariness

lapis, -idis, m., stone

laqueus, -i, m., slip noose

largior, -īri, -ītus [largus, abundant], dep., trans. and intrans., give lavishly; give bribes, give presents

largiter, adv., lavishly: largiter posse, possess powerful influence

largitio, -onis [largior], f., lavish giving, bribery

lassitūdō, -inis [lassus, weary], f., weariness, exhaustion

lātē, adv., widely: latus, too far; longe lātēque, far and wide

lateō, latēre, latuī, no p. p., intrans., be concealed, pass unnoticed

lātitūdō, -inis [latus, broad], f., breadth, width
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latobrigī</td>
<td>-ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latōnīs</td>
<td>m.</td>
<td>robber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latrōcinium</td>
<td>-i [latro]</td>
<td>n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latus</td>
<td>lateris, n.</td>
<td>side (of the body). — Also, generally, side, flank, end (of a hill)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lātus</td>
<td>-a, -um, p. p. of fero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lātus</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj.</td>
<td>broad, wide, extensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudō</td>
<td>-āre, -āvī, -ātus [laus], trans.</td>
<td>praise, commend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laus</td>
<td>laudis, f.</td>
<td>praise, credit, glory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lavō</td>
<td>-āre (-ere), -āvī (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), trans.</td>
<td>wash. — In pass. used reflexively, bathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laxō</td>
<td>-āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.</td>
<td>loosen, open out, extend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lectica</td>
<td>-ae, f.</td>
<td>portable chair, sedan, litter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēgātiō</td>
<td>-ōnis [lēgo, dispatch], f.</td>
<td>embassy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēgātus</td>
<td>-ī[lēgo, dispatch], m.</td>
<td>ambassador, envoy. — Also, lieutenant, legatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legiō</td>
<td>-ōnis [lego, gather], f.</td>
<td>legion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legionārius</td>
<td>-a, -um [lego], adj.</td>
<td>of a legion, legionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemannus</td>
<td>-ī, m. (with lacus either expressed or implied)</td>
<td>the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemovīcēs</td>
<td>-um, m. plur.</td>
<td>a tribe in central Gaul west of the Arverni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēnis</td>
<td>-e, adj.</td>
<td>gentle, smooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēnitās</td>
<td>-ātis [lenis], f.</td>
<td>gentleness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēniter</td>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>gently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lepontīī</td>
<td>-ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>a tribe of the Alps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leuci</td>
<td>-ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>a tribe of eastern Gaul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levis</td>
<td>-e, adj.</td>
<td>light, unimportant; inconstant, fickle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levītās</td>
<td>-ātis [levis], f.</td>
<td>lightness, fickleness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.</td>
<td>lighten; relieve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lex</td>
<td>legis, f.</td>
<td>statute, law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lexovīi</td>
<td>-ōrum, m. plur.</td>
<td>a tribe of northwestern Gaul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libenter</td>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>willingly, gladly, with pleasure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber</td>
<td>-brī, m.</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber</td>
<td>-era, -erum, adj.</td>
<td>free, unrestricted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberālitās</td>
<td>-ātis [liberalis, generous], f.</td>
<td>generosity, liberality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberāliter</td>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>generously, kindly (respondit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberē</td>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>freely, boldly, without restraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberī, -ōrum [liber, free], m. plur.</td>
<td>children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [liber], free</td>
<td>set free, relieve (from some bond): liberare se, secure one’s freedom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libertās</td>
<td>-ātis [liber], f.</td>
<td>liberty, freedom, independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liceor</td>
<td>licēri, licitus, dep., intrans.</td>
<td>bid (at an auction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), intrans., impers.</td>
<td>be allowed: id sibi etc. (that they be allowed); per te licet, you allow, you do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Liger — magicus

not hinder; petere ut liceat, to ask permission
Liger, -eris, m., a river of western Gaul, now the Loire
Ligurés, -um, m., Ligurians, a people of northwestern Italy
línea, -ae, f., line
Lígones, -um, m. plur., a tribe of eastern Gaul
lingua, -ae, f., tongue. Hence, language
lingula, -ae [lingua], f., tongue of land
linter, -tris, f., skiff, boat
Líscus, -i, m., chief magistrate of the Hœdui in the year 58 B.C.
Litaviccus, -i, m., a Hœduan chief
littera, -ae, f., letter (of the alphabet).
— Plur., writing, alphabet, letter (written message), records, literature
litus, -oris, n., shore, beach
locus, -i, m. (sing.), n. (generally plur.), place, spot, region (esp. in plur.), point, ground (in military language); rank; position, character; opportunity; situation, condition: obsidium loco, as hostages
locútus, -a, -um, p.p. of loquor
longē, adv., far, absent, distant: non longius mille (tríduo) (not more than); longe nobilissimus (far, altogether)
longinquus, -a, -um [longus], adj., long (of time and space), distant, long-continued
longitūdō, -inis [longus], f., length
longurius, -i, m., long pole
longus, -a, -um, adj., long (of space and time), tedious: in longiorem diem, to a more distant day
Longus, -i, m., Ti. Sempronius Longus, consul defeated by Hannibal at the Trebia
loquor, loquī, locútus, dep., trans. and intrans., speak, talk, converse
lōrica, -ae, f., coat of mail. — Also, breastwork, rampart
Lúcānī, -ōrum, m., Lucanians, a people of southern Italy
Lūcānius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name
Lūcius, -i, m., a Roman prænomen
Lucterius, -i, m., a Gallic name
Lugotorix, -īgis, m., a British prince
lūmen, -inis, n., light
lūna, -ae, f., moon. Also personified, Luna, the Moon
lūx, lūcis [cf. luceo, shine], f., light, daylight: prima luce, orta luce, or luce, at daybreak
lūxuria, -ae, f., luxury, riotous living
M, Roman numeral for thousand
M., abbr. for Mārcus
māceria, -ae, f., wall of soft clay, wall
māchinātiō, -onis [machina, machine], f., contrivance, engine, derrick
Magetobriga, -ae, f., a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls
magicus, -a, -um, adj., magic
magis, *adv.*, more, rather: *eo* magis, so much the more, all the more.
— *maxime*, *superl.*
magister, *-trī, m.*, master, commander
magistrātus, -ūs [magister], *m.*, magistracy (office of a magistrate).—
Concretely, magistrate
magnificus, -a, -um [magnus-facio], *adj.*, splendid, grand, magnificent
magnitūdō, -inis [magnus], *f.*, greatness, size, stature, force (venti), severity (supplici)
magnopere, see opus
magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), large, extensive, important, serious (motus), heavy (portoria), high (aestus), loud (vox): magni habere, to value highly, make much account of; magni interest, it is of great importance. — *maior*, *comp. in usual sense.*— Also, *maior* (with or without *natu*), elder, older. — *In plur. as noun*, elders, ancestors. — *maximus*, *superl.*, largest, very large, greatest, very great, *etc.*: maximis itineribus, by forced marches
Māgō, -ōnis, *m.*, brother of Hannibal
maiestās, -ātis [māior], *f.*, majesty, dignity
maior, see magnus
malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm
male, *adv.*, badly, ill, unsuccessfully.— *peius*, *comp.*— *pessime*, *superl.*

maleficium, -ī [male-facio], *n.*, harm, mischief
mālō, mālle, mālui, *no* *p. p.* [mage (for magis), volo], *irr., trans. and intrans.*, wish more, wish rather, prefer
malum, -ī [malus], *n.*, evil, mischief, misfortune
malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad.— *peior*, *comp.*— *pessimus*, *superl.*
mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast, beam (upright)
mandātum, -ī [n. *p. p.* of mando], *n.*, command, instructions; message
mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, instruct, instruct, commit: se fugae (take to)
Mandubii, *m. plur.*, a tribe north of the Hāedu
Mandubraccius, -ī, *m.*, a Briton
māne, *adv.*, in the morning
manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *intrans.*, stay, remain, stay at home.— *Fig.*, continue, stand by (in *eo quod*)
manipulus, -ī [manus], *m.*, handful; maniple (two centuries, a third of a cohort)
Mānlius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.— *Esp.*, C. Manlius Volso, consul in 189 B.C.
mānsī, see manēō
mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *trans.*, tame. — *Pass.*, mānsuēfiō, be tamed
mānsuētūdō, -inis [mansuetus, tame], *f.*, gentle disposition, kindness
manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand: in manus nostris, within hand’s reach,
fighting us hand to hand; manum conserere, engage battle.—Also, company, band, troop

Marcellus, -i, m., M. Claudius Marcellus, (1) a famous Roman general; (2) a consul in 183 B.C.

Marcomanni, -orum, m. plur., a German tribe in the army of Ariovistus

Mārcus, -i, m., a Roman prænomen

mare, -is, n., the sea: nostrum (i.e. the Mediterrenean); mare Oceanum, the ocean

maritimus, -a, -um [mare], adj., of the sea, maritime, naval, on the sea: aestus (in the sea); ora (the seashore)

Marius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., C. Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (101 B.C.) and freed Rome from the fear of a northern invasion

Mārs, Mārtis, m., Mars, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards worshiped as the god of war.—See aequus

mās, maris, adj., male.—Noun, a male

matara, -ae, f., javelin (used by the Gauls)

māter, -tris, f., mother, matron: mater familias (old gen. of familia), matron

māteria, -ae, f., wood, timber

mātrimōniun, -ī [mater], n., marriage, matrimony: in matrimonium ducere, marry

Matrona, -ae, m., a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, now the Marne

mātūrē, adv., early, speedily

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [maturus], trans. and intrans., hasten, make haste

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., early.—Also, ripe, mature

maximē, adv., most, very, in the highest degree, especially: ea maxime ratione, in that way more than any other; maxime confidebat, had the greatest confidence

maximus, see magnus

Maximus, -i, m., a Roman family name

Mēdēa, -ae, f., daughter of Æetes king of Colchis

medicina, -ae, f., art of healing, medicine

mediocris, -cre [medius], adj., middling, moderate: spatium (a little, no great); non mediocris, no little, no small degree of

mediocrriter, adv., moderately: non mediocrriter, in no small degree

Mediomatrici, -orum, m. plur., a tribe of northeastern Gaul

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [medius-terra], adj., inland

medius, -a, -um, adj., the middle of (as noun in English), mid-: in colle medio (half way up); locus medius
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Meldi — mille

utriusque (half way between); de media nox, about midnight

Meldi, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Gaul between the Seine and the Marne

melior, comp. of bonus

membrum, -i, n., limb, part of the body

memini, -isse, defective, trans. and intrans., remember

memor, -oris, adj., mindful

memoria, -ae [memor], f., memory, recollection: memoria tenere, remember; nostrā memoriaē, within our memory, in our own time

Menapii, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgian tribe near the mouth of the Rhine

mēns, mentis, f., intellect, mind, state of mind, feeling: mentēs animosēque, minds and hearts

mēnsis, -is, m., month

mēnsūra, -ae [metior], f., measure:
ex aqua mensurae, measures by the water clock

mentō, -ōnis, f., mention

mercātor, -ōris [mercor, trade], m., trader

mercātūra, -ae [mercor, trade], f., traffic, trade

mercēs, -ēdis [merx, merchandise], f., hire, pay, wages

Mercurius, -ī, m., Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc.

mereor, -ērī, -itus (also mereo, active), dep., trans. and intrans., win, deserve, gain.—Also (from earning, pay), serve: mererī de, serve the interests of, render service to

meridiānus, -a, -um [meridies], adj., of midday

meridiēs, -ēī [medius-dies], m., midday, noon.—Also, the south

meritum, -ī [n. p.p. of mereor], n., merit, service, kindness: quo minus merito, the less by the fault

meritus, -a, -um [p.p. of mereor], adj., deserved, fit, proper

Messāla, -ae, m., a Roman family name

mētior, mētīri, mēnsus, dep., trans., measure out, deal out, distribute

Mētius, -ī, m., a Gaul, in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus

metō, metere, messui, messus, trans., cut, reap, gather

metus, -ūs, m., fear

meus, -a, -um, possessive pronominal adj., my, mine

mihi, see ego

mīles, -itis, m., soldier, legionary soldier (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service)

mīlitāris, -e [miles], adj., of the soldiers, military: res militaris, warfare

militia, -ae [miles], f., military service

mille, indecl. adj. (rarely noun in sing.), with plur. milia, -ium, neuter noun, thousand: mille passus or mille passuum (cf. G. § 20. note), thousand paces, mile
Minerva — morbus

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts

minimē, adv., least, very little, not at all

minimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of parvus, smallest, least. — Neut. as noun and adv., the least, least, very little

minor, -us, adj., comp. of parvus, smaller, less: dimidio minor, half as large. — Neut. as noun and adv., less, not much, not so: quo minus, that . . . not

Minucius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. M. Minucius Rufus, master of horse under Fabius, routed by Hannibal. — 2. Q. Minucius, consul 193 B.C.

minuō,-uere,-uī,-ūtus [minus], trans. and intrans., lessen, weaken, diminish: aestus (ebb)

mīrāculum, -ī, n., wonder, miracle

mīrōr,-ārī,-ātus [mirus], dep. and intrans., wonder, wonder at.

— mīrātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, surprised

mīrus,-a,-um, adj., surprising, marvelous, wonderful

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor

miscericordia, -ae [miscercors, merciful], f., mercy, pity, clemency

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [miser], dep., trans., bewail, complain of

missus, -a, -um, p. p. of mitto

missus, -ūs, m., a sending: missu Caesarius, under Caesār’s orders mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, trans., send, dispatch, discharge, shoot: sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke; tragulam (throw)

mōbilis, -e [moveo], adj., easily moved, movable, fickle, hasty

mōbilitās, -ātis [mobilis], f., mobility, inconstancy, flickleness

mōbiliter, adv., easily, readily

mōderor, -ārī, -ātus [modus], dep., trans. and intrans., control, regulate, restrain

modo, adv., only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: non modo, not only

modus, -ī, m., measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, style, method: quem ad modum, how, just as, as

moenia, -iun [munio], n. plur., fortifications, walls of a city

mōlēs, -is, f., mass; dike, dam

molestē, adv., heavily, severely: molestē ferre, take it ill, be vexed at

molestia, -ae, f., annoyance, vexation

mōlīmentum, -ī [molior, strive], n., trouble, difficulty, exertion

molitus, -a, -um, p. p. of molo

mollis, -e, adj., soft; weak, feeble

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, trans., grind

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, trans., remind, warn, advise, urge, instruct

mōns, montis, m., mountain, height

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., point out, make known, show

mōnstrum, -ī, n., wonder, monster

mora, -ae, f., delay, grounds of delay

morātus, -a, -um, p. p. of moror

morbus, -ī, m., sickness, disease
mōrībus, see mōs
Morini, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae
morior, morī, mortuus [mors], dep., intrans., die
moror, -ārī, -ātus [mora], dep., trans. and intrans., retard, check, delay
mors, mortis, f., death: ipse sibi mortem conscivit, he committed suicide
mortuus, -a, -um, dead, p. p. of morior
mōs, mōris, m., custom, usage. — Plur., customs, habits, character
Mosa, -ae, m., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse
mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of moveo
mōtus, -ūs [moveo], m., movement, disturbance, uprising: celer atque instabilis (changes, of the passage of events in maritime warfare)
moveō, movère, mōvī, mōtus, trans., set in motion, move, remove: castra (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp)
mox, adv., soon
mulier, -eris, f., woman
multitūdō, -inis [multus], f., great number; the multitude, the common people
multō, see multus
multum, see multus
multus, -a, -um, adj., much, many: multo die, late in the day; ad multam noctem, till late at night. — multum, neut. as noun and adv., much. — Also, plur., multa, many things, much, a great deal. — Abl., multō, much, far: multo facilius.
— Comp., plūs, plūris, n. noun and adv.: plur., all genders, as adj., more, much, very; as noun, several, many. — Superl., plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very many, very much: quam plurimi, as many as possible; plurimum posse, have most power, be very strong or influential; plurimum valere, be strongest, have very great weight
mundus, -i, m., universe, world
mūnimentum, -i [munio], n., a fortification. — Plur., a defense
mūnī, -ire, -ivi, -itus, trans. and intrans., fortify; defend
mūnitiō, -onis [munio], f., a fortification, works, defenses
mūnus, -eris, n., duty: munus militiae, military service. — Also, gift, present
mūrālis, -e [murus], adj., of a wall, wall-: pila (heavy javelins for service in siege operations)
mūrus, -i, m., wall
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., change
Mūsia, -ae, f., a country of Asia Minor
nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nancisor
nam, conj., for
Namnēius, -ī, m., a Helvetic ambassador to Cæsar
Namnetēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of western Gaul
namque, conj., for (a little more emphatic than nam)
nanciscor, -iscī, nactus, dep., trans., find, get, obtain

Nantuātēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of Gaul, near the Lake of Geneva

Narbō, -onis, m., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, now Narbonne

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, dep., intrans., be born, arise, spring up, be raised (of beasts).—nātus, -ā, -um, p. p., sprung, born

Nasua, -ae, n., a leader of the Suebi

natalis, -e [natus], adj., of birth: dies natalis, birthday

nātīō, -ōnis [cf. nascor], f., race, tribe, clan

nātīvus, -a, -um [cf. nascor], adj., native, natural

nātō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., swim, float

nātūra, -ae [cf. nascor], f., nature, character

nātus, -ā, -um, p. p. of nascor

nātus, -ūs [cf. nascor], m., birth: maiores nati, elders

naufragium, -ī, n., shipwreck

nauta, -ae, m., sailor, boatman

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta], adj., of a sailor (or sailors), naval

nāvālis, -e [navis], adj., of ships, naval

nāvicula, -ae [navis], f., small vessel, skiff

nāvigātiō, -ōnis [navigo], f., voyage, traveling by sea

nāvigium, -ī [navis], n., vessel (a general term), boat

nāvīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [navis], intrans., sail

nāvis, -is, f., ship, vessel, boat:

oneraria (transport); longa (war galley)

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., do zealously: operam (do one's best)
-ne (enclitic), adv. and conj., not? (as a question, cf. nonne), whether, did (as a question in English), do, etc. — See also necne

nē, conj., lest, that . . . not, not to (do anything), from (doing anything), in order that . . . not, for fear that. — After verbs of fearing, that. — Also adv., ne . . . quidem, not even

eque, nec, see neque

necessārius, -a, -um [necessae], adj., necessary: tempus (critical). — Also, as noun, kinsman, close friend. — Abl. as adv., necessariō, necessarily, unavoidably

necessēs, indecl. adj., necessary, inevitable. — With est, one must

necessitās, -ātis [necessae], f., necessity, constraint, compulsion

necessitūdō, -inis [necessae], f., intimacy, close relations

necne [nec-ne], conj., or not (in double questions)

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., put to death, kill, murder

neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [neglego, gather], trans., disregard, neglect

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., say no, say . . . not, refuse

negōtor, -āri, -ātus [negotium], dep., intrans., do business
negotium, -i [nec-otium, ease], n., business, occupation, undertaking: quid negoti, what business? dare negotium alicui, employ one, give in charge to. — Less definitely, matter, thing. — Also, difficulty, trouble

Nemetēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine

nēmō [ne-homo], c., no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one

nēquāquam, adv., in no way, by no means

neque (nec), conj., and not, and yet ... not, nor: neque ... neque, neither ... nor; neque enim, for ... not

nēquiquam, adv., to no purpose, in vain

Nervicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Nervii, Nervian

Nervius, -a, -um, adj., Nervian. — Masc. plur., the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul

nervus, -ī, m., sinew, muscle. — Fig., in plur., strength, vigor

nesciō, -scire, -scivī, not know: nescio quis, I know not who

neu, see neve

neuter, -tra, -trum [ne-uter], adj. and pron., neither. — Plur., neither party, neither side

nēve (neu), conj., and not, nor

nex, necis, f., violent death, execution

nihil, see nihilum

nihilum, -ī [ne-hilum, trifle] (also indecl., nihil), n., nothing: nihil reliqui, nothing left; nihil respondere, make no answer. — nihilō, abl. as adv., none, no; nihilō minus, none the less; nihilō setius, nevertheless. — nihil, acc. as adv., not at all: non nihil, somewhat

 nisi, conj., unless, except

Nitiobrogēs, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania

nītor, nīti, nīxus or nīsus, dep., intrans., struggle, strive: niti insidiis (rely upon)
nix, nivis, f., snow

nōbilis, -e [cf. nosco], adj., famous, noble, well-born. — Plur. as noun, the nobles

nōbilitās, -ātis [nobilis], f., the nobility, the nobles

nōcēns, see noceo

nōceō, nōcēre, nōcui, no p.p., intrans., injure, harm, harass. — nōcēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., guilty

noctū, adv., by night

nocturnus, -a, -um [nox], adj., nightly, nocturnal, by night

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, no p.p. [ne-volo], irr., intrans., be unwilling, wish not to: noli, nolite, do not (with infin.)
nōmen, -inis [cf. nosco], n., name; account: nomine dotis (on account of, as); suo nomine, on his own account; nomine obsidum, under pretense of hostages

nōminātim [nomen], adv., by name (individually)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nōminō</td>
<td>name, mention, call by name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn, adv.,</td>
<td>not: non est dubium, there is no doubt; nōn nihil, something, somewhat; nōn nūllus, some; nōn numquam, sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnāgintā,</td>
<td>indecl. num. adj., ninety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōndum, adv.,</td>
<td>not yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnne</td>
<td>interrog. adv., suggesting an affirmative answer, not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>num. adj., ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nōrēia, -ae,</td>
<td>f., a city of the Norici</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nōricus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>adj., of the Norici, Norican</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs, see ego</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus,</td>
<td>trans., learn, become acquainted with. In perf. tenses, know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōtus, p. p. of nosco</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novem, indecl. num. adj.,</td>
<td>nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noviodūnum, -ī,</td>
<td>n.: 1. A town of the Bituriges, on the Loire; 2. A town of the Suessiones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novitās, -ātis [novus],</td>
<td>f., novelty, strangeness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>adj., new, fresh; strange: res novae, a change of government, revolution; novissimus, -a, -um, superl., latest, last: agmen (the rear)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōx, noctis,</td>
<td>f., night: prima noce, in the early part of the night; multa noce, late at night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noxia, -ae [cf. noceo],</td>
<td>f., crime, guilt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus,</td>
<td>intrans., marry (of the woman)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nudus],</td>
<td>trans., lay bare, expose, strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūdus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>adj., naked, bare, unprotected, exposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūllus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>adj., not any, no. As noun, no one. nōn nūllus, some; plur. as noun, some, some persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num, interrog. adv., suggesting a neg. answer; no corresponding word in English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūmen, -inis,</td>
<td>n., will, power; divinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numerus, -ī,</td>
<td>m., number: in hostium numero habuit (in the place of, as, etc., euphemism for slaughtered)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numida, -ae,</td>
<td>m., Numidian, of northern Africa. The Numidians were famous cavalrymen under Hannibal; they were used in the Roman army also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numquam, adv.,</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nunc, adv.,</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nuntius],</td>
<td>trans., bring word, report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntius, -ī,</td>
<td>m., messenger. Hence, news: nuntium mittere, send word; per eorum nuntios (agents)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūper, adv.,</td>
<td>lately, recently, not long ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūptum, see nūbō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūtus, -ūs [nuo, nod],</td>
<td>m., a nod; ad nutum, at one's command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nympha, -ae,</td>
<td>f., nymph</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ob, prep. with acc., against; on account of, for: ob eam rem, for this reason, on this account.—In composition, towards, to, against, over</td>
<td>ob, prep., with, against; on account of, for: ob eam rem, for this reason, on this account.—In composition, towards, to, against, over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obaerātus, -a, -um [ob-aes], adj.</td>
<td>bound in debt.—As noun, debtor, servant for debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obducō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus, trans.</td>
<td>draw over, overcast; lead towards, lead against: fossam (throw out, in a military sense, carry along)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obiciō, -icere, -īeci, -iectus [ob-iacio], trans.</td>
<td>throw against, throw in the way, present, set up, expose.—obiectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., lying opposite, lying in the way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obitus, -ūs [obeo], m.</td>
<td>destruction, annihilation, death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oblātus, -a, -um, p.p. of offero</td>
<td>hostage, hostager, hostage for debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oblinō, -linere, -lēvi, -litus, trans.</td>
<td>smear, daub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obliquē, adv.</td>
<td>obliquely, slanting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obliviscor, -līvisci, -litus, dep., trans. and intrans., forget</td>
<td>oblivious, adj., oblivious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obscūrō, -scūrāre, -scūrāvī, -scūrātus, trans.</td>
<td>darken, cover, hide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obscurus, -a, -um, adj.</td>
<td>dark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-sacrum, sacred thing], trans., entreat, beg</td>
<td>beg, beggar, beggarly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.</td>
<td>pay attention to: iudicium (follow, comply with); diem natalem (keep, celebrate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obses, -idis [cf. obsideo], c.</td>
<td>hostage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsessus, -a, -um, p.p. of obsideo</td>
<td>possessed, possession, possessed of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [ob-sedeo, sit], trans., blockade, beset, guard</td>
<td>blockade, besiege, beset, blockade: obsidione liberare (from besetting enemies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsidiō, -ōnis [cf. obsideo], f.</td>
<td>siege, blockade: obsidione liberare (from besetting enemies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.</td>
<td>seal up, seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obstrictus, -a, -um, p.p. of obstringo</td>
<td>blocked, blockaded, blockaded: obsidione liberare (from besetting enemies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxi, -strictus, trans.</td>
<td>bind: habere obstrictas (under obligation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans.</td>
<td>comply with, submit to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obtestor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans.</td>
<td>implore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obtineō, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus [ob-teneo], trans., retain, maintain, occupy, possess; gain, acquire, obtain</td>
<td>-tent, adj., -tent, substantive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obtectātiō, -ōnis, f.</td>
<td>detraction, disparagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obtuli, perf. of offero</td>
<td>hostage, hostage for debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intrans.</td>
<td>meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obviam, adv.</td>
<td>in the way of, to meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occāsiō, -ōnis [ob-cado], f.</td>
<td>opportunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occāsus, -ūs [ob-cado], m.</td>
<td>a falling, a setting (of the sun): solis (the sunset, the west)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisus [ob-caedo], trans.</td>
<td>kill, massacre: occisi, the slain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [occultus], trans.</td>
<td>conceal, hide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occultus, -a, -um [p.p. of occulto, hide], adj.</td>
<td>concealed: in occulto, in secret</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Note:** The above text is a compressed list of Latin vocabulary with English translations, formatted for readability. Each entry includes the Latin term, its English translation, and some notes on its usage and meaning. The entries cover a variety of grammatical cases and parts of speech, including verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs. The vocabulary terms are organized alphabetically by the first word.
occupātiō, -Ōnis [occupo], f., occupation, business affairs: occupationes tantularum rerum, engagement in such trifling matters

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., seize, take possession of: regna (usurp). — occupātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., engaged, employed, busy

occupārō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus [obcurrō, run], intrans., meet, come on, find: eo (run, to meet an enemy)

Oceanus, -ī, m., ocean

Ocelum, -l, 11., a town in Cisalpine Gaul

octāvus, -a, -um [octo], num. adj., eighth

octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., eight hundred

octō, indecl. num. adj., eight

Octōdūrus, -ī, m., a town of the Veragri

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj., eighty

oculus, -ī, m., the eye

ōdi, ōdisse, defective, trans., hate, detest

ōdium, -ī [cf. odiō], n., hatred

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum [obfendo, strike], trans. and intrans., dash against, hurt: animum (hurt the feelings)

offēnsīō, -ōnis [offendo], f., offense: sine offensione animi, without wounding one’s feelings

offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus [obferō], irr., trans., throw in one’s way, offer: se morti (expose one’s self to); quos sibi oblātos (placed in his power)

officium, -ī, n., service, performance of a duty; duty, allegiance, obligation: discedere ab officio, fail in one’s duty

ōlim, adv., once on a time, once

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [obmitto], trans., let go by, disregard: consilium (leave untried, neglect)

omnīō [omnis], adv., altogether, entirely, in general, on the whole, only, utterly, in all, at all, whatever (with negatives)

omnis, -e, adj., all, the whole of. — In sing., every: omni tempore, on all occasions, always. — In plur., a short expression for all others

onerārius, -a, -um [onus], adj., for burdens: naves (transports)

onus, -eris, n., burden, weight. — Esp., tanta onera navium, ships of such weight

opera, -ae [opus], f., work, pains, attention: operam navare, do one’s best; operam dare, devote one’s self, exert one’s self, take pains

operiō, -perire, -peruī, -pertus, trans., cover

opiniō, -ōnis [opinor, think], f., notion, expectation, idea, reputation: celerius omni opinione, quicker than any one would suppose; opinione praecepere, anticipate

opertet, -ēre, -uit, intrans., impers., it ought, it is best: poenam sequi (the punishment was to follow); frumentum metiri (he ought etc.)
oppidānus — Orpheus

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], adj., of a town. — Plur. as noun, townspeople
oppidum, -i, n., stronghold, town
oppleō,-plēre,-plēvi,-plētus [ob-pleo], trans., fill up, fill
oppōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus [ob-pono], trans., oppose
opportūnē, adv., opportunely
opportūnitās, -ātis [opportunus], f., timeliness, fitness, good luck, favorable chance
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., opportune, advantageous, lucky
oppositus, -a, -um [p.p. of oppono], adj., opposed, opposite
oppressus, -a, -um, p.p. of opprimo
opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ob-premo], trans., overwhelm, crush, overpower, surprise
oppugnātiō, -ōnis [oppugno], f., siege, attack
oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob-pugno], trans., attack, lay siege to
† ops, opis (sing. in gen., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), f., help, aid. — Plur., resources, means, strength, wealth
optātus, -a, -um [p.p. of opto, wish], adj., desired
optimē, superl. of bene
optimus, -a, -um, superl. of bonus
opus, n., indecl., need, necessity: si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, if he needed anything of Caesar; si quid opus facto, if anything needs to be done
opus, operis, n., work, labor. — In a military sense, a work, works, fortifications. — In abl., magnopere, very much, very, greatly; quanto opere, so much, so, so earnestly; often as one word, magnopere, tantopere
ōra, -ae, f., shore, coast
ōrāculum, -ī [oro], n., oracle
ōrātiō, -ōnis [oro], f., speech, address, discourse, argument
ōrātor, -ōris [oro], m., speaker, ambassador, envoy
orbis, -is, m., circle: orbis terrarum, the circle of lands, the whole world
ōrdō, -inis, m., series, row, tier, rank (of soldiers), grade (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), arrangement, order
Orgetorix, -igis, m., a nobleman of the Helvetii
orior, orīri, ortus, dep., intrans., arise, spring up. — Fig., begin, start, arise, have its source. — oriēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., rising: sol (sunrise, the east)
ōrnāmentum, -ī [orno], n., an adornment; an honor
ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., adorn, equip, furnish. — Fig., honor. — ōrnātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., furnished, well-equipped, honored
ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., speak; pray, entreat
Orpheus, -ī, m., a Thracian bard, whose lyre could charm beasts and move rocks and trees
ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of orior
öös, öris, n., the mouth, the face
Osismī, -ōrum, m. plur., a coast tribe of northwestern Gaul

ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus
[obs- (= ob-)tendo], trans., present, show, point out, make known, state, declare

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., display, exhibit
ōtium, -ī, n., repose, inactivity, quiet
ōvum, -ī, n., egg

P., abbr. for Publius
pābulātiō, -ōnis [pabulor], f., a foraging, getting fodder
pābulum, -ī [cf. pasco, feed], n., fodder
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pax], trans., pacify, subdue.—pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., peaceable, quiet
Padus, -ī, m., the Po, the principal river of Italy
paene, adv., almost, nearly
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, trans., impers., it repents (one), one repents, one regrets
pāgus, -ī, m., district, canton
palam, adv., openly, publicly: palam facere, make known
palma, -ae, f., the palm (of the hand); palm tree
palūs, -ūdis, f., marsh
Pamphylīus, -a, -um, adj., Pamphylian, name of the Mediterranean sea near Pamphylia, a region of southwestern Asia Minor
pandō, pandere, pandī, passus or pānsus, trans., spread out: passis manibus, with outstretched hands; passis capīllis, with disheveled hair
pār, paris, adj., equal, alike, like
parātus, see paro
parcē [parco], adv., sparingly, frugally
parcō, parcere, pepērcī, parsūrus, intrans., spare.—Esp., save alive: parcendo, by economy, by frugality
parēns, -entis [pario, bear], c., parent
pāreō, pārēre, pārui, no p. p., intrans., appear; obey, submit to
parīō, parere, peperi, partus, trans., bring forth; produce, obtain
Parisīi, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the district where Paris is now
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., procure, provide, prepare, arrange.—parātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ready, prepared
pars, partis, f., portion, part, share.—Often of position or direction merely, side, direction, region: una ex parte, on one side; ex utraque parte, on both sides.—Fig., qua ex parte, in which respect; omnibus partibus, in all respects.—Esp., tres partes, three quarters (three parts out of four); ex parte, in part.—partim, old acc. as adv., in part, partly, some... others
partim, see pars
partior, -iri, -itus, dep., trans., divide
partus, -a, -um, p. p. of pario
parum, *adv.*, not much, not sufficiently: *parum* diligenter, too carelessly

parvulus, -*a*, -*um* [*parvus*], *adj.*, small, slight, insignificant

parvus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, small, slight, little

passim, *adv.*, in all directions, all about

passus, -*a*, -*um*, *p.p.* of pando; also *p.p.* of patior

passus, -*ús*, *m.*, step, pace *(the distance from the point where the heel leaves the ground to the point where the same heel again touches the ground; really a double step, about five Roman feet): mille passūs or mille passuum, a Roman mile, five thousand feet

patefaciō, -*facere*, -*fēcī*, -*factus* [*pateo-facio*], *trans.*, lay open, open, open up

patefiō, -*fieri*, *pass.* of patefacio

pateō, -*ère*, -*uī*, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, be extended, lie open, spread, extend. — *patēns*, -*entis*, *pres.* *p.* as *adj.*, open, exposed

pater, -*tris*, *m.*, father. — *Plur.*, ancestors

paterinus, -*a*, -*um* [*pater*], *adj.*, paternal, of a father

patior, patī, passus, *dep.*, *trans.*, suffer, endure, allow, permit

patria, -*ae* [*pater*], *f.*, native land, country

patrius, -*a*, -*um* [*pater*], *adj.*, ancestral, of one’s fathers

patruus, -*i* [*pater*], *m.*, uncle *(on the father’s side)*

paucitās, -*ātis* [*paucus*], *f.*, small number

paucus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, *almost always in plur.*, few, some few: paucis (pauca) respondit *(in a few words, briefly)*

paulātim, *adv.*, little by little, a little at a time, gradually

paulisper, *adv.*, a little while

paulō [*abl.* of paulus, little], *adv.*, a little, slightly

paululum [*paulum*], *adv.*, a very little

paulum, -*i* [*neut.* of paulus, little], *a* little. — As *adv.*, a little, a short distance, somewhat

Paulus, -*i*, *m.*, see Aemilius

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace, favor

peccō, -*are*, -*āvī*, -*ātūrus*, *intrans.*, go wrong, commit a fault

pecūnia, -*ae* [*pecus*], *f.*, money, wealth

pecus, -*oris*, *n.*, cattle *(esp. sheep and goats)*: pecore vivere *(flesh of cattle).* — *Plur.*, cattle, flocks and herds

pedālis, -*e* [*pēs*], *adj.*, a foot thick

pedes, -*itis* [*pes*], *m.*, footman, foot soldier. — *Collectively*, the infantry

pedester, -*tris*, -*tre* [*pedes*], *adj.*, of infantry; of persons on foot.

pediae (the foot, the infantry)

pedītātus, -*ūs* [*pedes*], *m.*, foot, infantry

Pedius, -*i*, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, Q. Pedius, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul
peior — Pergamēnus

peior, see malus
peius, see male
Peliās, -ae, m., a mythical king of Thessaly, uncle of Jason
pellis, -is, f., hide, skin (either on or off the body of an animal):
sub pellibus, in tents, i.e. in the field
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, trans., beat, drive, defeat, repulse
pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnīus, trans., weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out.—Also, pay (a penalty); suffer (punishment)
penitus, adv., far within: penitus ad extremos fines (clear to, all the way to)
per, prep. with acc., through, along, over, among, by means of.—In composition, as adv., very, exceedingly, completely
perāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of perago
percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [per-capio], trans., acquire, learn, feel, hear
percontātiō, -onis [percontor, inquire], f., inquiry
percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursus, trans. and intrans., run along
percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [per-quatio, shake], trans., hit, strike, run through
perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no p.p., trans., learn thoroughly, get by heart
perdītus, -a, -um, p.p. of perdo
perdō, perdere, perdīdī, perdītus, trans., destroy, ruin.—perdītus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., ruined, desperate, abandoned
perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, trans., lead through, lead along, conduct, bring over, make (fossam).—Fig., prolong, win over, bring
pereō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, irr., intrans., perish, be killed
perequitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., ride through (or around)
perexiguus, -a, -um, adj., very small
perfacilis, -e, adj., very easy
perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., and intrans., run
percutio, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [per-quatio, shake], trans., hit, strike, run through
perdisco, -discere, -didici, -dicius, no p.p., trans., learn thoroughly, get by heart
perfugia, -ae [perfidus, treacherous], f., treachery, faithlessness
perfectūs, -a, -um, adj., perfect, complete
perfectūrō, -fugere, -fugi, -fractus [per-frango], trans., break through
perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus [per-frango], trans., break through
perfunctor, -fungi, -fūcūrūs, dep., intrans., fulfill, perform (abl.)
Pergamēnus, -a, -um, adj., of Pergamum (a city of northwestern Asia Minor).—Masc. as noun, Pergamene
pergo — perturbātiō

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus [perrego], intrans., keep on, advance
pericīlītor, ārī, ātūs [pericūlum], dep., trans. and intrans., try, make
tests to ascertain, be put in peril
pericūlōsus, -a, -um [pericūlum], adj.,
dangerous
pericūlum, -ī, n., test, trial. Hence,
peril, danger, risk
peritus, -a, -um, adj., experienced,
skilled, skillful
perlātus, -a, -um, p.p. ^perferō
perlegō, -legere, -legī, -lēctus [per-
legō, read], read through, peruse
permaneō, -manēre, -mānī, -mānsū-
rus, intrans., remain (to the end),
continue, hold out, persist
permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,
trans., grant, allow, give up, intrust
permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,
trans., influence, affect.— permō-
tus, -a, -um, p.p., much affected,
much influenced, overcome
permulcēō, -mulcēre, -mulśī, -mulśus,
trans., soothe, pacify
perniciēs, -ēī, f., destruction, ruin
perpaucus, -a, -um, adj., always in
the plur., very few, a very few
perpendicularum, -ī, n., plumb line:
ad perpendicularum, perpendicularly
perpetior, -petī, -pessus [per-patior],
dep., trans., bear steadfastly, suf-
fer, endure
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous,
without interruption, lasting, per-
manent: in perpetuum, forever,
permanently.— perpetuō, abl. as
adv., forever, constantly, con-
tinually
perquīrō, -quīrere, -quisīvī, -quisītus
[per-quaero], trans., search for,
inquire about
perrumpō, -rumpere, -ruπī, -ruptus,
trans. and intrans., break through,
force one's way through
perruptus, -a, -um, p.p. of perrumpo
perscribō, -scribere, -scīpsī, -scriptus,
trans., write in full, set down,
state, describe, recount
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep.,
trans., follow up, pursue, attack
persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, in-
trans., persist
persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus,
trans., pay, suffer (punishment)
perspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus,
trans., see through; understand,
learn, observe, discover
persuādeō, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsus,
trans. and intrans., induce, per-
suade.— Pass. (impers.), be per-
suaded (dat. of person), be satisfied,
believe
peterreō, -terēre, -terrei, -territus,
trans., terrify, alarm
pertinācia, -ae [pertinax, obstinate],
f., obstinacy, stubbornness
pertineō, -tinēre, -tīnī, no p.p.
[per-tenēo], intrans., tend, extend;
have to do with: eodem illo ut
etc. (have the same purpose)
pertulī, see perfero
perturbātiō, -ōnis [perturbo], f., dis-
turbance, alarm, panic
perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, disturb, throw into confusion, alarm, terrify
pervagor, -āri, -ātus, *depr.*, *intrans.*, roam about, scatter
perveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, arrive at, reach, come, arrive: *ad hunc locum* (come to this point); *pars* (of property, come, fall)
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot. — *Esp.*, pedem referre, draw back, give way
petō, petere, petīvī, petitus, *trans.*, attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to. *Hence*, ask, request: petentibus Haeduis (at the request of etc.); fugam (take to)
Petrosidius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentle name. — *Esp.*, L. Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Caesar’s army
phalanx, -angis, *f.*, phalanx
Phāsis, -idis (acc. -im), *m.*, a river flowing into the Black Sea
Phīneus, -ī, *m.*, a blind king of Thrace
Philippus, -ī, *m.*, Philip (V), king of Macedonia, 220–179 B.C.
Phrixus, -ī, *m.*, son of Athamas (a mythical king)
Pictonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe south of the Loire
pīlum, -ī, *n.*, javelin
pīlus, -ī, *m.*, century (of third line of legionary soldiers): primi pili centurio, primipilar centurion, the ranking centurion of the legion
pinna, -ae, *f.*, parapet, battlement
piscis, -is, *m.*, fish
Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*: 1. L. Calpurnius Piso, a legatus in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii in 107 B.C., and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, father of Calpurnia, Caesar’s wife; consul with A. Gabinius in 58 B.C.—3. M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with M. Messala in 61 B.C.—4. Piso, an Aquitanian
pix, picis, *f.*, pitch
placeō, -ēre, -uí, -itūrus, *intrans.*, please. — *Esp. in third person*, it pleases (one), one likes, one determines
plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, pacify, appease
plānē, *adv.*, flatly, clearly, entirely
plānitiēs, -ēs [planus], *f.*, plain
plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, flat, level, even: carinae planiores (less deep, less rounding)
plausus, -ūs, *m.*, clapping (of hands), applause, approval
plebs, -is (or plēbēs, -ēs), *f.*, the common people
plēnē, *adv.*, fully, entirely, completely
plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, full
plērusque, -aque, -umque, *adj.*, only in *plur.*, most of, very many.—plērumque, acc. sing. as *adv.*, generally, usually, for the most part, very often
plumbum, -ī, *n.*, lead
plūrimus, see multus
plūs, see multus
poena — post

**poena**, -ae, f., penalty; punishment

**Poenus**, -a, -um, adj., Carthaginian.
— Masc. as noun, Carthaginian

**pollex**, -icis, m., the thumb

**polliceor**, -liceri, -licitus, dep., trans., offer, promise: liberaliter (make liberal offers)

**pollicitatio**, -onis [polliceor], f., offer, promise

**pollicitus**, -a, -um, p.p., of polliceor

**Polybius**, -i, m., a celebrated Greek historian, intimate friend of the younger Scipio, whom he accompanied on his military expeditions

**Polyphemus**, -i, m., one of the Argonauts

**Pompéius**, -i, m., a Roman gentile or family name.—Esp.: 1. Cn. Pompeius Magnus, the great rival of Cæsar, consul with M. Crassus in 55 B.C. — 2. Cn. Pompeius, an interpreter of Q. Titurius Sabinus

**pondo**, pónere, posuí, positus, trans., lay down, place, put: castra (pitch); praesidium (station, but see below). — Fig., place, lay, make depend on: in fuga praesidium and spem salutis in virtute (find, found, seek). — positus, -a, -um, p.p., situated, lying, depending on

**pons**, pontis, m., bridge

**Pontus**, -i, m., a country of northeastern Asia Minor

**populātiō, -ōnis [populor], f., a plundering, raid

**populor**, -ārī, -āitus, dep., trans., ravage, devastate

**populus**, -ī, m., people, nation, tribe:

**populus Romanus** (the official designation of the Roman state)

**porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, trans.,** stretch forth: correcta loca pertinient (stretch out in extent)

**porta**, -ae, f., gate

**portō, -āre, -āvi, -āitus, trans., carry, bring, convey

**portōrium**, -i, n., duty, toll

**portus**, -ūs, m., harbor, haven, port

**poscō, poscere, poposci, no p.p., trans., demand, require, claim

**positus**, -a, -um, p.p. of pono

**possessō, -ōnis [possideo], f., possession, occupation; possessions, lands

**possideō, -sīdere, -sēdi, -sessus [por- (= pro-) sedeo, sit], trans., occupy (in a military sense), possess, hold

**possum, posse, potuī, no p.p., irr., intrans., be able, can, etc.: pluri- mum posse, be most powerful, have very great influence; largiter posse, have great influence; tantum multitudine posse, be so strong in numbers; equitatu nihil posse, have no strength in cavalry; quicquid possunt, whatever power they have; quid virtute possint, the prowess of, how formidable they are by their valor; fieri posse, be possible; ut spatium intercedere posset (might intervene); quam maximum potest, the greatest he can

**post, adv., and prep. with acc., behind, after:** post se, in their rear
postea, adv., afterwards
posteaquam, conj., after
posterus, -a, -um, adj., the next, later: postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day. Plur. as noun, posterity. — postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., last. — postrēmō, abl. as adv., lastly, finally
postquam, conj., after
postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day.
Plur. as 7W1171, posterity. — postremus, -a, -um, sufterl., last.
— postremo, abl. as adv., lastly, finally
postquam, conj., after
postremo, see posterus
posterus, -a, -um, adj., the next, later
postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day.
Plur. as 7W1171, posterity. — postremus, -a, -um, sufterl., last.
— postremo, abl. as adv., lastly, finally
potissimum [potissimus], adv., in preference to all else, most of all, chiefly
potitus, -a, -um, p.p. of potior
praecipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [praecapio], trans., take beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard
praecētus, -a, -um, adj., sharpened to a point, pointed
praebēō, praebēre, praebui, praebitus [praehabeo], trans., offer, present, furnish
praecaveō, -cāvere, -cāvī, -cautus, intrans., take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard
praecēps, -cipitis [praecaput], adj., headlong, in haste: locus praecēps, a steep incline, a precipitous place
praecaptum, -ī [p.p. of praecipio], n., an instruction, an order
praecipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [praecapio], trans., take beforehand, anticipate; order, give instructions
praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [praecēps], trans., throw headlong: se (plunge headlong)
praecipūē [praecipus, special], adv., especially
praecērūs, -a, -um, adj., brilliant; splendid, famous

potior, potirī, potitus, dep., intrans., become master of, get the control of (abl. or gen.)
potior, -us, -ōris, adj., preferable. — potius, acc. as adv., preferably, rather

praeclarus, adj., brilliant; splendid, famous
Praeconinus, -i, m., a Roman family name
praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursūrus, *intrans.*, run before, outstrip, anticipate
praeda, -ae, f., booty, prey, plunder
praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, proclaim, assert, describe, boast
praedicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, *trans.*, foretell, predict
praedō, -ari, -atus [praeda], intrans., plunder, take booty
praeduco, -dicere, -duxi, -ductus, *trans.*, lead before, construct in front
praefectus, -a, -um, p.p. of praeficio.
— As noun, see praeficio
praefero, -ferre, -toll, -latus, irr., *trans.*, place before, esteem above, prefer, prefer to (with quam): se alicui (show one's self better than)
praeficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [praefacio], *trans.*, put before, place in command of, set over. — praefectus, -i, m. of p.p. as noun, captain (esp. of cavalry), commander, officer
praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, send forward, send on, send ahead
praemium, -i, n., reward, prize, distinction
praepartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, choose rather, prefer
praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, prepare beforehand
praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, put in command, set over
praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans.*, break off
praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scripsitus, *trans.*, order, direct, give directions
praescriptum, -ī [n. p.p. of prae scribo], n., an order, orders
praesēns, -entis, see praesum
praesentia, -ae [praesens], f., presence, the present moment: in praesentia, for the moment, at the moment
praesertim, adv., especially, particularly
praesidium, -ī [praesideo, sit before], n., a guard, garrison, a force; fortification, intrenchment; protection, safety: in fuga praesidium ponere, seek safety in flight; intra praesidia, within the lines
praestāns, -stantis [praesto], adj., remarkable, conspicuous
praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātus, *trans. and intrans.*, stand before, excel, be superior: praestat, it is better.
— Also, causatively, furnish, display: officium (discharge, perform)
praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr., *intrans.*, be in front, be at the head of, be in command: magistratui (hold). — praesēns, -entis, pres. p., present, immediate: pluribus praesentibus, in the presence of many
praeter, adv. and prep. with acc., along by, past, beyond. — Fig., except, beside, contrary to praetereā, adv., furthermore, besides
praeterēō — probō

praeterēō, -īre, -īi, -ītus, irr., trans. and intrans., go by, pass by, pass over. — praeteritus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.; past. — Esp., praeterita, n. plur., the past

praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, trans., and intrans., let slip, omit, neglect

praetor, -ōris [praeeo, go before], m., commander. — Esp., prætor, one of a class of magistrates at Rome: legatus pro praetore (lieutenant in command, acting as a prætor)

praetōrius, -a, -um [praetor], adj., of a prætor (in all its senses): praetoria cohors, the bodyguard of a commander

praērō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, trans., burn at the end

premō, premere, pressī, pressus, trans., press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus, trans., seize, take, grasp

pretium, -ī, n., price, cost, value

† prex, precis (sing. in dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), f., prayer, entreaty

priēdiē, adv., the day before

prīmipilus [primus-pilus], m., the first centurion

prīmō [abl. of primus], adv., at first

prīnum [acc. of primus], adv., first, in the first place: cum prīnum, as soon as; quam prīnum, as soon as possible

prīmus, see prior

prīnceps, -ipis [primus-capio], adj., first, chief, foremost: locus (chief, highest); ea princeps persōnit (was the first to). — Often as noun, leader, chief: legationis (head)

principātus, -ūs [princeps], m., foremost position, first place, leadership

prior, -us, -ōris, adj., former, before: priores, those in front. — prius, n. as adv., before (see also priusquam). — primus, -a, -um, superl., first: agmen (front); in primis, especially. — See primo and prīnum

prīstīnus, -a, -um [prius], adj., old, former: prīstius dies, the day before

prius, see prior

prīusquam, conj., earlier than, before. Often separated, prius ... quam

prīvatīm [privatus], adv., privately, as private persons

prīvatus, -a, -um [p.p. of privo, deprive], adj., private, personal

prō (prōd in some compounds), prep. with abl., in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of: prō explorato, ascertained, as certain. — Also, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, considering, in return for, for. — In composition, before, forth, away, for, down (as falling forward)

probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., approve, test, prove, show, be satisfied with
procedō — proinde

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus, intrans., go forward, advance: longius (go to a distance)
Procillus, -i, m., a Roman family name
prōcōnsul, -ulis, m., proconsul, ex-consul (during his term of service abroad)
procul, adv., at a distance, afar, from afar
prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, no p.p. [pro-cumbo, lie], intrans., fall, sink down, lie down; incline, slope
prōcurrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., care for, have charge of, attend to
prōcurrū, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus, intrans., run forward, charge, rush out
prōdeo, -ire, -ii, -iturus [prodi], intrans., go forth, come forth, come out, go forward
prōditio, -onis [proficisci], f., treason, treachery
prōdītor, -ōris [prodo], m., traitor, betray
prōdītus, -a, -um, p.p. of prodo
prōdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [prodo, put], trans., give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down
prōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, trans., lead out, bring out, draw up (troops); protract, prolong
prōelior, -ārī, -ātus [proelium], dep., intrans., fight (in war)
prōelium, -ī, n., battle, contest, skirmish: committere (engage, join battle, risk a battle)
prōfectiō, -onis [proficiscor], f., a setting out, departure
prōfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of proficisci
prōfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of proficio
professus, -a, -um, p.p. of profiteor
prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [profaciō], trans. and intrans., accomplish: satis ad laudem profectum est, enough has been done for glory
prōficior, -ficisci, -fectus, dep., intrans., start, leave, depart, set out: ad proficiscendum pertinere (to a journey)
prōfiteor, -fitēri, -fessus [profateor, confess], dep., trans. and intrans., declare publicly, state
prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., dash to the ground; put to rout, rout
prōfluo, -fluere, -flūxī, no p.p., intrans., flow forth, rise
prōfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intrans., flee, escape
prōgnātus, -a, -um [pro-(g)natus, p.p. of (g)nascor], adj., sprung from: prognati ex, descendants of
prōgressus, -a, -um, p.p. of progrediv
prōhabeō, -hībere, -hibui, -hibitus [prohabeo], trans., keep off, repel, stop, prevent, forbid; protect
prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [proiacio], trans., throw forward, throw away, abandon: se ex navi (leap)
prōinde, adv., therefore, hence
promitto — provectus

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, trans., send forth.—Fig., promise
prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -móitus, trans., move forward, advance, push forward
prōmptus, -a, -um, adj., ready, quick, active
prōμunturium, -i, n., headland
prōnē, adv., with a slope
prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., make known, communicate, give orders, declare, make proclamation
prōpatulum, -ī, n., open place; court
prope, prep. with acc., near. — Fig., almost, nearly. — propius, comp., adv., nearer: propius tumulum (as prep.) — proximē, superl., adv., lately, last
prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, trans., drive away, repulse, rout, dislodge, force back
properē, adv., quickly
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., hasten, hurry
propinquitās, -ātis [propinquus], f., vicinity.—Esp., nearness in blood, relationship
propinquus, -a, -um, adj., near at hand, near. — Esp. by blood, related. — As noun in plur., relatives
propior, -us, -ōris [prope], adj., nearer. — proximus, superl., nearest, next, neighboring: bellum (last). — With force of prep., proximi Rheum, nearest the Rhine
propōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans., place before; offer, put in the way, make known, state, represent
proprius, -a, -um [prope], adj., of one’s own: fines (particular); hoc proprium virtutis (a peculiar property, a mark)
propter [prope], adv., and prep. with acc., close by.—Also, on account of
propterea, adv., on this account. — With quod, because
prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., fight in defense
prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., repel, keep off, drive off
prōra, -ae, f., prow (of a ship)
prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, trans., dash down, overthrow, demolish
prōrutus, -a, -um, p.p. of prōruo
prōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus, dep., trans., pursue, escort; address
prōspectus, -ūs [prospicio], m., outlook, view
prōspicio, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, trans., look forward, look out, watch; provide for, take care
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, irr., intrans., be useful, benefit, assist
prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [protego], trans., protect, cover
prōtinus, adv., straightway, forthwith, at once
prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge
prōvectus, -a, -um, p.p. of proveho
provehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, trans., carry forward. — In pass., be carried forth, sail

proveīō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, trans., foresee, take care, provide, arrange beforehand: sātis est provīsum, sufficient provision has been made

provīncia, -ae, f., office (of a commander or governor), province (in general); also, a province (governed by a Roman magistrate). — Esp., the Province (of Gaul)

provīciālis, -e [provīncia], adj., of a province. — Esp., of the Province (of Gaul)

provīsus, -a, -um, p.p. of provīdeo

provōlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., rush out, fly out (of cavalry etc.)

proxiμē, see prope

proximus, see propior

prūdēntia, -ae [prudēns], foreseeing, f., foresight, discretion

Prūsīās, -ae, m., a king of Bithynia (in northern Asia Minor) to whom Hannibal fled

Ptīāniī, -ōrum, m. plur., a people of Aquitania

pūblicē, adv., in the name of the state, publicly

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pūblicus], trans., make state property, confiscate

pūblicus, -a, -um [pūpulus], adj., of the people, of the state, public: res pūblica, commonwealth, state

Pūblius, -ī, m., a Roman prænomen

pudor, -ōris, m., sense of shame, sense of honor

puer, -ī, m., boy, servant, slave. — Plur., children (of either sex): a pueris, from childhood

puerilis, -e [puer], adj., of a child: aetas (of childhood)

puerulus, -ī [puer], little boy

pugna, -ae, f., fight: ad pugnam, for fighting

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., fight, engage. — Often impers, in pass., pugnatum est etc., they fought, the fighting continued

Pūlō, -onis, m., T. Pūllo, a centurion in Cæsar’s army

pulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of pello

pulvis, -eris, m., dust

puppis, -is, f., stern

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., clean, clear; excuse, free from suspicion

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., think, suppose, consider

Pūrēnæus, -a, -um, adj., only with montes, the Pyrenees, mountains between France and Spain

Q., abbr. for Quintus

quā, rel. adv., by which (way), where

quācumque, rel. adv., by whichever (way), wherever

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., forty each, forty (each being often omitted in English)

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., forty
quadringenti — quiēs

quadringenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., four hundred

quaerō, quaeerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, trans., search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask: eadem (make the same inquiries)

quaesīvī, see quaeerō

quaestiō, -ōnis [quaerō], f., investigation

quaestor, -ōris [quaerō], m., quaestor (the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army)

quaestus, -ūs [quaerō], m., acquisition, gain

qualis, -e, interrog. adj., of what sort? qualis ascensus (what is the nature of?)

quam, adv. and conj.: 1. Interrog., how? — 2. Rel., as, than. — Often with superlatives, as . . . as possible: quam maximus, the greatest possible; quam maxime, (to) the utmost; quam maxime potest, as much as he can

quamdiū (often written separately, see diū), rel. adv. (with antecedent omitted), as long as

quamquam, conj., although

quamvis, adv., as you please, however, no matter how

quandō, adv., at any time: si quando, if ever, whenever

quantō [quantus], adv., by how much, (by as much) as

quantus, -a, -um, adj.: 1. Interrog., how great? how much? quantum boni, how much good? quantae civitates (how important?).—

2. Rel., as great as, as much as:

tantum . . . quantum, so (as) much . . . as

quārtus, -a, -um [quattuor], num. adj., fourth

quasi, conj., as if

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., four

quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj., fourteen

-que, conj., and. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, and in general, and other

queror, queri, questus, dep., trans. and intrans., complain, bewail, lament

questus, -a, -um, p.p. of queror

qui, quae, quod, interrog. adj., which? what?

qui, qua (quae), quid, used after si, ne, ubi, etc., indef. adj., any

quicquam, see quisquam

quicumque, quae-, quod-, indef. rel. adj. and pron., whoever, whichever, whatever

quidam, quae-, quod- (quid-), indef. adj. and pron., a certain, certain, a kind of: quidam ex militibus (one)

quidem, adv., indeed, at least, certainly: ne . . . quidem, not even, not . . . either

quiēs, -ētis, f., rest, sleep, repose
## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quiétus, -a, -um</td>
<td>quiet, adj., at rest, quiet, peaceable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quién [qui (old abl.), -ne]: 1. Corroborative adv.: quién etiam, nay even, in fact. — 2. Conj. after expression of negative thought (doubt, hindrance, abstention, etc.) modified by negative word, but that, that, from (doing a thing), to (do a thing): non dubito quién, I do not doubt that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiñam, quae-, quod-, cuius-, interrog. pron., who? etc. (emph.): quiñusnam manibus (with what possible?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiñdecim, indecl. num. adj., fifteen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiñgeti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., five hundred</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiñi, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., five at a time, five each</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiñquágintā, indecl. num. adj., fifty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiñque, indecl. num. adj., five</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiñquerēmis, -is, f., quinquereme (a vessel with five banks of oars)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiñquiēs [quinque], adv., five times</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiñtus, -a, -um [quinque], num. adj., fifth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quīntus, -ī [quintus], m., a Roman praenomen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quis, quae, quid, cuius: 1. Interrog. adj. and pron., who? which? what? — 2. Indef. pron., one, any one, anything</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisnam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, interrog. pron., who? etc. (emph.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quispiam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., any, any one, any thing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., any, any one, anything</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque, quae-, quid-, cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., each, each one, every</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisquis, quaequae, quiqûid, cuius-cuius, indef. rel. adj. and pron., whoever, whatever</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quivis, quae-, quid-, cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., any you please, any one, any whatever (affirmative), any (whatever)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. quō, see qui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. quō, adv.: 1. Interrog., whither? — 2. Rel., whither, into which, as far as. — 3. Indef., anywhere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. quō, conj., in order that (with comparatives), that: magis eo quam quō (than that, than because). — Esp., quō minus, that not, so that not, from (doing a thing)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quoad, conj., as far as, until, as long as</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quod, conj., because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that: quod si, but if</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quō minus, see 3 quo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quoniam [quom (= cum), iam], conj., inasmuch as, since, as</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quoque, adv., following the word it affects, also, as well</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quoqueversus or quōquöversus, adv., in every direction, all about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quot, indecl. adj.: 1. Interrog., how many? — 2. Rel., as many, as many as, the number which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
quotannis — redimo

quotannis [quot-annus], adv., every year, yearly
quotiens, adv.: 1. Interrog., how often? how many times?—2. Rel., as often as
quotienscumque [quotiens], adv., however often, whenever

rādix, -icis, f., root. — Plur., roots (of a tree); foot (of a mountain)
raeda, -ae, f., wagon
rāmus, -ī, m., branch, bough
rapiditās, -ātis [rapidus, swift], f., swiftness, rapidity
rapina, -ae [rapio, seize], f., plunder. — Plur., plundering
rapīō, -ere, -ui, -tus, trans., snatch, seize
rārūs, -a, -um, adj., scattered, few; rare, unusual
ratiō, -ōnis [reor], f., a reckoning, an account. — Also, calculation, reason, prudence, terms, plans, science, manner, method, consideration: rationem habere, take an account, have regard to; rationem habere ut, take care that etc.
ratīs, -is, f., raft
ratus, -a, -um, p. p. of reor
Raurācī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine
re-, red-, prefix, back, again, away
rebelliō, -ōnis [re-bellum], f., renewal of war, uprising
recēns, -entis, adj., new, fresh, late
receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of recipio
receptus, -ūs [recipio], m., retreat, way of retreat, refuge
recessus, -ūs [recedo], m., retreat
recidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [recedo], intrans., fall again, fall back, fall upon, be visited, recoil, return
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [recepio], trans., take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit.—With reflexive, retreat, withdraw
recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., read aloud
rēctē, adv., rightly
rēctus, -a, -um [p. p. of rego], adj., straight
recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., get back, recover, regain
recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-causa], trans. and intrans., refuse, reject, repudiate, object to; make objections; followed by quin or quo minus (refuse to); periculum (refuse to incur)
red-, see re-
redāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo
redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo
reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [red-do (put)], trans., give back, restore, pay, render
redemptus, -a, -um, p. p. of redimo
redeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, irr., intrans., go back, return, come down again: summa (be referred)
redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -actus [red-ago], trans., bring back, reduce, render, bring under, make
redimō, -imerē, -ēmī, -ēmptus [red-emō], trans., buy back, redeem, purchase, buy
redintegro — rēmigō

redintegro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [redintegro, make whole], trans., re-
new, restore, revive

reditiō, -ōnis [redeo], f., return

reditus, -īs [redeo], m., return

Redonēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of
western Gaul, between the lower
Loire and the Channel

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans.,
lead back, bring back, draw back,
draw in, extend back

referō, referre, rettuli, relātus, irr.,
trans., bring back, return, re-
port. — Esp.: gratias (gratiam)
(make return, show one's grati-
tude); pedem (retreat, draw
back). — With reflexive, retreat;
retire

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [re-facio],
trans., repair, refresh: se ex
labore (rest); exercitum (allow to
recover)

refrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus
[re-frango], trans., break away,
break in (portas): vim fluminis
(break)

refugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugītūrus,
intrans., run away, escape

refulgeo, -fulgere, -fulsi, intrans.,
flash back, gleam, shine

rēgia, -ae [rex], f., palace

regiō, -ōnis, f., country, district

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [regnum], rule,
reign, govern

rēgnum, -ī [cf. rego], n., kingdom,
royal power, throne.—Plur., royal
power

regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus, trans.,
direct, manage, rule, have con-
trol of

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [re-iacio],
trans., throw back, hurl back,
drive back, throw away, drive off

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī,
no p. p., intrans., be weakened,
be deadened

relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of refero

relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquo

reliгиō, -ōnis [re-ligo, bind], f., reli-
gious scruple, religion, religious
observance, religious matter, ser-
vice of the gods, superstition

relinquō, -linquere, -líquī, -lictus,
trans., leave behind, abandon,
leave.—Pass., be left, remain

reliquiae, -ārum [reliquus], f., rem-
nants

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., left, remain-
ing, the rest, the others, future:
nihil est reliqui, there is nothing
left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi
reliqui fecerunt, made the great-
est possible speed.—Masc. plur.
as noun, the rest

remaneō, -manere, -mānsī, -mānsū-
ris, intrans., remain behind, re-
main, stay

remedium, -ī, n., remedy, cure

rēmex, -īgis [remus], m., oarsman,
rower

Rēmī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of
the Belgae about the present site
of Rheims

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans.,
row
remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., move back, return
reminiscor, -miniscī, no p.p., dep., trans. and intrans., remember
remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mussus, trans., let go back, send back, throw back; relax, cease to use, give up
remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p.p., intrans., soften, become feeble
removeō, -movere, -mōvī, -mōtus, trans., move back, move away, send away, remove, put out of the way.— remōtus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., far away, remote
remūneror, -āri, -ātus [re-munus], dep., trans., repay, requite
rēmus, -i, m., oar
Rēmus, -ī, m., one of the Remi
renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. novus], trans., renew
renuṁtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring back word, report, proclaim
reor, rēri, ratus, dep., trans., think
repellō, repellere, reppuli, repulsus, trans., drive back, repulse: ab hac spe repulsi, disappointed in this hope
repente, adv., suddenly
repentīnus, -a, -um [repens, sudden], adj., sudden, hasty, unexpected.— repentīnō, abl. as adv., suddenly
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus [re-pario, get], trans., find out, discover: reperti sunt multi, there were many
repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petitus, trans., seek again, demand back, ask for: poenas (inflict, exact)
rēpō, rēpere, rēspī, rēptus [cf. serpens], intrans., creep, crawl
repōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans., put back, store away
reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., carry back
repperī, see reperiō
repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., make present, do at once
reprehendiō, -hendere, -hendi, -hensus, trans., blame, censure
repressus, -a, -um, p.p. of reprimō
reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus - [re-premo], trans., check
repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., spurn, refuse, reject
repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., resist; be in opposition
repulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of repello
requiro, -quīrere, -quisīvī, -quisitus [re-quāero], trans., seek again, request, need, miss: in se indulgentiam (lament the loss of)
rēs, reī, f., property, business, affair, matter, thing (in the most general sense), fact, occurrence, event, case, action, act.— Often to be translated from the context.— Esp.: imperitus rerum, ignorant of the world; commutatio rerum, change of fortune; re vera, in truth, really; rem gerere, conduct operations, fight; res secundae, prosperity; res publica, commonwealth; res familiaris, property;
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

rescindō — rōstrum

res militaris, warfare; res frumentaria, grain supply; novae res, revolution; quā rē, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (circumstance etc.), why; quām ob rem, interrog., why? — rel., on which account, for which reason

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, trans., cut away, break down, destroy

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitus, trans., find out, learn, discover

rescribō, -scribere, -scriptus, trans., transfer (by writing)

resēdisse, see resīdō

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve

residō, -sidere, -sedī, intrans., sit down; settle down, become calm, subside

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p.p., intrans., stand back, stop, withstand, resist, remain

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [re-specio, look], trans. and intrans., look back, look back at, consider, regard

respondeō, -spōndēre, -spōndī, -spōnsus, trans. and intrans., reply, answer

respōnsum, -ī [n. p.p. of respondeō], n., reply. — Plur., reply (of several parts)

rēs pūblica, see res

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, no p.p., trans., spit out; spurn, reject

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stītūtus [re-statuo], trans., replace, restore, make anew

retentus, -a, -um, p.p. of retineō

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [re-teneō], trans., hold back, retain, maintain, restrain (quin, from doing something), arrest: memorandum (presērve)

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, trans., drag back, bring back

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, trans., tear away, pull away

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, intrans., return (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses, return, go back, come back

revinciō, -vincīre, -vīnxi, -vinctus, trans., make fast, fasten, bind

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., call away, call off, recall

rēx, régis, m., king

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine

Rhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhone

Rhodius, -a, -um, adj., of Rhodes (an island S.W. of Asia Minor), Rhodian. — Masc. as noun, Rhodian

ripa, -ae, f., bank

risus, -ūs, m., laugh, laughter

rivus, -ī, m., brook, stream

rōbur, -oris, n., oak [powerful robustus, -a, -um [rōbur], strong, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., ask, request, ask for

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome

Rōmānus, -a, -um, m., Roman. — Masc. as noun, a Roman

rōstrum, -ī [rodo, gnaw], n., beak. — Esp. of a ship, beak, ram
rotā, -ae, f., wheel
ruber, -bra, -brum, adj., red
rubus, -i, m., bramble
Rūfus, -i, m., a Roman prænomen
rūmor, -oris, m., rumor, report
rūpēs, -is, f., cliff, rock
rūsus, adv., back, again, in turn
Rūtēni, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe on the borders of Provence

Sābinus, -i, m., a Roman family name; see Titurius
Sabis, -is, m., a river of Belgic Gaul, flowing into the Meuse, now the Sambre
sacrificium, -i [sacrum, sacred thing, facio], n., sacrifice
sacrificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sacrificium], trans. and intrans., sacrifice
saepe, adv., often: minime saepe, most rarely.—saepius, comp., many times, repeatedly
saepenumerō, adv., oftentimes, many times
saepēs, -is [cf. saepio, hedge in], f., hedge
saevīō, -īre, -iī-, -īturus [saevus, fierce], intrans., be angry, rage, be violent
sagitta, -ae, f., arrow
sagittārius, -ī [sagitta], m., archer, Bowman
sagulum, -i, n., cloak (military)
Saguntum, -i, n., a town of eastern Spain
Salmydēssus, -i, m., a town in Thrace
saltus, -ūs, m., wooded height, mountain pass

salūs, -ūtis, f., health, well being, welfare, safety
sanciō, sancire, sānxī, sānctus [cf. sacer, sacred], trans., make sacred, solemnly establish (by law).—sānctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., holy, sacred, inviolable
sanguis, -inis, m., blood
sānitās, -ātis [sanus], f., sound mind, good sense
Santonēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe on the western coast of Gaul
Santonī, see Santones
sarcina, -ae [sarcio, sew up], f., pack.
—Plur., baggage (soldiers' packs)
sarmentum, -i, n., only in plur., fagots, brushwood
satis, adv., enough, sufficiently.—Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., enough, sufficient: satis habere, consider sufficient, be satisfied
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus, intrans., satisfy, make amends, excuse one's self, apologize
satisfactiō, -onis [satisfacio], f., apology
saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded
saxum, -i, n., rock
scālae, -ārum [scando, climb], f. plur., ladder, scaling ladder
scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat
scelerātus, -a, -um [scelus], adj., villainous, accursed
scelus, -eris, n., crime, wickedness
scientia, -ae [sciens, pres. p. of scio], f., knowledge, skill
scilicet [scire licet], adv., evidently
scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, trans., cut, tear, tear up
sciō, sciēre, sciēvi, scītus, trans., know
Scipīō,-ōnis, m., a Roman family name.
— *Esp.:* 1. P. Cornelius Scipio, consul in 218 B.C., repeatedly defeated by Hannibal. — 2. P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major, who defeated Hannibal at Zama
scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus, trans. and intrans., write
scūtum, -ī, n., shield
se, see sui
sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, intrans., go apart, go away, withdraw
sēcrētō [secretus, separate], adv., in private, privately
sectīō, -onis [seco, cut], f., booty
sectūra,-ae [seco, cut], f., mine, shaft
sēcum, for cum se
secundum, see secundus
secundus, -a, -um [sequor], adj., following, second; favorable, successful: secundiores res, greater prosperity. — secundum, neut. acc. as prep. with acc., along, in the direction of, in accordance with:
secundum flumen, down stream
secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of sequor
sed, conj., but, but yet
sēdecim [sex-decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen
sēdeo, sedēre, sēdī, sessus, intrans., sit, be seated
sēdēs, -is [sedeo, sit], f., seat. Hence, abode, settlement
sēditīōsus, -a, -um [sedītio, sedition], adj., seditious, factious

Sedūnī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Alps
Sedusīi, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Germans
Segonax, -actis, m., a British king
Segontiācī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Britain
sēgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [se-, apart, grex, flock], trans., separate, keep out, exclude
Segusiāvi, -ōrum, m. plur., a people of Gaul west of the Rhone
sēiungō, -iungere, -iūnīxī, -iūnctus [se-, apart, iungō], trans., disunite, separate
semel, num. adv., once: semel atque iterum, more than once, again and again
sēmentis, -is [semen, seed], f., a sowing: sementes facere, sow grain
sēmita, -ae, f., path
semper, adv., all the time, always
Sempronius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
senātor, -ōris [senex], m., senator
senātus, -ūs [senex], m., senate. — *Esp.*, the senate (of Rome)
senex, gen. senis, adj., old. — As noun, old man
sēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., six each, six
Senonēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe on the Seine
sententia, -ae [sentio], f., opinion, sentiment, feeling, purpose; a judgment, a sentence
sentio — sibi

sentio, sentire, sensi, sensus, trans., perceive, know, see, think, learn about, learn

sentis, -is, m., brier

separātīm, adv., separately, privately

separō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., separate. — Esp., separātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., separate

septem, indecl. num. adj., seven

septentriōnēs, -um [septem-triones, plow oxen], m. plur., the seven plow oxen (the stars of the Great Bear). — Hence, the north

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj., the seventh

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um [septuaginta], num. adj., the seventieth

septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., seventy

sepultūra, -ae [sepelio, bury], f., burial, burying

Sēquana, -ae, f., the Seine

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul on the Rhone). — Masc. plur. as noun, the Sequani

sequor, sequi, secūtus, dep., trans., follow, accompany: poena (be inflicted on); fidem (come under, surrender to)

Ser., abbr. for Servius

sermō, -onis, m., conversation, talk

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, trans., plant, sow

serpēns, -entis [part. of serpo, creep], f., serpent

Sertōrius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

servīlis, -e [servus], adj., of a slave, servile: tumultus (the servile revolt, the war of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73–71 B.C.)

Servilius, -ī, m., a gentile name

serviō, -īre, -īi, -ītūrus [servus], intrans., be a slave to: rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow)

servitūs, -ūtis [servus], f., slavery, servitude

Servius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., keep, preserve: praesidia (hold, maintain)

servulus, -ī [servus], m., young slave, boy

servus, -ī, m., slave

sescenti, see sexcentī

sēsē, see sui

sēsquipedālis, -e [†sesquiped- (a foot and a half) + alis], adj., a foot and a half (thick)

sētius, adv., less: nihilo setius, none the less

seu, see sive

sevēritās, -ātis [severus, strict], f., strictness, harshness

sēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., call aside, call out

sex, indecl. num. adj., six

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., sixty

sexcentī (ses-), -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., six hundred

Sextius, -ī, m., a gentile name

si, conj., if. — Esp., to see if, whether: id si fieret, should this happen

sibi, see sui
Sibusätès, -um, m. plur., a people of Aquitania

sic, adv. (with v.; cf. tam with adj. or adv., ita with either), so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus.—
sic uti, as conj., just as, just as if
cicitas, -atis [siccus, dry], f., dryness, drought, dry weather
sicuit, sicuti = sic uti
sídis, -eris, n., star
signifer, -feri [signum-fero], m.,
standard bearer
significatíō, -onis [significo], f., signal, warning
signífícō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [signum-facio], trans., make signs, indicate, make known, show
signum, -ī, n., sign, signal.—Esp., standard (for military purposes).
—Phrases: signa inferre, advance to attack, charge; conversa
signa inferre, change front and charge; ad signa consistere, rally round the standard
silentium, -ī [silēns, silent], n., stillness, silence.—silentiō, abl., in silence, silently

Silēnus, -ī, m., a Greek historian
Silius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
silva, -ae, f., forest, woods
silvestris, -tre [sitva], adj., woody, wooded

similis, -e, adj., like, similar
simul, adv., at the same time: simul
atque or ac (or without atque or ac), as soon as
simulācrum, -ī [simulo], n., image, likeness

simulatíō, -onis [simulo], f., pretense, deceit
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., pretend
simultās, -tātis [similis], f., rivalry
sin, conj., but if
sine, prep. with abl., without

singillātim [singuli], adv., singly, one by one
singulāris, -e [singuli], adj., solitary, single; unique, extraordinary

singuīli, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,
plur., one at a time, single, each, one by one.—Often to denote distribution, one to each: ab
singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere (each from his);
inter singulas legiones (between each two)
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left: sub
sinistra (manu), on the left
sinī, sinere, sīvī, situs, trans. and
intrans., permit, allow
situs, -ūs, m., situation, position
sive (seu), conj., if either, or if: sive
... sive, either ... or, whether ...
or
socer, -erī, m., father-in-law
societās, -ātis [socius], f., fellowship, alliance, league
socius, -ī [cf. sequor], m., companion, ally, comrade
sōl, sōlis, m., sun.—Also personified, Sol, the Sun
soldurīus, -ī, m., soldurius. follower
soleō, solēre, solitus, semi-dep., in-
trans., be wont, be accustomed
sölítüdö — stipendium

sölítüdö, -inis [solus], f., loneliness. *Hence,* wilderness
sollicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., stir up, instigate, offer bribes to, tempt
solum, -i, n., soil, foundation, bottom, earth: solum agri, bare ground
sólus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only.— sólum, n. acc. as adv., alone, only
solūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of solvo
solvō, solvere, solví, solútus, trans., unbind, loose.— *Esp., with or without navem* (naves), set sail
somnus, -ī, m., sleep
soror, -ōris, f., sister: soror ex matre, half sister
sors, sortis, f., lot (*for divination*), chance
Sōsīlus, -ī, m., a Spartan (of Sparta, a city in Greece), teacher and historian
Sōtiātēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aquitania
spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsus, trans., scatter, sprinkle
spatium, -i, n., space, extent, distance; time, space of time: quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for
speciēs, -ēī [specio, see], f., sight, show, appearance
spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [specio, see], trans. and intrans., look at, regard; face
specūlātor, -ōris [specular], m., spy, scout
specūlātorius, -a, -um [speculator], adj., scouting, reconnoitering (navigia)
speculor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans. and intrans., spy, reconnoiter: speculandi causa, as a spy
spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spes], trans., hope, hope for, expect
spēs, -eī, f., hope, expectation: summam in spem venire, have the greatest hope
spīritus, -ūs [spiro, breathe], m., breath.— *Also,* spirit. *Hence,* in plur., pride, arrogance, temper
spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., rob, deprive
sponte (abl.), f., of one’s own accord, voluntarily
stabilitās, -ātis [stabilis, steady], f., steadfastness, firmness
stabulum, -i [sto], n., stable, stall
stātim [sto], adv., at once, immediately
statiō, -ōnis [sto], f., position, post, picket: in statione, on guard
stātu, -ae [sto], f., statue
stauō, -uere, -uē, -ūtus [status], trans., set up; establish, resolve upon, determine, decide
stātūra, -ae [sto], f., stature, size
status, -ūs [sto], m., position, condition, situation
stēti, see stō
stipendiārius, -a, -um [stipendium], adj., tributary, under tribute
stipendium, -ī [stips, gift, pendo], n., tribute
stō — subsum

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, *intrans.*, stand, abide by
strāmentum, -ī, n., straw, thatch
strepitus, -ūs [strepo, roar], m., noise, confused din
stringō, stringere, strinxi, strictus, *trans.*, draw, unsheathe
studeō, studere, studui, no *p.p.*
[studium], *intrans.*, be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to; attend to, desire (*with dat.*)
studium, -ī, n., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (*for a thing*), enthusiasm; a pursuit (*to which one is devoted*), an occupation
stultē, adv., foolishly
stupēō, -ère, -ui, *intrans.*, be stunned, be amazed
sub, prep. (a) *With abl.* (*of rest in a place*), under: sub oculis, before the eyes
(b) *With acc.* (*of motion towards a place*), under, close to.
— *Of time*, toward, just before:
sub vesperum
(c) *In composition*, as adv., under; up to; secretly; in succession; slightly
subducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, draw up, lead up: navem
(beach, draw up)
subēō, -ire, -īī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans.*, go under, undergo, come up, approach
subfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, *trans.*, dig under, stab (*underneath*)
subfossus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of subfodiō
subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [subiacio], *trans.*, throw under, place below, subject, expose to.— Also, throw up.— subiectus, -a, -um, *p.p.* as adj., lying near
subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -actus [sub-ago], *trans.*, bring under, subdue
subitō, see subitus
subitus, -a, -um [*p.p.* of subeo], *adj.*, sudden, quick, hasty.— subitō, abl. as adv., suddenly
sublātus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of tollō
sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, lighten, raise, raise up, assist.— With reflexive, rise up.— sublevātus, *p.p.*, supporting one’s self
sublica, -ae, f., pile, stake
subluō, -luere, -lūtus, *trans.*, wash beneath, wash
subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, supply, furnish, provide
submitō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, send up, send to one’s assistance, reënforce
submoveō, -movere, -movēri, -mōtus, *trans.*, drive off, dislodge
subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, *trans.*, dig under, undermine
subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, follow on, follow, succeed to
subsidium, -ī [*sub-sedeo*, sit], n., reënforcement, help, relief, support, assistance
subsistō, -sistere, -stīti, no *p.p.*, *intrans.*, go under, under, be near, be close by, approach
subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be under, be near, be
subtrahō — superō

subtrahō, -trahere, -träxi, -trāctus, trans., take away, carry away
subvectīō, -ōnis [subvehō], f., bringing up, transportation, conveyance
subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, trans., bring up
subveniō, -venire, -veni, -venturus, intrans., come under, come to the support of, assist
succedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [sub-cedo], trans. and intrans., come up to, advance, succeed to, take the place of, come next; be successful, prosper
succeedō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnus, trans., set on fire
successus, -ūs [succedo], m., close approach
succidō, -cidere, -cisus [sub-caedo], trans., cut under, cut down
succurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursūrus [sub-curro], intrans., run to support, run to help, succor
sūcus, -ī, m., juice
sudis, -is, f., stake
Suēβi, -ōrum, m. plur., name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, Swabians
Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., Swabian. — As noun, a Swabian (man or woman)
Suessiōnēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae
sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [sub-facio], trans., appoint, choose; intrans., be sufficient, be adequate
suffrāgium, -ī, n., ballot, vote
Sugambri, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe
sui, sibi, sē, reflex. pron., himself, etc. — Often to be translated by the personal pron., he, etc.; also, each other. — Esp., inter se, from (with, by, etc.) each other
Sulla, -ae, m., a Roman family name. — Esp., L. Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called Sulla the Dictator
Sulpicius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
sum, esse, fui, futūrus, irr., intrans., be (exist). — Also, with weakened force, be (as a mere copula).
— Phrases: sibi esse in animo, that they had in mind, intended; multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged)
summa, -ae, f., top; sum, total, main part: belli (the general management, the chief control); imperi (chief command)
summus, see superus
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmpitus [sub-emo, take], trans., take, get, assume: sumere supplicium de, inflict punishment on; laborem (spend); vitam (take)
sūmptuosus, -a, -um [sumptus], adj., expensive, costly
sūmpitus, -ūs [sumo], m., expense
superbē, adv., haughtily, arrogantly
superior, see superus
superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., be superior to, prevail,
supersedeō — Syria

overcome, conquer, defeat; survive (vitā)

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus, intrans., sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from

supersum, -esse, -suī, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be over, be left, remain, survive

superus, -a, -um, adj., higher, being above (of space only). — Comp., superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), superior, victorious. — Superl., suprēmus, highest. — Also, summus, highest, the highest part of, the top of. — Fig., greatest, most important, perfect, supreme, most violent

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītūrus [sub-peto, aim at], intrans., be on hand, be supplied, hold out

supplēmentum, -ī, n., supply, reinforcement

supplex, -icis, c., suppliant

supplicātiō, -ōnis [supplico, supplicate], f., supplication; a thanksgiving (to the gods, decreed by the senate)

suppliciter, adv., as suppliants

supplicium, -ī, n., punishment (usually of death)

suppōnō, -pōnere, -posuí, -positūs [sub-ponō], trans., place under

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-porto], trans., bring up, convey, supply, furnish

suprā, adv., and prep. with acc., above, beyond

suprēmus, see superus

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptūs [subs (= sub), capio], trans., take upon one's self (sibi), assume, undertake, engage in, undergo

suspendō, -pendere, -pēndī, -pēnsum [subs (= sub), pendo], trans., hang up, hang

suspicātus, -a, -um, p.p. of suspicor

suspiciō, -ōnis [sub-specio, look], f., suspicion, an indication: neque abest suspicio, and suspicion is not wanting

suspicor, -āri, -ātus [cf. suspicio], dep., trans., suspect: p.p. as adj., under suspicion

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sustineō], trans. and intrans., sustain, hold out

sustineō, -tinere, -tīni, -tentūs [subs (= sub), teneō], trans. and intrans., hold up under, withstand, endure, hold out, bear, stop; sustinere se, stand up

sustulī, see tollo

suus, -a, -um, possessive pronominal adj. (reflex., referring back to the subject), his, her, its, their, etc. — Often without a noun, sui, their (his) men, countrymen, their friends; sua, their (his) possessions; se suaque omnia, themselves and all they had

Symplēgadēs, -um, f. plur., fabulous rocks, dashing against each other, in the Black Sea

Syria, -ae, f., a country bordering on the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea
T., abbr. for Titus

T., — temperō

Tarbelli, -orum, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania
tardē, adv., slowly, tardily, with delay
tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tardus], trans., retard, check, hinder
tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, sluggish
Tarusātēs, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania

Tasgetius, -ī, m., a prince of the Carnutes
taurus, -ī, m., bull
Taximagulus, -ī, m., a prince of Britain
Tectosāgēs, -um, m. plur., a branch of the Volcae
tēctum, -ī [n. p.p. of tegō], n., roof, house
tēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of tegō
tegmentum, -ī [tego], n., covering
tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus, trans., cover, thatch, hide, conceal
tēlum, -ī, n., weapon (of offense), javelin, spear
temerārius, -a, -um [temere], adj., reckless, rash, hasty
temere, adv., blindly, without reason; recklessly, hastily
temeritās, -tātis [temere], f., indiscretion, rashness, haste, foolhardiness
tēmō, -onis, m., pole (of a wagon etc.)
temperantia, -ae [temerans, pres. p. of tempero], f., self-control, prudence

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tempus], trans. and intrans., control; refrain, restrain one's self from (quin)
tempestās, -ātis [tempus], f., season, weather. — Esp., bad weather, storm

templum, -ī, n., temple

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., try, attempt, make an attempt on: per vim temptō, try to force

tempus, -oris, n., a division of time, a time, time (in general), occasion, opportunity, a crisis: tam necessario tempore, at so critical a moment; omni tempore, at all times, always

Tencteri, -ōrum, m. plur., a branch of the Usipetes
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus, trans., stretch, stretch out, pitch (tent)
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, no p.p., trans., hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: se tenere, remain; memoriā tenere, remember
tener, -era, -erum, adj., delicate, tender, young
tenuis, -e, adj., thin, delicate, feeble, poor
tenuiter [tenuis, weak], adv., thinly, slightly
ter, num. adv., three times, thrice

Terentius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., C. Terentius Varro, consul, defeated by Hannibal at Cannæ
tergum,-i, n., the back: terga vertere, turn and fly; a tergo, in the rear
ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., three each, three at once
terra, -ae, f., earth; land, region; ground. — Plur., world

Terrasidius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
terrēnus,-a,-um [terra], adj., of earth
terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus, trans., frighten, alarm, deter
terribilis, -e, adj., dreadful, frightful
terrīō, -āre, no perf., no p.p. [terreo], trans., frighten
terror, -oris [terreo], m., fright, alarm, panic
tertiō [tertius], adv., for the third time
tertius, -a,-um, num. adj., third (in order); pars (one third)
testamentum, -i [testor, testify], n., a will
testimōnium, -i [testis], n., proof, evidence
testis, -is, c., witness
testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise. — Esp., a covered column (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another)

Teutones, -um (-i, -ōrum), m. plur., a great German people in Jutland, who, with the Cimbri, overran Gaul in 113 B.C.; defeated by Marius in 102 B.C. at Aquae Sextiae
texō, -ere, -uī, -tus, trans., weave

Thermopylae, -ārum, f., a pass on the east coast of Greece, site of three famous battles

Théseus, -ī, m., a mythical king of Athens

Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly, a country in northern Greece

Thrācia, -ae, f., Thrace, a country north of Greece

Ti., abbr. for Tiberius
Tiberis — trāiectus

Tiberis, -is, m., the Tiber, the river on which Rome is situated

Tiberius, -ī, m., a Roman prāenomen (first name)

tignum, -ī, n., a log, a timber, a pile

Tigurinus, -a, -um, adj., of the Tigurini. — Masc. plur., the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii

timeō, -ēre, -uī, no p.p., trans. and intrans., be afraid, fear. — With dat., be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear). — timentēs, pres. p. as noun, the timid, the fearful

timidē, adv., with timidity: non timidē, fearlessly

timidus, -a, -um [timeō], adj., cowardly, frightened, timid

timor, -ōris [timeō], m., alarm, fear, dread

tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīncitus, trans., wet, dye

Titurius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Q. Titurius Sabinius, a legatus of Cæsar, killed in an ambuscade prepared by Ambiorix

Titus, -ī, m., a Roman prāenomen
	tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., bear, endure, hold out, support: famem (keep from starvation)
	tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, trans., raise, carry, carry off: ancoras (weigh). Hence, remove, take away, destroy: conloquium (break off). — Esp., sublātus, -a, -um, p.p., elated

tolōsa, -ae, f., an important city in the western part of the Province, now Toulouse

Tolōsātēs, -iūm, m. plur., the people of Toulouse

torrentum, -ī [torqueō, twist], n., torture. — Also, an engine (for throwing missiles)

torreō, torrēre, torruit, tostitus, trans., scorch, burn

tot, indecl. adj., so many

totidem, indecl. adj., just as many, the same number

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., the whole, the whole of, all, entire. — Often translated by an adverb, entirely, throughout

trabs, trabis, f., a beam, a timber

trāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of trahō

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [trans-do (put)], trans., hand over, give up, deliver up, surrender, recommend. — Also, pass along, hand down, teach, communicate, relate

trāducō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus [transducere], trans., lead over, lead across, bring over, transport, win over, transfer

trāgula, -ae, f., javelin

trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctus, trans., drag, drag along, drag in, draw in

trāciō, -icere, -īeci, -iectus [transiacio], trans., throw across, throw over; cross; transfix, pierce

trāiectus, -a, -um, p.p. of traiectio

trāiectus, -ūs [traiectio], m., passage, route
trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātus [trans-no, swim], trans. and intrans., swim across

trānquillītās, -ātis [tranquillus, still], f., stillness, calm

trāns, prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of. — In composition, as adv., over, across, through

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, adj., Trans-alpine

trānscondō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēn-sūrus [trans-scando, climb], intrans., climb across, board (ships)

trānseō, -ēre, -īī, -ītus, irr., trans. and intrans., cross, pass over, pass through, pass by

trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., carry over, transfer, change the place of: bellum ad aliquem (direct against)

trānsfigō,-figere, -fixī,-fixus, trans., pierce through

trāngredior, -gredi, -gressus [trans-gradior, step], dep., trans. and intrans., step across, step over, cross

trānsitus, -ūs [transeo], m., going over, crossing

trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transféro

trānsporťō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring over, carry over

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, adj., living across the Rhine. — Masc. plur. as noun, the people across the Rhine

trānstrum, -ī, n., thwart, rib (of a ship)

trānssversus, -a, -um [p. p. of trans-vertō, turn across], adj., transverse: fossa (a cross ditch)

Trasimēnus, -ī, m., a lake in Etruria, famous for Hannibal's victory over the Romans in 217 B.C.

Trebia, -ae, m., a river in northern Italy, where Hannibal defeated the Romans in 218 B.C.

Trebius, -ī, m., a gentile name

Trebōnius, -ī, m., a gentile name
trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., three hundred
trepidō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus, trans. and intrans., tremble at; shake, tremble

trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., three

Trēverī, -ōrum, m. plur. (sing. Trē- vir), a people in northeastern Gaul

Tribocēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine

tribūnus, -ī, m. (with or without militum or militaris), tribune of the soldiers, military tribune

tribuō,-uere,-ui,-ūtus [tribus, tribe], trans., distribute. Hence, grant, render, assign, attribute: magnopere virtuti (attribute it so very much to valor)

tribūtum, -ī [n. p. p. of tribuo], n., tribute

triduum, -ī [tres-dies], n., three days' time, three days

triennium, -ī [tres-annus], n., three years

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty

trīnī,-ae,-a, distrib. num. adj., plur., three each, three sets of
Trinovantes, -um, m. plur., a people of southern Britain

tripartitus, -a, -um [tres-partitus], adj., divided in three.—Esp., tripartitō, abl. as adv., in three divisions

triplex, -icus [tres; cf. plico, fold], adj., threefold: acies (triple, in three divisions or lines)

triremis, -is, f., trireme (a vessel with three banks of oars)

tristis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy, depressed

tristitia, -ae [tristis], f., sadness

truncus, -i, m., trunk

tu, tui, plur. vós, pers. pron., 2d person, you
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet
tueor, tuērī, tūtus, dep.; trans., watch, guard, protect
tuli, perf. of fero

Tulingi, -orum, m. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii

Tullius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

Tullus, -ī, m., a Roman family name

tum, adv., then (at a time indicated by the context), at this time: cum ... tum, not only ... but also

tumultus, -īs [cf. tumeo, swell], m., uproar, confusion, commotion.—Esp., uprising, revolt

tumulus, -ī [tumeo, swell], m., hill, mound

tunc [tum], adv., then, at that time, just then

turma, -ae, f., squadron, troop (of horse, consisting of thirty men)

Turonii, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Also called Turones

turpis, -e, adj., ugly; unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable

turpitūdō, -inis [turpis], f., baseness; disgrace

turris, -is, f., tower

tūtus, -a, -um [p.p. of tueor], adj., protected, safe, secure.—tūtō, abl. as adv., in safety, safely

ubi, adv. and conj., where, in which:

ubi ubi, in the place where.—Also, of time, when: ubi primum, as soon as

Ubiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine

ubique, adv., everywhere, anywhere

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus, dep., trans., punish, take vengeance on, avenge

ullus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, adj., a single, any.—Masc. as pronoun, anybody, any one

ulterior, -us, -ōris [ultra], adj., farther, more remote.—Superl., ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, last: ultimi, those in the rear

ultrā, adv., and prep. with acc., beyond

ultrō, adv., to the farther side, beyond: ultro citroque, this way and that, back and forth.—Esp.: voluntarily, freely, besides

ultus, -a, -um, p.p. of ulciscor

umbra, -ae, f., shadow, shade

umquam, adv. (with neg.), ever:

neque ... umquam, and never
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY</th>
<th>115</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ünā, adv., together, along with them etc., at the same time, in the same place, also</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unde, adv., whence, from which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undecimus, -a, -um [unus-decimus], num. adj., eleventh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undique, adv., from every side, from all quarters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unguentum, -i, n., ointment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>universus, -a, -um [unus-versus, p.p. of vero], adj., all together, all (in a mass), entire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ünus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, adj., one, a single, the same, alone, only. — Neut. as noun, one thing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbānus, -a, -um [urbs], adj., of a city. — Esp., of the city (Rome), in the city</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbs, urbis, f., city. — Esp., the city (Rome)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūrō, ēre, ēsī, ēstus, trans., burn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usipetēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the lower Rhine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úsque, adv., all the way, even to, all the time, till, even till</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úsus, -a, -um, p.p. of ūtor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úsus, -ūs [utor], m., use, practice, experience; advantage, service. — Esp.: usus est, is necessary, it is necessary, there is need; ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage; usu venire, happen, turn out, come to pass</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ut (uti), adv. and conj.: (a) Interrog., how? — (b) Rel., as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was: ut semel, when once, as soon as. — Esp. with subjv., that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that; after verbs of fearing, that not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uter, -tra, -trum, gen. -trius, adj. and pron.: (a) Interrog., which (of two)? — (b) Rel., whichever (of two), the one who or which (of two). — Neut., utrum, adv., whether</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uterque, utra-, utrum-, gen. utrius-, adj. and pron., both: medium utriusque, between the two. — Plur., of sets: utraque castra, both camps; utrique, both parties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utī, see ut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūtilis, -e, adj., useful, of use, helpful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūtilitās, -ātis [ūtilis], f., advantage, benefit, service</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep., intrans., with abl., use, exercise, practice, employ, have (in sense of enjoy or employ), possess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utpote, adv., inasmuch as, seeing that (see the note on lviii, 5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utrimque, adv., on both sides</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utrobīque, adv., on both sides, in both ways</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utrum, see uter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uxor, -ōris, f., wife</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V, Roman numeral for five</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacalus, -ī, m., the west branch of the Rhine at its mouth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacātiō, -ōnis [vaco], f., freedom (from something), exemption, immunity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., be vacant, be unoccupied, lie waste
vacuus, -a, -um [cf. vaco], adj., free, vacant, destitute of (ab or abl.)
vadum, -ī [cf. vado, go], n., ford.—Plur., ford, shoals, shallows.—vado, by fording

vagina, -ae, f., sheath
vagor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., intrans., roam about, roam, wander
valēns, -entis, pres. p. of valeo

valeō, valère, valuī, valitūrus, intrans., be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful.—Often with n. pron. or adj. as acc. of kindred meaning: plus valere, be more powerful; plurimum valere, be very strong, have great influence; quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent, whatever strength they have is in infantry.—valēns, pres. p. as adj., strong

Valerius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
valētūdō, -inis [valeo], f., health.—Also, ill health, illness
vallēs, -is, f., valley
vāllum, -ī, n., palisade, rampart
Vangionēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine

varius, -a, -um, adj., various, diverse
vās, vāsis (plur. vāsa, -ōrum), n., vessel, jar
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vastus], trans., lay waste, devastate, ravage
vāstus, -a, -um, adj., waste; immense, vast

vāticinātīō, -onis [vaticinor, foretell], f., divination
-ve, conj., enclitic, or
vectīgal, -ālis [cf. veho, carry], n., tribute.—Plur., revenues
vectīgālis, -e [cf. veho, carry], adj., tributary: vectigales habent, make tributary

vehementer [vehemens, violent], adv., violently, severely, strongly, exceedingly
vehō, vēhere, vexī, vectus, trans., carry, bear.—Pass., be borne, go, ride, sail
vel, conj., or: vel . . . vel, either . . . or.—As adv., even

Velānius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
Veliocasses, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of western Gaul along the lower Seine

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Senones
vellus, -eris, n., fleece
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, quick
vēllum, -ī, n., curtain, veil; sail
velut, adv., even as, just as: velut si, just as if
vēnātīō, -onis [venor, hunt], f., hunting, the chase.—Plur., hunting, hunting excursions
vēndō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [venum, sale, do (put)], trans., put to sale, sell

Venelli, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul
vēnēnātus, -a, -um [venenum], adj., poisonous, venomous
venenum — vetō

venēnum, -i, n., poison
Veneti, -ōrum, m. plur., a coast tribe of western Gaul
Venetia, -ae, f., the territory of the Veneti
Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of the Veneti
venia, -ae, f., favor, pardon
venio, -venire, -veni, -venturus, in-trans., come, go.
— See also usus
ventus, -i, in., wind: vento se dare, run before the wind
Venusia, -ae, f., a town in southern Italy
Veragri, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic people on the upper Rhone
Verbigenus, -i, m., a canton of the Helvetii
verbūm, -i, n., word: pluribus verbis, at great length; verba dare, deceive, outwit; facere verba, speak
Vercingetorīx, -īgis, m., a young noble of the Arverni, head of the Gauls in their great war for independence
vereor, -ērī, -itus, dep., trans. and intrans., fear, be afraid, dread.
— veritus, p. p. in pres. sense, fearing
vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p., in-trans., incline, slope
vergobretus, -i, m., Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Hāedui
verīsimilis, -ē [verus-similis], adj., probable, likely
veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of vereor

vērō, adv., in truth, in fact, certainly.
— With weakened force, but, on the other hand, however
versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [verto], trans., turn, deal with.
— Esp., in the pass. as dep., engage in, be, fight (as indicated by the context)
versus, -a, -um, p. p. of verto
versus [p. p. of verto], adv., and prep. with acc., towards, in the direction of: ad (in) . . . versus, towards
versus, -ūs [verto], m., a turning; a verse (of poetry)
Verticō, -ōnis, m., one of the Nervii
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, trans., turn: terga (turn and flee)
Verucloetius, -i, m., a noble of the Helvetii
vērūs, -a, -um, adj., true; right: re vera, in truth, really.
— Neut. as noun, the truth
verūtum, -i, n., light spear, dart
Vesontio, -onis, in., the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon
vesper, -erī, m., evening
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., your, yours
vestigium, -i, n., footstep, footprint, track.
— Esp., eodem vestigio, in the same spot
vestis, -is, f., garment, robe, dress
vestitūs, -ūs [vestio, clothe], m., clothing, garments
veterānus, -a, -um [vetus], adj., veteran
vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus, trans., forbid
vetus, -eris, adj., old, former, of long standing 
vēxīllum, -ī, n., flag 
vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., harass, annoy, overrun, ravage 
via, -ae, f., road, way, route, march 
vīctor, -ōris [via], m., traveler 
vīcēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., twenty (a piece) 
vīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., twentieth: secundo et vicesimo, twenty-second 
vīcis (gen.), f., change, turn: in vicem, in turn 
vīctica, -ae, f., victim, sacrifice 
vīctor, -ōris [vincō], m., victor. — Often as adj., triumphant, victorious 
vīctorīa, -ae [victor], f., victory 
vīcēs, -a, -um, p.p. of vincō 
vīctus, -ūs [vīvo], m., life; means of living, food 
vīcus, -ī, m., village 
vīdeo, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, trans., see, observe, examine, take care. — In pass., be seen; seem, seem best 
Vienna, -ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne 
vigilia, -ae [vigil, awake], f., watch. 
The Romans divided the night into four watches 
vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., twenty 
vīmen, -inis, n., twig (flexible, for weaving) 
vīnciō, vincīre, vīnxi, vincēctus, trans., bind, fetter 
vīncō, vincere, vīcī, vīcēctus, trans. and intrans., conquer, defeat, prevail 
vīncus, -a, -um, p.p. of vincio 
vīnculum, -ī [vincio], n., chain: ex vinculis, in chains 
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., claim, demand; avenge: in aliquem (inflict punishment); Galliam in libertatem (establish the liberty of Gaul) 
vīnea, -ae, f., vine arbor; shed (defense, for a besieging party) 
vīnum, -ī, n., wine 
vīolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., abuse: hospites (injure) 
vīr, vīri, m., man, husband 
vīrēs, see vis 
vīrgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin 
vīrgultum, -ī, n., only in plur., shrubbery, thickets, bushes 
Viridomārus, -ī, m., a nobleman of the Hædui 
Viridovīx, -icis, m., a prince of the Venelli 
vīrītim [vir], adv., man by man, to each separately 
Viromandui, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgic tribe near the Remi 
virtūs, -ūtis [vir], f., manliness, valor, courage. — Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtue; plur., merits, brave acts 
vīs, vis, f., force, might, violence. — Esp.: vi cogere (forcibly); vim facere, use violence. — Plur., virēs, strength, force, powers, bodily vigor 
vīsus, -a, -um, p.p. of video 
vīsus, -ūs, m., sight, vision
**LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**

**vīta — Zētēs**

**vīta, -ae** [cf. *vivo*], *f.*, life, the course of life

**vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.*, escape, avoid, dodge

**vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus, intrans.*, live: lacte (live on)

**vīvus, -a, -um** [vivo], *adj.*, alive, living

**vīx, adv.*, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely

**vōbīs, see tu**

**Vocātēs, -ium, m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

**Vocciō, -ōnis, m.*, a king of Noricum

**vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.*, call by name, call, summon, invite

**Vocontiī, -ōrum, m. plur.*, a tribe in southeastern Gaul

**Volcae, -ārum, m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province

**Volcānus, -ī, m.*, Vulcan (the god of fire and metals)

**volgus, -i, n.*, the crowd, the common people.— **volgō, abl. as adv.*, commonly, generally, everywhere

**volnerātus, -a, -um, p.p. of volnero

**volnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [volnus], *trans.*, wound, hurt

**volnus, -eris, n.*, wound

**volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans.*, fly

**volō, velle, volui, no p.p., irr.*, trans. and intrans.*, wish, be willing, want: quid sibi vellent, what they wanted

**Volsō, -ōnis, m.*, see Manlius

**voltus, -ūs, m.*, look, expression, countenance, face: voltum fingere, conceal one's feelings

**volucrēr, -crēs, -cre** [cf. *volo*, fly], *adj.*, winged; *fem. as noun*, bird

**voluntās, -ātis** [volo, wish], *f.*, willingness, consent, desire, will, approval

**voluptās, -ātis** [cf. *volo*, wish], *f.*, pleasure, delight

**Volusēnus, -ī, m.*, a Roman family name. *Esp.*, C. Volusenus, one of Cæsar's officers

**Vorēnus, -ī, m.*, L. Vorenus, a centurion in Cæsar's army

**vōs, see tu**

**Vosegus, -ī, m.*, the Vosges (mountains in eastern Gaul)

**voveō, vovere, vōvī, vōtus, trans. and intrans.*, vow, make a vow

**vōx, vōcis** [cf. *voco*], *f.*, voice, word, expression, shout.— Collectively, cries, words, talk.— *Plur.*, talk, reports

**X, Roman numeral for ten**

**Zama, -ae, f.*, a town in northern Africa, near which Hannibal was defeated by Scipio in 202 B.C.

**Zētēs, -ae, m.*, one of the Argonauts, son of the north wind
The numerals refer to sections of the Grammar (pp. 305 ff.) and of the Latin Composition (pp. 405 ff.). References preceded by L. C. refer to sections of the Latin Composition.

**Ablative**
- Absolute, 117. a-f; L. C. 46
- Of accompaniment, 113
- Of accordance, 111
- Of agent, 104
- Of attendant circumstance, 112
- Of cause, 109
- Of comparison, 105
- Of description, 116
- Of duration of time, 119. note
- Of manner, 110
- Of material, 103
- Of means, 106
- Of measure (degree) of difference, 114
- Of origin, 102
- Of place from which, 101. a and note
- Of place in which, 120 and a
- Of respect (specification), 115
- Of separation, 101
- Of time at which or within which, 119
- Of value or price, 108
- Of way by which, 120. note 1, 106. a
- With special words, 107. a-e

**Accusative**
- Adverbial, 99
- As direct object, 91
- As subject of infinitive, 92
- Of duration and extent, 96
- Of kindred meaning, 98
- Of place whither, 97

Two accusatives—direct object and secondary object, 93; direct object and adjunct accusative, 94
- With compounds, 95

**Adjectives**
- Agreement of, 59, 62, 63
- Attributive, 61
- Comparatives, special meaning, 122
- Comparison, meaning, 121; regular, 14; irregular, 16
- Declension, first and second, 10; irregular, 11; third, 12; of comparatives, 15
- Denoting a part (medius, ìmus, summus), 125
- Numeral, 19
- Predicate, 60
- Substantive use, 127
- Superlatives, special meaning, 123; with quam, 124
- With adverbial meaning, 126

**Adjunct accusative, 94**

**Adverbs**
- Comparison, 17, 18
- Negative, 146, 147
- Special meanings, 145

**Agreement, 58-69**

**Aliquis, declension, 31; use, 31.a,144.b**

**Alius, declension, 11; used in pairs, 144. d; used twice in different cases, 144. i**

**Alter, declension, 11.a; used in pairs, 144. d**
antecedent
in the relative clause, 140
omission of, 142
repetition of, 141
antequam, with indicative, 197. a; with subjunctive, 197. b
appositives, agreement of, 58; definition of, 54
attraction, subjunctive by, 214
base, definition of, 1. a
calendar, Roman, 227
Calends, 227.
cardinal numerals, 19
causal clauses
with cum, 189; denoting time and cause, 195
with quod, quia, etc., with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b
relative clauses of cause, 190
characteristic clauses, 177 and a
clauses
definition, 56
coördinate, 56. b; subordinate, 56. a;
moods in subordinate, 174–198
coepī, conjugation, 46. I
commands, with imperative, 173; with subjunctive, 172. b, c
comparatives, declension, 15; special meanings of, 122, 145
comparison, of adjectives, 14, 16; clauses of, 200
complementary infinitive, 217. c
concessive clauses, with indicative, 191; with subjunctive, 192
conditional sentences (L. C. 33)
future more probable, 199. II. a
future less probable, 199. II. b
past non-committal, 199. III. a
past contrary to fact, 199. III. b
present non-committal, 199. I. a
present contrary to fact, 199. I. b
in indirect discourse, 210–213
cōnfidō, with ablative, 107, b
conjugation of verbs
defective (coepī, meminī, ēdī), 46. I
dponent (hortor, vereor, sequor, partio), 37
impersonal (licet), 46. II
irregular (sum, possum, prósum, volō, nōlō, mālō, ferō, ēō, fēō), 39–45
periphrastic (amātūrus sum, amandus sum), 38. I, II
regular (amō, moneō, regō, audiō, capiō), 32–36
conjunctions, coördinating, 151. a; subordinating, 151. b
copula, definition of, 48. II. b; position of, L. C. 4. e
cum, as enclitic, 150. a
cum clauses
causal, 189
concessive, 192
temporal, 194. a, b
denoting time and cause, 195
with the meaning ‘whenever,’ 196
dative
of apparent (implied) agent, 87
of indirect object, 82
of possession (possessor), 88
of purpose (“double dative”), 89
of reference, 85
of separation, 86
with adjectives, 90
with compounds, 84; explanation of, L. C. 63. note 2
with passive of special verbs, 83. a
with special verbs, 83; explanation of, L. C. 63. note 1
decisions
of adjectives, 10–15
GRAMMATICAL INDEX

of nouns, 2–9
of pronouns, 21–31
defective verbs (coepī, memini, òdi), 46. I
deliberation, subjunctive of, 172. d;
in indirect discourse, 207. II. b
demonstrative pronouns, declension, 25; uses, 134, 135
deponent verbs (hortor, vereor, sequor, partior), 37
descriptive clauses, 177 and a
direct discourse or direct quotation, definition, 202
domī, 'at home,' 120. a
dōnec, 'as long as,' 198. II; 'until,' 198. III. a, b
dubitō, nōn dubitō, with subjunctive, 186
dum, 'while,' 198. I; 'as long as,' 198. II; 'until,' 198. III. a, b
duo, declension, 20
ego, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129
eō, conjugation, 43
etsi, in concessive clauses, 191
fearing, verbs of, 184
ferō, conjugation, 43
fidō, with ablative, 107. b
fiō, conjugation, 45
frētus, with ablative, 107. b
fruor, with ablative, 107. a
fungor, with ablative, 107. a
future conditions, more probable, 199.

II. a; less probable, 199. II. b
future perfect tense, 158
future tense
indicative, 155
infinitive, 166. b and 3
participle, 167
genitive, 72
objective, 75. b
of the whole (partitive), 76
possessive, 73
subjective, 75. a
of description, 77
of material, 79
of measure, 77. b
of value, 78
with adjectives, So
with verbs, 81. a–d
gerund, 223. a–d; expressing purpose, 225. a, b
gerundive, 224. a–d; expressing purpose, 225. a, b; in -ē with mei, tuī, suī, nostrī, and vestrī, 224. c
hic, declension, 25; uses, 134 and a,
L. C. 57. a
hindering and opposing, verbs of, 185
historical infinitive, 218
historical present, 153. a
idem, declension, 25
Ides, 227. d
ille, declension, 25; uses, 134 and a,
L. C. 57. a
imperative, in commands, 173 and note; in indirect discourse, 205, 206
impersonal verbs, conjugation (licet), 46. II; definition, 66
implied indirect discourse, 208. b
indefinite pronouns, declension (quis, quī, quisque, quidam, quisquam, aliquis), 28–31; uses, 31. a, 144.
a–d
indicative mood, 168
in causal clauses, 188. a
in concessive clauses, 191
in conditional clauses, 199. I. a, II. a, III. a
in questions, 170
in relative clauses, 178
in statement of facts, 169
in temporal clauses, 194. a, 196, 197. a, 198. I, II, III. a

indirect discourse
definition, 203
conditional sentences in, 210–213
declarative sentences in, 204 and a
imperative sentences in, 205
prohibitions in, 206
questions in, real, 207. I; rhetorical, 207. II. a, b
subordinate clauses in, mood of, 208; tense of, 209 and note

indirect questions, 201

infinitive mood
definition, 215
as object, 217. a–c
as subject, 216. a, b
complementary, 217. c
historical, 218
in indirect discourse, 217. b, 204
tenses of, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b. 1–3

intensive pronoun, ipse, declension, 25; uses, 136. a, b

interest, with genitive, 81. c

interrogative particles, 170. a. 1–3, b. 1, 2

interrogative pronoun, quis, declension, 27

intransitive verbs, definition, 50; dative with, 83
ipse, declension, 25; uses, 136. a, b
irregular verbs, conjugation, 39–45
is, declension, 25; uses, 135
iste, declension, 25; use, L.C. 57. a
licet, conjugation, 46. II
locative case, 120. a

mālō, conjugation, 42
memini, conjugation, 46. I
memory, verbs of, 81. a
mille, declension, 20; use, 20. note

moods, in independent sentences, 168–173; in subordinate clauses, 174–201

-ne, in questions, 170. a. 1, b. 1
nē, conjunction
general use, 147
with clauses of purpose, 174
with hortative subjunctive, 172. a
with optative subjunctive, 172. e
with subjunctive in prohibitions, 172. c
with substantive clauses, after verbs of fearing, 184; after verbs of hindering etc., 185

negatives, 146 and a, 147
neuter, declension, 11. a

nōr, with ablative, 107. b
nōli, conjugation, 42; use, 172. c. note 1, 173. note

nominate, as subject or predicate of a finite verb, 70; as subject of the historical infinitive, 71
non, 146 and a; with clauses of result, 179
Nones, 227. d
nōnne, 170. a. 2
nōs, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

nouns
first declension, 2
second declension, 3
third declension, 4–6
fourth declension, 7
fifth declension, 8
special declensions (deus, domus, vis, iter), 9
as predicates or appositives, 58
nūllus, declension, 11. a
num, in direct questions, 170. a. 3; in indirect questions, 201. note
numerals, 19

object, direct, 91; indirect, 82
objective genitive, 75. b
ōdī, conjugation, 46. I
optative subjunctive, 172. e. 1–3
opus est, with ablative, 107. c
order of words, L. C. 1–4, a–e
ordinal numerals, 19

paenitet, with genitive, 81. b
participles
definition, 219
as nouns, 221
declension of present active, 13
equivalent to clauses, 220. a–e
in the periphrastic conjugations, 222
tenses of, 167; wanting, L. C. 45

passive voice, intransitive verbs in, 83. a; dative retained with, 83. a
past absolute, 156. b
past participle, with habeō, 156. b. note
past perfect tense, indicative, 157; subjunctive, 159. e
past tense, indicative, 154; subjunctive, 159. b

perfect tense
indicative, 156. a, b
infinitive, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b. 2
participle, 167
subjunctive, 159. a

periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II
active use, 222. I
passive use, 222. II
impersonal use, 222. II. note, L. C. 53

personal pronouns
declension, 21
in the nominative, 129
of the third person, 130
with -cum as enclitic, 150. a
with gerundive, 224. c

phrase, definition, 51

place
from which, 101. a and note
in which, 120 and a
to which, 97 and note
plūs, declension, 15

possessive pronominal adjectives, declension, 23, 24; use, 131, 132

possūm, conjugation, 40
postquam, with indicative, 193
potential subjunctive, 172. f
potior, with ablative, 107. a; with genitive, 81. d

predicate, definition, 48. II and a
predicate adjective, 60
predicate noun, agreement, 58

prepositions
use, 148
with ablative, 150
with accusative, 149

present tense
historical, 153. a
indicative, 153
infinitive, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b. 1
participle, 167
subjunctive, 159. a
with dum, 198. I

primary tenses, 161
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>priusquam</strong></td>
<td>with indicative, 197.\textit{a}; with subjunctive, 197.\textit{b}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>prohibitions</strong></td>
<td>172.\textit{c} and note 1; in indirect discourse, 206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pronouns</strong></td>
<td>declensions, 21–31; uses, 128–144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>prōsum</strong></td>
<td>conjugation, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>purpose clauses</strong></td>
<td>adverbial, 174; relative, 175; containing a comparative, 176; substantive, 183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quam</strong></td>
<td>with comparatives, 105. note 1; with superlatives, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quamquam</strong></td>
<td>with indicative, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quamvis</strong></td>
<td>with subjunctive, 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quando</strong></td>
<td>in causal clauses, with indicative, 188.\textit{a}; with subjunctive, 188.\textit{b}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quó</strong></td>
<td>in indirect discourse, 206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quó minus</strong></td>
<td>after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quoniam</strong></td>
<td>in causal clauses, with indicative, 188.\textit{a}; with subjunctive, 188.\textit{b}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quod</strong></td>
<td>in causal clauses, with indicative, 188.\textit{a}; with subjunctive, 188.\textit{b}; in substantive clauses of fact, 182 and \textit{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>qué</strong></td>
<td>declension, 22; direct, 132; indirect, 133; with gerundive, 224.\textit{c}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>requies</strong></td>
<td>in causal clauses, with indicative, 188.\textit{a}; with subjunctive, 188.\textit{b}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>relative clause</strong></td>
<td>antecedent in, 140; antecedent repeated in, 141; causal, 190; descriptive(characteristic), 177 and \textit{a} of fact, 178; of purpose, 175; of result, 180; preceding antecedent clause, 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>relative pronoun</strong></td>
<td>agreement of, 137; agreement with predicate noun or appositive, 138; beginning a new sentence, 143; declension, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>reminiscor</strong></td>
<td>with genitive, 81.\textit{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>result clauses</strong></td>
<td>adverbial, 179; relative, 180</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
substantive, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II

rhetorical questions, definition, 171; in indirect discourse, 207. II. a, b

Roman calendar, 227
Roman year, 228

secondary tenses, 161
sentences, kinds of, 47. a–c; forms of, 55. a–c

separation, ablative of, 101; dative of, 86
sequence of tenses, explanation of, 161; rule for, 162

sī, with conditional clauses, 199
sōlus, declension, 11. a
stem, definition of, 1. a

subjunctive mood
after nōn dubitā, 186
after verbs of fearing, 184
after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185
by attraction, 214
in causal clauses, 188. b, 189, 190
in clauses of comparison, 200
in clauses of description, 177
in clauses of purpose, 174–176, 183
in clauses of result, 179, 180, 187
in commands, 172. b
in concessive clauses, 192
in conditional clauses, 199. I. b, II. b, III. b
in cum clauses denoting time and cause, 195
in exhortations, 172. a
in indirect discourse, in subordinate clauses, 208
in indirect questions, 201

in prohibitions, 172. c
in questions of deliberation, 172. d
in temporal clauses, 194. b, 197. b, 198. III. b
optative, 172. e. 1, 2, 3
potential, 172. f

substantive clauses
after nōn dubitā, 186
after verbs of fearing, 184
after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185
of fact, 182 and a
of purpose, 183
of result, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II

sum, conjugation, 39; use as copula, 48. II. b

supine, in -um, 226. a; in -ū, 226. b

suus, sui
declension, 22, 23
as direct reflexive, 132
as indirect reflexive, 133
special use with gerundive, 224. c

temporal clauses
indicative uses
with antequam or priusquam, denoting a fact, 197. a
with cum in definitive clauses, 194. a
with cum meaning ‘whenever,’ 196
with dum meaning ‘while,’ 198. I
with dum, dōnec, or quoad meaning ‘as long as,’ 198. II
with dum, dōnec, or quoad meaning ‘until,’ denoting a fact, 198. III. a
with postquam, ut, ubi, etc., 193
subjunctive uses
with antequam or priusquam, denoting anticipation, 197. b
with cum in descriptive (circumstantial) clauses, 194. b
with cum denoting time and cause, 195
with dum, dōnec, or quoad, denoting anticipation, 198. III. b

tenses
of the indicative, 153–158
of the infinitive, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b. 1–3
of the participle, 167
of the subjunctive, in dependent clauses, 160; in independent clauses, 159. a–c
sequence of, 161, 162
tōtus, declension, 11. a
transitive verbs, 49; object of, 91
trēs, declension, 20
tū, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

ubi, with indicative, 193
ūllus, declension, 11. a; use, 31. a, 144. c
ūnus, declension, 11
ūsus est, with ablative, 107. c
ut
with clauses of purpose, 174
with clauses of result, 179

with concessive clauses, 192
with temporal clauses, 193
uter, declension, 11. a
utinam, with the optative subjunctive, 172. c. 1–3
ūtor, with ablative, 107. a
utrum . . . an, 170. b. 1

velut, velut si, with subjunctive, 200
verbs
agreement of, 65–69
defective, conjugation, 46. I
deponent, conjugation, 37
impersonal, conjugation, 46. II
intransitive, 50
irregular, conjugation, 39–45
moods, in independent sentences, 168–173; in subordinate clauses, 174–201
periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II;
uses, 222. I, II
regular, conjugation, 32–36
tenses, sec tenses
transitive, 49
vocative, 100
volitive subjunctive, 172. c. note 2
volō, conjugation, 42
vōs, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

wishes, see optative subjunctive
words, order of, L. C. 1–4, a–e

year, the Roman, 228